Alcoholism, Substance Abuse and Dependency

Presented by
Lance Parks, LCSW

Study helps: When you scroll over the yellow sticky notes you will receive study helps.

Treatment Approaches for Drug Addiction

Note: Chapters 1 – 4 are from the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIH); National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Updated January 2019

Chapter 1 – Introduction

What is drug addiction?
Drug addiction is a chronic disease characterized by compulsive, or uncontrollable, drug seeking and use despite harmful consequences and changes in the brain, which can be long lasting. These changes in the brain can lead to the harmful behaviors seen in people who use drugs. Drug addiction is also a relapsing disease. Relapse is the return to drug use after an attempt to stop.

The path to drug addiction begins with the voluntary act of taking drugs. But over time, a person's ability to choose not to do so becomes compromised. Seeking and taking the drug becomes compulsive. This is mostly due to the effects of long-term drug exposure on brain function. Addiction affects parts of the brain involved in reward and motivation, learning and memory, and control over behavior.

Addiction is a disease that affects both the brain and behavior.

Can drug addiction be treated?
Yes, but it's not simple. Because addiction is a chronic disease, people can't simply stop using drugs for a few days and be cured. Most patients need long-term or repeated care to stop using completely and recover their lives.

Addiction treatment must help the person do the following:

- stop using drugs
- stay drug-free
- be productive in the family, at work, and in society

B. Principles of Effective Treatment

Based on scientific research since the mid-1970s, the following key principles should form the basis of any effective treatment program:

- Addiction is a complex but treatable disease that affects brain function and behavior.
- No single treatment is right for everyone.
- People need to have quick access to treatment.
- Effective treatment addresses all of the patient's needs, not just his or her drug use.
- Staying in treatment long enough is critical.
- Counseling and other behavioral therapies are the most commonly used forms of treatment.
- Medications are often an important part of treatment, especially when combined with behavioral therapies.
- Treatment plans must be reviewed often and modified to fit the patient's changing needs.
- Treatment should address other possible mental disorders.
- Medically assisted detoxification is only the first stage of treatment.
- Treatment doesn't need to be voluntary to be effective.
- Drug use during treatment must be monitored continuously.
- Treatment programs should test patients for HIV/AIDS, hepatitis B and C, tuberculosis, and other infectious diseases as well as teach them about steps they can take to reduce their risk of these illnesses.

What are treatments for drug addiction?

There are many options that have been successful in treating drug addiction, including:

- behavioral counseling
- medication
- medical devices and applications used to treat withdrawal symptoms or deliver skills training
- evaluation and treatment for co-occurring mental health issues such as depression and anxiety
- long-term follow-up to prevent relapse

A range of care with a tailored treatment program and follow-up options can be crucial to success. Treatment should include both medical and mental health services as needed.
Follow-up care may include community- or family-based recovery support systems.

C. How are medications used in drug addiction treatment?

Medications can be used to manage withdrawal symptoms, prevent relapse, and treat co- occurring conditions.

Withdrawal. Medications help suppress withdrawal symptoms during detoxification. Detoxification is not in itself "treatment," but only the first step in the process. Patients who do not receive any further treatment after detoxification usually resume their drug use. One study of treatment facilities found that medications were used in almost 80 percent of detoxifications (SAMHSA, 2014). Devices are also being used to reduce withdrawal symptoms. In November 2017, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) granted a new indication to an electronic stimulation device, NSS-2 Bridge, for use in helping reduce opioid withdrawal symptoms. This device is placed behind the ear and sends electrical pulses to stimulate certain brain nerves.

Relapse prevention. Patients can use medications to help re-establish normal brain function and decrease cravings. Medications are available for treatment of opioid (heroin, prescription pain relievers), tobacco (nicotine), and alcohol addiction. Scientists are developing other medications to treat stimulant (cocaine, methamphetamine) and cannabis (marijuana) addiction. People who use more than one drug, which is very common, need treatment for all of the substances they use.

- ***Opioids:*** Methadone (Dolophine®, Methadose®), buprenorphine (Suboxone®, Subutex®, Probuphine® , Sublocade™), and naltrexone (Vivitrol®) are used to treat opioid addiction. Acting on the same targets in the brain as heroin and morphine, methadone and buprenorphine suppress withdrawal symptoms and relieve cravings. Naltrexone blocks the effects of opioids at their receptor sites in the brain and should be used only in patients who have already been detoxified. All medications help patients reduce drug seeking and related criminal behavior and help them become more open to behavioral treatments. A NIDA study found that once treatment is initiated, both a buprenorphine/naloxone combination and an extended release naltrexone formulation are similarly effective in treating

opioid addiction. Because full detoxification is necessary for treatment with naloxone, initiating treatment among active users was difficult, but once detoxification was complete, both medications had similar effectiveness.□

- ***Tobacco:*** Nicotine replacement therapies have several forms, including the patch, spray, gum, and lozenges. These products are available over the counter. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved two prescription medications for nicotine addiction: bupropion (Zyban®) and varenicline (Chantix®). They work differently in the brain, but both help prevent relapse in people trying to quit. The medications are more effective when combined with behavioral treatments, such as group and individual therapy as well as telephone quit-lines.
    - ***Alcohol:*** Three medications have been FDA-approved for treating alcohol addiction and a fourth, topiramate, has shown promise in clinical trials (large- scale studies with people). The three approved medications are as follows **Naltrexone** blocks opioid receptors that are involved in the rewarding effects of drinking and in the craving for alcohol. It reduces relapse to heavy drinking and is highly effective in some patients. Genetic differences may affect how well the drug works in certain patients.
    - **Acamprosate (Campral®)** may reduce symptoms of long-lasting withdrawal, such as insomnia, anxiety, restlessness, and dysphoria (generally feeling unwell or unhappy). It may be more effective in patients with severe addiction.
    - **Disulfiram (Antabuse®)** interferes with the breakdown of alcohol. Acetaldehyde builds up in the body, leading to unpleasant reactions that include flushing (warmth and redness in the face), nausea, and irregular heartbeat if the patient drinks alcohol. Compliance (taking the drug as prescribed) can be a problem, but it may help patients who are highly motivated to quit drinking.

- ***Co-occuring conditions:*** Other medications are available to treat possible mental health conditions, such as depression or anxiety, that may be contributing to the person's addiction.

D. How are behavioral therapies used to treat drug addiction?

Behavioral therapies help patients:

- modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use
- increase healthy life skills
- persist with other forms of treatment, such as medication

Patients can receive treatment in many different settings with various approaches.

Outpatient behavioral treatment includes a wide variety of programs for patients who visit a behavioral health counselor on a regular schedule. Most of the programs involve individual or group drug counseling, or both. These programs typically offer forms of behavioral therapy such as:

- *cognitive-behavioral therapy,* which helps patients recognize, avoid, and cope with the situations in which they are most likely to use drugs
- *multidimensional family therapy*—developed for adolescents with drug abuse problems as well as their families—which addresses a range of influences on their drug abuse patterns and is designed to improve overall family functioning
- *motivational interviewing,* which makes the most of people's readiness to change their behavior and enter treatment
- *motivational incentives* (contingency management), which uses positive reinforcement to encourage abstinence from drugs

Treatment is sometimes intensive at first, where patients attend multiple outpatient sessions each week. After completing intensive treatment, patients transition to regular outpatient treatment, which meets less often and for fewer hours per week to help sustain their recovery. In September 2017, the FDA permitted marketing of the first mobile application, reSET®, to help treat substance use disorders. This application is intended to be used with outpatient treatment to treat alcohol, cocaine, marijuana, and stimulant substance use disorders. In December 2018, the FDA cleared a mobile medical application, reSET®, to help treat opioid use disorders. This application is a prescription cognitive behavioral therapy and should be used in conjunction with treatment that includes buprenorphine and contingency management.

Inpatient or residential treatment can also be very effective, especially for those with more severe problems (including co-occurring disorders). Licensed residential treatment facilities offer 24-hour structured and intensive care, including safe housing and medical attention. Residential treatment facilities may use a variety of therapeutic approaches, and they are generally aimed at helping the patient live a drug-free, crime-free lifestyle after treatment. Examples of residential treatment settings include:

- *Therapeutic communities*, which are highly structured programs in which patients remain at a residence, typically for 6 to 12 months. The entire community, including treatment staff and those in recovery, act as key agents of change, influencing the patient's attitudes, understanding, and behaviors associated with drug use. Read more about therapeutic communities in the *Therapeutic Communities Research Report* at https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/ research-reports/therapeutic-communities.
- *Shorter-term residential treatment*, which typically focuses on detoxification as well as providing initial intensive counseling and preparation for treatment in a community-based setting.
- *Recovery housing,* which provides supervised, short-term housing for patients, often following other types of inpatient or residential treatment. Recovery housing can help people make the transition to an independent life—for example, helping them learn how to manage finances or seek employment, as well as connecting them to support services in the community.

Challenges of Re-entry

Drug abuse changes the function of the brain, and many things can "trigger" drug cravings within the brain. It's critical for those in treatment, especially those treated at an inpatient facility or prison, to learn how to recognize, avoid, and cope with triggers they are likely to be exposed to after treatment.

E. Is treatment different for criminal justice populations?

Scientific research since the mid-1970s shows that drug abuse treatment can help many drug-using offenders change their attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors towards drug abuse; avoid relapse; and successfully remove themselves from a life of substance abuse and crime. Many of the principles of treating drug addiction are similar for people within the criminal justice system as for those in the general population. However, many offenders don't have access to the types of services they need. Treatment that is of poor quality or is not well suited to the needs of offenders may not be effective at reducing drug use and criminal behavior.

In addition to the general principles of treatment, some considerations specific to offenders include the following:

- Treatment should include development of specific cognitive skills to help the offender adjust attitudes and beliefs that lead to drug abuse and crime, such as feeling entitled to have things one's own way or not understanding

the consequences of one's behavior. This includes skills related to thinking, understanding, learning, and remembering.
- Treatment planning should include tailored services within the correctional facility as well as transition to community-based treatment after release.
- Ongoing coordination between treatment providers and courts or parole and probation officers is important in addressing the complex needs of offenders re- entering society.

How many people get treatment for drug addiction?
According to SAMHSA's National Survey on Drug Use and Health, 22.5 million people (8.5 percent of the U.S. population) aged 12 or older needed treatment for an illicit* drug or alcohol use problem in 2014. Only 4.2 million (18.5 percent of those who needed treatment) received any substance use treatment in the same year. Of these, about 2.6 million people received treatment at specialty treatment programs (CBHSQ, 2015).

*The term "illicit" refers to the use of illegal drugs, including marijuana according to federal law, and misuse of prescription medications.

F. Points to Remember

- Drug addiction can be treated, but it's not simple. Addiction treatment must help the person do the following:
  - stop using drugs
  - stay drug-free
  - be productive in the family, at work, and in society

- Successful treatment has several steps:
  - detoxification
  - behavioral counseling
  - medication (for opioid, tobacco, or alcohol addiction)
  - evaluation and treatment for co-occurring mental health issues such as depression and anxiety
  - long-term follow-up to prevent relapse

- Medications and devices can be used to manage withdrawal symptoms, prevent relapse, and treat co-occurring conditions.

- Behavioral therapies help patients:
  - modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use

- increase healthy life skills
- persist with other forms of treatment, such as medication

- People within the criminal justice system may need additional treatment services to treat drug use disorders effectively. However, many offenders don't have access to the types of services they need.

Learn More

For more information about drug addiction treatment, visit: www.drugabuse.gov/publications/principles-drug-addiction-treatment-research-based- guide-third-edition/acknowledgments

For information about drug addiction treatment in the criminal justice system, visit: www.drugabuse.gov/publications/principles-drug-abuse-treatment-criminal-justice- populations/principles

For step-by-step guides for people who think they or a loved one may need treatment, visit: www.drugabuse.gov/related-topics/treatment

References

Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (CBSHQ). *2014 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Detailed Tables.* Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration; 2015.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). *National Survey of Substance Abuse Treatment Services (N-SSATS): 2013. Data on Substance Abuse Treatment Facilities.* Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration; 2014. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14-489. BHSIS Series S-73.

Chapter 2 – Health Effects of Specific Drugs

A. Anabolic Steroids

What are anabolic steroids?

Anabolic steroids are synthetic, or human-made, variations of the male sex hormone testosterone. The proper term for these compounds is *anabolic-androgenic steroids*. "Anabolic" refers to muscle building, and "androgenic" refers to increased male sex characteristics. Some common names for anabolic steroids are Gear, Juice, Roids, and Stackers.

Health care providers can prescribe steroids to treat hormonal issues, such as delayed puberty. Steroids can also treat diseases that cause muscle loss, such as cancer and AIDS. But some athletes and bodybuilders misuse these drugs in an attempt to boost performance or improve their physical appearance.

The majority of people who misuse steroids are male weightlifters in their 20s or 30s. Anabolic steroid misuse is much less common in women. It is difficult to measure steroid misuse in the United States because many national surveys do not measure it. However, use among teens is generally minimal. The 2016 NIDA-funded Monitoring the Future study has shown that past-year misuse of steroids has declined among 8th and 10th graders in recent years, while holding steady for 12th graders.

How do people misuse anabolic steroids?

People who misuse anabolic steroids usually take them orally, inject them into muscles, or apply them to the skin as a gel or cream. These doses may be 10 to 100 times higher than doses prescribed to treat medical conditions.

Commons patterns for misusing steroids include:

- cycling—taking multiple doses for a period of time, stopping for a time, and then restarting
- stacking—combining two or more different steroids and mixing oral and/or injectable types
- pyramiding—slowly increasing the dose or frequency of steroid misuse, reaching a peak amount, and then gradually tapering off to zero
- plateauing—alternating, overlapping, or substituting with another steroid to avoid developing a tolerance

There is no scientific evidence that any of these practices reduce the harmful medical consequences of these drugs.

How do anabolic steroids affect the brain?
Anabolic steroids work differently from other drugs of abuse; they do not have the same short-term effects on the brain. The most important difference is that steroids do not directly activate the reward system to cause a "high"; they also do not trigger rapid increases in the brain chemical dopamine, which reinforces most other types of drug taking behavior.

Misuse of anabolic steroids might lead to negative mental effects, such as:

- paranoid (extreme, unreasonable) jealousy
- extreme irritability and aggression ("roid rage")
- *delusions*—false beliefs or ideas
- impaired judgment
- mania

Anabolic Steroids and Infectious Diseases
People who inject steroids increase their risk of contracting or transmitting HIV/AIDS or hepatitis. Read more about this connection by visiting:

DrugFacts: Drug Use and Viral Infections
https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/drugfacts/drug-use-viral-infections-hiv-hepatitis

Viral Hepatitis—A Very Real Consequence of Substance Use
https://www.drugabuse.gov/related-topics/viral-hepatitis-very-real-consequence-substance-use

What are other health effects of anabolic steroids
Aside from mental effects, steroid use commonly causes severe acne. It also causes the body to swell, especially in the hands and feet.
Long-Term Effects
Anabolic steroid misuse might lead to serious, even permanent, health problems such as:

- kidney problems or failure
- liver damage and tumors
- enlarged heart, high blood pressure, and changes in blood cholesterol, all of which increase the risk of stroke and heart attack, even in young people
- increased risk of blood clots

Several other effects are gender- and age-specific:
In men:

- shrinking testicles
- decreased sperm count
- baldness
- development of breasts
- increased risk for prostate cancer

In women*:*

- growth of facial hair or excess body hair
- decreased breast size
- male-pattern baldness
- changes in or stop in the menstrual cycle
- enlarged clitoris
- deepened voice

In teens:

- stunted growth (when high hormone levels from steroids signal to the body to stop bone growth too early)
- stunted height (if teens use steroids before their growth spurt)

Some of these physical changes, such as shrinking sex organs in men, can add to mental side effects such as mood disorders.

Are anabolic steroids addictive?

Even though anabolic steroids do not cause the same high as other drugs, they can lead to a substance use disorder. A substance use disorder occurs when a person continues to misuse steroids, even though there are serious consequences for doing so. The most severe form of a substance use disorder is addiction. People might continue to misuse steroids despite physical problems, high costs to buy the drugs, and negative effects on their relationships. These behaviors reflect steroids' addictive potential. Research has further found that some steroid users turn to other drugs, such as opioids, to reduce sleep problems and irritability caused by steroids.

People who misuse steroids might experience withdrawal symptoms when they stop use, including:

- fatigue
- restlessness
- loss of appetite

- sleep problems
- decreased sex drive
- steroid cravings

One of the more serious withdrawal symptoms is depression, which can sometimes lead to suicide attempts.

How can people get treatment for anabolic steroid addiction?
Some people seeking treatment for anabolic steroid addiction have found a combination of behavioral therapy and medications to be helpful.

In certain cases of addiction, patients have taken medicines to help treat symptoms of withdrawal. For example, health care providers have prescribed antidepressants to treat depression and pain medicines for headaches and muscle and joint pain. Other medicines have been used to help restore the patient's hormonal system.

Points to Remember

- Anabolic steroids are synthetic variations of the male sex hormone testosterone.
- Health care providers can prescribe steroids to treat various medical conditions. But some athletes and bodybuilders misuse these drugs to boost performance or improve their physical appearance.
- People who abuse anabolic steroids usually take them orally, inject them into the muscles, or apply them to the skin with a cream or gel.
- People misuse steroids in a variety of doses and schedules.
- Misuse of anabolic steroids might lead to short-term effects, including paranoid jealousy, extreme irritability and aggression, delusions, impaired judgement, and mania.
- Continued steroid misuse can act on some of the same brain pathways and chemicals that are affected by other drugs, including dopamine, serotonin, and opioid systems.
- Anabolic steroid misuse might lead to serious long-term, even permanent, health problems.
- Several other effects are gender- and age-specific.
- People who inject steroids increase their risk of contracting or transmitting HIV/AIDS or hepatitis.

- Even though anabolic steroids do not cause the same high as other drugs, they can lead to addiction.
- Some people seeking treatment for anabolic steroid addiction have found behavioral therapy and medications to be helpful. Medicines can help treat symptoms of withdrawal in some cases.

B. Cigarettes and Other Tobacco Products

What is tobacco?

Tobacco is a plant grown for its leaves, which are dried and fermented before being put in tobacco products. Tobacco contains nicotine, an ingredient that can lead to addiction, which is why so many people who use tobacco find it difficult to quit. There are also many other potentially harmful chemicals found in tobacco or created by burning it.

How do people use tobacco?

People can smoke, chew, or sniff tobacco. Smoked tobacco products include cigarettes, cigars, bidis, and kreteks. Some people also smoke loose tobacco in a pipe or hookah (water pipe). Chewed tobacco products include chewing tobacco, snuff, dip, and snus; snuff can also be sniffed.

How does tobacco affect the brain?

The nicotine in any tobacco product readily absorbs into the blood when a person uses it. Upon entering the blood, nicotine immediately stimulates the adrenal glands to release the hormone epinephrine (adrenaline). Epinephrine stimulates the central nervous system and increases blood pressure, breathing, and heart rate. As with drugs such as cocaine and heroin, nicotine activates the brain's reward circuits and also increases levels of the chemical messenger *dopamine*, which reinforces rewarding behaviors. Studies suggest that other chemicals in tobacco smoke, such as acetaldehyde, may enhance nicotine's effects on the brain.

What are other health effects of tobacco use?

Although nicotine is addictive, most of the severe health effects of tobacco use comes from other chemicals. Tobacco smoking can lead to lung cancer, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema. It increases the risk of heart disease, which can lead to stroke or heart attack. Smoking has also been linked to other cancers, leukemia, cataracts, Type 2 Diabetes, and pneumonia. All of these risks apply to use of any smoked product, including hookah tobacco. Smokeless tobacco increases the risk of cancer, especially mouth cancers.

Pregnant women who smoke cigarettes run an increased risk of miscarriage, stillborn or premature infants, or infants with low birth weight. Smoking while pregnant may also be associated with learning and behavioral problems in exposed children.

People who stand or sit near others who smoke are exposed to secondhand smoke, either coming from the burning end of the tobacco product or exhaled by the person who is smoking. Secondhand smoke exposure can also lead to lung cancer and heart disease. It can cause health problems in both adults and children, such as coughing, phlegm, reduced lung function, pneumonia, and bronchitis. Children exposed to secondhand smoke are at an increased risk of ear infections, severe asthma, lung infections, and death from sudden infant death syndrome.

Electronic Cigarettes

Electronic cigarettes, also known as e-cigarettes or e-vaporizers, are battery-operated devices that deliver nicotine with flavorings and other chemicals to the lungs in vapor instead of smoke. E-cigarette companies often advertise them as safer than traditional cigarettes because they don't burn tobacco. But researchers actually know little about the health risks of using these devices.

How does tobacco use lead to addiction?

For many who use tobacco, long-term brain changes brought on by continued nicotine exposure result in addiction. When a person tries to quit, he or she may have withdrawal symptoms, including:

- irritability
- problems paying attention
- trouble sleeping
- increased appetite
- powerful cravings for tobacco

How can people get treatment for nicotine addiction?
Both behavioral treatments and medications can help people quit smoking, but the combination of medication with counseling is more effective than either alone.

The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services has established a national toll-free quitline, 1-800-QUIT-NOW, to serve as an access point for anyone seeking information and help in quitting smoking.

Behavioral Treatments

Government Regulation of Tobacco Products
On May 5, 2016, the FDA announced that nationwide tobacco regulations now extend to *all* tobacco products, including:

- e-cigarettes and their liquid solutions
- cigars
- hookah tobacco
- pipe tobacco

This ruling includes restricting sale of these products to minors. For more information, see the FDA's webpage, The Facts on the FDA's New Tobacco Rule.
Behavioral treatments use a variety of methods to help people quit smoking, ranging from self-help materials to counseling. These treatments teach people to recognize high-risk situations and develop strategies to deal with them. For example, people who hang out with others who smoke are more likely to smoke and less likely to quit.

Nicotine Replacement Therapies

Nicotine replacement therapies (NRTs) were the first medications the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved for use in smoking cessation therapy.

Current FDA-approved NRT products include chewing gum, transdermal patch, nasal sprays, inhalers, and lozenges. NRTs deliver a controlled dose of nicotine to relieve withdrawal symptoms while the person tries to quit.

Other Medications

Bupropion (Zyban®) and varenicline (Chantix®) are two FDA-approved non-nicotine medications that have helped people quit smoking. They target nicotine

receptors in the brain, easing withdrawal symptoms and blocking the effects of nicotine if people start smoking again.

Reports of Deaths Related to Vaping

The Food and Drug Administration has alerted the public to hundreds of reports of serious lung illnesses associated with vaping, including several deaths. They are working with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to investigate the cause of these illnesses. Many of the suspect products tested by the states or federal health officials have been identified as vaping products containing THC, the main psychotropic ingredient in marijuana. Some of the patients reported a mixture of THC and nicotine; and some reported vaping nicotine alone. No one substance has been identified in all of the samples tested, and it is unclear if the illnesses are related to one single compound. Until more details are known, FDA officials have warned people not to use any vaping products bought on the street, and they warn against modifying any products purchased in stores. They are also asking people and health professionals to report any adverse effects. The CDC has posted an information page for consumers.

Can a person overdose on nicotine?

Nicotine is poisonous and, though uncommon, overdose is possible. An overdose occurs when the person uses too much of a drug and has a toxic reaction that results in serious, harmful symptoms or death. Nicotine poisoning usually occurs in young children who accidentally chew on nicotine gum or patches used to quit smoking or swallow e-cigarette liquid. Symptoms include difficulty breathing, vomiting, fainting, headache, weakness, and increased or decreased heart rate. Anyone concerned that a child or adult might be experiencing a nicotine overdose should seek immediate medical help.

Points to Remember

- Tobacco is a plant grown for its leaves, which are dried and fermented before being put in tobacco products. Tobacco contains nicotine, the ingredient that can lead to addiction.
- People can smoke, chew, or sniff tobacco.
- Nicotine acts in the brain by stimulating the adrenal glands to release the hormone epinephrine (adrenaline) and by increasing levels of the chemical messenger dopamine.
- Tobacco smoking can lead to lung cancer, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema. It increases the risk of heart disease, which can lead to stroke or heart attack. Smoking has also been linked to other cancers, leukemia, cataracts, and pneumonia. Smokeless tobacco increases the risk of cancer, especially mouth cancers.
- Secondhand smoke can lead to lung cancer and heart disease as well as other health effects in adults and children.
- For many who use tobacco, long-term brain changes brought on by continued nicotine exposure result in addiction.
- Both behavioral treatments and medication can help people quit smoking, but the combination of medication with counseling is more effective than either alone.
- Nicotine overdose is possible, though it usually occurs in young children who accidentally chew on nicotine gum or patches or swallow e-cigarette liquid.

• Anyone concerned that a child or adult might be experiencing a nicotine overdose should seek immediate medical help.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated September 2019

C. Cocaine

What is cocaine?

Cocaine is a powerfully addictive stimulant drug made from the leaves of the coca plant native to South America. Although health care providers can use it for valid medical purposes, such as local anesthesia for some surgeries, recreational cocaine use is illegal. As a street drug, cocaine looks like a fine, white, crystal powder. Street dealers often mix it with things like cornstarch, talcum powder, or flour to increase profits. They may also mix it with other drugs such as the stimulant amphetamine, or synthetic opioids, including fentanyl. Adding synthetic opioids to cocaine is especially risky when people using cocaine don't realize it contains this dangerous additive. Increasing numbers of overdose deaths among cocaine users might be related to this tampered cocaine.
Popular nicknames for cocaine include:

- Blow
- Coke
- Crack
- Rock
- Snow

How do people use cocaine?

People snort cocaine powder through the nose, or they rub it into their gums. Others dissolve the powder and inject it into the bloodstream. Some people inject a combination of cocaine and heroin, called a Speedball.

Another popular method of use is to smoke cocaine that has been processed to make a rock crystal (also called "freebase cocaine"). The crystal is heated to produce vapors that are inhaled into the lungs. This form of cocaine is called Crack, which refers to the crackling sound of the rock as it's heated. Some people also smoke Crack by sprinkling it on marijuana or tobacco, and smoke it like a cigarette.

People who use cocaine often take it in binges—taking the drug repeatedly within a short time, at increasingly higher doses—to maintain their high.

How does cocaine affect the brain?

Cocaine increases levels of the natural chemical messenger *dopamine in* brain circuits related to the control of movement and reward.

Normally, dopamine recycles back into the cell that released it, shutting off the signal between nerve cells. However, cocaine prevents dopamine from being recycled, causing large amounts to build up in the space between two nerve cells, stopping their normal communication. This flood of dopamine in the brain's reward circuit strongly reinforces drug-taking behaviors, because the reward circuit eventually adapts to the excess of dopamine caused by cocaine, and becomes less sensitive to it. As a result, people take stronger and more frequent doses in an attempt to feel the same high, and to obtain relief from withdrawal.

Short-Term Effects
Short-term health effects of cocaine include:

- extreme happiness and energy
- mental alertness
- hypersensitivity to sight, sound, and touch
- irritability
- *paranoia*—extreme and unreasonable distrust of others

Some people find that cocaine helps them perform simple physical and mental tasks more quickly, although others experience the opposite effect. Large amounts of cocaine can lead to bizarre, unpredictable, and violent behavior.

Cocaine's effects appear almost immediately and disappear within a few minutes to an hour. How long the effects last and how intense they are depend on the method of use. Injecting or smoking cocaine produces a quicker and stronger but shorter-lasting high than snorting. The high from snorting cocaine may last 15 to 30 minutes. The high from smoking may last 5 to 10 minutes.

What are other health effects of cocaine use?
Other health effects of cocaine use include:

- constricted blood vessels
- dilated pupils
- nausea
- raised body temperature and blood pressure
- fast or irregular heartbeat
- tremors and muscle twitches
- restlessness

Long-Term Effects
Some long-term health effects of cocaine depend on the method of use and include the following:

- *snorting:* loss of smell, nosebleeds, frequent runny nose, and problems with swallowing
- *smoking:* cough, asthma, respiratory distress, and higher risk of infections like pneumonia
- *consuming by mouth:* severe bowel decay from reduced blood flow

- *needle injection:* higher risk for contracting HIV, hepatitis C, and other bloodborne diseases, skin or soft tissue infections, as well as scarring or collapsed veins

However, even people involved with non-needle cocaine use place themselves at a risk for HIV because cocaine impairs judgment, which can lead to risky sexual behavior with infected partners.
Other long-term effects of cocaine use include being malnourished, because cocaine decreases appetite, and movement disorders, including Parkinson's disease, which may occur after many years of use. In addition, people report
irritability and restlessness from cocaine binges, and some also experience severe paranoia, in which they lose touch with reality and have *auditory hallucinations*—hearing noises that aren't real.

Cocaine, HIV, and Hepatitis
Studies have shown that cocaine use speeds up HIV infection. According to research, cocaine impairs immune cell function and promotes reproduction of the HIV virus. Research also suggests that people who use cocaine and are infected with HIV may be more susceptible to contracting other viruses, such as hepatitis C, a virus that affects the liver.
Read more about the connection between cocaine and these diseases in NIDA's *Cocaine Research Report:* drugabuse.gov/publications/research-reports/cocaine/what-cocaine.

Can a person overdose on cocaine?
Yes, a person can overdose on cocaine. An overdose occurs when a person uses enough of a drug to produce serious adverse effects, life-threatening symptoms, or death. An overdose can be intentional or unintentional.

Death from overdose can occur on the first use of cocaine or unexpectedly thereafter. Many people who use cocaine also drink alcohol at the same time, which is particularly risky and can lead to overdose. Others mix cocaine with heroin, another dangerous—and deadly—combination.

Some of the most frequent and severe health consequences of overdose are irregular heart rhythm, heart attacks, seizures, and strokes. Other symptoms of cocaine overdose include difficulty breathing, high blood pressure, high body temperature, hallucinations, and extreme agitation or anxiety.

How can a cocaine overdose be treated?
There is no specific medication that can reverse a cocaine overdose. Management involves supportive care and depends on the symptoms present. For instance, because cocaine overdose often leads to a heart attack, stroke, or seizure, first responders and emergency room doctors try to treat the overdose by treating these conditions, with the intent of:

- restoring blood flow to the heart (heart attack)
- restoring oxygen-rich blood supply to the affected part of the brain (stroke)

- stopping the seizure

How does cocaine use lead to addiction?

As with other drugs, repeated use of cocaine can cause long-term changes in the brain's reward circuit and other brain systems, which may lead to addiction. The reward circuit eventually adapts to the extra dopamine caused by the drug, becoming steadily less sensitive to it. As a result, people take stronger and more frequent doses to feel the same high they did initially and to obtain relief from withdrawal.

Withdrawal symptoms include:

- depression
- fatigue
- increased appetite
- unpleasant dreams and insomnia
- slowed thinking

How can people get treatment for cocaine addiction?

Behavioral therapy may be used to treat cocaine addiction. Examples include:

- cognitive-behavioral therapy
- contingency management or motivational incentives—providing rewards to patients who remain substance free
- therapeutic communities—drug-free residences in which people in recovery from substance use disorders help each other to understand and change their behaviors
- community based recovery groups, such as 12-step programs

While no government-approved medicines are currently available to treat cocaine addiction, researchers are testing some treatments that have been used to treat other disorders, including:

- disulfiram (used to treat alcoholism)
- modanifil (used to treat *narcolepsy*—a disorder characterized by uncontrollable episodes of deep sleep)
- lorcaserin (used to treat obesity)
- buprenorphine (used to treat opioid addiction)

Points to Remember

- Cocaine is a powerfully addictive stimulant drug made from the leaves of the coca plant native to South America.
- Street dealers often mix it with things like cornstarch, talcum powder, or flour to increase profits.
- They may also mix it with other drugs such as the stimulant amphetamine or the synthetic opioid fentanyl.
- People snort cocaine powder through the nose, or rub it into their gums. Others dissolve the powder and inject it into the bloodstream, or inject a combination of cocaine and heroin, called a Speedball. Another popular method of use is to smoke Crack cocaine.

- Cocaine increases levels of the natural chemical messenger dopamine in brain circuits related to the control of movement and reward.
- A person can overdose on cocaine, which can lead to death.
- Behavioral therapy may be used to treat cocaine addiction.
- While no government-approved medicines are currently available to treat cocaine addiction, researchers are testing some treatments that have been used to treat other disorders.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated July 2018

D. Fentanyl

What is fentanyl?

Fentanyl is a powerful synthetic opioid that is similar to morphine but is 50 to 100 times more potent.[1] [2] It is a prescription drug that is also made and used illegally. Like morphine, it is a medicine that is typically used to treat patients with severe pain, especially after surgery.[3] It is also sometimes used to treat patients with chronic pain who are physically tolerant to other opioids.[4] Tolerance occurs when you need a higher and/or more frequent amount of a drug to get the desired effects.

In its prescription form, fentanyl is known by such names as Actiq®, Duragesic®, and Sublimaze®.[5] Street names for illegally used fentanyl include Apache, China Girl, China White, Dance Fever, Friend, Goodfellas, Jackpot, Murder 8, and Tango & Cash.

Synthetic opioids, including fentanyl, are now the most common drugs involved in drug overdose deaths in the United States. In 2017, 59.8 percent of opioid-related deaths involved fentanyl compared to 14.3 percent in 2010.

What are Opioids?

Opioids are a class of drugs naturally found in the opium poppy plant. Some opioids are made from the plant directly, and others, like fentanyl, are made by scientists in labs using the same chemical structure (semi-synthetic or synthetic).

How do people use fentanyl?

When prescribed by a doctor, fentanyl can be given as a shot, a patch that is put on a person's

---

[1] . Volpe DA, Tobin GAM, Mellon RD, et al. Uniform assessment and ranking of opioid Mu receptor binding constants for selected opioid drugs. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol*. 2011;59(3):385-390. doi:10.1016/j.yrtph.2010.12.007

[2] Higashikawa Y, Suzuki S. Studies on 1-(2-phenethyl)-4-(N-propionylanilino)piperidine (fentanyl) and its related compounds. VI. Structure-analgesic activity relationship for fentanyl, methyl-substituted fentanyls and other analogues. *Forensic Toxicol*. 2008;26(1):1-5. doi:10.1007/s11419-007-0039-1

[3] . Nelson L, Schwaner R. Transdermal fentanyl: Pharmacology and toxicology. *J Med Toxicol*. 2009;5(4):230-241. doi:10.1007/BF03178274

[4] Garnock-Jones KP. Fentanyl Buccal Soluble Film: A Review in Breakthrough Cancer Pain. *Clin Drug Investig*. 2016;36(5):413-419. doi:10.1007/s40261-016-0394-y

[5] Drug and Chemical Evaluation Section, Office of Diversion Control, Drug Enforcement Administration. Fentanyl Fact Sheet. March 2015. http://www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/drug_chem_info/fentanyl.pdf.

skin, or as lozenges that are sucked like cough drops.[6]
The illegally used fentanyl most often associated with recent overdoses is made in labs. This synthetic fentanyl is sold illegally as a powder, dropped onto blotter paper, put in eye droppers and nasal sprays, or made into pills that look like other prescription opioids.[7]

Some drug dealers are mixing fentanyl with other drugs, such as heroin, cocaine, methamphetamine, and MDMA. This is because it takes very little to produce a high with fentanyl, making it a cheaper option. This is especially risky when people taking drugs don't realize they might contain fentanyl as a cheap but dangerous additive. They might be taking stronger opioids than their bodies are used to and can be more likely to overdose.

How does fentanyl affect the brain?
Like heroin, morphine, and other opioid drugs, fentanyl works by binding to the body's opioid receptors, which are found in areas of the brain that control pain and emotions.[8] After taking opioids many times, the brain adapts to the drug, diminishing its sensitivity, making it hard to feel pleasure from anything besides the drug. When people become addicted, drug seeking and drug use take over their lives.
Fentanyl's effects include

- • extreme happiness
- • drowsiness
- • nausea
- • confusion
- • constipation
- • sedation
- • problems breathing
- • unconsciousness

Can you overdose on fentanyl?
Yes, a person can overdose on fentanyl. An overdose occurs when a drug produces serious adverse effects and life-threatening symptoms. When people overdose on fentanyl, their breathing can slow or stop. This can decrease the amount of oxygen that reaches the brain, a condition called *hypoxia.* Hypoxia can lead to a coma and permanent brain damage, and even death.

How can a fentanyl overdose be treated?
As mentioned above, many drug dealers mix the cheaper fentanyl with other drugs like heroin, cocaine, MDMA and methamphetamine to increase their profits, making it often difficult to know which drug is causing the overdose. Naloxone is a medicine that can treat a fentanyl overdose

---

[6] American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Drugs. Transfer of drugs and other chemicals into human milk. *Pediatrics*. 2001;108(3):776-789.
[7] Drug and Chemical Evaluation Section, Office of Diversion Control, Drug Enforcement Administration. Acetyl fentanyl Fact Sheet. July 2015. http://www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/drug_chem_info/acetylfentanyl.pdf.
[8] Gutstein H, Akil H. Opioid Analgesics. In: *Goodman & Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 11th ed. McGraw-Hill; 2006:547-590.

when given right away. It works by rapidly binding to opioid receptors and blocking the effects of opioid drugs. But fentanyl is stronger than other opioid drugs like morphine and might require multiple doses of naloxone.
Because of this, if you suspect someone has overdosed, the most important step to take is to call 911 so he or she can receive immediate medical attention. Once medical personnel arrive, they will administer naloxone if they suspect an opioid drug is involved.

People who are given naloxone should be monitored for another two hours after the last dose of naloxone is given to make sure breathing does not slow or stop.

Some states have passed laws that allow pharmacists to dispense naloxone without a personal prescription. This allows friends, family, and others in the community to use the auto-injector or nasal spray versions of naloxone to save someone who is overdosing. People who are or know someone at risk for an opioid overdose can be trained on how to give naloxone and can carry it with them in case of an emergency.

Naloxone is available as an injectable (needle) solution, a hand-held auto-injector (EVZIO®), and a nasal spray (NARCAN® Nasal Spray).

Can fentanyl use lead to addiction?
Yes. Fentanyl is addictive because of its potency. A person taking prescription fentanyl as instructed by a doctor can experience dependence, which is characterized by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is stopped. A person can be dependent on a substance without being addicted, but dependence can sometimes lead to addiction.

Addiction is the most severe form of a *substance use disorder* (SUD). SUDs are characterized by compulsive drug seeking and drug use that can be difficult to control, despite harmful consequences. When someone is addicted to drugs, they continue to use them even though they cause health problems or issues at work, school, or home. An SUD can range from mild to severe.

People addicted to fentanyl who stop using it can have severe withdrawal symptoms that begin as early as a few hours after the drug was last taken. These symptoms include:

- muscle and bone pain
- sleep problems
- diarrhea and vomiting
- cold flashes with goose bumps
- uncontrollable leg movements
- severe cravings

These symptoms can be extremely uncomfortable and are the reason many people find it so difficult to stop taking fentanyl. There are medicines being developed to help with the withdrawal process for fentanyl and other opioids. The FDA has approved lofexidine, a non-opioid medicine designed to reduce opioid withdrawal symptoms. Also, the NSS-2 Bridge device

is a small electrical nerve stimulator placed behind the person's ear, that can be used to try to ease symptoms for up to five days during the acute withdrawal phase. In December 2018, the FDA cleared a mobile medical application, reSET®, to help treat opioid use disorders. This application is a prescription cognitive behavioral therapy and should be used in conjunction with treatment that includes buprenorphine and contingency management.

How is fentanyl addiction treated?
Like other opioid addictions, medication with behavioral therapies has been shown to be effective in treating people with a fentanyl addiction.

Medications: Buprenorphine and methadone work by binding to the same opioid receptors in the brain as fentanyl, reducing cravings and withdrawal symptoms. Another medicine, naltrexone, blocks opioid receptors and prevents fentanyl from having an effect. People can discuss treatment options with their health provider.

Counseling: Behavioral therapies for addiction to opioids like fentanyl can help people modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use, increase healthy life skills, and help them stick with their medication. Some examples include:

- cognitive behavioral therapy, which helps modify the patient's drug use expectations and behaviors, and effectively manage triggers and stress
- contingency management, which uses a voucher-based system giving patients "points" based on negative drug tests. They can use the points to earn items that encourage healthy living
- Motivational interviewing, which is a patient-centered counseling style that addresses a patient's mixed feelings to change

These behavioral treatment approaches have proven effective, especially when used along with medicines.

Points to Remember

- Fentanyl is a powerful synthetic opioid analgesic that is similar to morphine but is 50 to 100 times more potent. In its prescription form it is prescribed for pain, but fentanyl is also made illegally and distributed as a street drug.
- Fentanyl and other synthetic opioids are the most common drugs involved in overdose deaths.
- Illegal fentanyl is sold in the following forms: as a powder, dropped on blotter paper like small candies, in eye droppers or nasal sprays, or made into pills that look like real prescription opioids.

- Illegal fentanyl is being mixed with other drugs, such as cocaine, heroin, methamphetamine, and MDMA. This is especially dangerous because people are often unaware that fentanyl has been added.
- Fentanyl works by binding to the body's opioid receptors, which are found in areas of the brain that control pain and emotions. Its effects include extreme happiness, drowsiness, nausea, confusion, constipation, sedation, tolerance, addiction, respiratory depression and arrest, unconsciousness, coma, and death.
- The high potency of fentanyl greatly increases risk of overdose, especially if a person who uses drugs is unaware that a powder or pill contains it. They can underestimate the dose of opioids they are taking, resulting in overdose.
- Naloxone is a medicine that can be given to a person to reverse a fentanyl overdose. Multiple naloxone doses might be necessary because of fentanyl's potency.
- Medication with behavioral therapies has been shown to be effective in treating people with an addiction to fentanyl and other opioids.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

This page was last updated February 2019

E. Hallucinogens

What are hallucinogens?

Hallucinogens are a diverse group of drugs that alter a person's awareness of their surroundings as well as their own thoughts and feelings. They are commonly split into two categories: **classic hallucinogens** (such as LSD) and **dissociative drugs** (such as PCP). Both types of hallucinogens can cause *hallucinations,* or sensations and images that seem real though they are not. Additionally, dissociative drugs can cause users to feel out of control or disconnected from their body and environment.

Some hallucinogens are extracted from plants or mushrooms, and some are synthetic (human-made). Historically, people have used hallucinogens for religious or healing rituals. More recently, people report using these drugs for social or recreational purposes, including to have fun, deal with stress, have spiritual experiences, or just to feel different.

Common classic hallucinogens include the following:

• **LSD *(D-lysergic acid diethylamide)*** is one of the most powerful mind-altering chemicals. It is a clear or white odorless material made from lysergic acid, which is found in a fungus that grows on rye and other grains. LSD has many other street names, including acid, blotter acid, dots, and mellow yellow.

• **Psilocybin *(4-phosphoryloxy-N,N-dimethyltryptamine)*** comes from certain types of mushrooms found in tropical and subtropical regions of South America, Mexico, and the United States. Some common names for psilocybin include little smoke, magic mushrooms, and shrooms.

- **Peyote (mescaline)** is a small, spineless cactus with mescaline as its main ingredient. Peyote can also be synthetic. Common names for peyote are buttons, cactus, and mesc.

- **DMT (*N,N-dimethyltryptamine*)** is a powerful chemical found naturally in some Amazonian plants. Ayahuasca is a tea made from such plants, and when taken in this form it is also known as hoasca, aya, and yagé. People can also make DMT in a lab. Synthetic DMT usually takes the form of a white crystalline powder that is smoked. A popular name for synthetic DMT is Dimitri.

- **251-NBOMe** is a synthetic hallucinogen with similarities both to LSD and MDMA (see DrugFacts: MDMA) but that is much more potent. Developed for use in brain research, when sold on the street it is sometimes called N Bomb or 251.

Common examples of dissociative drugs include the following:

• **PCP *(Phencyclidine)*** was developed in the 1950s as a general anesthetic for surgery, but it is no longer used for this purpose due to serious side effects. PCP can be found in a variety of forms, including tablets or capsules; however, liquid and white crystal powder are the most common. PCP has various slang names, such as Angel Dust, Hog, Love Boat, and Peace Pill.

• **Ketamine** is used as a surgery anesthetic for humans and animals. Much of the ketamine sold on the streets comes from veterinary offices. It mostly sells as a powder or as pills, but it also available as an injectable liquid. Ketamine is snorted or sometimes added to drinks as a date-rape drug. Slang names for ketamine include Special K and Cat Valium.

• ***Dextromethorphan*** **(DXM)** is a cough suppressant and mucus-clearing ingredient in some over-the-counter cold and cough medicines (syrups, tablets, and gel capsules). Robo is a common slang name for DXM.

• ***Salvia (Salvia divinorum)*** is a plant common to southern Mexico and Central and South America. Salvia is typically ingested by chewing fresh leaves or by drinking their extracted juices. The dried leaves of salvia can also be smoked or vaporized and inhaled. Popular names for salvia are Diviner's Sage, Maria Pastora, Sally-D, and Magic Mint.

How do people use hallucinogens?

People use hallucinogens in a wide variety of ways, as shown in the following chart:

	DMT	LSD	Peyote	Psilocybin	DXM	Ketamine	PCP	Salvia
Swallowing as tablets or pills		√			√	√	√	
Swallowing as liquid		√	√		√	√		
Consuming raw or dried			√	√				√
Brewing into Tea	√		√	√				√
Snorting						√	√	
Injecting							√	
Inhaling, vaporizing, or smoking	√						√	√
Absorbing through the lining in the mouth using drug-soaked paper pieces		√						

How do hallucinogens affect the brain?

Research suggests that classic hallucinogens work at least partially by temporarily disrupting communication between brain chemical systems throughout the brain and spinal cord. Some hallucinogens interfere with the action of the brain chemical serotonin, which regulates:

- mood
- sensory perception
- sleep
- hunger
- body temperature
- sexual behavior
- intestinal muscle control

Dissociative hallucinogenic drugs interfere with the action of the brain chemical glutamate, which regulates:

- pain perception
- responses to the environment
- emotion
- learning and memory

What are some other effects of hallucinogens?

Classic Hallucinogens

Short-Term Effects

Classic hallucinogens can cause users to see images, hear sounds, and feel sensations that seem real but do not exist. The effects generally begin within 20 to 90 minutes and can last as long as 12 hours in some cases (LSD) or as short as 15 minutes in others (synthetic DMT). Hallucinogen users refer to the experiences brought on by these drugs as "trips." If the experience is unpleasant, users sometimes call it a "bad trip."

Along with hallucinations, other short-term general effects include:

- increased heart rate
- nausea
- intensified feelings and sensory experiences (such as seeing brighter colors)
- changes in sense of time (for example, the feeling that time is passing by slowly)

Specific short-term effects of some hallucinogens include:

- increased blood pressure, breathing rate, or body temperature
- loss of appetite
- dry mouth

- sleep problems
- spiritual experiences
- feelings of relaxation
- uncoordinated movements
- excessive sweating
- panic
- *paranoia*—extreme and unreasonable distrust of others
- *psychosis*—disordered thinking detached from reality
- bizarre behaviors

Long-Term Effects
Two long-term effects have been associated with use of classic hallucinogens, although these effects are rare.

• ***Persistent Psychosis—***a series of continuing mental problems, including:
- visual disturbances
- disorganized thinking
- paranoia
- mood changes

• ***Hallucinogen Persisting Perception Disorder (HPDD)—***recurrences of certain drug experiences, such as hallucinations or other visual disturbances. These flashbacks often happen without warning and may occur within a few days or more than a year after drug use. These symptoms are sometimes mistaken for other disorders, such as stroke or a brain tumor.

Both conditions are seen more often in people who have a history of mental illness, but they can happen to anyone, even after using hallucinogens one time. For HPDD, some antidepressant and antipsychotic medications can be used to improve mood and treat psychosis. Behavioral therapies can be used to help people cope with fear or confusion associated with visual disturbances.

Dissociative Drugs
Short-Term Effects

Dissociative drug effects can appear within a few minutes and can last several hours in some cases; some users report experiencing drug effects for days.

Effects depend on how much is used. In low and moderate doses, dissociative drugs can cause:

- numbness
- disorientation and loss of coordination
- hallucinations
- increase in blood pressure, heart rate, and body temperature

In high doses, dissociative drugs can cause the following effects:

- memory loss
- panic and anxiety
- seizures
- psychotic symptoms
- amnesia
- inability to move
- mood swings
- trouble breathing

Long-Term Effects of Dissociative Drugs

More research is needed on the long-term effects of dissociative drugs. Researchers do know repeated use of PCP can result in addiction. Other long-term effects may continue for a year or more after use stops, including:

- speech problems
- memory loss
- weight loss
- anxiety
- depression and suicidal thoughts

Effects on a Developing Fetus

While the effects of most hallucinogens on the developing fetus are unknown, researchers do know that mescaline in peyote may affect the fetus of a pregnant woman using the drug.

Can a person overdose on hallucinogens?

It depends on the drug. An overdose occurs when a person uses enough of a drug to produce serious adverse effects, life-threatening symptoms, or death. Most classic hallucinogens may produce extremely unpleasant experiences at high doses, although the effects are not necessarily

life-threatening. However, serious medical emergencies and several fatalities have been reported from 251-NBOMe.

Overdose is more likely with some dissociative drugs. High doses of PCP can cause seizures, coma, and death. Additionally, taking PCP with depressants such as alcohol or benzodiazepines can also lead to coma. Benzodiazepines, such as alprazolam (Xanax), are prescribed to relieve anxiety or promote sleep.

However, users of both classic hallucinogens and dissociative drugs also risk serious harm because of the profound alteration of perception and mood these drugs can cause.

- Users might do things they would never do in real life, like jump out of a window or off a roof, for instance, or they may experience profound suicidal feelings and act on them.
- With all drugs there is also a risk of accidental poisoning from contaminants or other substances mixed with the drug.
- Users of psilocybin also run the risk of accidentally consuming poisonous mushrooms that look like psilocybin. Taking poisonous mushrooms can result in severe illness or possible death.

Are hallucinogens addictive?

In some cases, yes. Evidence suggests that certain hallucinogens can be addictive, and that people can develop a tolerance to them.

For example, LSD is not considered an addictive drug because it doesn't cause uncontrollable drug-seeking behavior. However, LSD does produce tolerance, so some users who take the drug repeatedly must take higher doses to achieve the same effect. This is an extremely dangerous practice, given the unpredictability of the drug. In addition, LSD produces tolerance to other hallucinogens, including psilocybin.

The misuse and addiction potential of DMT is currently unknown. Unlike other hallucinogens, DMT does not appear to lead to tolerance. There is also little evidence that taking it in the form of ayahuasca tea can lead to addiction.

On the other hand, PCP is a hallucinogen that can be addictive. People who stop repeated use of PCP experience drug cravings, headaches, and sweating as common withdrawal symptoms.

More research is needed on the tolerance or addiction potential of a variety of hallucinogens.

Tolerance vs. Dependence vs. Addiction

Long-term use of prescription opioids, even as prescribed by a doctor, can cause some people to develop a **tolerance**, which means that they need higher and/or more frequent doses of the drug to get the desired effects.

Drug dependence occurs with repeated use, causing the neurons to adapt so they only function normally in the presence of the drug. The absence of the drug causes several physiological reactions, ranging from mild in the case of caffeine, to potentially life-threatening, such as with heroin. Some chronic pain patients are dependent on opioids and require medical support to stop taking the drug.

Drug addiction is a chronic disease characterized by compulsive, or uncontrollable, drug seeking and use despite harmful consequences and long-lasting changes in the brain. The changes can result in harmful behaviors by those who misuse drugs, whether prescription or illicit drugs.

How is a hallucinogen addiction treated?

There are no FDA-approved medications to treat addiction to hallucinogens. While behavioral treatments can be helpful for patients with a variety of addictions, scientists need more research to find out if behavioral therapies are effective for addiction to hallucinogens.

Could hallucinogens be medicines?

Potentially. Some hallucinogens have been studied for possible therapeutic benefits in treating mental disorders such as depression.

Ketamine was approved many years ago as an anesthetic for painful medical procedures. In March 2019, the medicine esketamine (called “Spravato” by the manufacturer) was approved by the Food and Drug Administration as a treatment for severe depression in patients that do not respond to other treatments. Esketamine is closely related to the drug ketamine which is used illicitly and so there are concerns about the potential for abuse of this newly approved medication. In response, esketamine will be limited to administration in medical facilities.

Unlike a prescription that can be taken home and might be diverted into recreational use, esketamine will be administered in a medical office as a nasal spray. Patients must wait at least 2 hours under medical supervision to ensure proper management of potential side effects. It is a rapid acting medication, so improvements may be seen immediately or within the first few weeks of treatment (unlike most other antidepressants which can take weeks to begin to show an effect). Traditional antidepressants target the neurotransmitters serotonin, norepinephrine or dopamine. Esketamine affects the receptor for a different brain chemical called glutamate and so it represents a new approach to treating depression.

Evidence has also mounted in recent years that psilocybin may be effective in treating depression, and this is currently being studied in clinical trials. Psilocybin is not approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), but in 2018, the FDA granted "Breakthrough Therapy" designation to one pharmaceutical company to facilitate clinical trials for its psilocybin-assisted therapy for treatment-resistant depression; the trials will determine the most optimal dose of the drug. It has also been studied as a possible treatment for depression and anxiety suffered by people with terminal illnesses.

Points to Remember

- Hallucinogens are a diverse group of drugs that alter perception, thoughts, and feelings. They cause hallucinations, or sensations and images that seem real, but they are not.
- Hallucinogens are split into two categories: classic hallucinogens and dissociative drugs.
- People use hallucinogens in a wide variety of ways, including smoking, snorting, and absorbing through the lining in the mouth.
- The effects of classic hallucinogens can begin with 20 to 90 minutes of taking them and include increased heart rate, nausea, intensified feelings and sensory experiences, and changes in sense of time.
- The effects of dissociative drugs can begin within minutes and can last several hours and include numbness, disorientation and loss of coordination, hallucinations, and increased blood pressure, heart rate, and body temperature.
- Persistent psychosis and flashbacks are two long-term effects associated with some hallucinogens.
- Evidence suggests a few hallucinogens can be addictive, and most or all of them can produce tolerance.
- There are no FDA-approved medications to treat addiction to hallucinogens. Scientists need more research to find out if behavioral therapies are effective for addiction to hallucinogens.
- Some hallucinogens are being studied as possible therapies for depression. Esketamine was recently approved by the FDA as a treatment for severe depression in patients that do not respond to other treatments.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated April 2019

F. Heroin

What is heroin?

Heroin is an opioid drug made from morphine, a natural substance taken from the seed pod of the various opium poppy plants grown in Southeast and Southwest Asia, Mexico, and Colombia. Heroin can be a white or brown powder, or a black sticky substance known as black tar heroin. Other common names for heroin include *big H*, *horse*, *hell dust,* and *smack*.

How do people use heroin?

People inject, sniff, snort, or smoke heroin. Some people mix heroin with crack cocaine, a practice called *speedballing*.

What are the effects of heroin?

Heroin enters the brain rapidly and binds to opioid receptors on cells located in many areas, especially those involved in feelings of pain and pleasure and in controlling heart rate, sleeping, and breathing.

Prescription Opioids and Heroin

Prescription opioid pain medicines such as OxyContin® and Vicodin® have effects similar to heroin. Research suggests that misuse of these drugs may open the door to heroin use. Data from 2011 showed that an estimated 4 to 6 percent who misuse prescription opioids switch to heroin1-3 and about 80 percent of people who used heroin first misused prescription opioids.[9] [10] [11]More recent data suggest that heroin is frequently the first opioid people use. In a study of those entering treatment for opioid use disorder, approximately one-third reported heroin as the first opioid they used regularly to get high.[12]

This suggests that prescription opioid misuse is just one factor leading to heroin use. Read more about this intertwined problem in our *Prescription Opioids and Heroin Research Report*.

Short-Term Effects

People who use heroin report feeling a "rush" (a surge of pleasure, or euphoria). However, there are other common effects, including:

- dry mouth

---

[9] Muhuri PK, Gfroerer JC, Davies MC. Associations of Nonmedical Pain Reliever Use and Initiation of Heroin Use in the United States. CBHSQ Data Rev. August 2013.

[10] Cicero TJ, Ellis MS, Surratt HL, Kurtz SP. The Changing Face of Heroin Use in the United States: A Retrospective Analysis of the Past 50 Years. JAMA Psychiatry. 2014;71(7):821-826. doi:10.1001/jamapsychiatry.2014.366.

[11] Carlson RG, Nahhas RW, Martins SS, Daniulaityte R. Predictors of transition to heroin use among initially non-opioid dependent illicit pharmaceutical opioid users: A natural history study. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2016;160:127-134. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2015.12.026.

[12] Cicero TJ, Ellis MS, Kasper ZA. Increased use of heroin as an initiating opioid of abuse. Addict Behav. 2017 Nov;74:63-66. doi: 10.1016/j.addbeh.2017.05.030. Epub 2017 May 23. PubMed PMID: 28582659. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28582659

- warm flushing of the skin
- heavy feeling in the arms and legs
- nausea and vomiting
- severe itching
- clouded mental functioning
- going "on the nod," a back-and-forth state of being conscious and semiconscious

Long-Term Effects

People who use heroin over the long term may develop:

- insomnia
- collapsed veins for people who inject the drug
- damaged tissue inside the nose for people who sniff or snort it
- infection of the heart lining and valves
- abscesses (swollen tissue filled with pus)
- constipation and stomach cramping
- liver and kidney disease
- lung complications, including pneumonia
- mental disorders such as depression and antisocial personality disorder
- sexual dysfunction for men
- irregular menstrual cycles for women

Other Potential Effects

Heroin often contains additives, such as sugar, starch, or powdered milk, that can clog blood vessels leading to the lungs, liver, kidneys, or brain, causing permanent damage. Also, sharing drug injection equipment and having impaired judgment from drug use can increase the risk of contracting infectious diseases such as HIV and hepatitis (see "Injection Drug Use, HIV, and Hepatitis").

Can a person overdose on heroin?

Yes, a person can overdose on heroin. A heroin overdose occurs when a person uses enough of the drug to produce a life-threatening reaction or death. Heroin overdoses have increased in recent years.[13]

When people overdose on heroin, their breathing often slows or stops. This can decrease the amount of oxygen that reaches the brain, a condition called *hypoxia*. Hypoxia can have short- and

[13] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Multiple Cause of Death, 1999-2015. CDC WONDER Online Database. https://wonder.cdc.gov/mcd-icd10.html. Accessed April 4, 2017.

long-term mental effects and effects on the nervous system, including coma and permanent brain damage.

Injection Drug Use, HIV, and Hepatitis

People who inject drugs such as heroin are at high risk of contracting the HIV and hepatitis C (HCV) virus. These diseases are transmitted through contact with blood or other bodily fluids, which can occur when sharing needles or other injection drug use equipment. HCV is the most common bloodborne infection in the Unites States. HIV (and less often HCV) can also be contracted during unprotected sex, which drug use makes more likely.

Read more about the connection between heroin and these diseases in our *Heroin Research Report*.

How can a heroin overdose be treated?

Naloxone is a medicine that can treat an opioid overdose when given right away. It works by rapidly binding to opioid receptors and blocking the effects of heroin and other opioid drugs. Sometimes more than one dose may be needed to help a person start breathing again, which is why it's important to get the person to an emergency department or a doctor to receive additional support if needed. Read more in the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration's Opioid Overdose Prevention Toolkit.

Naloxone is available as an injectable (needle) solution, a handheld auto-injector (EVZIO®), and a nasal spray (NARCAN® Nasal Spray). Friends, family, and others in the community can use the auto-injector and nasal spray versions of naloxone to save someone who is overdosing.

The rising number of opioid overdose deaths has led to an increase in public health efforts to make naloxone available to at-risk persons and their families, as well as first responders and others in the community. Some states have passed laws that allow pharmacists to dispense naloxone without a prescription from a person's personal doctor.

Is heroin addictive?

Heroin is highly addictive. People who regularly use heroin often develop a tolerance, which means that they need higher and/or more frequent doses of the drug to get the desired effects. A *substance use disorder* (SUD) is when continued use of the drug causes issues, such as health problems and failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home. An SUD can range from mild to severe, the most severe form being addiction.

Those who are addicted to heroin and stop using the drug abruptly may have severe withdrawal. Withdrawal symptoms—which can begin as early as a few hours after the drug was last taken—include:

- restlessness
- severe muscle and bone pain
- sleep problems
- diarrhea and vomiting
- cold flashes with goose bumps ("cold turkey")
- uncontrollable leg movements ("kicking the habit")
- severe heroin cravings

Researchers are studying the long-term effects of opioid addiction on the brain. Studies have shown some loss of the brain's white matter associated with heroin use, which may affect decision-making, behavior control, and responses to stressful situations.[14] [15] [16]

How is heroin addiction treated?

A range of treatments including medicines and behavioral therapies are effective in helping people stop heroin use. It's important to match the best treatment approach to meet the particular needs of each individual patient.

There are medicines being developed to help with the withdrawal process. The FDA approved lofexidine, a non-opioid medicine designed to reduce opioid withdrawal symptoms.

Medicines to help people stop using heroin include buprenorphine and methadone. They work by binding to the same opioid receptors in the brain as heroin, but more weakly, reducing cravings and withdrawal symptoms. Another treatment is naltrexone, which blocks opioid receptors and prevents opioid drugs from having an effect. A NIDA study found that once treatment is initiated, both a buprenorphine/naloxone combination and an extended release naltrexone formulation are similarly effective in addiction. Because full detoxification is necessary for treatment with naloxone, initiating treatment among active users was difficult, but once detoxification was complete, both medications had similar effectiveness.

---

[14] . Li W, Li Q, Zhu J, et al. White matter impairment in chronic heroin dependence: a quantitative DTI study. Brain Res. 2013;1531:58-64. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2013.07.036.

[15] . Liu J, Qin W, Yuan K, et al. Interaction between dysfunctional connectivity at rest and heroin cues-induced brain responses in male abstinent heroin-dependent individuals. PloS One. 2011;6(10):e23098. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0023098.

[16] . Qiu Y, Jiang G, Su H, et al. Progressive white matter microstructure damage in male chronic heroin dependent individuals: a DTI and TBSS study. PloS One. 2013;8(5):e63212. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0063212.

Behavioral therapies for heroin addiction include methods called cognitive-behavioral therapy and contingency management. Cognitive-behavioral therapy helps modify the patient's drug-use expectations and behaviors and helps effectively manage triggers and stress. Contingency management provides motivational incentives, such as vouchers or small cash rewards for positive behaviors such as staying drug-free. These behavioral treatment approaches are especially effective when used along with medicines. Read more about drug addiction treatment in our *Treatment Approaches for Drug Addiction DrugFacts.*

Points to Remember

- Heroin is an opioid drug made from morphine, a natural substance taken from the seed pod of various opium poppy plants.
- Heroin can be a white or brown powder, or a black sticky substance known as black tar heroin.
- People inject, sniff, snort, or smoke heroin. Some people mix heroin with crack cocaine, called *speedballing*.
- Heroin enters the brain rapidly and binds to opioid receptors on cells located in many areas, especially those involved in feelings of pain and pleasure and in controlling heart rate, sleeping, and breathing.
- People who use heroin report feeling a "rush" (or euphoria). Other common effects include dry mouth, heavy feelings in the arms and legs, and clouded mental functioning.
- Long-term effects may include collapsed veins, infection of the heart lining and valves, abscesses, and lung complications.
- Research suggests that misuse of prescription opioid pain medicine is a risk factor for starting heroin use.
- A person can overdose on heroin. Naloxone is a medicine that can treat a heroin overdose when given right away, though more than one dose may be needed.
- Heroin can lead to addiction, a form of substance use disorder. Withdrawal symptoms include severe muscle and bone pain, sleep problems, diarrhea and vomiting, and severe heroin cravings.
- A range of treatments including medicines and behavioral therapies are effective in helping people stop heroin use. However, treatment plans should be individualized to meet the needs of the patient.

Learn More

For more information about heroin, visit our:

- Heroin webpage (drugabuse.gov/drugs-abuse/heroin)
- Opioids webpage (drugabuse.gov/drugs-abuse/opioids)

• Commonly Abused Drugs chart

• *Medications to Treat Opioid Addiction Research Report*

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated June 2019

G. Inhalants

What are inhalants?

Although other substances that are misused can be inhaled, the term *inhalants* refers to the various substances that people typically take *only* by inhaling. These substances include:

- solvents (liquids that become gas at room temperature)
- aerosol sprays
- gases
- nitrites (prescription medicines for chest pain)

Inhalants are various products easily bought and found in the home or workplace—such as spray paints, markers, glues, and cleaning fluids. They contain dangerous substances that have *psychoactive* (mind-altering) properties when inhaled. People don't typically think of these products as drugs because they're not intended for getting "high," but some people use them for that purpose. When these substances are used for getting high, they are called *inhalants*. Inhalants are mostly used by young kids and teens and are the only class of substance used more by younger than by older teens.

How do people use inhalants?

People who use inhalants breathe in the fumes through their nose or mouth, usually by “sniffing,” “snorting,” “bagging,” or “huffing.” It’s called different names depending on the substance and equipment they use.

Although the high that inhalants produce usually lasts just a few minutes, people often try to make it last by continuing to inhale again and again over several hours.

Products Used as Inhalants

Solvents

- industrial or household products, including:
  - paint thinners or removers
  - dry-cleaning fluids
  - gasoline
  - lighter fluid

- art or office supplies, including:
  - correction fluids
  - felt-tip marker fluid
  - electronic contact cleaners
  - glue

Aerosols

- household aerosol items, including:
  - spray paints
  - hair or deodorant sprays
  - aerosol computer cleaning products
  - vegetable oil sprays

Gases

- found in household or commercial products, including:
  - butane lighters
  - propane tanks
  - whipped cream aerosols or dispensers (*whippets*)
  - used as anesthesia (to make patients lose sensation during surgery/procedures), including:
  - ether
  - chloroform
  - nitrous oxide

Nitrites

- often sold in small brown bottles labeled as:
  - video head cleaner
  - room odorizer

- leather cleaner
- liquid aroma

How do inhalants affect the brain?
Most inhalants affect the central nervous system and slow down brain activity. Short-term effects are similar to alcohol and include:

- slurred or distorted speech
- lack of coordination (control of body movement)
- euphoria (feeling "high")
- dizziness

People may also feel light-headed or have *hallucinations* (images/sensations that seem real but aren't) or *delusions* (false beliefs). With repeated inhalations, many people feel less self-conscious and less in control. Some may start vomiting, feel drowsy for several hours, or have a headache that lasts a while.

Unlike other types of inhalants, nitrites, which are often prescribed to treat chest pain, are misused in order to improve sexual pleasure by expanding and relaxing blood vessels.

What are the other health effects of inhalants?
Long-term effects of inhalant use may include:

- liver and kidney damage
- hearing loss
- bone marrow damage
- loss of coordination and limb spasms (from nerve damage)
- delayed behavioral development (from brain problems)
- brain damage (from cut-off oxygen flow to the brain)

In addition, because nitrites are misused for sexual pleasure and performance, they can lead to unsafe sexual practices or other risky behavior. This increases the chance of getting or spreading infectious diseases such as HIV/AIDS or hepatitis.

Read more about drug use and HIV/AIDS in *HIV/AIDS and Drug Abuse: Intertwined Epidemics DrugFacts*.

Can a person overdose on inhalants?

Yes, a person can overdose on inhalants. An overdose occurs when a person uses too much of a drug and has a toxic reaction that results in serious, harmful symptoms or death.

These symptoms can cause seizures and coma. They can even be deadly. Many solvents and aerosol sprays are highly concentrated, meaning they contain a large amount of chemicals with a lot of active ingredients. Sniffing these products can cause the heart to stop within minutes. This condition, known as *sudden sniffing death*, can happen to an otherwise healthy young person the first time he or she uses an inhalant. Using inhalants with a paper or plastic bag or in a closed area may cause death from suffocation (being unable to breathe).

How can an inhalant overdose be treated?
Because inhalant overdose can lead to seizures or cause the heart to stop, first responders and emergency room doctors try to treat the overdose by treating these conditions. They will try to stop the seizure or restart the heart.

Can inhalants cause addiction, a form of substance use disorder?
Although it's not very common, repeated use of inhalants can lead to addiction, a form of substance use disorder (SUD). An SUD develops when continued use of the drug causes issues, such as health problems and failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home. An SUD can range from mild to severe, the most severe form being addiction.

Those who try to quit inhalants may have withdrawal symptoms that include:

- nausea
- loss of appetite
- sweating
- problems sleeping
- mood changes

How can people get treatment for addiction to inhalants?
Some people seeking treatment for use of inhalants have found behavioral therapy to be helpful:

- Cognitive-behavioral therapy helps patients recognize, avoid, and cope with the situations in which they are most likely to use drugs.
- Motivational incentives uses vouchers or small cash rewards for positive behaviors such as staying drug-free.

More research is needed to identify the most effective treatment options for addiction to inhalants.

Points to Remember

- Although other substances that are misused can be inhaled, the term *inhalants* refers to the various substances that people typically take *only* by inhaling.
- Inhalants are various products easily bought and found in the home or workplace—such as spray paints, markers, glues, and cleaning fluids. They contain dangerous substances that have *psychoactive* (mind-altering) properties when inhaled.
- People who use inhalants breathe them in through the mouth (*huffing*) or nose.
- Most inhalants affect the central nervous system and slow down brain activity.
- Short-term health effects include slurred or distorted speech, lack of coordination, euphoria (feeling "high"), dizziness, and hallucinations.
- Long-term health effects may include liver and kidney damage, loss of coordination and limb spasms, delayed behavioral development, and brain damage.
- A person can overdose on inhalants. Because inhalant overdose can lead to seizures or cause the heart to stop, first responders and emergency room doctors try to stop the seizure or restart the heart.
- Although it's not very common, repeated use of inhalants can lead to addiction, a form of substance use disorder. Withdrawal symptoms include nausea, sweating, problems sleeping, and mood changes.
- Some people seeking treatment for use of inhalants have found behavioral therapy to be helpful.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated February 2017

H. Kratom

What is kratom?

Kratom is a tropical tree *(Mitragyna speciosa)* native to Southeast Asia, with leaves that contain compounds that can have psychotropic (mind-altering) effects.

Kratom is not currently an illegal substance and has been easy to order on the internet. It is sometimes sold as a green powder in packets labeled "not for human consumption." It is also sometimes sold as an extract or gum.

Kratom sometimes goes by the following names:

- Biak
- Ketum
- Kakuam
- Ithang
- Thom

How do people use kratom?

Most people take kratom as a pill, capsule, or extract. Some people chew kratom leaves or brew the dried or powdered leaves as a tea. Sometimes the leaves are smoked or eaten in food.

How does kratom affect the brain?

Kratom can cause effects similar to both opioids and stimulants. Two compounds in kratom leaves, *mitragynine* and *7-α-hydroxymitragynine*, interact with opioid receptors in the brain, producing sedation, pleasure, and decreased pain, especially when users consume large amounts of the plant. Mitragynine also interacts with other receptor systems in the brain to produce stimulant effects. When kratom is taken in small amounts, users report increased energy, sociability, and alertness instead of sedation. However, kratom can also cause uncomfortable and sometimes dangerous side effects.

What are the health effects of kratom?

Reported health effects of kratom use include:

- nausea
- itching
- sweating
- dry mouth
- constipation
- increased urination
- loss of appetite
- seizures
- hallucinations

Symptoms of psychosis have been reported in some users.

Can a person overdose on kratom?

There have been multiple reports of deaths in people who had ingested kratom, but most have involved other substances. A 2019 paper analyzing data from the National Poison Data System found that between 2011-2017 there were 11 deaths associated with kratom exposure. Nine of the 11 deaths reported in this study involved kratom plus other drugs and medicines, such as diphenhydramine (an antihistamine), alcohol, caffeine, benzodiazepines, fentanyl, and cocaine. Two deaths were reported following exposure from kratom alone with no other reported substances.* In 2017, the FDA identified at least 44 deaths related to kratom, with at least one case investigated as possible use of pure kratom. The FDA reports note that many of the kratom-associated deaths appeared to have resulted from adulterated products or taking kratom with other potent substances, including illicit drugs, opioids, benzodiazepines, alcohol, gabapentin, and over-the-counter medications, such as cough syrup. Also, there have been some reports of kratom packaged as dietary supplements or dietary ingredients that were laced with other compounds that caused deaths. People should check with their health care providers about the safety of mixing kratom with other medicines.
*(Post et al, 2019. *Clinical Toxicology*).

Is kratom addictive?
Like other drugs with opioid-like effects, kratom might cause dependence, which means users will feel physical withdrawal symptoms when they stop taking the drug. Some users have reported becoming addicted to kratom.

Withdrawal symptoms include:
- muscle aches
- insomnia
- irritability
- hostility
- aggression
- emotional changes
- runny nose
- jerky movements

How is kratom addiction treated?
There are no specific medical treatments for kratom addiction. Some people seeking treatment have found behavioral therapy to be helpful. Scientists need more research to determine how effective this treatment option is.

Does kratom have value as a medicine?

In recent years, some people have used kratom as an herbal alternative to medical treatment in attempts to control withdrawal symptoms and cravings caused by addiction to opioids or to other addictive substances such as alcohol. There is no scientific evidence that kratom is effective or safe for this purpose; further research is needed.

Points to Remember

- Kratom is a tropical tree native to Southeast Asia, with leaves that can have psychotropic effects.
- Kratom is not currently illegal and has been easy to order on the internet.
- Most people take kratom as a pill or capsule. Some people chew kratom leaves or brew the dried or powdered leaves as a tea. Sometimes the leaves are smoked or eaten in food. Two compounds in kratom leaves, mitragynine and *7-α-hydroxymitragynine*, interact with opioid receptors in the brain, producing sedation, pleasure, and decreased pain.
- Mitragynine can also interact with other receptor systems in the brain to produce stimulant effects.
- Reported health effects of kratom use include nausea, sweating, seizures, and psychotic symptoms.
- Commercial forms of kratom are sometimes laced with other compounds that have caused deaths.
- Some users have reported becoming addicted to kratom.
- Behavioral therapies and medications have not specifically been tested for treatment of kratom addiction.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated September 2018

I. Marijuana

What is marijuana?

Marijuana refers to the dried leaves, flowers, stems, and seeds from the *Cannabis sativa* or *Cannabis indica* plant. The plant contains the mind-altering chemical THC and other similar compounds. Extracts can also be made from the cannabis plant.

Marijuana is the most commonly used psychotropic drug in the United States, after alcohol.[17] Its use is widespread among young people. In 2018, more than 11.8 million young adults used marijuana in the past year.1 According to the Monitoring the Future survey, rates of past year marijuana use among middle and high school students have remained steady, but the number of teens in 8th and 10th grades who say they use it daily has increased. With the growing popularity of vaping devices, teens have started vaping THC (the ingredient in marijuana that produces the high), with nearly 4% of 12th graders saying they vape THC daily. In addition, the number of young people who believe regular marijuana use is risky is decreasing.[18]

Legalization of marijuana for medical use or adult recreational use in a growing number of states may affect these views. Read more about marijuana as medicine in our *DrugFacts: Marijuana as Medicine.*

How do people use marijuana?

People smoke marijuana in hand-rolled cigarettes (*joints*) or in pipes or water pipes (*bongs*). They also smoke it in *blunts*—emptied cigars that have been partly or completely refilled with marijuana. To avoid inhaling smoke, some people are using vaporizers. These devices pull the active ingredients (including THC) from the marijuana and collect their vapor in a storage unit. A person then inhales the vapor, not the smoke. Some vaporizers use a liquid marijuana extract.

People can mix marijuana in food (*edibles*), such as brownies, cookies, or candy, or brew it as a tea. A newly popular method of use is smoking or eating different forms of THC-rich resins.

Marijuana Extracts

Smoking THC-rich resins extracted from the marijuana plant is on the rise. People call this practice *dabbing.* These extracts come in various forms, such as:

- *hash oil* or *honey oil*—a gooey liquid
- *wax* or *budder*—a soft solid with a texture like lip balm
- *shatter*—a hard, amber-colored solid

These extracts can deliver extremely large amounts of THC to the body, and their use has sent some people to the emergency room. Another danger is in preparing these extracts,

[17] Substance Abuse Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality. Results from the 2018 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Detailed Tables. SAMHSA. https://www.samhsa.gov/data/report/2018-nsduh-detailed-tables Accessed December 2019.

[18] Johnston L, O'Malley P, Miech R, Bachman J, Schulenberg J. *Monitoring the Future National Survey Results on Drug Use: 1975-2015: Overview: Key Findings on Adolescent Drug Use.* Ann Arbor, MI: Institute for Social Research, The University of Michigan; 2015.

which usually involves butane (lighter fluid). A number of people have caused fires and explosions and have been seriously burned from using butane to make extracts at home.[19] [20]

How does marijuana affect the brain?

Marijuana has both short-and long-term effects on the brain.

Short-Term Effects

When a person smokes marijuana, THC quickly passes from the lungs into the bloodstream. The blood carries the chemical to the brain and other organs throughout the body. The body absorbs THC more slowly when the person eats or drinks it. In that case, they generally feel the effects after 30 minutes to 1 hour.

THC acts on specific brain cell receptors that ordinarily react to natural THC-like chemicals. These natural chemicals play a role in normal brain development and function.

Marijuana over activates parts of the brain that contain the highest number of these receptors. This causes the "high" that people feel. Other effects include:

- altered senses (for example, seeing brighter colors)
- altered sense of time
- changes in mood
- impaired body movement
- difficulty with thinking and problem-solving
- impaired memory
- hallucinations (when taken in high doses)
- delusions (when taken in high doses)
- psychosis (risk is highest with regular use of high potency marijuana)

Long-Term Effects

Marijuana also affects brain development. When people begin using marijuana as teenagers, the drug may impair thinking, memory, and learning functions and affect how the brain builds connections between the areas necessary for these functions. Researchers are still studying how long marijuana's effects last and whether some changes may be permanent.

---

[19] . Bell C, Slim J, Flaten HK, Lindberg G, Arek W, Monte AA. Butane Hash Oil Burns Associated with Marijuana Liberalization in Colorado. *J Med Toxicol Off J Am Coll Med Toxicol*. 2015;11(4):422-425. doi:10.1007/s13181-015-0501-0

[20] Romanowski KS, Barsun A, Kwan P, et al. Butane Hash Oil Burns: A 7-Year Perspective on a Growing Problem. *J Burn Care Res Off Publ Am Burn Assoc*. 2017;38(1):e165-e171. doi:10.1097/BCR.0000000000000334

For example, a study from New Zealand conducted in part by researchers at Duke University showed that people who started smoking marijuana heavily in their teens and had an ongoing marijuana use disorder lost an average of 8 IQ points between ages 13 and 38. The lost mental abilities didn't fully return in those who quit marijuana as adults. Those who started smoking marijuana as adults didn't show notable IQ declines.[21]

In another recent study on twins, those who used marijuana showed a significant decline in general knowledge and in verbal ability (equivalent to 4 IQ points) between the preteen years and early adulthood, but no predictable difference was found between twins when one used marijuana and the other didn't. This suggests that the IQ decline in marijuana users may be caused by something other than marijuana, such as shared familial factors (e.g., genetics, family environment).[22] NIDA's Adolescent Brain Cognitive Development (ABCD) study, a major longitudinal study, is tracking a large sample of young Americans from late childhood to early adulthood to help clarify how and to what extent marijuana and other substances, alone and in combination, affect adolescent brain development. Read more about the ABCD study on our Longitudinal Study of Adolescent Brain and Cognitive Development (ABCD Study) webpage.

A Rise in Marijuana's THC Levels

The amount of THC in marijuana has been increasing steadily over the past few decades.[23] For a person who's new to marijuana use, this may mean exposure to higher THC levels with a greater chance of a harmful reaction. Higher THC levels may explain the rise in emergency room visits involving marijuana use.

The popularity of edibles also increases the chance of harmful reactions. Edibles take longer to digest and produce a high. Therefore, people may consume more to feel the effects faster, leading to dangerous results.

Higher THC levels may also mean a greater risk for addiction if people are regularly exposing themselves to high doses.

Reports of Deaths Related to Vaping

---

[21] . Meier MH, Caspi A, Ambler A, et al. Persistent cannabis users show neuropsychological decline from childhood to midlife. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2012;109(40):E2657-E2664. doi:10.1073/pnas.1206820109

[22] Jackson NJ, Isen JD, Khoddam R, et al. Impact of adolescent marijuana use on intelligence: Results from two longitudinal twin studies. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2016;113(5):E500-E508. doi:10.1073/pnas.1516648113

[23] Mehmedic Z, Chandra S, Slade D, et al. Potency trends of Δ9-THC and other cannabinoids in confiscated cannabis preparations from 1993 to 2008. *J Forensic Sci*. 2010;55(5):1209-1217. doi:10.1111/j.1556-4029.2010.01441.x

The Food and Drug Administration has alerted the public to hundreds of reports of serious lung illnesses associated with vaping, including several deaths. They are working with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to investigate the cause of these illnesses. Many of the suspect products tested by the states or federal health officials have been identified as vaping products containing THC, the main psychotropic ingredient in marijuana. Some of the patients reported a mixture of THC and nicotine; and some reported vaping nicotine alone. No one substance has been identified in all of the samples tested, and it is unclear if the illnesses are related to one single compound. Until more details are known, FDA officials have warned people not to use any vaping products bought on the street, and they warn against modifying any products purchased in stores. They are also asking people and health professionals to report any adverse effects. The CDC has posted an information page for consumers.

What are the other health effects of marijuana?

Marijuana use may have a wide range of effects, both physical and mental.

Physical Effects

- **Breathing problems.** Marijuana smoke irritates the lungs, and people who smoke marijuana frequently can have the same breathing problems as those who smoke tobacco. These problems include daily cough and phlegm, more frequent lung illness, and a higher risk of lung infections. Researchers so far haven't found a higher risk for lung cancer in people who smoke marijuana.[24]

- **Increased heart rate.** Marijuana raises heart rate for up to 3 hours after smoking. This effect may increase the chance of heart attack. Older people and those with heart problems may be at higher risk.

- **Problems with child development during and after pregnancy.** One study found that about 20% of pregnant women 24-years-old and younger screened positive for marijuana. However, this study also found that women were about twice as likely to screen positive for marijuana use via a drug test than they state in self-reported measures.[25] This suggests that self-reported rates of marijuana use in pregnant females is not an accurate measure of marijuana use and may be underreporting their use. . Additionally, in one study of dispensaries, nonmedical personnel at marijuana

[24] National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. *The Health Effects of Cannabis and Cannabinoids: Current State of Evidence and Recommendations for Research*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 2017.

[25] Young-Wolff KC, Tucker L-Y, Alexeeff S, et al. Trends in Self-reported and Biochemically Tested Marijuana Use Among Pregnant Females in California From 2009-2016. *JAMA*. 2017;318(24):2490. doi:10.1001/jama.2017.17225

dispensaries were recommending marijuana to pregnant women for nausea, but medical experts warn against it. This concerns medical experts because marijuana use during pregnancy is linked to lower birth weight[26] and increased risk of both brain and behavioral problems in babies. If a pregnant woman uses marijuana, the drug may affect certain developing parts of the fetus's brain. Children exposed to marijuana in the womb have an increased risk of problems with attention,[27] memory, and problem-solving compared to unexposed children.[28] Some research also suggests that moderate amounts of THC are excreted into the breast milk of nursing mothers.[29] With regular use, THC can reach amounts in breast milk that could affect the baby's developing brain. Other recent research suggests an increased risk of preterm births. More research is needed. Read our *Marijuana Research Report* for more information about marijuana and pregnancy.

- **Intense nausea and vomiting.** Regular, long-term marijuana use can lead to some people to develop Cannabinoid Hyperemesis Syndrome. This causes users to experience regular cycles of severe nausea, vomiting, and dehydration, sometimes requiring emergency medical attention.[30]

Mental Effects

Long-term marijuana use has been linked to mental illness in some people, such as:

- temporary hallucinations
- temporary paranoia
- worsening symptoms in patients with *schizophrenia*—a severe mental disorder with symptoms such as hallucinations, paranoia, and disorganized thinking

Marijuana use has also been linked to other mental health problems, such as depression, anxiety, and suicidal thoughts among teens. However, study findings have been mixed.

Are there effects of inhaling secondhand marijuana smoke?

Failing a Drug Test?

---

[26] The National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, Health and Medicine Division, Board on Population Health and Public Health Practice, Committee on the Health Effects of Marijuana: An Evidence Review and Research Agenda. *The Health Effects of Cannabis and Cannabinoids: The Current State of Evidence and Recommendations for Research*. http://nationalacademies.org/hmd/Reports/2017/health-effects-of-cannabis-and-cannabinoids.aspx. Accessed January 19, 2017.

[27] Goldschmidt L, Day NL, Richardson GA. Effects of prenatal marijuana exposure on child behavior problems at age 10. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2000;22(3):325-336.

[28] Richardson GA, Ryan C, Willford J, Day NL, Goldschmidt L. Prenatal alcohol and marijuana exposure: effects on neuropsychological outcomes at 10 years. *Neurotoxicol Teratol*. 2002;24(3):309-320.

[29] Perez-Reyes M, Wall ME. Presence of delta9-tetrahydrocannabinol in human milk. *N Engl J Med*. 1982;307(13):819-820. doi:10.1056/NEJM198209233071311

[30] Galli JA, Sawaya RA, Friedenberg FK. Cannabinoid Hyperemesis Syndrome. *Curr Drug Abuse Rev*. 2011;4(4):241-249.

While it's possible to fail a drug test after inhaling secondhand marijuana smoke, it's unlikely. Studies show that very little THC is released in the air when a person exhales. Research findings suggest that, unless people are in an enclosed room, breathing in lots of smoke for hours at close range, they aren't likely to fail a drug test.[31] [32] Even if some THC was found in the blood, it wouldn't be enough to fail a test.

Getting High from Passive Exposure?

Similarly, it's unlikely that secondhand marijuana smoke would give nonsmoking people in a confined space a high from passive exposure. Studies have shown that people who don't use marijuana report only mild effects of the drug from a nearby smoker, under extreme conditions (breathing in lots of marijuana smoke for hours in an enclosed room).[33]

Other Health Effects?

More research is needed to know if secondhand marijuana smoke has similar health risks as secondhand tobacco smoke. A recent study on rats suggests that secondhand marijuana smoke can do as much damage to the heart and blood vessels as secondhand tobacco smoke.[34] But researchers haven't fully explored the effect of secondhand marijuana smoke on humans. What they do know is that the toxins and tar found in marijuana smoke could affect vulnerable people, such as children or people with asthma.

Is marijuana a gateway drug?

Use of alcohol, tobacco, and marijuana are likely to come before use of other drugs.[35] [36] Animal studies have shown that early exposure to addictive substances, including THC, may change how the brain responds to other drugs. For example, when rodents are repeatedly exposed to THC when they're young, they later show an enhanced response to other addictive substances—such as morphine or nicotine—in the areas of the brain that control reward, and they're more likely to show addiction-like behaviors.[37] [38]

---

[31] Röhrich J, Schimmel I, Zörntlein S, et al. Concentrations of delta9-tetrahydrocannabinol and 11-nor-9-carboxytetrahydrocannabinol in blood and urine after passive exposure to Cannabis smoke in a coffee shop. *J Anal Toxicol*. 2010;34(4):196-203.

[32] Cone EJ, Bigelow GE, Herrmann ES, et al. Non-smoker exposure to secondhand cannabis smoke. I. Urine screening and confirmation results. *J Anal Toxicol*. 2015;39(1):1-12. doi:10.1093/jat/bku116

[33] Herrmann ES, Cone EJ, Mitchell JM, et al. Non-smoker exposure to secondhand cannabis smoke II: Effect of room ventilation on the physiological, subjective, and behavioral/cognitive effects. *Drug Alcohol Depend*. 2015;151:194-202. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2015.03.019

[34] Wang X, Derakhshandeh R, Liu J, et al. One Minute of Marijuana Secondhand Smoke Exposure Substantially Impairs Vascular Endothelial Function. *J Am Heart Assoc*. 2016;5(8). doi:10.1161/JAHA.116.003858

[35] Secades-Villa R, Garcia-Rodríguez O, Jin CJ, Wang S, Blanco C. Probability and predictors of the cannabis gateway effect: a national study. *Int J Drug Policy*. 2015;26(2):135-142. doi:10.1016/j.drugpo.2014.07.011

[36] . Levine A, Huang Y, Drisaldi B, et al. Molecular mechanism for a gateway drug: epigenetic changes initiated by nicotine prime gene expression by cocaine. *Sci Transl Med*. 2011;3(107):107ra109. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.3003062

[37] . Panlilio LV, Zanettini C, Barnes C, Solinas M, Goldberg SR. Prior exposure to THC increases the addictive effects of nicotine in rats. *Neuropsychopharmacol Off Publ Am Coll Neuropsychopharmacol*. 2013;38(7):1198-1208. doi:10.1038/npp.2013.16

[38] Cadoni C, Pisanu A, Solinas M, Acquas E, Di Chiara G. Behavioural sensitization after repeated exposure to Delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol and cross-sensitization with morphine. *Psychopharmacology (Berl)*. 2001;158(3):259-266. doi:10.1007/s002130100875

Although these findings support the idea of marijuana as a "gateway drug," the majority of people who use marijuana don't go on to use other "harder" drugs. It's also important to note that other factors besides biological mechanisms, such as a person's social environment, are also critical in a person's risk for drug use and addiction.

How Does Marijuana Affect a Person's Life?

Compared to those who don't use marijuana, those who frequently use large amounts report the following:

- lower life satisfaction
- poorer mental health
- poorer physical health
- more relationship problems

People also report less academic and career success. For example, marijuana use is linked to a higher likelihood of dropping out of school.[39] It's also linked to more job absences, accidents, and injuries.[40]

Can a person overdose on marijuana?

An overdose occurs when a person uses enough of the drug to produce life-threatening symptoms or death. There are no reports of teens or adults dying from marijuana alone. However, some people who use marijuana can feel some very uncomfortable side effects, especially when using marijuana products with high THC levels. People have reported symptoms such as anxiety and paranoia, and in rare cases, an extreme psychotic reaction (which can include delusions and hallucinations) that can lead them to seek treatment in an emergency room.

While a psychotic reaction can occur following any method of use, emergency room responders have seen an increasing number of cases involving marijuana edibles. Some people (especially preteens and teens) who know very little about edibles don't realize that it takes longer for the body to feel marijuana's effects when eaten rather than smoked. So they consume more of the edible, trying to get high faster or thinking they haven't taken enough. In addition, some babies and toddlers have been seriously ill after ingesting marijuana or marijuana edibles left around the house.

---

[39] McCaffrey DF, Pacula RL, Han B, Ellickson P. Marijuana Use and High School Dropout: The Influence of Unobservables. *Health Econ*. 2010;19(11):1281-1299. doi:10.1002/hec.1561

[40] . Zwerling C, Ryan J, Orav EJ. The efficacy of preemployment drug screening for marijuana and cocaine in predicting employment outcome. *JAMA*. 1990;264(20):2639-2643

Is marijuana addictive?

Marijuana use can lead to the development of a *substance use disorder,* a medical illness in which the person is unable to stop using even though it's causing health and social problems in their life. Severe substance use disorders are also known as addiction. Research suggests that between 9 and 30 percent of those who use marijuana may develop some degree of marijuana use disorder.[41] People who begin using marijuana before age 18 are four to seven times more likely than adults to develop a marijuana use disorder.[42]

Many people who use marijuana long term and are trying to quit report mild withdrawal symptoms that make quitting difficult. These include:

- grouchiness
- sleeplessness
- decreased appetite
- anxiety
- cravings

What treatments are available for marijuana use disorder?

No medications are currently available to treat marijuana use disorder, but behavioral support has been shown to be effective. Examples include therapy and motivational incentives (providing rewards to patients who remain drug-free). Continuing research may lead to new medications that help ease withdrawal symptoms, block the effects of marijuana, and prevent relapse.

Points to Remember

- Marijuana refers to the dried leaves, flowers, stems, and seeds from the *Cannabis sativa* or *Cannabis indica* plant.
- The plant contains the mind-altering chemical THC and other related compounds.
- People use marijuana by smoking, eating, drinking, or inhaling it.
- Smoking and vaping THC-rich extracts from the marijuana plant (a practice called *dabbing*) is on the rise.
- THC overactivates certain brain cell receptors, resulting in effects such as:
    - altered senses
    - changes in mood
    - impaired body movement

---

[41] Hasin DS, Saha TD, Kerridge BT, et al. Prevalence of Marijuana Use Disorders in the United States Between 2001-2002 and 2012-2013. *JAMA Psychiatry*. 2015;72(12):1235-1242. doi:10.1001/jamapsychiatry.2015.1858

[42] Winters KC, Lee C-YS. Likelihood of developing an alcohol and cannabis use disorder during youth: association with recent use and age. *Drug Alcohol Depend*. 2008;92(1-3):239-247. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2007.08.005

    - difficulty with thinking and problem-solving
    - impaired memory and learning
- Marijuana use can have a wide range of health effects, including:
    - hallucinations and paranoia
    - breathing problems
    - possible harm to a fetus's brain in pregnant women
- The amount of THC in marijuana has been increasing steadily in recent decades, creating more harmful effects in some people.
- It's unlikely that a person will fail a drug test or get high from passive exposure by inhaling secondhand marijuana smoke.
- There aren't any reports of teens and adults dying from using marijuana alone, but marijuana use can cause some very uncomfortable side effects, such as anxiety and paranoia and, in rare cases, extreme psychotic reactions.
- Marijuana use can lead to a substance use disorder, which can develop into an addiction in severe cases.
- No medications are currently available to treat marijuana use disorder, but behavioral support can be effective.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated December 2019

J. Marijuana as Medicine

What is medical marijuana?

The term *medical marijuana* refers to using the whole, unprocessed marijuana plant or its basic extracts to treat symptoms of illness and other conditions. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has not recognized or approved the marijuana plant as medicine.

However, scientific study of the chemicals in marijuana, called *cannabinoids*, has led to two FDA-approved medications that contain cannabinoid chemicals in pill form. Continued research may lead to more medications.

Because the marijuana plant contains chemicals that may help treat a range of illnesses and symptoms, many people argue that it should be legal for medical purposes. In fact, a growing number of states have legalized marijuana for medical use.

Why isn't the marijuana plant an FDA-approved medicine?

The FDA requires carefully conducted studies (clinical trials) in hundreds to thousands of human subjects to determine the benefits and risks of a possible medication. So far, researchers haven't conducted enough large-scale clinical trials that show that the benefits of the marijuana plant (as opposed to its cannabinoid ingredients) outweigh its risks in patients it's meant to treat.

Medical Marijuana Laws and Prescription Opioid Use Outcomes

A new study underscores the need for additional research on the effect of medical marijuana laws on opioid overdose deaths and cautions against drawing a causal connection between the two. Early research suggested that there may be a relationship between availability of medical marijuana and opioid analgesic overdose mortality. In particular, a NIDA-funded study published in 2014 found that from 1999 to 2010, states with medical cannabis laws experienced slower rates of increase in opioid analgesic overdose death rates compared to states without such laws.[43]

A 2019 analysis, also funded by NIDA, re-examined this relationship using data through 2017. Similar to the findings reported previously, this research team found that opioid overdose mortality rates between 1999-2010 in states allowing medical marijuana use were 21% lower than expected. When the analysis was extended through 2017, however, they found that the trend reversed, such that states with medical cannabis laws experienced an overdose death rate 22.7% higher than expected.[44] The investigators uncovered no evidence that either broader cannabis laws (those allowing recreational use) or more restrictive laws (those only permitting the use of marijuana with low tetrahydrocannabinol concentrations) were associated with changes in opioid overdose mortality rates.

These data, therefore, do not support the interpretation that access to cannabis reduces opioid overdose. Indeed, the authors note that neither study provides evidence of a causal relationship between marijuana access and opioid overdose deaths. Rather, they suggest that the associations are likely due to factors the researchers did not measure, and they caution against drawing conclusions on an individual level from ecological (population-level) data. Research is still needed on the potential medical benefits of cannabis or cannabinoids.

---

[43] Bachhuber MA, Saloner B, Cunningham CO, Barry CL. Medical cannabis laws and opioid analgesic overdose mortality in the United States, 1999-2010. JAMA Intern Med. 2014;174(10):1668-1673. doi:10.1001/jamainternmed.2014.4005

[44] Chelsea L. Shover, Corey S. Davis, Sanford C. Gordon, and Keith Humphreys, Association between medical cannabis laws and opioid overdose mortality has reversed over time, PNAS June 25, 2019 116 (26) 12624-12626.

What are cannabinoids?

Cannabinoids are chemicals related to *delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol* (THC), marijuana's main mind-altering ingredient that makes people "high." The marijuana plant contains more than 100 cannabinoids. Scientists as well as illegal manufacturers have produced many cannabinoids in the lab. Some of these cannabinoids are extremely powerful and have led to serious health effects when misused.

The body also produces its own cannabinoid chemicals. They play a role in regulating pleasure, memory, thinking, concentration, body movement, awareness of time, appetite, pain, and the senses (taste, touch, smell, hearing, and sight).

How might cannabinoids be useful as medicine?

Currently, the two main cannabinoids from the marijuana plant that are of medical interest are THC and CBD.

Are People with Health- and Age-Related Problems More Vulnerable to Marijuana's Risks?

State-approved medicinal use of marijuana is a fairly new practice. For that reason, marijuana's effects on people who are weakened because of age or illness are still relatively unknown. Older people and those suffering from diseases such as cancer or AIDS could be more vulnerable to the drug's harmful effects, but more research is needed.

THC can increase appetite and reduce nausea. THC may also decrease pain, inflammation (swelling and redness), and muscle control problems.

Unlike THC, CBD is a cannabinoid that doesn't make people "high." These drugs aren't popular for recreational use because they aren't intoxicating. It may be useful in reducing pain and inflammation, controlling epileptic seizures, and possibly even treating mental illness and addictions. The FDA approved a CBD-based liquid medication called Epidiolex® for the treatment of two forms of severe childhood epilepsy, Dravet syndrome and Lennox-Gastaut syndrome.

Many researchers, including those funded by the National Institutes of Health (NIH), are continuing to explore the possible uses of THC, CBD, and other cannabinoids for medical treatment.

For instance, recent animal studies have shown that marijuana extracts may help kill certain cancer cells and reduce the size of others. Evidence from one cell culture study with rodents

suggests that purified extracts from whole-plant marijuana can slow the growth of cancer cells from one of the most serious types of brain tumors. Research in mice showed that treatment with purified extracts of THC and CBD, when used with radiation, increased the cancer-killing effects of the radiation.[45]

Scientists are also conducting preclinical and clinical trials with marijuana and its extracts to treat symptoms of illness and other conditions, such as:

- diseases that affect the immune system, including:
  - HIV/AIDS
  - multiple sclerosis (MS), which causes gradual loss of muscle control
- inflammation
- pain
- seizures
- substance use disorders
- mental disorders

Using Medical Marijuana During and After Pregnancy

Some women report using marijuana to treat severe nausea they have during pregnancy. But there's no research that shows that this practice is safe, and doctors generally don't recommend it.

Pregnant women shouldn't use medical marijuana without first checking with their health care provider. Animal studies have shown that moderate amounts of THC given to pregnant or nursing women could have long-lasting effects on the child, including abnormal patterns of social interactions[46] and learning issues[47] [48].

What medications contain cannabinoids?

Two FDA-approved drugs, dronabinol and nabilone, contain THC. They treat nausea caused by chemotherapy and increase appetite in patients with extreme weight loss caused by AIDS. Continued research might lead to more medications.

---

[45] . Scott KA, Dalgleish AG, Liu WM. The combination of cannabidiol and Δ9-tetrahydrocannabinol enhances the anticancer effects of radiation in an orthotopic murine glioma model. Mol Cancer Ther. 2014;13(12):2955-2967. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-14-0402

[46] Trezza V, Campolongo P, Cassano T, et al. Effects of perinatal exposure to delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol on the emotional reactivity of the offspring: a longitudinal behavioral study in Wistar rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2008;198(4):529-537. doi:10.1007/s00213-008-1162-3

[47] Antonelli T, Tomasini MC, Tattoli M, et al. Prenatal exposure to the CB1 receptor agonist WIN 55,212-2 causes learning disruption associated with impaired cortical NMDA receptor function and emotional reactivity changes in rat offspring. Cereb Cortex N Y N 1991. 2005;15(12):2013-2020. doi:10.1093/cercor/bhi076

[48] Mereu G, Fà M, Ferraro L, et al. Prenatal exposure to a cannabinoid agonist produces memory deficits linked to dysfunction in hippocampal long-term potentiation and glutamate release. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2003;100(8):4915-4920. doi:10.1073/pnas.0537849100

The United Kingdom, Canada, and several European countries have approved nabiximols (Sativex®), a mouth spray containing THC and CBD. It treats muscle control problems caused by MS, but it isn't FDA-approved.

Points to Remember

- The term *medical marijuana* refers to treating symptoms of illness and other conditions with the whole, unprocessed marijuana plant or its basic extracts.
- The FDA has not recognized or approved the marijuana plant as medicine.
- However, scientific study of the chemicals in marijuana called *cannabinoids* has led to two FDA-approved medications in pill form, dronabinol and nabilone, used to treat nausea and boost appetite.
- Cannabinoids are chemicals related to *delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol* (THC), marijuana's main mind-altering ingredient.
- Currently, the two main cannabinoids from the marijuana plant that are of interest for medical treatment are THC and *cannabidiol* (CBD).
- The body also produces its own cannabinoid chemicals.
- Scientists are conducting preclinical and clinical trials with marijuana and its extracts to treat symptoms of illness and other conditions.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated July 2019

K. MDMA (Ecstasy/Molly)

What is MDMA?

3,4-methylenedioxy-methamphetamine (MDMA) is a synthetic drug that alters mood and perception (awareness of surrounding objects and conditions). It is chemically similar to both stimulants and hallucinogens, producing feelings of increased energy, pleasure, emotional warmth, and distorted sensory and time perception.

MDMA was initially popular in the nightclub scene and at all-night dance parties ("raves"), but the drug now affects a broader range of people who more commonly call the drug Ecstasy or Molly.

How do people use MDMA?

People who use MDMA usually take it as a capsule or tablet, though some swallow it in liquid form or snort the powder. The popular nickname Molly (slang for "molecular") often refers to the supposedly "pure" crystalline powder form of MDMA, usually sold in capsules. However, people who purchase powder or capsules sold as Molly often actually get other drugs such as synthetic cathinones ("bath salts") instead.

Some people take MDMA in combination with other drugs such as alcohol or marijuana.

How does MDMA affect the brain?

MDMA increases the activity of three brain chemicals:

- Dopamine—produces increased energy/activity and acts in the reward system to reinforce behaviors
- Norepinephrine—increases heart rate and blood pressure, which are particularly risky for people with heart and blood vessel problems
- Serotonin—affects mood, appetite, sleep, and other functions. It also triggers hormones that affect sexual arousal and trust. The release of large amounts of serotonin likely causes the emotional closeness, elevated mood, and empathy felt by those who use MDMA.

Other health effects include:

- nausea
- muscle cramping
- involuntary teeth clenching
- blurred vision
- chills
- sweating

MDMA's effects last about 3 to 6 hours, although many of those who use the drug take a second dose as the effects of the first dose begin to fade. Over the course of the week following moderate use of the drug, a person may experience:

- irritability
- impulsiveness and aggression
- depression
- sleep problems
- anxiety
- memory and attention problems

- decreased appetite
- decreased interest in and pleasure from sex

It's possible that some of these effects may be due to the combined use of MDMA with other drugs, especially marijuana.

What are other health effects of MDMA?

High doses of MDMA can affect the body's ability to regulate temperature. This can lead to a spike in body temperature that can occasionally result in liver, kidney, or heart failure or even death.

In addition, because MDMA can promote trust and closeness, its use—especially combined with sildenafil (Viagra®)—may encourage unsafe sexual behavior. This increases people's risk of contracting or transmitting HIV/AIDS or hepatitis.

Read more about drug use and hepatitis at drugabuse.gov/related-topics/viral-hepatitis-very-real-consequence-substance-use.

Is MDMA addictive?

Research results vary on whether MDMA is addictive. Experiments have shown that animals will self-administer MDMA—an important indicator of a drug's abuse potential—although to a lesser degree than some other drugs such as cocaine.

Some people report signs of addiction, including the following withdrawal symptoms:

- fatigue
- loss of appetite
- depression
- trouble concentrating

Added Risk of MDMA

Adding to MDMA's risks is that pills, capsules, or powders sold as Ecstasy and supposedly "pure" Molly may contain other drugs instead of or in addition to MDMA. Much of the Molly seized by the police contains additives such as cocaine, ketamine, methamphetamine, over-the-counter cough medicine, or synthetic cathinones ("bath salts"). These substances may be extremely dangerous if the person does not know what he or she is taking. They may also be dangerous when combined with MDMA. People who purposely or unknowingly combine such a mixture with other substances, such as marijuana and alcohol, may be putting themselves at even higher risk for harmful health effects.

Does MDMA Have Value in Therapy?

MDMA was first used in the 1970s as an aid in psychotherapy (mental disorder treatment using "talk therapy"). The drug didn't have the support of clinical trials (studies using humans) or approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. In 1985, The U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration labeled MDMA as an illegal drug with no recognized medicinal use. Some researchers remain interested in its value in psychotherapy when given to patients under carefully controlled conditions. MDMA is currently in clinical trials as a possible treatment aid for post-traumatic stress disorder and anxiety in terminally ill patients, and for social anxiety in autistic adults.

How can people get treatment for addiction to MDMA?

There are no specific medical treatments for MDMA addiction. Some people seeking treatment for MDMA addiction have found behavioral therapy to be helpful. Scientists need more research to determine how effective this treatment option is for addiction to MDMA.

Points to Remember

- *3,4-methylenedioxy-methamphetamine* (MDMA) is a synthetic drug that alters mood and perception. It is chemically similar to stimulants and hallucinogens.
- MDMA is commonly called Ecstasy or Molly.
- People who use MDMA typically take it as a capsule or tablet. Many people take it in combination with other drugs.
- MDMA acts by increasing the activity of three brain chemicals: dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin.
- Effects include increased energy, distorted perception, involuntary teeth clenching, dangerously high body temperature, and depression.
- Many people are unaware that Ecstasy and supposedly "pure" Molly also often contain not only pure MDMA but other drugs that may be particularly dangerous when mixed with MDMA.
- Research results vary on whether MDMA is addictive. Some people report signs of addiction.
- Some people seeking treatment for MDMA addiction have found behavioral therapy to be helpful. There are no specific medical treatments for MDMA addiction.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated June 2018

L. Methamphetamine

What is methamphetamine?

Methamphetamine is a powerful, highly addictive stimulant that affects the central nervous system. Crystal methamphetamine is a form of the drug that looks like glass fragments or shiny, bluish-white rocks. It is chemically similar to amphetamine, a drug used to treat attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and narcolepsy, a sleep disorder.

Other common names for methamphetamine include *blue, crystal, ice, meth,* and *speed*.

How do people use methamphetamine?

People can take methamphetamine by:

- smoking
- swallowing (pill)
- snorting
- injecting the powder that has been dissolved in water/alcohol

Because the "high" from the drug both starts and fades quickly, people often take repeated doses in a "binge and crash" pattern. In some cases, people take methamphetamine in a form of binging known as a "run," giving up food and sleep while continuing to take the drug every few hours for up to several days.

How does methamphetamine affect the brain?

Methamphetamine increases the amount of the natural chemical dopamine in the brain. Dopamine is involved in body movement, motivation, and reinforcement of rewarding behaviors. The drug's ability to rapidly release high levels of dopamine in reward areas of the brain strongly reinforces drug-taking behavior, making the user want to repeat the experience.

Short-Term Effects

Taking even small amounts of methamphetamine can result in many of the same health effects as those of other stimulants, such as cocaine or amphetamines. These include:

- increased wakefulness and physical activity
- decreased appetite
- faster breathing
- rapid and/or irregular heartbeat
- increased blood pressure and body temperature

How Do Manufacturers Make Methamphetamine?

Currently, most methamphetamine in the United States is produced by transactional criminal organizations (TCOs) in Mexico. This methamphetamine is highly pure, potent, and low in price. The drug can be easily made in small clandestine laboratories, with relatively inexpensive over-the-counter ingredients such as pseudoephedrine, a common ingredient in cold medications. To curb this kind of production, the law requires pharmacies and other retail stores to keep a purchase record of products containing pseudoephedrine, and take steps to limit sales.

Methamphetamine production also involves a number of other very dangerous chemicals. Toxic effects from these chemicals can remain in the environment long after the lab has been shut down, causing a wide range of health problems for people living in the area. These chemicals can also result in deadly lab explosions and house fires.

What are other health effects of methamphetamine?

Long-Term Effects

People who inject methamphetamine are at increased risk of contracting infectious diseases such as HIV and hepatitis B and C. These diseases are transmitted through contact with blood or other bodily fluids that can remain on drug equipment. Methamphetamine use can also alter judgment and decision-making leading to risky behaviors, such as unprotected sex, which also increases risk for infection.

Methamphetamine use may worsen the progression of HIV/AIDS and its consequences. Studies indicate that HIV causes more injury to nerve cells and more cognitive problems in people who use methamphetamine than it does in people who have HIV and don't use the drug.1 Cognitive problems are those involved with thinking, understanding, learning, and remembering.

Long-term methamphetamine use has many other negative consequences, including:

- extreme weight loss
- addiction
- severe dental problems ("meth mouth")
- intense itching, leading to skin sores from scratching
- anxiety
- changes in brain structure and function
- confusion
- memory loss

- sleeping problems
- violent behavior
- *paranoia*—extreme and unreasonable distrust of others
- *hallucinations*—sensations and images that seem real though they aren't

In addition, continued methamphetamine use causes changes in the brain's dopamine system that are associated with reduced coordination and impaired verbal learning. In studies of people who used methamphetamine over the long term, severe changes also affected areas of the brain involved with emotion and memory.[49] This may explain many of the emotional and cognitive problems seen in those who use methamphetamine.

Although some of these brain changes may reverse after being off the drug for a year or more, other changes may not recover even after a long period of time.[50] A recent study even suggests that people who once used methamphetamine have an increased the risk of developing Parkinson's disease, a disorder of the nerves that affects movement.

Are there health effects from exposure to secondhand methamphetamine smoke?
Researchers don't yet know whether people breathing in secondhand methamphetamine smoke can get high or have other health effects. What they do know is that people can test positive for methamphetamine after exposure to secondhand smoke.[51] [52] More research is needed in this area.

Can a person overdose on methamphetamine?
Yes, a person can overdose on methamphetamine. An overdose occurs when the person uses too much of a drug and has a toxic reaction that results in serious, harmful symptoms or death.

In 2017, about 15 percent of all drug overdose deaths involved the methamphetamine category, and 50 percent of those deaths also involved an opioid, with half of those cases related to the synthetic opioid fentanyl. (CDC Wonder Multiple Causes of Death—see #42 on

[49] Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, et al. Association of dopamine transporter reduction with psychomotor impairment in methamphetamine abusers. *Am J Psychiatry*. 2001;158(3):377-382. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.158.3.377.
[50] Wang G-J, Volkow ND, Chang L, et al. Partial recovery of brain metabolism in methamphetamine abusers after protracted abstinence. *Am J Psychiatry*. 2004;161(2):242-248. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.161.2.242.
[51] Bassindale T. Quantitative analysis of methamphetamine in hair of children removed from clandestine laboratories--evidence of passive exposure? *Forensic Sci Int*. 2012;219(1-3):179-182. doi:10.1016/j.forsciint.2012.01.003.
[52] Farst K, Reading Meyer JA, Mac Bird T, James L, Robbins JM. Hair drug testing of children suspected of exposure to the manufacture of methamphetamine. *J Forensic Leg Med*. 2011;18(3):110-114. doi:10.1016/j.jflm.2011.01.013.

Meth RR.) It is important to note that cheap, dangerous synthetic opioids are sometimes added to street methamphetamine without the user knowing.

How can a methamphetamine overdose be treated?

Because methamphetamine overdose often leads to a stroke, heart attack, or organ problems, first responders and emergency room doctors try to treat the overdose by treating these conditions, with the intent of:

- restoring blood flow to the affected part of the brain (stroke)
- restoring blood flow to the heart (heart attack)
- treating the organ problems

Is methamphetamine addictive?

Yes, methamphetamine is highly addictive. When people stop taking it, withdrawal symptoms can include:

- anxiety
- fatigue
- severe depression
- psychosis
- intense drug cravings

How is methamphetamine addiction treated?

While research is underway, there are currently no government-approved medications to treat methamphetamine addiction. The good news is that methamphetamine misuse can be prevented and addiction to the drug can be treated with behavioral therapies. The most effective treatments for methamphetamine addiction so far are behavioral therapies, such as:

- cognitive-behavioral therapy, which helps patients recognize, avoid, and cope with the situations likely to trigger drug use.
- motivational incentives, which uses vouchers or small cash rewards to encourage patients to remain drug-free

Research also continues toward development of medicines and other new treatments for methamphetamine use, including vaccines, and noninvasive stimulation of the brain using magnetic fields. People can and do recover from methamphetamine addiction if they have ready access to effective treatments that address the multitude of medical and personal problems resulting from long-term use.

Points to Remember

- Methamphetamine is usually a white, bitter-tasting powder or a pill. Crystal methamphetamine looks like glass fragments or shiny, bluish-white rocks.
- Methamphetamine is a stimulant drug that is chemically similar to amphetamine (a drug used to treat ADHD and narcolepsy).
- People can take methamphetamine by smoking, swallowing, snorting, or injecting the drug.
- Methamphetamine increases the amount of dopamine in the brain, which is involved in movement, motivation, and reinforcement of rewarding behaviors.
- Short-term health effects include increased wakefulness and physical activity, decreased appetite, and increased blood pressure and body temperature.
- Long-term health effects include risk of addiction; risk of contracting HIV and hepatitis; severe dental problems ("meth mouth"); intense itching, leading to skin sores from scratching; violent behavior; and paranoia.
- Methamphetamine can be highly addictive. When people stop taking it, withdrawal symptoms can include anxiety, fatigue, severe depression, psychosis, and intense drug cravings.
- Researchers don't yet know if people breathing in secondhand methamphetamine smoke can get high or suffer other health effects.
- A person can overdose on methamphetamine. Because methamphetamine overdose often leads to a stroke, heart attack, or organ problems, first responders and emergency room doctors try to treat the overdose by treating these conditions.
- The most effective treatments for methamphetamine addiction so far are behavioral therapies. There are currently no government-approved medications to treat methamphetamine addiction.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated May 2019

M. Over-the-counter medicines

What are over-the-counter (OTC) medicines?

Over-the-counter (OTC) medicines are those that can be sold directly to people without a prescription. OTC medicines treat a variety of illnesses and their symptoms including pain, coughs and colds, diarrhea, constipation, acne, and others. Some OTC medicines have active ingredients with the potential for misuse at higher-than-recommended dosages.

How do people use and misuse OTC medicines?

Misuse of an OTC medicine means:

- taking medicine in a way or dose other than directed on the package
- taking medicine for the effect it causes— for example, to get high
- mixing OTC medicines together to create new products

What are some of the commonly misused OTC medicines?

There are two OTC medicines that are most commonly misused.

Dextromethorphan (DXM) is a cough suppressant found in many OTC cold medicines. The most common sources of abused DXM are "extra-strength" cough syrup, tablets and gel capsules. OTC medications that contain DXM often also contain antihistamines and decongestants. DXM may be swallowed in its original form or may be mixed with soda for flavor, called "robo-tripping" or "skittling." Users sometimes inject it. These medicines are often misused in combination with other drugs, such as alcohol and marijuana.

Loperamide is an anti-diarrheal that is available in tablet, capsule, or liquid form. When misusing loperamide, people swallow large quantities of the medicine. It is unclear how often this drug is misused.

How do these OTC medicines affect the brain?

DXM is an opioid without effects on pain reduction and does not act on the opioid receptors. When taken in large doses, DXM causes a depressant effect and sometimes a hallucinogenic effect, similar to PCP and ketamine. Repeatedly seeking to experience that feeling can lead to addiction—a chronic relapsing brain condition characterized by inability to stop using a drug despite damaging consequences to a person's life and health.

Loperamide is an opioid designed not to enter the brain. However, when taken in large amounts and combined with other substances, it may cause the drug to act in a similar way to other opioids. Other opioids, such as certain prescription pain relievers and heroin, bind to and activate opioid receptors in many areas of the brain, especially those involved in feelings of pain and pleasure. Opioid receptors are also located in the brain stem, which controls important processes, such as blood pressure, arousal, and breathing.

"Behind-the-Counter"

Pseudoephedrine, a nasal decongestant found in many OTC cold medicines, can be used to make methamphetamine. For this reason, products containing pseudoephedrine are sold

“behind the counter” nationwide. A prescription is not needed in most states, but in states that do require a prescription, there are limits on how much a person can buy each month. In some states, only people 18 years of age or older can buy pseudoephedrine.

What are the health effects of these OTC medicines?

DXM

Short-term effects of DXM misuse can range from mild stimulation to alcohol- or marijuana-like intoxication. At high doses, a person may have hallucinations or feelings of physical distortion, extreme panic, paranoia, anxiety, and aggression.

Other health effects from DXM misuse can include the following:

- hyperexcitability
- poor motor control
- lack of energy
- stomach pain
- vision changes
- slurred speech
- increased blood pressure
- sweating

Misuse of DXM products containing acetaminophen can cause liver damage.

Loperamide

In the short-term, loperamide is sometimes misused to lessen cravings and withdrawal symptoms; however, it can cause euphoria, similar to other opioids.

Loperamide misuse can also lead to fainting, stomach pain, constipation, eye changes, and loss of consciousness. It can cause the heart to beat erratically or rapidly, or cause kidney problems. These effects may increase if taken with other medicines that interact with loperamide. Other effects have not been well studied and reports are mixed, but the physical consequences of loperamide misuse can be severe.

Opioid Withdrawal Symptoms

These symptoms include:

- muscle and bone pain
- sleep problems
- diarrhea and vomiting

- cold flashes with goose bumps
- uncontrollable leg movements
- severe cravings

Can a person overdose on these OTC medicines?

Yes, a person can overdose on cold medicines containing DXM or loperamide. An overdose occurs when a person uses enough of the drug to produce a life-threatening reaction or death (Read more on our Intentional vs. Unintentional Overdose Deaths webpage).

As with other opioids, when people overdose on DXM or loperamide, their breathing often slows or stops. This can decrease the amount of oxygen that reaches the brain, a condition called hypoxia. Hypoxia can have short- and long-term mental effects and effects on the nervous system, including coma and permanent brain damage and death.

How can these OTC medicine overdoses be treated?

A person who has overdosed needs immediate medical attention. Call 911. If the person has stopped breathing or if breathing is weak, begin CPR. DXM overdoses can also be treated with naloxone. Read more about naloxone at our Naloxone webpage.

Certain medications can be used to treat heart rhythm problems caused by loperamide overdose. If the heart stops, health care providers will perform CPR and other cardiac support therapies.

Can misuse of these OTC medicines lead to addiction?

Yes, misuse of DXM or loperamide can lead to addiction. An addiction develops when continued use of the drug causes issues, such as health problems and failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home.

The symptoms of withdrawal from DXM and loperamide have not been well studied.

How can people get treatment for addiction to these OTC medicines?

There are no medications approved specifically to treat DXM or loperamide addiction. Behavioral therapies, such as cognitive-behavioral therapy and contingency management, may be helpful. Cognitive-behavioral therapy helps modify the patient's drug-use expectations and behaviors, and effectively manage triggers and stress. Contingency management provides vouchers or small cash rewards for positive behaviors such as staying drug-free.

Points to Remember

Over-the-counter (OTC) medicines are those that can be sold directly to people without a prescription. Those that have the potential for misuse include:

- Dextromethorphan (DXM), a cough suppressant found in many OTC cold medicines
- Loperamide, an anti-diarrheal
- When misusing DXM, people swallow large quantities of the medicine, sometimes mixing it with soda for flavor, called “robo-tripping” or “skittling.” Loperamide may also be swallowed.
- Short-term effects of DXM misuse can range from mild stimulation to alcohol-or marijuana-like intoxication. Loperamide misuse can cause euphoria, similar to other opioids, or lessen cravings and withdrawal symptoms, but other effects have not been well studied and reports are mixed.
- A person can overdose on cold medicines containing DXM or loperamide.
- Overdose can be treated with CPR and certain medications depending on the person’s symptoms, but the most important step to take is to call 911.
- Misuse of DXM or loperamide can lead to addiction.
- There are no medications to treat DXM or loperamide addiction. Behavioral therapies, such as cognitive-behavioral therapy and contingency management, may be helpful.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated December 2017

N. Prescription CNS Depressants

What are prescription CNS depressants?

Central Nervous System (CNS) depressants are medicines that include sedatives, tranquilizers, and hypnotics. Sedatives primarily include barbiturates (e.g., phenobarbitol) but also include non-benzodiazepine sedative hypnotics such as Ambien® and Lunesta®. Tranquilizers primarily include benzodiazepines, such as Valium® and Xanax®, but also include muscle relaxants and other anti-anxiety medications. These drugs can slow brain activity, making them useful for treating anxiety, panic, acute stress reactions, and sleep disorders.

Some examples of CNS depressants grouped by their respective drug class are:

Benzodiazepines	Non-Benzodiazepine Sedative Hypnotics	Barbiturates
• diazepam (Valium®) • clonazepam (Klonopin®) • alprazolam (Xanax®) • triazolam (Halcion®) • estazolam (Prosom®)	• zolpidem (Ambien®) • eszopiclone (Lunesta®) • zaleplon (Sonata®)	• mephobarbital (Mebaral®) • phenobarbital (Luminal®) • pentobarbital sodium (Nembutal®)

How do people use and misuse prescription CNS depressants?

Most prescription CNS depressants come in pill, capsule, or liquid form, which a person takes by mouth. Misuse of prescription CNS depressants means:

- taking medicine in a way or dose other than prescribed
- taking someone else's medicine
- taking medicine for the effect it causes — to get high

When misusing a prescription CNS depressant, a person can swallow the medicine in its normal form or can crush pills or open capsules.

How do CNS depressants affect the brain?

Most CNS depressants act on the brain by increasing activity of *gamma-aminobutyric acid* (GABA), a chemical that inhibits brain activity. This action causes the drowsy and calming effects that make the medicine effective for anxiety and sleep disorders. People who start taking CNS depressants usually feel sleepy and uncoordinated for the first few days until the body adjusts to these side effects. Other effects from use and misuse can include:

- slurred speech
- poor concentration
- confusion
- headache
- light-headedness
- dizziness
- dry mouth
- problems with movement and memory
- lowered blood pressure

- slowed breathing

If a person takes CNS depressants long term, he or she might need larger doses to achieve therapeutic effects. Continued use can also lead to dependence and withdrawal when use is abruptly reduced or stopped. Suddenly stopping can also lead to harmful consequences like seizures.

Can a person overdose on CNS depressants?
Yes, a person can overdose on CNS depressants. An overdose occurs when the person uses enough of a drug to produce life-threatening symptoms or death (read more on our Intentional vs. Unintentional Overdose Deaths webpage).

When people overdose on a CNS depressant, their breathing often slows or stops. This can decrease the amount of oxygen that reaches the brain, a condition called hypoxia. Hypoxia can have short- and long-term mental effects and effects on the nervous system, including coma and permanent brain damage.

How can a CNS depressant overdose be treated?
The most important step to take is to call 911 so a person who has overdosed can receive immediate medical attention. Flumazenil (Romazicon®) is a medication that medical personnel can use to treat benzodiazepine overdose and has also been shown effective in treating overdose from sleep medicines. The drug might not completely reverse slowed breathing and can lead to seizures in some patients who are taking certain antidepressants. Flumazenil is short acting, and the patient may need more of it every 20 minutes until he or she recovers. For barbiturates and nonbenzodiazepines, body temperature, pulse, breathing, and blood pressure should be monitored while waiting for the drug to be eliminated.

Can prescription CNS depressant use lead to addiction and substance use disorder?
Yes, use or misuse of prescription CNS depressants can lead to problem use, known as a *substance use disorder (SUD),* which takes the form of addiction in severe cases. Long-term use of prescription CNS depressants, even as prescribed by a doctor, can cause some people to develop a tolerance, which means that they need higher and/or more frequent doses of the drug to get the desired effects. A SUD develops when continued use of the drug leads to negative consequences such as health problems or failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home, but despite all that the drug use continues.

Those who have become addicted to a prescription CNS depressant and stop using the drug abruptly may experience a withdrawal. Withdrawal symptoms—which can begin as early as a few hours after the drug was last taken—include:

- seizures
- shakiness
- anxiety
- agitation
- insomnia
- overactive reflexes
- increased heart rate, blood pressure, and temperature with sweating
- hallucinations
- severe cravings

People addicted to prescription CNS depressants should not attempt to stop taking them on their own. Withdrawal symptoms from these drugs can be severe and—in the case of certain medications—potentially life-threatening.

How can people get treatment for prescription CNS depressant addiction?

There isn't a lot of research on treating people for addiction to prescription CNS depressants. However, people addicted to these medications should undergo medically supervised detoxification because the dosage they take should be tapered gradually. Counseling, either in an outpatient or inpatient program, can help people through this process. One type of counseling, cognitive-behavioral therapy, focuses on modifying the person's thinking, expectations, and behaviors while improving ways to cope with life's stresses. Cognitive-behavioral therapy has helped people successfully adapt to stop using benzodiazepines.

Often prescription CNS depressant misuse occurs along with the use of other drugs, such as alcohol or opioids. In those cases, the person should seek treatment that addresses the multiple addictions.

Points to Remember

- Prescription CNS depressants are medicines that can slow brain activity to treat anxiety and sleep disorders.
- Prescription CNS depressants act on the brain by increasing activity of GABA, a chemical that slows brain activity.

- People who start taking prescription CNS depressants usually feel sleepy and uncoordinated at first. They can also have poor concentration, confusion, lowered blood pressure, and slowed breathing.
- A person can overdose on prescription CNS depressants. Flumazenil (Romazicon®) can be used to treat benzodiazepine and sleep medicine overdoses. Body temperature, pulse, breathing, and blood pressure should be monitored while waiting for the drug to be eliminated.
- Prescription CNS depressant use or misuse can lead to a substance use disorder, which takes the form of addiction in severe cases, even when used as prescribed by a doctor.
- Withdrawal symptoms include: seizures; shakiness; anxiety; agitation; insomnia; overactive reflexes; increased heart rate, blood pressure, and temperature; hallucinations; and severe cravings.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Updated March 2018

N. Prescription Opioids

What are prescription opioids?

Opioids are a class of drugs naturally found in the opium poppy plant. Some prescription opioids are made from the plant directly, and others are made by scientists in labs using the same chemical structure. Opioids are often used as medicines because they contain chemicals that relax the body and can relieve pain. Prescription opioids are used mostly to treat moderate to severe pain, though some opioids can be used to treat coughing and diarrhea. Opioids can also make people feel very relaxed and "high" – which is why they are sometimes used for non-medical reasons. This can be dangerous because opioids can be highly addictive, and overdoses and death are common. Heroin is one of the world's most dangerous opioids, and is never used as a medicine in the United States.

Popular slang terms for opioids include Oxy, Percs, and Vikes.

What are common prescription opioids?

- hydrocodone (Vicodin®) oxycodone (OxyContin®, Percocet®)
- oxymorphone (Opana®)
- morphine (Kadian®, Avinza®)
- codeine
- fentanyl

How do people misuse prescription opioids?

Prescription opioids used for pain relief are generally safe when taken for a short time and as prescribed by a doctor, but they can be misused. People misuse prescription opioids by:

- taking the medicine in a way or dose other than prescribed
- taking someone else's prescription medicine
- taking the medicine for the effect it causes—to get high

When misusing a prescription opioid, a person can swallow the medicine in its normal form. Sometimes people crush pills or open capsules, dissolve the powder in water, and inject the liquid into a vein. Some also snort the powder.

How do prescription opioids affect the brain?

Opioids bind to and activate opioid receptors on cells located in many areas of the brain, spinal cord, and other organs in the body, especially those involved in feelings of pain and pleasure. When opioids attach to these receptors, they block pain signals sent from the brain to the body and release large amounts of dopamine throughout the body. This release can strongly reinforce the act of taking the drug, making the user want to repeat the experience.

What are some possible effects of prescription opioids on the brain and body?

In the short term, opioids can relieve pain and make people feel relaxed and happy. However, opioids can also have harmful effects, including:

- drowsiness
- confusion
- nausea
- constipation
- euphoria
- slowed breathing

Opioid misuse can cause slowed breathing, which can cause hypoxia, a condition that results when too little oxygen reaches the brain. Hypoxia can have short- and long-term psychological and neurological effects, including coma, permanent brain damage, or death. Researchers are also investigating the long-term effects of opioid addiction on the brain, including whether damage can be reversed.

What are the other health effects of opioid medications?

Older adults are at higher risk of accidental misuse or abuse because they typically have multiple prescriptions and chronic diseases, increasing the risk of drug-drug and drug-disease interactions, as well as a slowed metabolism that affects the breakdown of drugs.
Sharing drug injection equipment and having impaired judgment from drug use can increase the risk of contracting infectious diseases such as HIV and from unprotected sex.

Prescription Opioids and Heroin

Prescription opioids and heroin are chemically similar and can produce a similar high. In some places, heroin is cheaper and easier to get than prescription opioids, so some people switch to using heroin instead. Data from 2011 showed that an estimated 4 to 6 percent who misuse prescription opioids switch to heroin1,2,3 and about 80 percent of people who used heroin first misused prescription opioids.1,2,3 More recent data suggest that heroin is frequently the first opioid people use. In a study of those entering treatment for opioid use disorder, approximately one-third reported heroin as the first opioid they used regularly to get high.4

Can I take prescription opioids if I'm pregnant?

If a woman uses prescription opioids when she's pregnant, the baby could develop dependence and have withdrawal symptoms after birth. This is called neonatal abstinence syndrome, which can be treated with medicines. Use during pregnancy can also lead to miscarriage and low birth weight.

It can be difficult for a person with an opioid addiction to quit, but pregnant women who seek treatment have better outcomes than those who quit abruptly. Methadone and buprenorphine are the standard of care to treat opioid-dependent pregnant women. Methadone or buprenorphine maintenance combined with prenatal care and a comprehensive drug treatment program can improve many of the adverse outcomes associated with untreated opioid addiction. If a woman is unable to quit before becoming pregnant, treatment with methadone or buprenorphine during pregnancy improves the chances of having a healthier baby at birth.

In general, it is important to closely monitor women who are trying to quit drug use during pregnancy and to provide treatment as needed.

Can a person overdose on prescription opioids?

Yes, a person can overdose on prescription opioids. An opioid overdose occurs when a person uses enough of the drug to produce life-threatening symptoms or death. When people overdose on an opioid medication, their breathing often slows or stops. This can

decrease the amount of oxygen that reaches the brain, which can result in coma, permanent brain damage, or death.

How can an opioid overdose be treated?

If you suspect someone has overdosed, the most important step to take is to call 911 so he or she can receive immediate medical attention. Once medical personnel arrive, they will administer naloxone. Naloxone is a medicine that can treat an opioid overdose when given right away. It works by rapidly binding to opioid receptors and blocking the effects of opioid drugs. Naloxone is available as an injectable (needle) solution, a hand-held auto-injector (EVZIO®), and a nasal spray (NARCAN® Nasal Spray).

Some states have passed laws that allow pharmacists to dispense naloxone without a personal prescription. This allows friends, family, and others in the community to use the auto-injector and nasal spray versions of naloxone to save someone who is overdosing.

Tolerance vs. Dependence vs. Addiction

Long-term use of prescription opioids, even as prescribed by a doctor, can cause some people to develop **a tolerance**, which means that they need higher and/or more frequent doses of the drug to get the desired effects.

Drug **dependence** occurs with repeated use, causing the neurons to adapt so they only function normally in the presence of the drug. The absence of the drug causes several physiological reactions, ranging from mild in the case of caffeine, to potentially life threatening, such as with heroin. Some chronic pain patients are dependent on opioids and require medical support to stop taking the drug.

Drug **addiction** is a chronic disease characterized by compulsive, or uncontrollable, drug seeking and use despite harmful consequences and long-lasting changes in the brain. The changes can result in harmful behaviors by those who misuse drugs, whether prescription or illicit drugs.

Can use of prescription opioids lead to addiction?

Yes, repeated misuse of prescription opioids can lead to a substance use disorder (SUD), a medical illness which ranges from mild to severe and from temporary to chronic. Addiction is the most severe form of an SUD. An SUD develops when continued misuse of the drug changes the brain and causes health problems and failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home.

People addicted to an opioid medication who stop using the drug can have severe withdrawal symptoms that begin as early as a few hours after the drug was last taken. These symptoms include:

- muscle and bone pain
- sleep problems
- diarrhea and vomiting
- cold flashes with goose bumps
- uncontrollable leg movements
- severe cravings

These symptoms can be extremely uncomfortable and are the reason many people find it so difficult to stop using opioids. There are medicines being developed to help with the withdrawal process, and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved sale of a device, NSS-2 Bridge, that can help ease withdrawal symptoms. The NSS-2 Bridge device is a small electrical nerve stimulator placed behind the person's ear, that can be used for up to five days during the acute withdrawal phase. There are also medicines being developed to help with the withdrawal process. The FDA approved lofexidine, a non-opioid medicine designed to reduce opioid withdrawal symptoms.

What type of treatment can people get for addiction to prescription opioids?

A range of treatments including medicines and behavioral therapies are effective in helping people with opioid addiction.

Two medicines, buprenorphine and methadone, work by binding to the same opioid receptors in the brain as the opioid medicines, reducing cravings and withdrawal symptoms. Another medicine, naltrexone, blocks opioid receptors and prevents opioid drugs from having an effect.

Behavioral therapies for addiction to prescription opioids help people modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use, increase healthy life skills, and persist with other forms of treatment, such as medication. Some examples include, cognitive behavioral therapy which helps modify the patient's drug use expectations and behaviors, and also effectively manage triggers and stress. Multidimensional family therapy, developed for adolescents with drug use problems, addresses a range of personal and family influences on one's drug use patterns and is designed to improve overall functioning. These behavioral treatment approaches have proven effective, especially when used along with medicines. Read more about drug addiction treatment in our *Treatment Approaches for Drug Addiction DrugFacts.*

Points to Remember

- Prescription opioids are used mostly to treat moderate to severe pain, though some opioids can be used to treat coughing and diarrhea.
- People misuse prescription opioids by taking the medicine in a way other than prescribed, taking someone else's prescription, or taking the medicine to get high. When misusing a prescription opioid, a person may swallow, inject, or snort the drug.
- Opioids bind to and activate opioid receptors on cells located in the brain, spinal cord, and other organs in the body, especially those involved in feelings of pain and pleasure, and can strongly reinforce the act of taking the drug, making the user want to repeat the experience.
- People who use prescription opioids can feel relaxed and happy, but also experience drowsiness, confusion, nausea, constipation, and slowed breathing.
- Prescription opioids have effects similar to heroin. While prescription opioid misuse is a risk factor for starting heroin use, only a small fraction of people who misuse opioid pain relievers switch to heroin.
- A person can overdose on prescription opioids. Naloxone is a medicine that can treat an opioid overdose when given right away.
- Prescription opioid use, even when used as prescribed by a doctor can lead to a substance use disorder, which takes the form of addiction in severe cases. Withdrawal symptoms include muscle and bone pain, sleep problems, diarrhea and vomiting, and severe cravings.
- A range of treatments including medicines and behavioral therapies are effective in helping people with an opioid use disorder.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated June 2019

P. Prescription Stimulants

What are prescription stimulants?

Prescription stimulants are medicines generally used to treat attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and narcolepsy—uncontrollable episodes of deep sleep. They increase alertness, attention, and energy.

What are common prescription stimulants?

• dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine®)
• dextroamphetamine/amphetamine combination product (Adderall®)
• methylphenidate (Ritalin®, Concerta®).

Popular slang terms for prescription stimulants include Speed, Uppers, and Vitamin R.

How do people use and misuse prescription stimulants?

Most prescription stimulants come in tablet, capsule, or liquid form, which a person takes by mouth. Misuse of a prescription stimulant means:

- taking medicine in a way or dose other than prescribed
- taking someone else's medicine
- taking medicine only for the effect it causes—to get high

When misusing a prescription stimulant, people can swallow the medicine in its normal form. Alternatively, they can crush tablets or open the capsules, dissolve the powder in water, and inject the liquid into a vein. Some can also snort or smoke the powder.

Do Prescription Stimulants Make You Smarter?

Some people take prescription stimulants to try to improve mental performance. Teens and college students sometimes misuse them to try to get better grades, and older adults misuse them to try to improve their memory. Taking prescription stimulants for reasons other than treating ADHD or narcolepsy could lead to harmful health effects, such as addiction, heart problems, or psychosis.

How do prescription stimulants affect the brain and body?

Prescription stimulants increase the activity of the brain chemicals *dopamine* and *norepinephrine*. Dopamine is involved in the reinforcement of rewarding behaviors. Norepinephrine affects blood vessels, blood pressure and heart rate, blood sugar, and breathing.

Short-Term Effects

People who use prescription stimulants report feeling a "rush" (euphoria) along with the following:

- increased blood pressure and heart rate
- increased breathing
- decreased blood flow
- increased blood sugar
- opened-up breathing passages

At high doses, prescription stimulants can lead to a dangerously high body temperature, an irregular heartbeat, heart failure, and seizures.

What are the other health effects of prescription stimulants?

Repeated misuse of prescription stimulants, even within a short period, can cause psychosis, anger, or paranoia. If the drug is injected, it is important to note that sharing drug injection equipment and having impaired judgment from drug misuse can increase the risk of contracting infectious diseases such as HIV and hepatitis.

Can a person overdose on prescription stimulants?

Yes, a person can overdose on prescription stimulants. An overdose occurs when the person uses enough of the drug to produce a life-threatening reaction or death.

When people overdose on a prescription stimulant, they most commonly experience several different symptoms, including restlessness, tremors, overactive reflexes, rapid breathing, confusion, aggression, hallucinations, panic states, abnormally increased fever, muscle pains and weakness.

They also may have heart problems, including an irregular heartbeat leading to a heart attack, nerve problems that can lead to a seizure, abnormally high or low blood pressure, and circulation failure. Stomach issues may include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal cramps. In addition, an overdose can result in convulsions, coma, and fatal poisoning.

Risk of Later Substance Use

Some people may be concerned about later substance misuse in children and teens who've been prescribed stimulant drugs to treat ADHD. Studies so far have not shown a difference in later substance use in young people with ADHD treated with prescription stimulants compared with those who didn't receive such treatment. This suggests that treatment with ADHD medication does not positively or negatively affect a person’s risk of developing problem use.

How can a prescription stimulant overdose be treated?

Because prescription stimulant overdose often leads to a heart attack or seizure, the most important step to take is to call 911 so a person who has overdosed can receive immediate medical attention. First responders and emergency room doctors try to treat the overdose with the intent of restoring blood flow to the heart and stopping the seizure with care or with medications if necessary.

Can prescription stimulant use lead to substance use disorder and addiction?

Yes, misuse of prescription stimulants can lead to a *substance use disorder* (SUD), which takes the form of addiction in severe cases. Long-term use of stimulants, even as prescribed by a doctor, can cause a person to develop a tolerance, which means that he or she needs higher and/or more frequent doses of the drug to get the desired effects. An SUD develops when continued use of the drug causes issues, such as health problems and failure to meet responsibilities at work, school, or home. Concerns about use should be discussed with a health care provider.

If a person develops an SUD and stops use of the prescription stimulant, he or she can experience *withdrawal*. Withdrawal symptoms can include:

- fatigue
- depression
- sleep problems

How can people get treatment for prescription stimulant addiction?

Behavioral therapies, including cognitive-behavioral therapy and contingency management (motivational incentives), can be effective in helping to treat people with prescription stimulant addiction. Cognitive-behavioral therapy helps modify the patient's drug-use expectations and behaviors, and it can effectively manage triggers and stress. Contingency management provides vouchers or small cash rewards for positive behaviors such as staying drug-free.

Points to Remember

- Prescription stimulants are medicines used to treat ADHD and narcolepsy.
- Most prescription stimulants come in tablet, capsule, or liquid form, which a person takes by mouth. When misusing a prescription stimulant, a person can swallow, snort, smoke, or inject the drug.
- Prescription stimulants increase the activity of the brain chemicals dopamine and norepinephrine.
- Prescription stimulants increase alertness, attention, and energy. Their misuse, including overdose, can also lead to psychosis, anger, paranoia, heart, nerve, and stomach problems. These issues could lead to a heart attack or seizures.
- Prescription stimulant misuse can lead to a substance use disorder, which takes the form of addiction in severe cases, even when used as prescribed by a doctor. Withdrawal symptoms include fatigue, depression, and sleep problems. Concerns about use should be discussed with a health care provider.
- Behavioral therapies can be effective in helping people stop prescription stimulant misuse, including cognitive-behavioral therapy and contingency management.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated June 2018

Q. Synthetic Cannabinoids (K2/Spice)

What are synthetic cannabinoids?

Synthetic cannabinoids are human-made mind-altering chemicals that are either sprayed on dried, shredded plant material so they can be smoked or sold as liquids to be vaporized and inhaled in e-cigarettes and other devices. These products are also known as herbal or liquid incense.

These chemicals are called *cannabinoids* because they are similar to chemicals found in the marijuana plant. Because of this similarity, synthetic cannabinoids are sometimes misleadingly called "synthetic marijuana" (or "fake weed"), and they are often marketed as safe, legal alternatives to that drug. In fact, they are not safe and may affect the brain much more powerfully than marijuana; their actual effects can be unpredictable and, in some cases, more dangerous or even life-threatening.

Synthetic cannabinoids are part of a group of drugs called new psychoactive substances (NPS). NPS are unregulated mind-altering substances that have become newly available on the market and are intended to produce the same effects as illegal drugs. Some of these substances may have been around for years but have reentered the market in altered chemical forms, or due to renewed popularity.

False Advertising

Synthetic cannabinoid products are often labeled "not for human consumption." Labels also often claim that they contain "natural" material taken from a variety of plants. However, the only parts of these products that are natural are the dried plant materials. Chemical tests show that the active, mind-altering ingredients are cannabinoid compounds made in laboratories.

Manufacturers sell these products in colorful foil packages and plastic bottles to attract consumers. They market these products under a wide variety of specific brand names. Hundreds of brands now exist, including K2, Spice, Joker, Black Mamba, Kush, and Kronic.

For several years, synthetic cannabinoid mixtures have been easy to buy in drug paraphernalia shops, novelty stores, gas stations, and over the internet. Because the chemicals used in them have no medical benefit and a high potential for abuse, authorities have made it illegal to sell, buy, or possess some of these chemicals. However, manufacturers try to sidestep these laws by changing the chemical formulas in their mixtures.

Easy access and the belief that synthetic cannabinoid products are "natural" and therefore harmless, have likely contributed to their use among young people. Another reason for their continued use is that standard drug tests cannot easily detect many of the chemicals used in these products.

How do people use synthetic cannabinoids?
The most common way to use synthetic cannabinoids is to smoke the dried plant material. Users also mix the sprayed plant material with marijuana or brew it as tea. Other users buy synthetic cannabinoid products as liquids to vaporize in e-cigarettes.

How do synthetic cannabinoids affect the brain?
Synthetic cannabinoids act on the same brain cell receptors as THC (*delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol)*, the mind-altering ingredient in marijuana.

So far, there have been few scientific studies of the effects of synthetic cannabinoids on the human brain, but researchers do know that some of them bind more strongly than marijuana to the cell receptors affected by THC, and can produce much stronger effects. The resulting health effects can be unpredictable and dangerous.

Because the chemical composition of many synthetic cannabinoid products is unknown and may change from batch to batch, these products are likely to contain substances that cause dramatically different effects than the user might expect.

Synthetic cannabinoid users report some effects similar to those produced by marijuana:

- elevated mood
- relaxation
- altered *perception*—awareness of surrounding objects and conditions
- symptoms of *psychosis*—delusional or disordered thinking detached from reality

Psychotic effects include:

- extreme anxiety
- confusion
- *paranoia*—extreme and unreasonable distrust of others
- *hallucinations*—sensations and images that seem real though they are not

What are some other health effects of synthetic cannabinoids?
People who have used synthetic cannabinoids and have been taken to emergency rooms have shown severe effects including:

- rapid heart rate
- vomiting
- violent behavior
- suicidal thoughts

Synthetic cannabinoids can also raise blood pressure and cause reduced blood supply to the heart, as well as kidney damage and seizures. Use of these drugs is associated with a rising number of deaths.

Are synthetic cannabinoids addictive?
Yes, synthetic cannabinoids can be addictive. Regular users trying to quit may have the following withdrawal symptoms:

- headaches
- anxiety
- depression
- irritability

Behavioral therapies and medications have not specifically been tested for treatment of addiction to these products. Health care providers should screen patients for possible co-occurring mental health conditions.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
This page was last updated February 2018

R. Synthetic Cathinones (Bath Salts)

What are synthetic cathinones?

Synthetic cathinones, more commonly known as "bath salts," are human-made stimulants chemically related to cathinone, a substance found in the khat plant. Khat is a shrub grown in East Africa and southern Arabia, where some people chew its leaves for their mild stimulant

effects. Human-made versions of cathinone can be much stronger than the natural product and, in some cases, very dangerous.[53]

Synthetic cathinones usually take the form of a white or brown crystal-like powder and are sold in small plastic or foil packages labeled "not for human consumption." They can be labeled as “bath salts,” "plant food," "jewelry cleaner," or "phone screen cleaner."

Synthetic cathinones are part of a group of drugs that concern public health officials called "new psychoactive substances" (NPS). NPS are unregulated psychoactive mind-altering substances with no legitimate medical use and are made to copy the effects of controlled substances. They are introduced and reintroduced into the market in quick succession to dodge or hinder law enforcement efforts to address their manufacture and sale.

Synthetic cathinones are marketed as cheap substitutes for other stimulants such as amphetamines and cocaine. Products sold as Molly often contain synthetic cathinones instead of MDMA (see "Synthetic Cathinones and Molly (Ecstasy)").

People can buy synthetic cathinones online and in drug paraphernalia stores under a variety of brand names, which include:

- Bliss
- Cloud Nine
- Lunar Wave
- Vanilla Sky
- White Lightning

In Name Only

Synthetic cathinone products marketed as "bath salts" should not be confused with products such as Epsom salts that people use during bathing. These bathing products have no mind-altering ingredients.

How do people use synthetic cathinones?

People typically swallow, snort, smoke, or inject synthetic cathinones.

How do synthetic cathinones affect the brain?

[53] Baumann MH. Awash in a sea of “bath salts”: implications for biomedical research and public health. *Addict Abingdon Engl*. 2014;109(10):1577-1579. doi:10.1111/add.12601.

Much is still unknown about how synthetic cathinones affect the human brain. Researchers do know that synthetic cathinones are chemically similar to drugs like amphetamines, cocaine, and MDMA.

A study found that *3,4-methylenedioxypyrovalerone* (MDPV), a common synthetic cathinone, affects the brain in a manner similar to cocaine, but is at least 10 times more powerful. MDPV is the most common synthetic cathinone found in the blood and urine of patients admitted to emergency departments after taking "bath salts."[54]

Synthetic cathinones can produce effects that include:

- paranoia—extreme and unreasonable distrust of others
- hallucinations—experiencing sensations and images that seem real but are not
- increased friendliness
- increased sex drive
- panic attacks
- excited delirium—extreme agitation and violent behavior

Synthetic Cathinones and Molly (Ecstasy)

Molly—slang for "molecular"—refers to drugs that are supposed to be the pure crystal powder form of MDMA.

Usually purchased in capsules, Molly has become more popular in the past few years. Some people use Molly to avoid additives such as caffeine, methamphetamine, and other harmful drugs commonly found in MDMA pills sold as Ecstasy. But those who take what they think is "pure" Molly may be exposing themselves to the same risks.

Law enforcement sources have reported that Molly capsules contain harmful substances including synthetic cathinones. For example, hundreds of Molly capsules tested in two South Florida crime labs in 2012 contained methylone, a dangerous synthetic cathinone.

What are other health effects of synthetic cathinones?

[54] . Baumann MH, Partilla JS, Lehner KR, et al. Powerful Cocaine-Like Actions of 3,4-Methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV), a Principal Constituent of Psychoactive “Bath Salts” Products. *Neuropsychopharmacology*. 2013;38(4):552-562. doi:10.1038/npp.2012.204.

Raised heart rate, blood pressure, and chest pain are some other health effects of synthetic cathinones. People who experience delirium often suffer from dehydration, breakdown of skeletal muscle tissue, and kidney failure.

The worst outcomes are associated with snorting or needle injection. Intoxication from synthetic cathinones has resulted in death.

Are synthetic cathinones addictive?

Yes, synthetic cathinones can be addictive. Animal studies show that rats will compulsively self-administer synthetic cathinones. Human users have reported that the drugs trigger intense, uncontrollable urges to use the drug again. Taking synthetic cathinones can cause strong withdrawal symptoms that include:

- depression
- anxiety
- tremors
- problems sleeping
- paranoia

How can people get treatment for addiction to synthetic cathinones?

Behavioral therapy can be used to treat addiction to synthetic cathinones. Examples include:

- cognitive-behavioral therapy
- contingency management, or motivational incentives—providing rewards to patients who remain substance free
- motivational enhancement therapy
- behavioral treatments geared to teens

As with all addictions, health care providers should screen for co-occurring mental health conditions. While there are no FDA-approved medicines for synthetic cathinone addiction, there are medicines available for common co-occurring conditions.

Points to Remember

- Synthetic cathinones, more commonly known as "bath salts," are drugs that contain one or more human-made chemicals related to cathinone, a stimulant found in the khat plant.
- Synthetic cathinones are marketed as cheap substitutes for other stimulants such as methamphetamine and cocaine. Products sold as Molly (MDMA) can contain synthetic cathinones instead.

- People typically swallow, snort, smoke, or inject synthetic cathinones.
- Much is still unknown about how the chemicals in synthetic cathinones affect the human brain.
- Synthetic cathinones can cause:
    - paranoia
    - increased sociability
    - increased sex drive
    - hallucinations
    - panic attacks
- Intoxication from synthetic cathinones has resulted in death.
- Synthetic cathinones can be addictive.
- Behavioral therapy may be used to treat addiction to synthetic cathinones.
- No medications are currently available to treat addiction to synthetic cathinones.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
This page was last updated February 2018

S. Vaping Devices (Electronic Cigarettes)

What are vaping devices?

Vaping devices, also known as e-cigarettes, e-vaporizers, or electronic nicotine delivery systems, are battery-operated devices that people use to inhale an aerosol, which typically contains nicotine (though not always), flavorings, and other chemicals. They can resemble traditional tobacco cigarettes (*cig-a-likes)*, cigars, or pipes, or even everyday items like pens or USB memory sticks. Other devices, such as those with fillable tanks, may look different. Regardless of their design and appearance, these devices generally operate in a similar manner and are made of similar components. More than 460 different e-cigarette brands are currently on the market.[55] Some common nicknames for e-cigarettes are:

- e-cigs
- e-hookahs
- hookah pens
- vapes
- vape pens
- mods (customizable, more powerful vaporizers)

[55] . Zhu S-H, Sun JY, Bonnevie E, et al. Four hundred and sixty brands of e-cigarettes and counting: Implications for product regulation. *Tob Control*. 2014;23 Suppl 3:iii3-iii9. doi:10.1136/tobaccocontrol-2014-051670

How do vaping devices work?

Most e-cigarettes consist of four different components, including:

- a cartridge, reservoir or pod, which holds a liquid solution (*e-liquid* or *e-juice*) containing varying amounts of nicotine, flavorings, and other chemicals
- a heating element (atomizer)
- a power source (usually a battery)
- a mouthpiece that the person uses to inhale

In many e-cigarettes, puffing activates the battery-powered heating device, which vaporizes the liquid in the cartridge. The person then inhales the resulting aerosol or vapor (called *vaping*).

Vaping Among Teens

Vaping devices are popular among teens and are now the most commonly used form of nicotine among youth in the United States. Some research shows that many teens do not even realize that vaping cartridges contain nicotine, and assume the pods contain only flavoring. The easy availability of these devices, alluring advertisements, various e-liquid flavors, and the belief that they're safer than cigarettes have helped make them appealing to this age group. In addition, they are easy to hide from teachers and parents because they do not leave behind the stench of tobacco cigarettes and are often disguised as flash drives. Further, a study of high school students found that one in four teens reported using e-cigarettes for *dripping*, a practice in which people produce and inhale vapors by placing e-liquid drops directly onto heated atomizer coils. Teens reported the following reasons for dripping: to create thicker vapor (63.5 percent), to improve flavors (38.7 percent), and to produce a stronger throat hit—a pleasurable feeling that the vapor creates when it causes the throat to contract (27.7 percent).[56] More research is needed on the risks of this practice.

In addition to the unknown health effects, early evidence suggests that vaping might serve as an introductory product for preteens and teens who then go on to use other nicotine products, including cigarettes, which are known to cause disease and premature death. A study showed that students who had used e-cigarettes by the time they started 9th grade were more likely than others to start smoking cigarettes and other smokable tobacco products within the next year.[57] Another study supports these findings, showing that high

[56] Krishnan-Sarin S, Morean M, Kong G, et al. E-Cigarettes and "dripping" among high-school youth. *Pediatrics.* 2017; 139(3). doi: https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2016-3224

[57] Leventhal AM, Strong DR, Kirkpatrick MG, et al. Association of electronic cigarette use with initiation of combustible tobacco product smoking in early adolescence. *JAMA*. 2015;314(7):700-707. doi:10.1001/jama.2015.8950

school students who used e-cigarettes in the last month were about 7 times more likely to report that they smoked cigarettes when asked approximately six months later, as compared to students who said they didn't use e-cigarettes. Notably, the reverse was not true—students who said they smoked cigarettes were no more likely to report use of e-cigarettes when asked approximately six months later. Like the previous study, these results suggest that teens using e-cigarettes are at a greater risk for smoking cigarettes in the future.[58] Another study has shown an association between e-cigarette smoking and progression to smoking actual cigarettes.[59] This study suggests that vaping nicotine might actually encourage cigarette smoking in adolescents.

Additionally, a study of adult smokers in Europe found those who vaped nicotine were less like to have stopped smoking than those who did not. Those who used e-cigarettes also smoked more cigarettes than those who didn't.[60] In another study of more than 800 people who said they vaped to help them quit traditional cigarette smoking, only nine percent reported having quit when asked a year later.[61] However, more research is still needed to understand if experimenting with e-cigarettes leads to regular use of smokable tobacco. Under U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulations designed to protect the health of young Americans, minors can no longer buy e-cigarettes in stores or online (see "Government Regulation of E-cigarettes"). The FDA now regulates the manufacture, import, packaging, labeling, advertising, promotion, sale, and distribution of e-cigarettes. This includes components and parts of e-cigarettes but excludes accessories.

How does vaping affect the brain?

The nicotine in e-liquids is readily absorbed from the lungs into the bloodstream when a person vapes an e-cigarette. Upon entering the blood, nicotine stimulates the adrenal glands to release the hormone epinephrine (adrenaline). Epinephrine stimulates the central nervous system and increases blood pressure, breathing, and heart rate. As with most addictive substances, nicotine activates the brain's reward circuits and also increases levels of a chemical messenger in the brain called *dopamine*, which reinforces rewarding behaviors. Pleasure caused by nicotine's interaction with the reward circuit motivates some people to use nicotine again and again, despite risks to their health and well-being.

---

[58] Bold KW, Kong G, Camenga DR, et al. Trajectories of e-cigarette and conventional cigarette use among youth. *Pediatrics*. December 2017:e20171832. doi:10.1542/peds.2017-1832

[59] Chaffee BW, Watkins SL, Glantz SA. Electronic cigarette use and progression from experimentation to established smoking. *Pediatrics*. March 2018:e20173594. doi:10.1542/peds.2017-3594

[60] Kulik MC, Lisha NE, Glantz SA. E-cigarettes associated with depressed smoking cessation: A cross-sectional study of 28 European Union countries. *Am J Prev Med*. 2018;54(4):603-609. doi:10.1016/j.amepre.2017.12.017

[61] . Weaver SR, Huang J, Pechacek TF, Heath JW, Ashley DL, Eriksen MP. Are electronic nicotine delivery systems helping cigarette smokers quit? Evidence from a prospective cohort study of U.S. adult smokers, 2015–2016. *PLOS ONE*. 2018;13(7):e0198047. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0198047

What are the health effects of vaping? Is it safer than smoking tobacco cigarettes?
Research so far suggests that vaping devices might be less harmful than combustible cigarettes when people who regularly smoke switch to them as a complete replacement. But nicotine in any form is a highly addictive drug. Research suggests it can even prime the brain's reward system, putting vapers at risk for addiction to other drugs.

Also, e-cigarette use exposes the lungs to a variety of chemicals, including those added to e-liquids, and other chemicals produced during the heating/vaporizing process.10 A study of some e-cigarette products found the vapor contains known carcinogens and toxic chemicals, as well as potentially toxic metal nanoparticles from the device itself. The study showed that the e-liquids of certain cig-a-like brands contain high levels of nickel and chromium, which may come from the nichrome heating coils of the vaporizing device. Cig-a-likes may also contain low levels of cadmium, a toxic metal also found in cigarette smoke that can cause breathing problems and disease.11 More research is needed on the health consequences of repeated exposure to these chemicals. There are also reports of lung illnesses and deaths related to inhalation of certain vaping oils into the lungs, which have no way to filter out toxic ingredients.

Reports of Deaths Related to Vaping
The Food and Drug Administration has alerted the public to thousands of reports of serious lung illnesses associated with vaping, including dozens of deaths. They are working with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to investigate the cause of these illnesses. Many of the suspect products tested by the states or federal health officials have been identified as vaping products containing THC, the main psychotropic ingredient in marijuana. Some of the patients reported a mixture of THC and nicotine; and some reported vaping nicotine alone. While the CDC and FDA continue to investigate possible other contributing substances, CDC has identified a thickening agent—Vitamin E acetate—as a chemical of concern among people with e-cigarette or vaping associated lung injuries. They recommend that people should not use any product containing Vitamin E acetate, or any vaping products containing THC; particularly from informal sources like friends, family, or in-person and online dealers. They also warn against modifying any products purchased in stores, or using any vaping products bought on the street. People, including health professionals, should report any adverse effects of vaping products. The CDC has posted an information page for consumers.

Government Regulation of E-cigarettes

In 2016, the FDA established a rule for e-cigarettes and their liquid solutions. Because e-cigarettes contain nicotine derived from tobacco, they are now subject to government regulation as tobacco products, including the requirement that both in-store and online purchasers be at least 18 years of age (see "E-cigarette Use in Teens").

Health Effects for Teens

The teen years are critical for brain development, which continues into young adulthood. Young people who use nicotine products in any form, including e-cigarettes, are uniquely at risk for long-lasting effects. Because nicotine affects the development of the brain's reward system, continued nicotine vaping can not only lead to nicotine addiction, but it also can make other drugs such as cocaine and methamphetamine more pleasurable to a teen's developing brain.

Nicotine also affects the development of brain circuits that control attention and learning. Other risks include mood disorders and permanent problems with impulse control—failure to fight an urge or impulse that may harm oneself or others.

Can vaping help a person quit smoking?

Some people believe e-cigarettes may help lower nicotine cravings in those who are trying to quit smoking. However, e-cigarettes are not an FDA-approved quit aid, and there is no conclusive scientific evidence on the effectiveness of vaping for long-term smoking cessation. It should be noted that there are seven FDA-approved quit aids that are proven safe and can be effective when used as directed.

Vaping nicotine has not been thoroughly evaluated in scientific studies. For now, not enough data exists on the safety of e-cigarettes, how the health effects compare to traditional cigarettes, and if they are helpful for people trying to quit smoking.

Points to Remember

- People vape with battery-operated devices used to inhale an aerosol, which can contain nicotine, marijuana, flavorings, and other chemicals. In many e-cigarettes, puffing activates the battery-powered heating device, which vaporizes the liquid in the cartridge or reservoir. The person then inhales the resulting aerosol or vapor (called *vaping*).
- Vaping is popular among teens. Under U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulations designed to protect the health of young Americans, minors can no longer buy e-cigarettes in stores or online.

- Nicotine stimulates the adrenal glands to release the hormone epinephrine (adrenaline) and increases the levels of a chemical messenger in the brain called *dopamine*. Pleasure caused by nicotine's interaction with the brain's reward system motivates some people to use nicotine again and again, despite possible risks to their health and well-being.
- Research so far suggests that vaping is less harmful than combustible cigarettes when people who regularly smoke switch to them as a complete replacement. But e-cigarettes can still damage a person's health.
- Vaping can lead to nicotine addiction and increased risk for addiction to other drugs.
- Vaping also exposes the lungs to a variety of chemicals, including those added to e-liquids, and other chemicals produced during the heating/vaporizing process.
- More research is needed to determine if vaping nicotine can be as effective as smoking cessation aids already approved by the FDA.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated December 2019

Chapter 3 – Effects of Drug Use

A. Comorbidity: Substance Use Disorders and Other Mental Illnesses

What is comorbidity?

Comorbidity describes two or more disorders or illnesses occurring in the same person. They can occur at the same time or one after the other. Comorbidity also implies interactions between the illnesses that can worsen the course of both.

Is drug addiction a mental illness?
Yes. Addiction changes the brain in fundamental ways, changing a person's normal needs and desires and replacing them with new priorities connected with seeking and using the drug. This results in compulsive behaviors that weaken the ability to control impulses, despite the negative consequences, and are similar to hallmarks of other mental illnesses.

How common are comorbid substance use disorders and other mental illnesses?
Many people who have a substance use disorder also develop other mental illnesses, just as many people who are diagnosed with mental illness are often diagnosed with a substance

use disorder. For example, about half of people who experience a mental illness will also experience a substance use disorder at some point in their lives and vice versa.[62] [63] Few studies have been done on comorbidity in children, but those that have been conducted suggest that youth with substance use disorders also have high rates of co-occurring mental illness, such as depression and anxiety.

Why do these disorders often co-occur?

Although substance use disorders commonly occur with other mental illnesses, this does not mean that one caused the other, even if one appeared first. In fact, establishing which came first or why can be difficult. However, research suggests three possibilities for this common co-occurrence:

- **Common risk factors can contribute to both mental illness and substance use disorders.** Research suggests that there are many genes that can contribute to the risk of developing both a substance use disorder and a mental illness. For example, some people have a specific gene that can make them at increased risk of mental illness as an adult, if they frequently used marijuana as a child. A gene can also influence how a person responds to a drug – whether or not using the drug makes them feel good. Environmental factors, such as stress or trauma, can cause genetic changes that are passed down through generations and may contribute to the development of mental illnesses or a substance use disorder.
- **Mental illnesses can contribute to drug use and substance use disorders.** Some mental health conditions have been identified as risk factors for developing a substance use disorder.3 For example, some research suggests that people with mental illness may use drugs or alcohol as a form of self-medication.4 Although some drugs may help with mental illness symptoms, sometimes this can also make the symptoms worse. Additionally, when a person develops a mental illness, brain changes may enhance the rewarding effects of substances, predisposing the person to continue using the substance.4
- **Substance use and addiction can contribute to the development of mental illness.** Substance use may change the brain in ways that make a person more likely to develop a mental illness.

How are these comorbid conditions diagnosed and treated?

---

[62] . Ross S, Peselow E. Co-occurring psychotic and addictive disorders: neurobiology and diagnosis. *Clin Neuropharmacol*. 2012;35(5):235-243. doi:10.1097/WNF.0b013e318261e193

[63] . Kelly TM, Daley DC. Integrated Treatment of Substance Use and Psychiatric Disorders. *Soc Work Public Health*. 2013;28(0):388-406. doi:10.1080/19371918.2013.774673

The high rate of comorbidity between substance use disorders and other mental illnesses calls for a comprehensive approach that identifies and evaluates both. Accordingly, anyone seeking help for either substance use, misuse, or addiction or another mental disorder should be evaluated for both and treated accordingly.

Several behavioral therapies have shown promise for treating comorbid conditions. These approaches can be tailored to patients according to age, the specific drug misused, and other factors. They can be used alone or in combinations with medications. Some effective behavioral therapies for treating comorbid conditions include:

- Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) helps to change harmful beliefs and behaviors.
- Dialectical behavioral therapy (DBT) was designed specifically to reduce self-harm behaviors including suicide attempts, thoughts, or urges; cutting; and drug use.
- Assertive community treatment (ACT) emphasizes outreach to the community and an individualized approach to treatment.
- Therapeutic communities (TC) are a common form of long-term residential treatment that focus on the "resocialization" of the person.
- Contingency management (CM) gives vouchers or rewards to people who practice healthy behaviors.
- Effective medications exist for treating opioid, alcohol, and nicotine addiction and for alleviating the symptoms of many other mental disorders, yet most have not been well studied in comorbid populations. Some medications may benefit multiple problems. For example, bupropion is approved for treating both depression (Wellbutrin®) and nicotine dependence (Zyban®). More research is needed, however, to better understand how these medications work, particularly when combined in patients with comorbidities.

Points to Remember

- Comorbidity describes two or more conditions appearing in a person. The conditions can occur at the same time or one right after the other.
- Comorbid substance use disorder and mental illnesses are common, with about half of people who have one condition also having the other.
- Substance use disorders and mental illnesses have many of the same risk factors. Additionally, having a mental illness may predispose someone to develop a substance use disorder and vice versa.
- Treatment for comorbid illnesses should focus on both mental illness and substance use disorders together, rather than one or the other.

- Effective behavioral treatments and medication exist to treat mental illnesses and addiction.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
This page was last updated August 2018.

B. Drug Use and Viral Infections (HIV, Hepatitis)

What's the relationship between drug use and viral infections?

People who engage in drug use or high-risk behaviors associated with drug use put themselves at risk for contracting or transmitting viral infections such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), or hepatitis. This is because viruses spread through blood or other body fluids. It happens primarily in two ways: (1) when people inject drugs and share needles or other drug equipment and (2) when drugs impair judgment and people have unprotected sex with an infected partner. This can happen with both men and women.

Drug use and addiction have been inseparably linked with HIV/AIDS since AIDS was first identified as a disease. According to the CDC, one in 10 HIV diagnoses occur among people who inject drugs. In 2016, injection drug use (IDU) contributed to nearly 20 percent of recorded HIV cases among men—more than 150,000 patients. Among females, 21 percent (about 50,000) of HIV cases were attributed to IDU. Additionally, women who become infected with a virus can pass it to their baby during pregnancy, regardless of their drug use. They can also pass HIV to the baby through breastmilk.

What is HIV/AIDS?

HIV stands for *human immunodeficiency virus*. This virus infects the body's immune cells, called CD4 cells (T cells), which are needed to fight infections. HIV lowers the number of these T cells in the immune system, making it harder for the body to fight off infections and disease. *Acquired immune deficiency syndrome* (AIDS), is the final stage of an HIV infection when the body is unable to fend off disease. A person with a healthy immune system has a T cell count between 500 and 1,600.

Being infected with HIV does not automatically mean that it will progress to AIDS. A patient is diagnosed with AIDS when identified with one or more infections and a T cell count of less than 200.

More than 1.1 million people in the United States live with an HIV infection, with an estimated 162,500 who are unaware of their condition. While there are medicines that help prevent the transmission and spread of HIV and its progression to AIDS, there is no vaccine yet developed for the virus, and there is no cure.

What is hepatitis?

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver and can cause painful swelling and irritation, most often caused by a family of viruses: A, B, C, D, and E. Each has its own way of spreading to other people and needs its own treatment. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) can spread through sharing needles and other drug equipment. Infections can also be transmitted through risky sexual behaviors linked to drug use, though this is not common with HCV.

Hepatitis can lead to cirrhosis—scarring of the liver—resulting in loss of liver function. It can also lead to liver cancer. In fact, HBV and HCV infections are the major risk factors for liver cancer in the United States.

There is a vaccine to prevent HBV infection and medicines to treat it. There are also medicines to treat HCV infection, but no vaccine. Some people recover from infection without treatment. Other people need to take medicine for the rest of their lives and be monitored for liver failure and cancer.

How does drug use affect symptoms and outcomes of a viral infection?

Drug use can worsen the progression of HIV and its symptoms, especially in the brain. Studies show that drugs can make it easier for HIV to enter the brain and cause greater nerve cell injury and problems with thinking, learning, and memory. Drug and alcohol use can also directly damage the liver, increasing risk for chronic liver disease and cancer among those infected with HBV or HCV.

How can people lessen the spread of viral infections?

People can reduce the risk of getting or passing on a viral infection by:

- **Not using drugs.** This decreases the chance of engaging in unsafe behavior, such as sharing drug-use equipment and having unprotected sex, which can lead to these infections.

•**Never sharing drug equipment.** However, if you inject drugs, never share needles or injection equipment. Many communities have syringe services programs (SSPs)where you can get free sterile needles and syringes and safely dispose of used ones. They can also refer you to substance use disorder treatment services and help you get tested for HIV and hepatitis. Contact your local health department or North American Syringe Exchange Network (NASEN)to find an SSP. Also, some pharmacies may sell needles without a prescription. Read more about safe disposal in the U.S. Food and Drug Administration fact sheet, Be Smart With Sharps.

•**Getting tested and treated for viral infection.** People who inject drugs should get tested for HIV, HBV, and HCV. Those who are infected may look and feel fine for years and may not even be aware of the infection. So, testing is needed to help prevent the spread of disease—whether or not you are among those most at risk or part of the general population. Get treatment if needed. Read more about HIV testing at the HIV.gov webpage, HIV Test Types. Read more about hepatitis in the CDC's factsheet, *Hepatitis C: Information on Testing and Diagnosis*.

•**Practicing safe sex every time.** People can reduce their chances of transmitting or getting HIV, HBV, and HCV by using a condom every time they have sex. This is true for those who use drugs and those in the general population.

•**Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP)for HIV**. PrEP is when people who are at significant risk for contracting HIV take a daily dose of HIV medications to prevent them from getting the infection. Research has shown that PrEP has been effective in reducing the risk of HIV infection in people who inject drugs.

•**Post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP)for HIV**. PEP is when people take antiretroviral medicines to prevent becoming infected after being potentially exposed to HIV. According to the CDC, PEP should be used within 72 hours after a recent possible exposure and only be used in emergency situations. If you think you've recently been exposed to HIV during sex, through sharing needles, or sexual assault, talk to your health care provider or an emergency room doctor about PEP right away. Read more about PEP in the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC's) factsheet, PEP 101.

•**Getting vaccinated for HBV.** If you live in the same household, have sexual contact with or share needles with a person with HBV, then you should be vaccinated to prevent transmission. Read more about the vaccine on the CDC's webpage, HepatitisB In-short.

•**Getting treatment for substance use disorder.** Talk with a counselor, doctor, or other health care provider about substance use disorder treatment, including medications if you have opioid use disorder.

Points to Remember

- People who engage in drug use or high-risk behaviors associated with drug use put themselves at risk for contracting or transmitting viral infections. This is because viruses spread through blood or other body fluids.
- The viral infections of greatest concern related to drug use are HIV and hepatitis.
- People can get or transmit a viral infection when they inject drugs and share needles or other drug equipment.
- Drugs also impair judgment and can cause people to make risky decisions, including having unprotected sex.
- Women who become infected with a virus can pass it to their baby during pregnancy or while breastfeeding, whether or not they use drugs.
- People can reduce their risk of getting or passing on a viral infection by not using drugs, taking PrEP if they are at high risk for infection, getting PEP if you've been exposed to HIV, getting tested for HIV and HCV, consistently practicing safer sex, getting the HBV vaccine, and getting treatment for drug use.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. This page was last updated July 2019.

C. Drugged Driving

Drugged driving is driving a vehicle while impaired due to the intoxicating effects of recent drug use. It can make driving a car unsafe—just like driving after drinking alcohol. Drugged driving puts the driver, passengers, and others who share the road at serious risk.

Why is drugged driving dangerous?

The effects of specific drugs on driving skills differ depending on how they act in the brain. For example, marijuana can slow reaction time, impair judgment of time and distance, and decrease coordination. Drivers who have used cocaine or methamphetamine can be aggressive and reckless when driving. Certain kinds of prescription medicines, including benzodiazepines and opioids, can cause drowsiness, dizziness, and impair cognitive functioning (thinking and judgment). All of these effects can lead to vehicle crashes.

Research studies have shown negative effects of marijuana on drivers, including an increase in lane weaving, poor reaction time, and altered attention to the road. Use of alcohol with marijuana makes drivers more impaired, causing even more lane weaving. Some studies report that opioids can cause drowsiness and impair thinking and judgment. Other studies

have found that being under the influence opioids while driving can double your risk of having a crash.

It is difficult to determine how specific drugs affect driving because people tend to mix various substances, including alcohol. But we do know that even small amounts of some drugs can have a measurable effect. As a result, some states have zero-tolerance laws for drugged driving. This means a person can face charges for driving under the influence (DUI) if there is *any* amount of drug in the blood or urine. Many states are waiting to develop laws until research can better define blood levels that indicate impairment, such as those they use with alcohol.

How many people take drugs and drive?

According to the 2017 National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH), in 2017, 21.4 million people aged 16 or older drove under the influence of alcohol in the past year and 12.8 million drove under the influence of illicit drugs.

The survey also showed that men are more likely than women to drive under the influence of drugs or alcohol. A higher percentage of adults aged 21 to 25 drive after taking drugs or drinking than do young adults aged 16 to 20 or adults 26 or older.

Which drugs are linked to drugged driving?

After alcohol, marijuana is the drug most often found in the blood of drivers involved in crashes. Tests for detecting marijuana in drivers measure the level of *delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol* (THC), marijuana's mind-altering ingredient, in the blood. But the role that marijuana plays in crashes is often unclear. THC can be detected in body fluids for days or even weeks after use, and it is often combined with alcohol. The vehicle crash risk associated with marijuana in combination with alcohol, cocaine, or benzodiazepines appears to be greater than that for each drug by itself.

Several studies have shown that drivers with THC in their blood were roughly twice as likely to be responsible for a deadly crash or be killed than drivers who hadn't used drugs or alcohol.

However, a large NHTSA study found no significant increased crash risk traceable to marijuana after controlling for drivers' age, gender, race, and presence of alcohol. More research is needed.

Along with marijuana, prescription drugs are also commonly linked to drugged driving crashes. In 2016, 19.7 percent of drivers who drove while under the influence tested positive for some type of opioid.

How often does drugged driving cause crashes?

It's hard to measure how many crashes are caused by drugged driving. This is because:

- a good roadside test for drug levels in the body doesn't yet exist
- some drugs can stay in your system for days or weeks after use, making it difficult to determine when the drug was used, and therefore, how and if it impaired driving
- police don't usually test for drugs if drivers have reached an illegal blood alcohol level because there's already enough evidence for a DUI charge
- many drivers who cause crashes are found to have both drugs and alcohol or more than one drug in their system, making it hard to know which substance had the greater effect

However, according to the Governors Highway Safety Association, 43.6 percent of fatally injured drivers in 2016 tested positive for drugs and over half of those drivers were positive for two or more drugs.

Effects of Commonly Misused Drugs on Driving

Marijuana affects psychomotor skills and cognitive functions critical to driving including vigilance, drowsiness, time and distance perception, reaction time, divided attention, lane tracking, coordination, and balance.
Opioids can cause drowsiness and can impair cognitive function.

Alcohol can reduce coordination, concentration, ability to track moving objects and reduce response to emergency driving situations as well as difficulty steering and maintaining lane position. It can also cause drowsiness.

What populations are especially affected by drugged driving?

Teen and older adult drivers are most often affected by drugged driving. Teens are less experienced and are more likely than other drivers to underestimate or not recognize dangerous situations. They are also more likely to speed and allow less distance between vehicles. When lack of driving experience is combined with drug use, the results can be tragic. Car crashes are the leading cause of death among young people aged 16 to 19 years.

A study of college students with access to a car found that 1 in 6 had driven under the influence of a drug other than alcohol at least once in the past year. Marijuana was the most common drug used, followed by cocaine and prescription pain relievers.

Mental decline in older adults can lead to taking a prescription drug more or less often than they should or in the wrong amount. Older adults also may not break down the drug in their system as quickly as younger people. These factors can lead to unintended intoxication while behind the wheel of a car.

What steps can people take to prevent drugged driving?
Because drugged driving puts people at a higher risk for crashes, public health experts urge people who use drugs and alcohol to develop social strategies to prevent them from getting behind the wheel of a car while impaired. Steps people can take include:

- offering to be a designated driver
- appointing a designated driver to take all car keys
- getting a ride to and from parties where there are alcohol and/or drugs.
- discussing the risks of drugged driving with friends in advance

Points to Remember

- Use of illicit drugs or misuse of prescription drugs can make driving a car unsafe—just like driving after drinking alcohol.
- In 2017, 21.4 million people aged 16 or older drove under the influence of alcohol in the past year and 12.8 million drove under the influence of illicit drugs.
- It's hard to measure how many crashes are caused by drugged driving, but estimates show that almost 44 percent of drivers in fatal car crashes tested positive for drugs.
- Driving under the influence of marijuana, opioids and alcohol can have profound effects on driving.
- People who use drugs and alcohol should develop social strategies to prevent them from getting behind the wheel of a car while impaired.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated March 2019

D. Understanding Drug Use and Addiction

Many people don't understand why or how other people become addicted to drugs. They may mistakenly think that those who use drugs lack moral principles or willpower and that they could stop their drug use simply by choosing to. In reality, drug addiction is a complex disease, and quitting usually takes more than good intentions or a strong will. Drugs change the brain in ways that make quitting hard, even for those who want to. Fortunately, researchers know more than ever about how drugs affect the brain and have found treatments that can help people recover from drug addiction and lead productive lives.

What is drug addiction?

Addiction is a chronic disease characterized by drug seeking and use that is compulsive, or difficult to control, despite harmful consequences. The initial decision to take drugs is voluntary for most people, but repeated drug use can lead to brain changes that challenge an addicted person's self-control and interfere with their ability to resist intense urges to take drugs. These brain changes can be persistent, which is why drug addiction is considered a "relapsing" disease—people in recovery from drug use disorders are at increased risk for returning to drug use even after years of not taking the drug.

It's common for a person to relapse, but relapse doesn't mean that treatment doesn't work. As with other chronic health conditions, treatment should be ongoing and should be adjusted based on how the patient responds. Treatment plans need to be reviewed often and modified to fit the patient's changing needs.

What happens to the brain when a person takes drugs?

Most drugs affect the brain's "reward circuit," causing euphoria as well as flooding it with the chemical messenger dopamine. A properly functioning reward system motivates a person to repeat behaviors needed to thrive, such as eating and spending time with loved ones. Surges of dopamine in the reward circuit cause the reinforcement of pleasurable but unhealthy behaviors like taking drugs, leading people to repeat the behavior again and again.

As a person continues to use drugs, the brain adapts by reducing the ability of cells in the reward circuit to respond to it. This reduces the high that the person feels compared to the high they felt when first taking the drug—an effect known as tolerance. They might take more of the drug to try and achieve the same high. These brain adaptations often lead to the person becoming less and less able to derive pleasure from other things they once enjoyed, like food, sex, or social activities.

Long-term use also causes changes in other brain chemical systems and circuits as well, affecting functions that include:

- learning
- judgment
- decision-making
- stress
- memory
- behavior

Despite being aware of these harmful outcomes, many people who use drugs continue to take them, which is the nature of addiction.

Why do some people become addicted to drugs while others don't?

No one factor can predict if a person will become addicted to drugs. A combination of factors influences risk for addiction. The more risk factors a person has, the greater the chance that taking drugs can lead to addiction. For example:

• **Biology**. The genes that people are born with account for about half of a person's risk for addiction. Gender, ethnicity, and the presence of other mental disorders may also influence risk for drug use and addiction.

• **Environment**. A person's environment includes many different influences, from family and friends to economic status and general quality of life. Factors such as peer pressure, physical and sexual abuse, early exposure to drugs, stress, and parental guidance can greatly affect a person's likelihood of drug use and addiction.

- **Development**. Genetic and environmental factors interact with critical developmental stages in a person's life to affect addiction risk. Although taking drugs at any age can lead to addiction, the earlier that drug use begins, the more likely it will progress to addiction. This is particularly problematic for teens. Because areas in their brains that control decision-making, judgment, and self-control are still developing, teens may be especially prone to risky behaviors, including trying drugs.

Can drug addiction be cured or prevented?

As with most other chronic diseases, such as diabetes, asthma, or heart disease, treatment for drug addiction generally isn't a cure. However, addiction is treatable and can be successfully managed. People who are recovering from an addiction will be at risk for relapse for years and possibly for their whole lives. Research shows that combining addiction treatment medicines with behavioral therapy ensures the best chance of success for most patients. Treatment approaches tailored to each patient's drug use patterns and any co-occurring medical, mental, and social problems can lead to continued recovery.

More good news is that drug use and addiction are preventable. Results from NIDA-funded research have shown that prevention programs involving families, schools, communities, and the media are effective for preventing or reducing drug use and addiction. Although personal events and cultural factors affect drug use trends, when young people view drug use as harmful, they tend to decrease their drug taking. Therefore, education and outreach are key in helping people understand the possible risks of drug use. Teachers, parents, and health care providers have crucial roles in educating young people and preventing drug use and addiction.

Points to Remember

- Drug addiction is a chronic disease characterized by drug seeking and use that is compulsive, or difficult to control, despite harmful consequences.
- Brain changes that occur over time with drug use challenge an addicted person's self-control and interfere with their ability to resist intense urges to take drugs. This is why drug addiction is also a relapsing disease.
- Relapse is the return to drug use after an attempt to stop. Relapse indicates the need for more or different treatment.
- Most drugs affect the brain's reward circuit by flooding it with the chemical messenger dopamine. Surges of dopamine in the reward circuit cause the reinforcement of pleasurable but unhealthy activities, leading people to repeat the behavior again and again.
- Over time, the brain adjusts to the excess dopamine, which reduces the high that the person feels compared to the high they felt when first taking the drug—an effect known as tolerance. They might take more of the drug, trying to achieve the same dopamine high.
- No single factor can predict whether a person will become addicted to drugs. A combination of genetic, environmental, and developmental factors influences risk for addiction. The more risk factors a person has, the greater the chance that taking drugs can lead to addiction.
- Drug addiction is treatable and can be successfully managed.
- More good news is that drug use and addiction are preventable. Teachers, parents, and health care providers have crucial roles in educating young people and preventing drug use and addiction.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated June 2018

Chapter 4 – Prevention and Treatment

A. Lessons from Prevention Research

The principles listed below are the result of long-term research studies on the origins of drug abuse behaviors and the common elements of effective prevention programs. These principles were developed to help prevention practitioners use the results of prevention research to address drug use among children, adolescents, and young adults in communities across the country. Parents, educators, and community leaders can use these principles to help guide their thinking, planning, selection, and delivery of drug abuse prevention programs at the community level.

Prevention programs are generally designed for use in a particular setting, such as at home, at school, or within the community, but can be adapted for use in several settings. In addition, programs are also designed with the intended audience in mind: for everyone in the population, for those at greater risk, and for those already involved with drugs or other problem behaviors. Some programs can be geared for more than one audience.

NIDA's prevention research program focuses on risks for drug abuse and other problem behaviors that occur throughout a child's development, from pregnancy through young adulthood. Research funded by NIDA and other Federal research organizations—such as the National Institute of Mental Health and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention—shows that early intervention can prevent many adolescent risk behaviors.

Principle 1 - Prevention programs should enhance protective factors and reverse or reduce risk factors (Hawkins et al. 2002).

- The risk of becoming a drug abuser involves the relationship among the number and type of risk factors (e.g., deviant attitudes and behaviors) and protective factors (e.g., parental support) (Wills et al. 1996).

- The potential impact of specific risk and protective factors changes with age. For example, risk factors within the family have greater impact on a younger child, while association with drug-abusing peers may be a more significant risk factor for an adolescent (Gerstein and Green 1993; Dishion et al. 1999).

- Early intervention with risk factors (e.g., aggressive behavior and poor self-control) often has a greater impact than later intervention by changing a child's life path (trajectory) away from problems and toward positive behaviors (Ialongo et al. 2001; Hawkins et al. 2008).

- While risk and protective factors can affect people of all groups, these factors can have a different effect depending on a person's age, gender, ethnicity, culture, and environment (Beauvais et al. 1996; Moon et al. 1999).

Principle 2 - Prevention programs should address all forms of drug abuse, alone or in combination, including the underage use of legal drugs (e.g., tobacco or alcohol); the use of illegal drugs (e.g., marijuana or heroin); and the inappropriate use of legally obtained substances (e.g., inhalants), prescription medications, or over-the-counter drugs (Johnston et al. 2002).

Principle 3 - Prevention programs should address the type of drug abuse problem in the local community, target modifiable risk factors, and strengthen identified protective factors (Hawkins et al. 2002).

Principle 4 - Prevention programs should be tailored to address risks specific to population or audience characteristics, such as age, gender, and ethnicity, to improve program effectiveness (Oetting et al. 1997; Olds et al. 1998; Fisher et al. 2007; Brody et al. 2008).

Principle 5 - Family-based prevention programs should enhance family bonding and relationships and include parenting skills; practice in developing, discussing, and enforcing family policies on substance abuse; and training in drug education and information (Ashery et al. 1998).

Family bonding is the bedrock of the relationship between parents and children. Bonding can be strengthened through skills training on parent supportiveness of children, parent-child communication, and parental involvement (Kosterman et al. 1997; Spoth et al. 2004).

Parental monitoring and supervision are critical for drug abuse prevention. These skills can be enhanced with training on rule-setting; techniques for monitoring activities; praise for appropriate behavior; and moderate, consistent discipline that enforces defined family rules (Kosterman et al. 2001).

Drug education and information for parents or caregivers reinforces what children are learning about the harmful effects of drugs and opens opportunities for family discussions about the abuse of legal and illegal substances (Bauman et al. 2001).

Brief, family-focused interventions for the general population can positively change specific parenting behavior that can reduce later risks of drug abuse (Spoth et al. 2002b).

Principle 6 - Prevention programs can be designed to intervene as early as infancy to address risk factors for drug abuse, such as aggressive behavior, poor social skills, and academic difficulties (Webster-Stratton 1998; Olds et al. 1998; Webster-Stratton et al. 2001; Fisher et al. 2007).

Principle 7 - Prevention programs for elementary school children should target improving academic and social-emotional learning to address risk factors for drug abuse, such as early aggression, academic failure, and school dropout. Education should focus on the following skills (Conduct Problems Prevention Research Group 2002; Ialongo et al. 2001; Riggs et al. 2006; Kellam et al. 2008; Beets et al. 2009):

- self-control
- emotional awareness
- communication
- social problem-solving
- academic support, especially in reading

Principle 8 - Prevention programs for middle or junior high and high school students should increase academic and social competence with the following skills (Botvin et al. 1995; Scheier et al. 1999; Eisen et al. 2003; Ellickson et al. 2003; Haggerty et al. 2007):

- study habits and academic support
- communication
- peer relationships
- self-efficacy and assertiveness

- drug resistance skills
- reinforcement of anti-drug attitudes
- strengthening of personal commitments against drug abuse

Principle 9 - Prevention programs aimed at general populations at key transition points, such as the transition to middle school, can produce beneficial effects even among high-risk families and children. Such interventions do not single out risk populations and, therefore, reduce labeling and promote bonding to school and community (Botvin et al. 1995; Dishion et al. 2002; Institute of Medicine 2009).

Principle 10 - Community prevention programs that combine two or more effective programs, such as family-based and school-based programs, can be more effective than a single program alone (Battistich et al. 1997; Spoth et al. 2002c; Stormshak et al. 2005).

Principle 11 - Community prevention programs reaching populations in multiple settings—for example, schools, clubs, faith-based organizations, and the media—are most effective when they present consistent, community-wide messages in each setting (Chou et al. 1998; Hawkins et al. 2009).

Principle 12 - When communities adapt programs to match their needs, community norms, or differing cultural requirements, they should retain core elements of the original research-based intervention (Spoth et al. 2002b; Hawkins et al. 2009), which include:

- structure (how the program is organized and constructed)
- content (the information, skills, and strategies of the program)
- delivery (how the program is adapted, implemented, and evaluated)

Principle 13 - Prevention programs should be long-term with repeated interventions (i.e., booster programs) to reinforce the original prevention goals. Research shows that the benefits from middle school prevention programs diminish without follow-up programs in high school (Botvin et al. 1995; Scheier et al. 1999).

Principle 14 - Prevention programs should include teacher training on good classroom management practices, such as rewarding appropriate student behavior. Such techniques

help to foster students' positive behavior, achievement, academic motivation, and school bonding (Ialongo et al. 2001; Kellam et al. 2008).

Principle 15 - Prevention programs are most effective when they employ interactive techniques, such as peer discussion groups and parent role-playing, that allow for active involvement in learning about drug abuse and reinforcing skills (Botvin et al. 1995).

Principle 16 - Research-based prevention programs can be cost-effective. Similar to earlier research, recent research shows that for each dollar invested in prevention, a savings of up to $10 in treatment for alcohol or other substance abuse can be seen (Aos et al. 2001; Hawkins et al. 1999; Pentz 1998; Spoth et al. 2002a; Jones et al. 2008; Foster et al. 2007; Miller and Hendrie 2009).

References

1. Aos, S.; Phipps, P.; Barnoski, R.; and Lieb, R. The Comparative Costs and Benefits of Programs to Reduce Crime. Vol. 4 (1-05-1201).Olympia, WA: Washington State Institute for Public Policy, May 2001.
2. Ashery, R.S.; Robertson, E.B.; and Kumpfer, K.L., eds. Drug Abuse Prevention Through Family Interventions. NIDA Research Monograph No. 177. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1998.
3. Battistich, V.; Solomon, D.; Watson, M.; and Schaps, E. Caring school communities. *Educ Psychol* 32(3):137-151, 1997.
4. Bauman, K.E.; Foshee, V.A.; Ennett, S.T.; Pemberton, M.; Hicks, K.A.; King, T.S.; and Koch, G.G. The influence of a family program on adolescent tobacco and alcohol. *Am J Public Health* 91(4):604-610, 2001.
5. Beauvais, F.; Chavez, E.; Oetting, E.; Deffenbacher, J.; and Cornell, G. Drug use, violence, and victimization among White American, Mexican American, and American Indian dropouts, students with academic problems, and students in good academic standing. *J Couns Psychol* 43:292-299, 1996.
6. Beets, M.W.; Flay, B.R.; Vuchinich, S.; Snyder, F.J.; Acock, A.; Li, K-K.; Burns, K.; Washburn, I.J.; and Durlak, J. Use of a social and character development program to prevent substance use, violent behaviors, and sexual activity among elementary-school students in Hawaii. *Am J Public Health* 99(8):1438-1445, 2009.
7. Botvin, G.; Baker, E.; Dusenbury, L.; Botvin, E.; and Diaz, T. Long-term follow-up results of a randomized drug-abuse prevention trial in a white middle class population. *JAMA* 273:1106-1112, 1995.
8. Brody, G.H.; Kogan, S.M.; Chen, Y.-F.; and Murry, V.M. Long-Term Effects of the Strong African American Families Program on youths' conduct problems. *J Adolesc Health* 43:474-481, 2008.
9. Chou, C.; Montgomery, S.; Pentz, M.; Rohrbach, L.; Johnson, C.; Flay, B.; and Mackinnon, D. Effects of a community-based prevention program in decreasing drug use in high-risk adolescents. *Am J Public Health* 88:944-948, 1998.
10. Conduct Problems Prevention Research Group. Predictor variables associated with positive Fast Track outcomes at the end of third grade. J *Abnorm Child Psychol* 30(1):37-52, 2002.
11. Dishion, T.; McCord, J.; and Poulin, F. When interventions harm: Peer groups and problem behavior. *Am Psychol* 54:755-764, 1999.
12. Dishion, T.; Kavanagh, K.; Schneiger, A.K.J.; Nelson, S.; and Kaufman, N. Preventing early adolescent substance use: A family centered strategy for the public middle school. *Prev Sci* 3(3):191-202, 2002.
13. Eisen, M.; Zellman, G.L.; and Murray, D.M. Evaluating the Lions-Quest "Skills for Adolescence" drug education program: Second-year behavior outcomes. *Addict Behav* 28(5):883-897, 2003.
14. Ellickson, P.L.; McCaffrey, D.F.; Ghosh-Dastidar, B.; and Longshore, D. New inroads in preventing adolescent drug use: Results from a large-scale trial of project ALERT in middle schools. *Am J Public Health* 93(11):1830-1836, 2003.
15. Fisher, P.A.; Stoolmiller, M.; Gunnar, M.R.; and Burraston, B.O. Effects of a therapeutic intervention for foster preschoolers on diurnal cortisol activity. *Psychoneuroendocrinology* 32(8-10):892-905, 2007.
16. Foster, E.M.; Olchowski, A.E.; and Webster-Stratton, C.H. Is stacking intervention components cost-effective? An analysis of the Incredible Years Program. J Am Acad Child *Adolesc Psychiatry* 46(11):1414-1424, 2007.
17. Gerstein, D.R., and Green, L.W., eds. Preventing drug abuse: What do we know? Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1993.
18. Haggerty, K.P.; Skinner, M.L.; MacKenzie, E.P.; and Catalano, R.F.A. Randomized trial of parents who care: Effects on key outcomes at 24-month follow-up. *Prev Sci* 8:249-260, 2007.
19. Hawkins, J.D.; Catalano, R.F.; Kosterman, R.; Abbott, R.; and Hill, K.G. Preventing adolescent health-risk behaviors by strengthening protection during childhood. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 153:226-234, 1999.

20. Hawkins, J.D.; Catalano, R.F.; and Arthur, M. Promoting science-based prevention in communities. *Addict Behav* 27(6):951-976, 2002.
21. Hawkins, J.D.; Kosterman, R.; Catalano, R.; Hill, K.G.; and Abbott, R.D. Effects of social development intervention in childhood 15 years later. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 162(12):1133-1141, 2008.
22. Hawkins, J.D.; Oesterle, S.; Brown, E.C.; Arthur, M.W.; Abbott, R.D.; Fagan, A.A.; and Catalano, R. Results of a type 2 translational research trial to prevent adolescent drug use and delinquency: A test of communities that care. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 163(9):789-798, 2009.
23. Ialongo, N.; Poduska, J.; Werthamer, L.; and Kellam, S. The distal impact of two first-grade preventive interventions on conduct problems and disorder in early adolescence. *J Emot Behav Disord* 9:146-160, 2001.
24. Institute of Medicine. Preventing mental, emotional, and behavioral disorders among young people: Progress and possibilities. National Academies Press, Washington DC, 2009.
25. Johnston, L.D.; O'Malley, P.M.; and Bachman, J.G. Monitoring the Future National Survey Results on Drug Use, 1975-2002. Volume 1: Secondary School Students. Bethesda, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2002.
26. Jones, D.E.; Foster, E.M.; and Group, C.P. Service use patterns for adolescents with ADHD and comorbid conduct disorder. *J Behav Health Serv Res* 36(4):436-449, 2008.
27. Kellam, S.G.; Brown, C.H.; Poduska, J.; Ialongo, N.; Wang, W.; Toyinbo, P.; Petras, H.; Ford, C.; Windham, A.; and Wilcox, H.C. Effects of a universal classroom behavior management program in first and second grades on young adult behavioral, psychiatric, and social outcomes. *Drug Alcohol Depend* 95 (Suppl 1):S5-S28, 2008.
28. Kosterman, R.; Hawkins, J.D.; Spoth, R.; Haggerty, K.P.; and Zhu, K. Effects of a preventive parent-training intervention on observed family interactions: Proximal outcomes from preparing for the drug free years. *J Community Psychol* 25(4):337-352, 1997.
29. Kosterman, R.; Hawkins, J.D.; Haggerty, K.P.; Spoth, R.; and Redmond, C. Preparing for the drug free years: Session-specific effects of a universal parent-training intervention with rural families. *J Drug Educ* 31(1):47-68, 2001.
30. Miller, T.R., and Hendrie, D. Substance abuse prevention dollars and cents: A cost-benefit analysis. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, Center for Substance Abuse Prevention. Rockville, MD: DHHS Pub. No. (SMA) 07-4298, 2009.
31. Moon, D.; Hecht, M.; Jackson, K.; and Spellers, R. Ethnic and gender differences and similarities in adolescent drug use and refusals of drug offers. *Subst Use Misuse* 34(8):1059-1083, 1999.
32. Oetting, E.; Edwards, R.; Kelly, K.; and Beauvais, F. Risk and protective factors for drug use among rural American youth. In: Robertson, E.B.; Sloboda, Z.; Boyd, G.M.; Beatty, L.; and Kozel, N.J., eds. Rural Substance Abuse: State of Knowledge and Issues. NIDA Research Monograph No. 168. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, pp. 90-130, 1997.
33. Olds, D.; Henderson, C.R.; Cole, R.; Eckenrode, J.; Kitzman, H.; Luckey, D.; Pettit, L.; Sidora, K.; Morris, P. and Powers, J. Long-term effects of nurse home visitation on children's criminal and antisocial behavior: 15-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 280(14):1238-1244, 1998.
34. Pentz, M.A.; Costs, benefits, and cost-effectiveness of comprehensive drug abuse prevention. In: Bukoski, W.J., and Evans, R.I., eds. Cost-benefit/cost-effectiveness research of drug abuse prevention: Implications for programming and policy. NIDA Research Monograph No. 176. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, pp. 111-129, 1998.
35. Riggs, N.R.; Greenberg, M.T.; Kusche, C.A.; and Pentz, M.A. The mediational role of neurocognition in the behavioral outcomes of a social-emotional prevention program in elementary school students: Effects of the PATHS curriculum. *Prev Sci* 7(1):91-102, 2006.
36. Scheier, L.; Botvin, G.; Diaz, T.; and Griffin, K. Social skills, competence, and drug refusal efficacy as predictors of adolescent alcohol use. *J Drug Educ* 29(3):251-278, 1999.
37. Spoth, R.; Redmond, C.; Shin, C.; and Azevedo, K. Brief family intervention effects on adolescent substance initiation: School-level growth curve analyses 6 years following baseline. *J Consult Clin Psychol* 72(3):535-542, 2004.
38. Spoth, R.; Guyull, M.; and Day, S. Universal family-focused interventions in alcohol-use disorder prevention: Cost effectiveness and cost benefit analyses of two interventions. *J Stud Alcohol* 63:219-228, 2002a.
39. Spoth, R.L.; Redmond, C.; Trudeau, L.; and Shin, C. Longitudinal substance initiation outcomes for a universal preventive intervention combining family and school programs. *Psychol Addict Behav* 16(2):129-134, 2002b.
40. Spoth, R.L.; Redmond, C.; Trudeau, L.; and C.S. Longitudinal substance initiation outcomes for a universal preventive intervention combining family and school programs. *Psychol Addict Behav* 16(2):129-134, 2002c.
41. Stormshak, E.A.; Dishion, T.J.; Light, J.; and Yasui, M. Implementing family-centered interventions within the public middle school: linking service delivery to change in student problem behavior. *J Abnorm Child Psychol* 33(6):723-733, 2005.
42. Webster-Stratton, C. Preventing conduct problems in Head Start children: Strengthening parenting competencies. *J Consult Clin Psychol* 66:715-730, 1998.
43. Webster-Stratton, C.; Reid, J.; and Hammond, M. Preventing conduct problems, promoting social competence: A parent and teacher training partnership in Head Start. *J Clin Child Psychol* 30:282-302, 2001.
44. Wills, T.; McNamara, G.; Vaccaro, D.; and Hirky, A. Escalated substance use: A longitudinal grouping analysis from early to middle adolescence. *J Abnorm Psychol* 105:166-180, 1996.

B. Substance Use and Military Life

General Risk of Substance Use Disorders

The stresses of deployments and the unique culture of the military offer both risks and protective factors related to substance use among active duty personnel.1 Deployment is associated with smoking initiation, unhealthy drinking, drug use and risky behaviors.1 Zero-tolerance policies, lack of confidentiality and mandatory random drug testing that might deter drug use can also add to stigma, and could discourage many who need treatment from seeking it. For example, half of military personnel have reported that they believe seeking help for mental health issues would negatively affect their military career.1 However, overall, illicit drug use among active duty personnel is relatively low2 and cigarette smoking and misuse of prescription drugs have decreased in recent years.2 In contrast, rates of binge drinking are high compared to the general population.2

Service members can face dishonorable discharge and even criminal prosecution for a positive drug test, which can discourage illicit drug use. Once active duty personnel leave the military some protective influences are gone, and substance use and other mental health issues become of greater concern.

More than one in ten veterans have been diagnosed with a substance use disorder, slightly higher than the general population.3 One study found that the overall prevalence of substance use disorders (SUDs) among male veterans was lower than rates among their civilian counterparts when all ages were examined together. However, when looking at the pattern for only male veterans aged 18–25 years, the rates were higher in veterans compared with civilians.3 The veteran population is also greatly impacted by several critical issues related to substance use, such as pain, suicide risk, trauma, and homelessness.

Illicit drugs

Among Active Duty Personnel:

Rates of illicit drug use among active duty service members have decreased in recent years and were at lower levels in the 2015 Health Related Behaviors Survey (HRBS) compared to the 2011 survey. The HRBS is the flagship survey for understanding the health, health-related behaviors and well-being of service members funded by the Department of Defense. It should be noted that the survey relies on self-reporting, and response rate is low, at 8.6%.2 However, it does provide a glimpse into substance use among active duty personnel.

The 2015 survey reported that illicit drug use in the past year was reported by less than 1 percent across all service branches and among both enlisted personnel and officers.2 By

comparison, a large government self-reported survey of civilians suggests about 1 in 5 young adults aged 18 to 25 (22.3%) were current users of illicit drugs in 2015.12

Veterans:
Reported rates of illicit drug use increase when active duty personnel leave military service. Marijuana accounts for the vast majority of illicit drug use among veterans with 3.5% reporting use, and 1.7% reporting use of illicit drugs other than marijuana in a 1-month period.3 From 2002 to 2009, cannabis use disorders increased more than 50% among veterans treated by in the Veterans Health Administration (VHA) system.3 Other illicit drugs are of concern for some veterans. One government report notes that more than ten percent of veteran admissions to substance use treatment centers were for heroin (10.7%), followed by cocaine at just over 6%.5

Opioid and other Prescription Drug Misuse
Active Duty:
Among active-duty service members in the 2015 HRBS, just over 4% reported misusing one or more prescription drug types in the past year.2

There has been much discussion about the amount of prescription pain medications prescribed to injured and sick military personnel, especially during the transition to medical discharge.1 Military physicians wrote nearly 3.8 million prescriptions for pain medication in 2009, more than quadruple the number of such prescriptions written in 2001.6 However, in the past few years, self-reported use of both prescription opioid pain relievers and use of sedatives has decreased among active duty personnel. From 2011 to 2015, the percentage of service members using pain relievers in the past month decreased by nearly half, likely reflecting prevention and appropriate prescribing initiatives set in motion by the Department of Defense.22 Nonetheless, these medications were misused and overused more often than other drugs. Prescription drug misuse was highest in the Army and lowest in the Coast Guard.2

Opioid use disorders among military personnel often begin with a opioid pain prescription following an injury during deployment. However, due to the addictive nature of opioids, particularly coupled with mental health struggles experienced by some military service men and women, regular use of opioids can lead to addiction.

Veterans:

Many veterans have unique issues related to pain management, with two-thirds reporting they experience pain.7 More than 9% reported that they experience severe pain, compared to only 6.4% of non-veterans7, putting them at higher risk for accidental opioid pain reliever overdoses. From 2001 to 2009, the percent of veterans in the VHA system receiving an opioid prescription increased from 17% to 24%.3 Similarly, the overall opioid overdose rates of veterans increased to 21% in 2016 from 14% in 2010.8 However, the overdose increases were mostly from heroin and synthetic opioids, and not from opioids taken for pain relief.8

Alcohol

Active Duty:

Alcohol use disorders are the most prevalent form of SUDs among military personnel.5 It is challenging to compare overall rates to the non military population because service personnel tend to be younger and have a higher percentage of males, putting them at greater risk in general. 2 However, increased combat exposure involving violence and trauma experienced by those who serve result in an increased risk of problematic drinking. The 2015 HRBS report concluded that across all services, 5.4 percent of military personnel were heavy drinkers compared to 6.7 percent in the general adult population reported in 2014. However, binge drinking was reported as higher among active duty personnel (30% vs. 24.7%), although lower than the 33% reported in 2011. 2 One in three of service members were binge drinkers, comparable to a 2014 estimate of one in four in the general population.2 More than one in three service personnel met criteria for hazardous drinking or possible alcohol use disorder,2 with rates higher among men than women.

Veterans:

A 2017 study examining National Survey on Drug Use and Health data found that, compared to their non-veteran counterparts, veterans were more likely to use alcohol (56.6% vs 50.8% in a 1-month period), and to report heavy use of alcohol (7.5% vs 6.5% in a 1-month period).3 Sixty-five percent of veterans who enter a treatment program report alcohol as the substance they most frequently misuse, which is almost double that of the general population.5

Smoking

Active Duty:

Deployment and combat exposure puts service personnel at risk for smoking initiation, but rates have decreased in recent years.1 The 2015 HRBS report showed that close to 14% of service members were current cigarette smokers and more than 7% smoke daily.2 This roughly compares to a rate of 15% of current smokers in the general U.S. adult population in 2015, with 11% smoking daily.4 The 2015 rates in the military represent a decrease from 24%

in 2011 (with 13% reported as daily smokers.)2 The 2015 report also showed that nearly 9% of military service personnel were current cigar smokers and nearly 13% used smokeless tobacco.2 Close to 40% of those who smoke started after enlisting, underscoring the need for prevention strategies for new active duty personnel.9 The Department of Defense offers smoking cessation programs, and in 2016 prohibited tobacco use on its medical facilities, with a goal to achieve tobacco-free installations by 2020.9

Veterans:
Data suggests that veterans are more likely to use tobacco products than their non-veteran counterparts in nearly all age groups,9 with close to 30% reporting use.9 The high prevalence of tobacco use among people with military experience has had a significant financial impact on the VHA, costing an estimated $2.7 billion (7.6% of its expenditures) on smoking-related ambulatory care, prescription drugs, hospitalization, and home health care.9

In addition, a higher proportion of veterans with coronary heart disease are smokers compared to civilians with similar diagnoses.10 For those without heart disease, veterans are more likely to be former smokers than all civilians.10 In recent years, the VHA has made efforts to increase access to tobacco cessation treatment options,9 yielding some results.

Vaping and E-Cigarettes:
The 2015 HRBS report asked about e-cigarettes; however, the information is now several years old, with a new report in development. Even in 2015, 12.4 percent of service members reported they had vaped within the last month, with 11.1 percent saying they were daily e-cigarette users2, roughly compared to 3.7% reporting regular use in the general population in 2014.26

In 2017, the U.S. Navy issued a report that there had been more than 15 mishaps with vaping devices causing personal injuries or fire damage, about half happening on board Navy vessels or aircraft. As a result, e-cigarettes were banned throughout the fleet.27
With the growing number of serious lung illnesses and deaths related to vaping reported in 2019, service members and their families were officially alerted about the dangers, and encouraged not to use e-cigarette products.28 Subsequently, in October 2019 the Army, Air Force and Navy banned sales of vaping devices from retail exchanges on bases.29

Substance Use, Mental Health and Military/Veteran Life
All veterans experience a period of readjustment as they leave the military and reintegrate into life with family, friends, and their community, leaving them with unique mental health

challenges.11 A number of environmental stressors specific to military personnel have been linked to increased risk of SUDs among military personnel and veterans, including deployment, combat exposure, and post-deployment civilian/reintegration challenges.3 Among veterans presenting for first-time care within the VHA system, close to 11% meet criteria for an SUD diagnosis.3 Veterans with SUDS commonly meet the criterial for co-occurring mental health disorders such as PTSD, depression and anxiety.3

Those who have experienced trauma or were hospitalized or injured during combat are at risk for increased drinking or drug use. Veterans with SUDs are 3-4 times more likely to receive a PTSD or depression diagnosis.3

It is estimated that between 37 and 50 percent of Afghanistan and Iraq War veterans have been diagnosed with a mental disorder.11 These conditions are strongly associated with substance use disorders (SUDs), as are other problems experienced by returning military personnel, including reintegration stresses, sleep disturbances, traumatic brain injury (TBI), and violence in relationships. Onset of SUDs can also emerge secondary to other mental health problems associated with these stressors, such as post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and depression.3

SUDs, PTSD and Depression

Among recent Afghanistan and Iraq veterans, 63% diagnosed with SUDs also met criteria for post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD).3 Veterans dually diagnosed with PTSD and SUDs are more likely to have additional co-occurring psychiatric and medical conditions, such as seizures, liver disease, HIV, schizophrenia, anxiety disorders, and bipolar disorder.3

Counseling

Research suggests that relatively few service members receive counseling related to SUDs, however there are few studies on SUD services received in the military.1 Behavioral interventions for the management of SUDs typically involve short-term, cognitive-behavioral therapy interventions. These interventions focus on the identification and modification of maladaptive thoughts and behaviors associated with increased craving, use, or relapse to substances. With some drugs–opioids, alcohol, and tobacco—behavioral counseling is an effective companion to approved medication therapy. With other drugs, such as cocaine and marijuana, there are no approved medicines for treatment, making behavioral counseling the focus of treatment. The military offers free counseling services for alcohol and substance use disorders, including smoking cessation support. There are also several services and

interventions available to help reduce SUDs among veterans, including both behavioral and pharmacological treatments.

Suicide

Suicide deaths among active duty military and veterans exceed the rate for the general population. In 2014, veterans comprised more than 20 percent of national suicides, with an average of 20 veterans dying by suicide every day.14 In 2016, the suicide rate was 1.5 times greater for veterans than for non-veteran adults, after adjusting for age and gender.13

Substance use often precedes suicidal behavior in the military. About 30% of Army suicides and over 45% of suicide attempts since 2003 involved alcohol or drug use.3 In addition, an estimated 20% of high-risk behavior deaths were attributed to alcohol or drug overdose.3 Researchers have looked at the possible link between suicide, pain and prescription pain medications. In a 2017 VA study of nearly 124,000 veterans, those receiving the highest doses of opioid pain relievers were more than twice as likely to die by suicide, compared with those receiving the lowest doses.15 But most of those suicides are with firearms, not opioids, and it is unclear if there's a direct causal link between the pain medications and suicide risk or if the high doses may be a marker for other factors that drive suicide—including unresolved severe chronic pain.15

Homelessness

U.S. military veterans are estimated to be a large portion (around 11 percent) of homeless adults.17 According to a 2014 study, around 70 percent of homeless veterans also have a substance use disorder.16

In 2011, about one fifth of veterans in substance use treatment were homeless.16 These homeless veterans experience unique challenges and barriers to substance use disorder treatment. Targeting homeless veterans in need of treatment so that they can receive support through outreach services, case management, and housing assistance can improve their chances of entering substance use treatment and experiencing positive outcomes.16

Addressing the Problem

A 2012 Institute of Medicine (IOM) report identified a number of barriers to substance use disorder care among active duty military personnel and veterans, including limited access to treatment, gaps in insurance coverage, stigma, fear of negative consequences, and lack of confidential services. The report offered remedies, including increasing the use of evidence-based prevention and treatment interventions and expanding access to care. The report also recommended broadening insurance coverage to include effective outpatient treatments

and better equipping health care providers to recognize and screen for substance use problems so they can refer patients to appropriate, evidence-based treatment when needed. The IOM report also notes that addressing substance use in the military will require increasing confidentiality and shifting a cultural climate in which drug problems can be stigmatized and evoke fear in people suffering from them.6

In 2013, the VHA began the Opioid Safety Initiative, a multifaceted for chronic pain,18 and has increased its resources for consumers, including 21 intervention that has been associated witha16% reduction in opioid prescribing in the first two years.[22]The VHA also recently revised its clinical practice guidelines for prescribing opioids for chronic pain,[18]and has increased its resources for consumers, including a consumer fact sheet on safe and responsible use of opioids for chronic pain.[21]
In 2016, the military's Tricare health system for active duty personnel announced it was expanding its treatment services to include intensive outpatient programs.[20]Its health system web site now offers an alcohol and drug use assessment tool at
https://www.health.mil/Military-Health-Topics/Conditions-and-Treatments/Substance-Abuse.

The Veterans Administration has also developed the National Strategy for Preventing Veteran Suicide, which provides a framework for identifying priorities, organizing efforts, and contributing to a national focus on veteran suicide prevention.[13]From 2015-2016, the number of suicides per year among veterans decreased.[13]

Treatment

Treatment for various substance use and mental disorders are available through military health systems and have been shown to be effective. Treatments include behavioral interventions and medicines when available. All treatment should be individualized, including approved medication options approved for patients with alcohol, nicotine and opioid use disorders.

There are three FDA-approved medicines to treat opioid addiction, offering options to meet individual needs. Buprenorphine and methadone are medicines that bind to the same receptors in the brain as opioids, called opioid agonists or partial agonists. Naltrexoneis another medication that treats opioid addiction, but it is called an antagonist, preventing opioids from having an effect on the brain. Additionally, the Food and Drug Administration recently approved a medicine called lofexidine to help make withdrawal

symptoms easier for people who are trying to stop using opioids, which should be followed with engagement in treatment.

While many treatment centers do not offer these medications, the National Academy of Sciences recently issued a scientific report stating that medications for opioid use disorder are effective, save lives and have better long-term outcomes than treatment that does not include medications.[23] A combination of medication with behavioral therapy can reinforce treatment goals, rebuild relationships with friends and family, and build healthy life skills.

The Veterans Health Administration acknowledges that treatment with medications for opioid use disorder, including opioid agonists (methadone or buprenorphine), is the first-line treatment for opioid use disorder and recommends it for all opioid-dependent patients. Notably, a 2015 revision of treatment guidelines for the U.S. Department of Veteran Affairs and U.S. Department of Defense shifted toward allowing these medications as a treatment option for active duty military members.[18] However, despite evidence of effectiveness, these medications are prescribed to fewer than 35% of Veterans Health Administration patients diagnosed with opioid use disorder.[19] Barriers to opioid agonist medication among VHA providers include lack of perceived patient interest, stigma toward the patient population, and lack of education about opioid agonist treatment.

Families with loved ones with opioid use disorders should investigate having the medicine naloxoneon hand to reverse an opioid overdose. An easy-to-use nasal spray is available at many pharmacies without personal prescriptions.

Current Research

NIDA and other government agencies continue to research strategies for managing substance use disorders and related mental health issues in people with military experience. The research questions can be complex and vary with different population subtypes, and can reveal the need for additional research directions. For example, a 2019 study looked at the effectiveness of integrating treatment for both SUDs and PTSD, concluding that veterans with PTSD and co-occurring polysubstance use issues (as compared to a single substance use issue) may experience greater improvement in substance use but less improvement in PTSD symptoms.24 Another 2019 study identified chronic pain as a common condition among polysubstance users and showed the importance of incorporating interdisciplinary pain management approaches during treatment to reduce reliance on long-term opioid therapy and improve rehabilitation.25 NIDA will continue to focus on developing evidence-based strategies to help this population return to productive military and civilian lives.

Resources for Military Members, Veterans, and their families

• Veterans Crisis Line/Suicide Hotline: 1-800-(273)-8255 or send a text message to 838255

• Resources for homeless in your community: https://www.samhsa.gov/homelessness-programs-resources/hpr-resources

• Where to find opioid overdose reversal medication, naloxone: http://www.getnaloxonenow.org/

• U.S Department of Veterans Affairs: https://www.va.gov/

• FREE VA online resource for military members concerned about their drinking: https://www.ptsd.va.gov/apps/change/

• Alcohol Treatment Navigator (NIAAA) https://alcoholtreatment.niaaa.nih.gov/

• Opioid Safety Initiative Toolkit (for consumers and clinicians) https://www.va.gov/PAINMANAGEMENT/Opioid_Safety_Initiative_OSI.asp

• For military family support: https://www.med.navy.mil/sites/nmcphc/Documents/health-promotion-wellness/psychological-emotional-wellbeing/DSPOFamilyGuide.pdf

• VA/DoD Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Management of Substance Use Disorders https://www.healthquality.va.gov/guidelines/Pain/cot/

• SAMHSA-HRSA Veterans Resource Guide: https://www.integration.samhsa.gov/clinical-practice/Veterans_Resource_Guide_FINAL.pdf

• Substance Use Treatment for Veterans: https://www.va.gov/health-care/health-needs-conditions/substance-use-problems/

• Current Research and Resources from NIDA: https://www.drugabuse.gov/related-topics/military

• Military One Source: https://www.militaryonesource.mil/health-wellness

• Becoming a Smoke Free Veteran: https://veterans.smokefree.gov/

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

This page was last updated October 2019

References

1. Larson, M. J., Wooten, N. R., Adams, R. S., & Merrick, E. L. (2012). Military combat deployments and substance use: Review and future directions. *Journal of social work practice in the addictions*, *12*(1), 6–27. doi:10.1080/1533256X.2012.647586

2. Meadows, S.O., Engel, C.C, Collins, R.L, et al. (2015). Health Related Behaviors Survey: Substance Use Among U.S. Active-Duty Service Members. Santa Monica, CA: RAND Corporation, 2018. https://www.rand.org/pubs/research_briefs/RB9955z7.html.

3. Teeters, J.B., Lancaster, C.L., Brown, D.G., & Back, S.E. (2017). Substance use disorders in military veterans: prevalence and treatment challenges. *Substance Abuse and Rehabilitation*. 8, 69-77. doi:10.2147/SAR.S116720.

4. Jamal, A., King, B.A., Neff, L.J., et al. (2016). Current cigarette smoking among adults—United States, 2005-2015. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 65, 1205-1211. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6544a2

5. Veteran's Primary Substance of Abuse is Alcohol in Treatment Admissions, The CBHSQ Report, SAMHSA, November 10, 2015. https://www.samhsa.gov/data/sites/default/files/report_2111/Spotlight-2111.html

6. Institute of Medicine. Substance Use Disorders in the US Armed Forces. Washington, DC: National Academies Press; 2013. https://www.nap.edu/catalog/13441/substance-use-disorders-in-the-us-armed-forces
7. Nahin R. L. (2017). Severe pain in veterans: The effect of age and sex, and comparisons with the general population. *The journal of pain: Official journal of the American Pain Society*, *18*(3), 247–254. doi:10.1016/j.jpain.2016.10.021
8. Lewei, A.L., Peltzman, T., McCarthy, J.F., et al. (2019). Changing trends in opioid overdose deaths and prescription opioid receipt among veterans. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *57*(1), 106-110. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2019.01.016
9. Odani, S., Agaku, I.T., Graffunder, C.M., et al. (2018). Tobacco product use among military veterans—United States, 2010-2015. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 67, 7-12. doi: http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6701a2
10. Shahoumian, T.A., Phillips, B.R., & Backus, L.I. (2016). Cigarette smoking, reduction and quit attempts: Prevalence among veterans with coronary heart disease. *Preventing Chronic Disease*. *13*(E41). doi: 10.5888/pcd13.150282.
11.Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2012). Behavioralhealthissues among Afghanistan and Iraq U.S.war veterans. *In Brief*, Volume 7, Issue1.Retrieved fromhttp://www.pacenterofexcellence.pitt.edu/documents/SAMHSA%20In%20Brief.pdf
12.Center for Behavioral Health Statistics andQuality.(2016).*Key substanceuseandmental health indicators in theUnited States: Results from the 2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health*(HHS Publication No. SMA 16-4984, NSDUHSeries H-51).Retrieved fromhttp://www.samhsa.gov/data/
13.Department of Veterans Affairs, Veterans Health Administration, Office of MentalHealth and Suicide Prevention.(2018).*Veteran suicidedata report, 2005–2016*. Retrievedfromhttps://www.mentalhealth.va.gov/docs/data-sheets/OMHSP_National_Suicide_Data_Report_ 2005-2016_508-compliant.pdf
14.Department of Veterans Affairs,VA Suicide Prevention Program. (2016).*Facts AboutVeteran Suicide*.Retrieved fromhttps://www.va.gov/opa/publications/factsheets/Suicide_Prevention_FactSheet_New_VA_Stats_070616_1400.pdf
15.Ilgen,M.,Bohnert, A.,Ganoczy, D., et al. (2016).Opioid dose and risk of suicide.*Pain*.*157*(5). doi:10.1097/j.pain.0000000000000484.
16.Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality.(2014).Twenty-one percent ofveterans in substanceabuse treatment werehomeless*. The TEDS Report.*Retrievedfromhttps://www.samhsa.gov/data/sites/default/files/spot121-homeless-veterans-2014.pdf
17.Perl, L. (2013). *Veterans andHomelessness.* Washington, D.C.Congressional ResearchService Report for Congress. Retrieved fromhttps://fas.org/sgp/crs/misc/RL34024.pdf
18.U.S. Department of Veteran Affairs. (2015). *VA/DoDclinicalpractice guideline for the management of substanceusedisorders*. Retrieved fromhttps://www.healthquality.va.gov/guidelines/MH/sud/VADoDSUDCPGRevised22216.pdf
19.Finlay, A.K., Wong, J.J., Ellerbe,L.S.,et al.(2018).Barriers andfacilitators toimplementation ofpharmacotherapy foropioiduse disorders in VHAresidentialtreatment programs.*Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*.*79*(6), 909–917. doi:https://doi.org/10.15288/jsad.2018.79.909
20.Department of Defense. (2016).Tricare; Mentalhealth and substance usedisordertreatment.*Federal Register.*Volume81, Issue 171.Retrieved fromhttps://www.govinfo.gov/content/pkg/FR-2016-09-02/pdf/2016-21125.pdf
21.U.S. Department of Veteran Affairs.(2018). *Safe andresponsible use of opioids forchronicpain*. Retrieved from https://www.va.gov/PAINMANAGEMENT/Opioid_Safety/OSI_docs/10-791-Safe_and_Responsible_Use_508.pdfh
22.Lin, L.A., Bohnert, A.S., Kerns, R.D., etal. (2017). Impact of the Opioid Safety Initiative on opioid-related prescribing in veterans. *Pain*. *158*(5), 833-839.doi:10.1097/j.pain.0000000000000837
23.NationalAcademies of Sciences, Engineering,andMedicine.(2019).*Medications for OpioidUse Disorders Save Lives*. Washington, D.C.The National Academies Press.https://doi.org/10.17226/25310
24.Jeffirs,S.M.,Jarnecke,A.M.,Flanagan, J.C.,et al.(2019).Veterans with PTSD andcomorbid substance use disorders:Does single versus poly-substance use disorderaffect treatment outcomes? Drug and Alcohol Dependence. *199*, 70-75. doi: https://doi.org/10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2019.04.001.
25. Adams, R.S., Larson, M.J., Meerwijk, E.L., et al. (2019). Postdeployment polytrauma diagnoses among soldiers and veterans using the Veterans Health Affairs polytrauma system of care and receipt of opioids, nonpharmacologic, and mental health treatments. *Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation*. *34*(3), 167-175. doi: 10.1097/HTR.0000000000000481
26. Schoenborn, C.A., Gindi, R.M. (2015). Electronic cigarette use among adults: United States, 2014. *NCHS Data Brief, No. 217*, Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics, 2015. https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/databriefs/db217.pdf
27. U.S. Fleet Forces Public Affairs. (2017). Navy Suspends Electronic Nicotine Delivery Systems (ENDS) on Ships, Subs, Aircraft. April 14, 2017. Retrieved from: https://www.navy.mil/submit/display.asp?story_id=99913.
28. Army Public Health Center. (2019). Vaping: E-cigarettes and Personal Vaporizers. October 8, 2019. Retrieved from https://phc.amedd.army.mil/topics/healthyliving/tfl/Pages/Vaping.aspx
29. Lopez, C.T. (2019). Military exchanges extinguish vape sales. October 16, 2019. Retrieved from https://www.army.mil/article/228521/military_exchanges_extinguish_vape_sales

C. Treatment Approaches for Drug Addiction

What is drug addiction?

Drug addiction is a chronic disease characterized by compulsive, or uncontrollable, drug seeking and use despite harmful consequences and changes in the brain, which can be long lasting. These changes in the brain can lead to the harmful behaviors seen in people who use drugs. Drug addiction is also a relapsing disease. Relapse is the return to drug use after an attempt to stop.

The path to drug addiction begins with the voluntary act of taking drugs. But over time, a person's ability to choose not to do so becomes compromised. Seeking and taking the drug becomes compulsive. This is mostly due to the effects of long-term drug exposure on brain function. Addiction affects parts of the brain involved in reward and motivation, learning and memory, and control over behavior.

Addiction is a disease that affects both the brain and behavior.

Can drug addiction be treated?

Yes, but it’s not simple. Because addiction is a chronic disease, people can’t simply stop using drugs for a few days and be cured. Most patients need long-term or repeated care to stop using completely and recover their lives.

Addiction treatment must help the person do the following:

- stop using drugs
- stay drug-free
- be productive in the family, at work, and in society

Principles of Effective Treatment

Based on scientific research since the mid-1970s, the following key principles should form the basis of any effective treatment program:

- Addiction is a complex but treatable disease that affects brain function and behavior.
- No single treatment is right for everyone.
- People need to have quick access to treatment.
- Effective treatment addresses all of the patient’s needs, not just his or her drug use.
- Staying in treatment long enough is critical.
- Counseling and other behavioral therapies are the most commonly used forms of treatment.
- Medications are often an important part of treatment, especially when combined with behavioral therapies.

- Treatment plans must be reviewed often and modified to fit the patient's changing needs.
- Treatment should address other possible mental disorders.
- Medically assisted detoxification is only the first stage of treatment.
- Treatment doesn't need to be voluntary to be effective.
- Drug use during treatment must be monitored continuously.
- Treatment programs should test patients for HIV/AIDS, hepatitis B and C, tuberculosis, and other infectious diseases as well as teach them about steps they can take to reduce their risk of these illnesses.

What are treatments for drug addiction?

There are many options that have been successful in treating drug addiction, including:

- behavioral counseling
- medication
- medical devices and applications used to treat withdrawal symptoms or deliver skills training
- evaluation and treatment for co-occurring mental health issues such as depression and anxiety
- long-term follow-up to prevent relapse

A range of care with a tailored treatment program and follow-up options can be crucial to success. Treatment should include both medical and mental health services as needed.

Follow-up care may include community- or family-based recovery support systems.

How are medications used in drug addiction treatment?

Medications can be used to manage withdrawal symptoms, prevent relapse, and treat co-occurring conditions.

Withdrawal. Medications help suppress withdrawal symptoms during detoxification. Detoxification is not in itself "treatment," but only the first step in the process. Patients who do not receive any further treatment after detoxification usually resume their drug use. One study of treatment facilities found that medications were used in almost 80 percent of detoxifications (SAMHSA, 2014). Devices are also being used to reduce withdrawal symptoms. In November 2017, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) granted a new indication to an electronic stimulation device, NSS-2 Bridge, for use in helping reduce opioid

withdrawal symptoms. This device is placed behind the ear and sends electrical pulses to stimulate certain brain nerves.

Relapse prevention. Patients can use medications to help re-establish normal brain function and decrease cravings. Medications are available for treatment of opioid (heroin, prescription pain relievers), tobacco (nicotine), and alcohol addiction. Scientists are developing other medications to treat stimulant (cocaine, methamphetamine) and cannabis (marijuana) addiction. People who use more than one drug, which is very common, need treatment for all of the substances they use.

- ***Opioids:*** Methadone (Dolophine®, Methadose®), buprenorphine (Suboxone®, Subutex®, Probuphine® , Sublocade™), and naltrexone (Vivitrol®) are used to treat opioid addiction. Acting on the same targets in the brain as heroin and morphine, methadone and buprenorphine suppress withdrawal symptoms and relieve cravings. Naltrexone blocks the effects of opioids at their receptor sites in the brain and should be used only in patients who have already been detoxified. All medications help patients reduce drug seeking and related criminal behavior and help them become more open to behavioral treatments. A NIDA study found that once treatment is initiated, both a buprenorphine/naloxone combination and an extended release naltrexone formulation are similarly effective in treating opioid addiction. Because full detoxification is necessary for treatment with naloxone, initiating treatment among active users was difficult, but once detoxification was complete, both medications had similar effectiveness.

- ***Tobacco:*** Nicotine replacement therapies have several forms, including the patch, spray, gum, and lozenges. These products are available over the counter. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved two prescription medications for nicotine addiction: bupropion (Zyban®) and varenicline (Chantix®). They work differently in the brain, but both help prevent relapse in people trying to quit. The medications are more effective when combined with behavioral treatments, such as group and individual therapy as well as telephone quit lines.

- ***Alcohol:*** Three medications have been FDA-approved for treating alcohol addiction and a fourth, topiramate, has shown promise in clinical trials (large- scale studies with people). The three approved medications are as follows:

- **Naltrexone** blocks opioid receptors that are involved in the rewarding effects of drinking and in the craving for alcohol. It reduces relapse to heavy drinking and is highly effective in some patients. Genetic differences may affect how well the drug works in certain patients.
- **Acamprosate (Campral®)** may reduce symptoms of long-lasting withdrawal, such as insomnia, anxiety, restlessness, and dysphoria (generally feeling unwell or unhappy). It may be more effective in patients with severe addiction.
- **Disulfiram (Antabuse®)** interferes with the breakdown of alcohol. Acetaldehyde builds up in the body, leading to unpleasant reactions that include flushing (warmth and redness in the face), nausea, and irregular heartbeat if the patient drinks alcohol. Compliance (taking the drug as prescribed) can be a problem, but it may help patients who are highly motivated to quit drinking.

- ***Co-occuring conditions:*** Other medications are available to treat possible mental health conditions, such as depression or anxiety, that may be contributing to the person's addiction.

How are behavioral therapies used to treat drug addiction?

Behavioral therapies help patients:

- modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use
- increase healthy life skills
- persist with other forms of treatment, such as medication

Patients can receive treatment in many different settings with various approaches.

Outpatient behavioral treatment includes a wide variety of programs for patients who visit a behavioral health counselor on a regular schedule. Most of the programs involve individual or group drug counseling, or both. These programs typically offer forms of behavioral therapy such as:

- ***cognitive-behavioral therapy,*** which helps patients recognize, avoid, and cope with the situations in which they are most likely to use drugs
- ***multidimensional family therapy***—developed for adolescents with drug abuse problems as well as their families—which addresses a range of influences on their drug abuse patterns and is designed to improve overall family functioning

- ***motivational interviewing,*** which makes the most of people's readiness to change their behavior and enter treatment
- ***motivational incentives*** (contingency management), which uses positive reinforcement to encourage abstinence from drugs

Treatment is sometimes intensive at first, where patients attend multiple outpatient sessions each week. After completing intensive treatment, patients transition to regular outpatient treatment, which meets less often and for fewer hours per week to help sustain their recovery. In September 2017, the FDA permitted marketing of the first mobile application, reSET®, to help treat substance use disorders. This application is intended to be used with outpatient treatment to treat alcohol, cocaine, marijuana, and stimulant substance use disorders. In December 2018, the FDA cleared a mobile medical application, reSET®, to help treat opioid use disorders. This application is a prescription cognitive behavioral therapy and should be used in conjunction with treatment that includes buprenorphine and contingency management. Read more about reSET® in this FDA News Release.

Inpatient or residential treatment can also be very effective, especially for those with more severe problems (including co-occurring disorders). Licensed residential treatment facilities offer 24-hour structured and intensive care, including safe housing and medical attention. Residential treatment facilities may use a variety of therapeutic approaches, and they are generally aimed at helping the patient live a drug-free, crime-free lifestyle after treatment. Examples of residential treatment settings include:

- ***Therapeutic communities***, which are highly structured programs in which patients remain at a residence, typically for 6 to 12 months. The entire community, including treatment staff and those in recovery, act as key agents of change, influencing the patient's attitudes, understanding, and behaviors associated with drug use. Read more about therapeutic communities in the *Therapeutic Communities Research Report* at https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications/ research-reports/therapeutic-communities.
- ***Shorter-term residential treatment***, which typically focuses on detoxification as well as providing initial intensive counseling and preparation for treatment in a community-based setting.
- ***Recovery housing,*** which provides supervised, short-term housing for patients, often following other types of inpatient or residential treatment. Recovery housing can help people make the transition to an independent life—for example, helping them learn how to manage finances or seek employment, as well as connecting them to support services in the community.

Is treatment different for criminal justice populations?

Scientific research since the mid-1970s shows that drug abuse treatment can help many drug-using offenders change their attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors towards drug abuse; avoid relapse; and successfully remove themselves from a life of substance abuse and crime. Many of the principles of treating drug addiction are similar for people within the criminal justice system as for those in the general population. However, many offenders don't have access to the types of services they need. Treatment that is of poor quality or is not well suited to the needs of offenders may not be effective at reducing drug use and criminal behavior.

In addition to the general principles of treatment, some considerations specific to offenders include the following:

- Treatment should include development of specific cognitive skills to help the offender adjust attitudes and beliefs that lead to drug abuse and crime, such as feeling entitled to have things one's own way or not understanding the consequences of one's behavior. This includes skills related to thinking, understanding, learning, and remembering.
- Treatment planning should include tailored services within the correctional facility as well as transition to community-based treatment after release.
- Ongoing coordination between treatment providers and courts or parole and probation officers is important in addressing the complex needs of offenders re-entering society.

Challenges of Re-entry

Drug abuse changes the function of the brain, and many things can "trigger" drug cravings within the brain. It's critical for those in treatment, especially those treated at an inpatient facility or prison, to learn how to recognize, avoid, and cope with triggers they are likely to be exposed to after treatment.

How many people get treatment for drug addiction?

According to SAMHSA's National Survey on Drug Use and Health, 22.5 million people (8.5 percent of the U.S. population) aged 12 or older needed treatment for an illicit* drug or alcohol use problem in 2014. Only 4.2 million (18.5 percent of those who needed treatment) received any substance use treatment in the same year. Of these, about 2.6 million people received treatment at specialty treatment programs (CBHSQ, 2015).

*The term "illicit" refers to the use of illegal drugs, including marijuana according to federal law, and misuse of prescription medications.

Points to Remember

- Drug addiction can be treated, but it's not simple. Addiction treatment must help the person do the following:
  - stop using drugs
  - stay drug-free
  - be productive in the family, at work, and in society

- Successful treatment has several steps:
  - detoxification
  - behavioral counseling
  - medication (for opioid, tobacco, or alcohol addiction)
  - evaluation and treatment for co-occurring mental health issues such as depression and anxiety
  - long-term follow-up to prevent relapse

- Medications and devices can be used to manage withdrawal symptoms, prevent relapse, and treat co-occurring conditions.
- Behavioral therapies help patients:
  - modify their attitudes and behaviors related to drug use
  - increase healthy life skills
  - persist with other forms of treatment, such as medication
- People within the criminal justice system may need additional treatment services to treat drug use disorders effectively. However, many offenders don't have access to the types of services they need.

Source: National Institute on Drug Abuse; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
Updated January 2019

References

Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (CBSHQ). *2014 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Detailed Tables.* Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration; 2015.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). *National Survey of Substance Abuse Treatment Services (N-SSATS): 2013. Data on Substance Abuse Treatment*

Facilities. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration; 2014. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14-489. BHSIS Series S-73.

Chapter 5 - Medications for Opioid Use Disorder

[Chapter 5 is taken from TIP 63, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), Department of Health & Human Services, www.samhsa.gov]

A. Introduction to Medications for Opioid Use Disorder Treatment

The goal of treatment for opioid addiction or opioid use disorder (OUD) is remission of the disorder leading to lasting recovery. Recovery is a process of change through which individuals improve their health and wellness, live self-directed lives, and strive to reach their full potential.[64] This Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) reviews the use of the three Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved medications used to treat OUD—methadone, naltrexone, and buprenorphine—and the other strategies and services needed to support recovery for people with OUD.

Introduction

Our nation faces a crisis of overdose deaths from opioids, including heroin, illicit fentanyl, and prescription opioids. These deaths represent a mere fraction of the total number of Americans harmed by opioid misuse and addiction. Many Americans now suffer daily from a chronic medical illness called "opioid addiction" or OUD. Healthcare professionals, treatment providers, and policymakers have a responsibility to expand access to evidence-based, effective care for people with OUD.

An expert panel developed the TIP's content based on a review of the literature and on their extensive experience in the field of addiction treatment. Other professionals also generously contributed their time and commitment to this project.

Overall Key Messages

Addiction is a chronic, treatable illness.

Opioid addiction, which generally corresponds with moderate to severe forms of OUD, often requires continuing care for effective treatment rather than an episodic, acute-care treatment approach.

[64] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2017). Recovery and recovery support [Webpage]. Retrieved November 17, 2017, from www.samhsa.gov/recovery

General principles of good care for chronic diseases can guide OUD treatment. Approaching OUD as a chronic illness can help providers deliver care that helps patients stabilize, achieve remission of symptoms, and establish and maintain recovery.

Patient-centered care empowers patients with information that helps them make better treatment decisions with the healthcare professionals involved in their care. Patients should receive information from their healthcare team that will help them understand OUD and the options for treating it, including treatment with FDA-approved medication.

Patients with OUD should have access to mental health services as needed, medical care, and addiction counseling, as well as recovery support services, to supplement treatment with medication.

The words you use to describe OUD and an individual with OUD are powerful. The TIP defines, uses, and encourages providers to adopt terminology that will not reinforce prejudice, negative attitudes, or discrimination.

There is no "one size fts all" approach to OUD treatment. Many people with OUD benefit from treatment with medication for varying lengths of time, including lifelong treatment. Ongoing outpatient medication treatment for OUD is linked to better retention and outcomes than treatment without medication. Even so, some people stop using opioids on their own; others recover through support groups or specialty treatment with or without medication.

The science demonstrating the effectiveness of medication for OUD is strong. For example, methadone, extended-release injectable naltrex-one (XR-NTX), and buprenorphine were each found to be more effective in reducing illicit opioid use than no medication in randomized clinical trials, which are the gold standard for demonstrating efficacy in clinical

medicine.[65] [66] [67] [68] [69] Methadone and buprenorphine treatment have also been associated with reduced risk of overdose death.[70] [71] [72] [73] [74]

This doesn't mean that remission and recovery occur only through medication. Some people achieve remission without OUD medication, just as some people can manage type 2 diabetes with exercise and diet alone. But just as it is inadvisable to deny people with diabetes the medication they need to help manage their illness, it is also not sound medical practice to deny people with OUD access to FDA-approved medications for their illness.

Medication for OUD should be successfully integrated with outpatient and residential treatment. Some patients may benefit from different levels of care at different points in their lives, such as outpatient counseling, intensive outpatient treatment, inpatient treatment, or long-term therapeutic communities. Patients treated in these settings should have access to OUD medications.

Patients treated with medications for OUD can benefit from individualized psychosocial supports. These can be offered by patients' healthcare providers in the form of medication management and supportive counseling and/or by other providers offering adjunctive addiction counseling, recovery coaching, mental health services, and other services that may be needed by particular patients.

Expanding access to OUD medications is an important public health strategy.[75] The gap between the number of people needing opioid addiction treatment and the capacity to treat them with OUD medication is substantial. In 2012, the gap was estimated at nearly 1 million

---

[65] Johnson, R. E., Chutuape, M. A., Strain, E. C., Walsh, S. L., Stitzer, M. L., & Bigelow, G. E. (2000). A comparison of levomethadyl acetate, buprenorphine, and methadone for opioid dependence. *New England Journal of Medicine, 343*(18), 1290–1297.

[66] Krupitsky, E., Nunes, E. V., Ling, W., Illeperuma, A., Gastfriend, D. R., & Silverman, B. L. (2011, April 30). Injectable extended-release naltrexone for opioid dependence: A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre randomised trial. *Lancet, 377*(9776), 1506–1513.

[67] Lee, J. D., Friedmann, P. D., Kinlock, T. W., Nunes, E. V., Boney, T. Y., Hoskinson, R. A., Jr., … O'Brien, C. P. (2016). Extended-release naltrexone to prevent opioid relapse in criminal justice offenders. *New England Journal of Medicine, 374*(13), 1232–1242.

[68] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2009). Methadone maintenance therapy versus no opioid replacement therapy for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2009*(3), 1–19.

[69] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2014). Buprenorphine maintenance versus placebo or methadone maintenance for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2014*(2), 1–84.

[70] Auriacombe, M., Fatséas, M., Dubernet, J., Daulouède, J. P., & Tignol, J. (2004). French feld experience with buprenorphine. *American Journal on Addictions, 13*(Suppl. 1), S17–S28.

[71] Degenhardt, L., Randall, D., Hall, W., Law, M., Butler, T., & Burns, L. (2009). Mortality among clients of a state-wide opioid pharmacotherapy program over 20 years: Risk factors and lives saved. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 105*(1–2), 9–15.

[72] Gibson, A., Degenhardt, L., Mattick, R. P., Ali, R., White, J., & O'Brien, S. (2008). Exposure to opioid maintenance treatment reduces long-term mortality. *Addiction, 103*(3), 462–468.

[73] Schwartz, R. P., Gryczynski, J., O'Grady, K. E., Sharfstein, J. M., Warren, G., Olsen, Y., … Jaffe, J. H. (2013). Opioid agonist treatments and heroin overdose deaths in Baltimore, Maryland, 1995–2009. *American Journal of Public Health, 103*(5), 917–922.

[74] World Health Organization. (2009). *Guidelines for the psychosocially assisted pharmacological treatment of opioid dependence.* Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press.

[75] Department of Health and Human Services, Offce of the Surgeon General. (2016). *Facing addiction in America: The Surgeon General's report on alcohol, drugs, and health.* Washington, DC: Department of Health and Human Services.

people, with about 80 percent of opioid treatment programs (OTPs) nationally operating at 80 percent capacity or greater.[76]

Improving access to treatment with OUD medications is crucial to closing the wide gap between treatment need and treatment availability, given the strong evidence of effectiveness for such treatments.[77]

Data indicate that medications for OUD are cost effective and cost beneficial.[78] [79]

B. Key Terms

Addiction: As defined by the American Society of Addiction Medicine, "a primary, chronic disease of brain reward, motivation, memory, and related circuitry."[80] It is characterized by inability to consistently abstain, impairment in behavioral control, craving, diminished recognition of significant problems with one's behaviors and interpersonal relationships, and a dysfunctional emotional response. Like other chronic diseases, addiction often involves cycles of **relapse** and **remission.** The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders,* Fifth Edition[4] (DSM-5), does not use the term for diagnostic purposes, but it commonly describes the more severe forms of OUD.

Medically supervised withdrawal (formerly called detoxification): Using an opioid agonist (or an alpha-2 adrenergic agonist if an opioid agonist is not available) in tapering doses or other medications to help a patient discontinue illicit or prescription opioids.

Opioid misuse: The use of prescription opioids in any way other than as directed by a prescriber; the use of any opioid in a manner, situation, amount, or frequency that can cause harm to self or others.

Opioid receptor agonist: A substance that has an affinity for and stimulates physiological activity at cell receptors in the central nervous system (CNS) that are normally stimulated by opioids. Mu-opioid receptor full agonists (e.g., methadone) bind to the mu-opioid receptor and produce actions similar to those produced by the endogenous opioid beta-endorphin. Increasing the dose increases the effect. Mu-opioid receptor partial agonists (e.g., buprenorphine) bind to the mu-opioid receptor. Unlike with full agonists, increasing their

---

[76] Jones, C. M., Campopiano, M., Baldwin, G., & McCance-Katz, E. (2015). National and state treatment need and capacity for opioid agonist medication-assisted treatment. *American Journal of Public Health, 105*(8), e55–e63.

[77] Jones, C. M., Campopiano, M., Baldwin, G., & McCance-Katz, E. (2015). National and state treatment need and capacity for opioid agonist medication-assisted treatment. *American Journal of Public Health, 105*(8), e55–e63.

[78] Cartwright, W. S. (2000). Cost-beneft analysis of drug treatment services: Review of the literature. *Journal of Mental Health Policy and Economics, 3*(1), 11–26.

[79] McCollister, K. E., & French, M. T. (2003). The relative contribution of outcome domains in the total economic benefit of addiction interventions: A review of first findings. *Addiction, 98(*12), 1647–1659.

[80] American Society of Addiction Medicine. (2011). *Definition of addiction.* Retrieved January 9, 2018, from www.asam.org/resources/defnition-of-addiction

dose may not produce additional effects once they have reached their maximal effect. At low doses, partial agonists may produce effects similar to those of full agonists.

Opioid receptor antagonist: A substance that has affinity for opioid receptors in the CNS without producing the physiological effects of opioid agonists. Mu-opioid receptor antagonists (e.g., naltrexone) can block the effects of exogenously administered opioids.

Opioids: All natural, synthetic, and semisynthetic substances that have effects similar to morphine. They can be used as medications having such effects (e.g., methadone, buprenorphine, oxycodone).

Opioid treatment program (OTP): An accredited treatment program with SAMHSA certification and Drug Enforcement Administration registration to administer and dispense opioid agonist medications that are approved by FDA to treat opioid addiction. Currently, these include methadone and buprenorphine products. Other pharmacotherapies, such as naltrexone, may be provided but are not subject to these regulations. OTPs must provide adequate medical, counseling, vocational, educational, and other assessment and treatment services either onsite or by referral to an outside agency or practitioner through a formal agreement.

Opioid use disorder (OUD): Per DSM-5, a disorder characterized by loss of control of opioid use, risky opioid use, impaired social functioning, tolerance, and withdrawal. Tolerance and withdrawal do not count toward the diagnosis in people experiencing these symptoms when using opioids under appropriate medical supervision. OUD covers a range of severity and replaces what DSM-IV termed “opioid abuse” and “opioid dependence.” An OUD diagnosis is applicable to a person who uses opioids and experiences at least 2 of the 11 symptoms in a 12-month period. (See Exhibit 2.13 in Part 2 for full DSM-5 diagnostic criteria for OUD.)

Recovery: A process of change through which individuals improve their health and wellness, live self-directed lives, and strive to reach their full potential. Even individuals with severe and chronic SUDs can, with help, overcome their SUDs and regain health and social function. Although abstinence from all substance misuse is a cardinal feature of a recovery lifestyle, it is not the only healthy, prosocial feature. Patients taking FDA-approved medication to treat OUD can be considered in recovery.

Relapse: A process in which a person with OUD who has been in **remission** experiences a return of symptoms or loss of remission. A relapse is different from a **return to opioid use** in that it involves more than a single incident of use. Relapses occur over a period of time and can be interrupted. Relapse need not be long lasting. The TIP uses relapse to describe relapse prevention, a common treatment modality.

Remission: A medical term meaning a disappearance of signs and symptoms of the disease.[7] DSM-5 defines remission as present in people who previously met OUD criteria but no longer

meet any OUD criteria (with the possible exception of craving).[8] Remission is an essential element of **recovery.**

Return to opioid use: One or more instances of **opioid misuse** without a return of symptoms of OUD. A return to opioid use may lead to **relapse.**

As is true for patients undergoing treatment for any chronic medical condition, patients with OUD should have access to medical, mental health, addiction counseling, and recovery support services that they may need to supplement treatment with medication. Medical care should include preventive services and disease management. Patients with OUD who have mental disorders should have access to mental health services.

Treatment and support services should reflect each patient's individual needs and preferences. Some patients, particularly those with co-occurring disorders, may require these treatments and services to achieve sustained remission and recovery.

The words you use to describe both OUD and an individual with OUD are powerful and can reinforce prejudice, negative attitudes, and discrimination. Negative attitudes held by the public and healthcare professionals can deter people from seeking treatment, make patients leave treatment prematurely, and contribute to worse treatment outcomes. The TIP expert panel recommends that providers always use medical terms when discussing SUDs (e.g., positive or negative urine sample, not dirty or clean sample) and use person-first language (e.g., a person with an SUD, not a user, alcoholic, or addict).

C. Overview of Medications for OUD

There is no "one size fits all" approach to OUD treatment. Many people with OUD benefit from treatment with medication for varying lengths of time, including lifelong treatment. Ongoing outpatient medication treatment for OUD is linked to better retention and outcomes than treatment without medication. Even so, some people stop using opioids on their own; others recover through support groups or specialty outpatient or residential treatment with or without medication. Still, FDA-approved medication should be considered and offered to patients with OUD as part of their treatment.

Benefits

The three FDA-approved medications used to treat OUD improve patients' health and wellness by:

- Reducing or eliminating withdrawal symptoms: methadone, buprenorphine.

- Blunting or blocking the effects of illicit opioids: methadone, naltrexone, buprenorphine.
- Reducing or eliminating cravings to use opioids: methadone, naltrexone, buprenorphine.

See Exhibit 1.2 for further comparison between these medications.

Effectiveness

The science demonstrating the effectiveness of medication for OUD is strong. For example, methadone, extended-release injectable naltrex-one (XR-NTX), and buprenorphine were each found to be more effective in reducing illicit opioid use than no medication in randomized clinical trials,[81] [82] [83] [84]which are the gold standard for demonstrating efficacy in clinical medicine. Methadone and buprenorphine treatment have also been associated with reduced risk of overdose death.[85] [86] [87] [88] [89]

Exhibit 1.2 Comparison of Medications for OUD

PRESCRIBING CONSIDERATIONS	METHADONE	NALTREXONE	BUPRENORPHINE
Mechanism of Action at mu-Opioid Receptor	Agonist	Antagonist	Partial agonist
Phase of Treatment	Medically supervised withdrawal, maintenance	Prevention of relapse to opioid dependence, following medically	Medically supervised withdrawal, maintenance

[81] Krupitsky, E., Nunes, E. V., Ling, W., Illeperuma, A., Gastfriend, D. R., & Silverman, B. L. (2011, April 30). Injectable extended-release naltrexone for opioid dependence: A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre randomised trial. *Lancet, 377*(9776), 1506–1513.

[82] Lee, J. D., Friedmann, P. D., Kinlock, T. W., Nunes, E. V., Boney, T. Y., Hoskinson, R. A., Jr., … O'Brien, C. P. (2016). Extended-release naltrexone to prevent opioid relapse in criminal justice offenders. *New England Journal of Medicine, 374*(13), 1232–1242.

[83] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2009). Methadone maintenance therapy versus no opioid replacement therapy for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2009*(3), 1–19.

[84] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2014). Buprenorphine maintenance versus placebo or methadone maintenance for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2014*(2), 1–84.

[85] Auriacombe, M., Fatséas, M., Dubernet, J., Daulouède, J. P., & Tignol, J. (2004). French field experience with buprenorphine. *American Journal on Addictions, 13*(Suppl. 1), S17–S28.

[86] Degenhardt, L., Randall, D., Hall, W., Law, M., Butler, T., & Burns, L. (2009). Mortality among clients of a state-wide opioid pharmacotherapy program over 20 years: Risk factors and lives saved. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 105*(1–2), 9–15.

[87] Gibson, A., Degenhardt, L., Mattick, R. P., Ali, R., White, J., & O'Brien, S. (2008). Exposure to opioid maintenance treatment reduces long-term mortality. *Addiction, 103*(3), 462–468.

[88] Schwartz, R. P., Gryczynski, J., O'Grady, K. E., Sharfstein, J. M., Warren, G., Olsen, Y., … Jaffe, J. H. (2013). Opioid agonist treatments and heroin overdose deaths in Baltimore, Maryland, 1995–2009. *American Journal of Public Health, 103*(5), 917–922.

[89] World Health Organization. (2009). *Guidelines for the psychosocially assisted pharmacological treatment of opioid dependence.* Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press.

		supervised withdrawal	
Route of Administration	Oral	Oral, intramuscular extended-release	Sublingual, buccal, subdermal implant, subcutaneous extended release
Possible Adverse Effects	Constipation, hyperhidrosis, respiratory depression, sedation, QT prolongation, sexual dysfunction, severe hypotension including orthostatic hypotension and syncope, misuse potential, neonatal abstinence syndrome	Nausea, anxiety, insomnia, precipitated opioid withdrawal, hepatotoxicity, vulnerability to opioid overdose, depression, suicidality, muscle cramps, dizziness or syncope, somnolence or sedation, anorexia, decreased appetite or other appetite disorders Intramuscular: Pain, swelling, induration (including some cases requiring surgical intervention)	Constipation, nausea, precipitated opioid withdrawal, excessive sweating, insomnia, pain, peripheral edema, respiratory depression (particularly combined with benzodiazepines or other CNS depressants), misuse potential, neonatal abstinence syndrome Implant: Nerve damage during insertion/removal, accidental overdose or misuse if extruded, local migration or protrusion Subcutaneous: Injection site itching or pain,

			death f rom intravenous injection
Regulations and Availability	Schedule II; only available at federally certified OTPs and the acute inpatient hospital setting for OUD treatment	Not a scheduled medication; not included in OTP regulations; requires prescription; office-based treatment or specialty substance use treatment programs, including OTPs	Schedule III; requires waiver to prescribe outside OTPs Implant: Prescribers must be certified in the Probuphine Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) Program. Providers who wish to insert/ remove implants are required to obtain special training and certification in the REMS Program Subcutaneous: Healthcare settings and pharmacies must be certified in the Sublocade REMS Program and only dispense the medication directly to a provider for administration

Adapted with Permission[90]Copyrighted 2017. UBM Medica. 131265:0917SH

This doesn't mean that remission and recovery occur only through medication. Some people achieve remission without OUD medication, just as some people can manage type 2 diabetes with exercise and diet alone. But just as it is inadvisable to deny people with

[90] Brezing, C., & Bisaga, A. (2015, April 30). Opioid use disorder: Update on diagnosis and treatment. *Psychiatric Times, 32*(4) 1–4.

diabetes the medication they need to help manage their illness, it is also not sound medical practice to deny people with OUD access to FDA-approved medications for their illness.

Medication for OUD should be successfully integrated with outpatient and residential treatment. Some patients may benefit from different levels of care during the course of their lives. These different levels include outpatient counseling, intensive outpatient treatment, inpatient treatment, or long-term therapeutic communities. Patients receiving treatment in these settings should have access to FDA-approved medications for OUD.

Patients treated with OUD medications can benefit from individualized psychosocial supports. These can be offered by patients' healthcare providers in the form of medication management and supportive counseling and/or by other providers offering adjunctive addiction counseling, contingency management, recovery coaching, mental health services, and other services (e.g., housing supports) that particular patients may need.

The TIP expert panel strongly recommends informing all patients with OUD about the risks and benefits of treatment of OUD with all FDA-approved medications. Alternatives to these treatments and their risks and benefits should be discussed. Patients should receive access to such medications if clinically appropriate and desired by the patients.

Expanding access to FDA-approved medications is an important public health strategy. A substantial gap exists between the number of people needing OUD treatment and the capacity to treat those individuals with OUD medication. In 2012, the gap was estimated at nearly 1 million people, with approximately 80 percent of OTPs nationally operating at 80 percent capacity or greater.[91] Blue Cross Blue Shield reported a 493 percent increase in members diagnosed with OUD from 2010 to 2016 but only a 65 percent increase in the use of medication for OUD.[92]

Improving access is crucial to closing the wide gap between the need for treatment with OUD medications and the availability of such treatment, given the strong evidence of OUD medications' effectiveness.[93]

---

[91] Jones, C. M., Campopiano, M., Baldwin, G., & McCance-Katz, E. (2015). National and state treatment need and capacity for opioid agonist medication-assisted treatment. *American Journal of Public Health, 105*(8), e55–e63.

[92] Blue Cross Blue Shield. (2017). *America's opioid epidemic and its effect on the nation's commercially insured population.* Washington, DC: Blue Cross Blue Shield Association.

[93] Jones, C. M., Campopiano, M., Baldwin, G., & McCance-Katz, E. (2015). National and state treatment need and capacity for opioid agonist medication-assisted treatment. *American Journal of Public Health, 105*(8), e55–e63.

Methadone

Methadone retains patients in treatment and reduces illicit opioid use more effectively than placebo, medically supervised withdrawal, or no treatment, as numerous clinical trials and meta-analyses of studies conducted in many countries show. Higher methadone doses are associated with superior outcomes.[94] [95] Given the evidence of methadone's effectiveness, WHO lists it as an essential medication.[96]

Methadone treatment has by far the largest, oldest evidence base of all treatment approaches to opioid addiction. Large multisite longitudinal studies from the world over support methadone maintenance's effectiveness. Longitudinal studies have also found that it is associated with: Reduced risk of overdose-related deaths.

- Reduced risk of HIV and hepatitis C infection.
- Lower rates of cellulitis.
- Lower rates of HIV risk behavior.
- Reduced criminal behavior.

Naltrexone

XR-NTX reduces illicit opioid use and retains patients in treatment more effectively than placebo and no medication, according to findings from randomized controlled trials.

In a two-group random assignment study of adults who were opioid dependent and involved in the justice system, all participants received brief counseling and community treatment referrals. One group received no medication, and the other group received XR-NTX. During the 6-month follow-up period, compared with the no-medication group, the group that received the medication demonstrated:

- Longer time to return to substance use (10.5 weeks versus 5.0 weeks).
- A lower rate of return to use (43 percent versus 64 percent).
- A higher percentage of negative urine screens (74 percent versus 56 percent).

There are two studies comparing XR-NTX to sublingual buprenorphine. A multisite randomized trial assigned adult residential treatment patients with OUD to either XR-NTX or buprenorphine. Patients randomly assigned to buprenorphine had significantly lower relapse rates during 24 weeks of outpatient treatment than patients assigned to XR-NTX.[45] This finding resulted from challenges in completing XR-NTX induction, such that a significant

---

[94] Amato, L., Davoli, M., Perucci, C. A., Ferri, M., Faggiano, F., & Mattick, R. P. (2005). An overview of systematic reviews of the effectiveness of opiate maintenance therapies: Available evidence to inform clinical practice and research. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 28*(4), 321–329.

[95] Faggiano, F., Vigna-Taglianti, F., Versino, E., & Lemma, P. (2003). Methadone maintenance at different dosages for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2003*(3), 1–45.

[96] Herget, G. (2005). Methadone and buprenorphine added to the WHO list of essential medicines. *HIV/ AIDS Policy and Law Review, 10*(3), 23–24.

proportion of patients did not actually receive XR-NTX. However, when comparing only those participants who started their assigned medication, no significant between-group differences in relapse rates were observed. Because dose induction was conducted with inpatients, findings may not be generalizable to dose induction in outpatient settings, where most patients initiate treatment. A 12-week trial among adults with opioid dependence in Norway who were opioid abstinent at the time of random assignment found that XR-NTX was as effective as buprenorphine in retaining patients in treatment and in reducing illicit opioid use.

Oral naltrexone is also available, but it has not been found to be superior to placebo or to no medication in clinical trials.[97] Nonadherence limits its use.

Buprenorphine

Buprenorphine in its sublingual form retains patients in treatment and reduces illicit opioid use more effectively than placebo. It also reduces HIV risk behaviors. A multisite randomized trial with individuals addicted to prescription opioids showed that continued buprenorphine was superior to buprenorphine dose taper in reducing illicit opioid use.[98] Another randomized trial showed that continued buprenorphine also improved treatment retention and reduced illicit prescription opioid use compared with buprenorphine dose taper.[99] Long-term studies of buprenorphine show its effectiveness outside of clinical research protocols.[100] [101] Naloxone, a short-acting opioid agonist, is also often included in the buprenorphine formulation to help prevent diversion to injected misuse. Because of the evidence of buprenorphine's effectiveness, WHO lists it as an essential medication.[102] Buprenorphine is available in "transmucosal" (i.e., sublingual or buccal) formulations.

Buprenorphine implants can be effective in stable patients. FDA approved implants (Probuphine) after a clinical trial showed them to be as effective as relatively low-dose (i.e., 8 mg or less daily) sublingual buprenorphine/naloxone (Suboxone) for patients who are

---

[97] Minozzi, S., Amato, L., Vecchi, S., Davoli, M., Kirchmayer, U., & Verster, A. (2011). Oral naltrexone maintenance treatment for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2011*(2), 1–45.

[98] Weiss, R. D., Potter, J. S., Fiellin, D. A., Byrne, M., Connery, H. S., Dickinson, W., … Ling, W. (2011). Adjunctive counseling during brief and extended buprenorphine-naloxone treatment for prescription opioid dependence: A 2-phase randomized controlled trial. *Archives of General Psychiatry, 68*(12), 1238–1246.

[99] Fiellin, D. A., Schottenfeld, R. S., Cutter, C. J., Moore, B. A., Barry, D. T., & O'Connor, P. G. (2014). Primary care-based buprenorphine taper vs maintenance therapy for prescription opioid dependence: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Internal Medicine, 174*(12), 1947–1954.

[100] Fiellin, D. A., Moore, B. A., Sullivan, L. E., Becker, W. C., Pantalon, M. V., Chawarski, M. C., … Schottenfeld, R. S. (2008). Long-term treatment with buprenorphine/ naloxone in primary care: Results at 2–5 years. *American Journal on Addictions, 17*(2), 116–120.

[101] Soeffng, J. M., Martin, L. D., Fingerhood, M. I., Jasinski, D. R., & Rastegar, D. A. (2009). Buprenorphine maintenance treatment in a primary care setting: Outcomes at 1 year. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 37*(4), 426–430.

[102] Herget, G. (2005). Methadone and buprenorphine added to the WHO list of essential medicines. *HIV/ AIDS Policy and Law Review, 10*(3), 23–24.

already clinically stable. More research is needed to establish implants' effectiveness outside of research studies, but findings to date are promising.

FDA approved buprenorphine extended-release injection (Sublocade) in November 2017 to treat patients with moderate or severe OUD who have first received treatment with transmucosal buprenorphine for at least 1 week. This buprenorphine formulation is a monthly subcutaneous injection.

Cost Effectiveness and Cost Benefits

Cost-effectiveness and cost-benefit analyses can further our understanding of OUD medications' effectiveness.

Data indicate that medications for OUD are cost effective. Cost-effectiveness analyses compare the cost of different treatments with their associated outcomes (e.g., negative opioid urine tests). Such analyses have found that:

- Methadone and buprenorphine are more cost effective than OUD treatment without medication.[103]
- Counseling plus buprenorphine leads to significantly lower healthcare costs than little or no treatment among commercially insured patients with OUD.[104]
- Treatment with any of the three OUD medications this TIP covers led to lower healthcare usage and costs than treatment without medication in a study conducted in a large health plan.[105]

Relatively few cost-benefit analyses have examined addiction treatment with medication separately from addiction treatment in general. Cost-benefit studies compare a treatment's cost with its benefits. The treatment is cost beneficial if its benefits outweigh its cost. These benefits can include:

- Reduced expenditures because of decreased crime.
- Reduced expenditures related to decreases in the use of the justice system.
- Improved quality of life.
- Reduced healthcare spending.
- Greater earned income.

Methadone treatment in OTPs can reduce justice system and healthcare costs.[106] [107]

Requirements and Regulations

Following is a summary of regulations and requirements that apply to the three OUD medications. Part 3 of this TIP discusses the pharmacology and dosing of these medications.

---

[103] Connock, M., Juarez-Garcia, A., Jowett, S., Frew, E., Liu, Z., Taylor, R. J., … Taylor, R. S. (2007, March). Methadone and buprenorphine for the management of opioid dependence: A systematic review and economic evaluation. *Health Technology Assessment, 11*(9), 1–171, iii–iv

[104] Lynch, F. L., McCarty, D., Mertens, J., Perrin, N. A., Green, C. A., Parthasarathy, S., … Pating, D. (2014). Costs of care for persons with opioid dependence in commercial integrated health systems. *Addiction Science and Clinical Practice, 9,* 16.

[105] Baser, O., Chalk, M., Fiellin, D. A., & Gastfriend, D. R. (2011). Cost and utilization outcomes of opioid-dependence treatments. *American Journal of Managed Care, 17*(Suppl. 8), S235–S248.

[106] Cartwright, W. S. (2000). Cost-benefit analysis of drug treatment services: Review of the literature. *Journal of Mental Health Policy and Economics, 3*(1), 11–26.

[107] McCollister, K. E., & French, M. T. (2003). The relative contribution of outcome domains in the total economic benefit of addiction interventions: A review of first findings. *Addiction, 98*(12), 1647–1659.

Only federally certified and accredited OTPs can dispense methadone for the treatment of OUD. Methadone is typically given orally as a liquid.

OTPs can dispense buprenorphine under OTP regulations without using a federal waiver.

Individual healthcare practitioners can prescribe buprenorphine in any medical setting, as long as they apply for and receive waivers of the special registration requirements defined in the Controlled Substances Act by meeting the requirements of the Drug Addiction Treatment Act of 2000 (DATA 2000) and the revised Comprehensive Addiction and Recovery Act. Physicians can learn how to obtain a waiver online (www.samhsa.gov/medication-assisted -treatment/buprenorphine-waiver-management /qualify-for-physician-waiver), as can nurse practitioners and physician assistants (www.samhsa .gov/medication-assisted-treatment/qualify-nps -pas-waivers).

- Eligible physicians, nurse practitioners, and physician assistants can treat up to 30 patients at one time in the first year of practice.
- They can apply to increase this number to 100 patients in the second year.
- After a year at the 100-patient limit, **only** physicians may apply to increase to up to 275 patients (with additional practice and reporting requirements).

Prescribing buprenorphine implants requires Probuphine REMS Program certification. Providers who wish to insert or remove implants must obtain live training and certification in the REMS Program.

Healthcare settings and pharmacies must get Sublocade REMS Program certification to dispense this medication and can only dispense it directly to healthcare providers for subcutaneous administration.

Naltrexone has no regulations beyond those that apply to any prescription pharmaceutical. Any healthcare provider with prescribing
authority, including those practicing in OTPs, can prescribe its oral formulation and administer its long-acting injectable formulation.

The Controlled Substances Act contains a few exceptions from the requirement to provide methadone through an OTP or buprenorphine through an OTP or a waivered practitioner. These include (1) administering (not prescribing) an opioid for no more than 3 days to a patient in acute opioid withdrawal while preparations are made for ongoing care and (2)

administering opioid medications in a hospital to maintain or detoxify a patient as an "incidental adjunct to medical or surgical treatment of conditions other than addiction."[108]

D. Duration of Treatment With OUD Medication

Patients can take medication for OUD on a short-term or long-term basis. However, patients who discontinue OUD medication generally return to illicit opioid use. Why is this so, even when discontinuation occurs slowly and carefully? Because the more severe form of OUD (i.e., addiction) is more than physical dependence. Addiction changes the reward circuitry of the brain, affecting cognition, emotions, and behavior. Providers and their patients should base decisions about discontinuing OUD medication on knowledge of the evidence base for the use of these medications, individualized assessments, and an individualized treatment plan they collaboratively develop and agree upon. Arbitrary time limits on the duration of treatment with OUD medication are inadvisable.

1. Maintenance Treatment

The best results occur when a patient receives medication for as long as it provides a benefit. This approach is often called "maintenance treatment." Once stabilized on OUD medication, many patients stop using illicit opioids completely. Others continue to use for some time, but less frequently and in smaller amounts, which reduces their risk of morbidity and overdose death.

OUD medication gives people the time and ability to make necessary life changes associated with long-term remission and recovery (e.g., changing the people, places, and things connected with their drug use), and to do so more safely. Maintenance treatment also minimizes cravings and withdrawal symptoms. And it lets people better manage other aspects of their life, such as parenting, attending school, or working.

2. Medication Taper

After some time, patients may want to stop opioid agonist therapy for OUD through gradually tapering doses of the medication. Their outcomes will vary based on factors such as the length of their treatment, abstinence from illicit drugs, financial and social stability, and motivation to discontinue medication. Longitudinal studies show that most patients who try to stop methadone treatment relapse during or after completing the taper.[109] For example, in a large, population-based retrospective study, only 13 percent of patients who

---

[108] Drug Enforcement Administration. (n.d.). Title 21 Code of Federal Regulations. Part 1306—Prescriptions. §1306.07 Administering or dispensing of narcotic drugs. Retrieved November 22, 2017, from www .deadiversion.usdoj.gov/21cfr/cfr/1306/1306_07.htm

[109] Stimmel, B., Goldberg, J., Rotkopf, E., & Cohen, M. (1977). Ability to remain abstinent after methadone detoxifcation. *JAMA, 237,* 1216–1220.

tapered from methadone had successful outcomes (no treatment reentry, death, or opioid-related hospitalization within 18 months after taper). A clinical trial of XR-NTX versus treatment without medication also found increased risk of returning to illicit opioid use after discontinuing medication.

Adding psychosocial treatments to taper regimens may not significantly improve outcomes compared with remaining on medication. One study randomly assigned participants to methadone maintenance or to 6 months of methadone treatment with a dose taper plus intensive psychosocial treatment. The maintenance group had more days in treatment and lower rates of heroin use and HIV risk behavior at 12-month follow-up.[110] Patients wishing to taper their opioid agonist medication should be offered psychosocial and recovery support services. They should be monitored during and after dose taper, offered XR-NTX, and encouraged to resume treatment with medication quickly if they return to opioid use.

3. Medically Supervised Withdrawal

Medically supervised withdrawal is a process in which providers offer methadone or buprenorphine on a short-term basis to reduce physical withdrawal signs and symptoms. Formerly called detoxification, this process gradually decreases the dose until the medication is discontinued, typically over a period of days or weeks. Studies show that most patients with OUD who undergo medically supervised withdrawal will start using opioids again and won't continue in recommended care. Psychosocial treatment strategies, such as contingency management, can reduce dropout from medically supervised withdrawal, opioid use during withdrawal, and opioid use following completion of withdrawal. Medically supervised withdrawal is necessary for patients starting naltrexone, which requires at least 7 days without short-acting opioids and 10 to 14 days without long-acting opioids. Patients who complete medically supervised withdrawal are at risk of opioid overdose.

E. Treatment Settings

Almost all healthcare settings are appropriate for screening and assessing for OUD and offering medication onsite or by referral. Settings that offer OUD treatment have expanded from specialty sites (certified OTPs, residential facilities, outpatient addiction treatment programs, and addiction specialist physicians' offices) to general primary care practices, health centers, emergency departments, inpatient medical and psychiatric units, jails and prisons, and other settings.

---

[110] Sees, K. L., Delucchi, K. L., Masson, C., Rosen, A., Clark, H. W., Robillard, H., … Hall, S. M. (2000). Methadone maintenance vs 180-day psychosocially enriched detoxification for treatment of opioid dependence: A randomized controlled trial. *JAMA, 283*(10), 1303–1310.

OUD medications should be available to patients across all settings and at all levels of care—as a tool for remission and recovery.
Because of the strength of the science, a 2016 report from the Surgeon General[111] urged adoption of medication for OUD along with recovery supports and other behavioral health services throughout the healthcare system.

Challenges to Expanding Access to OUD Medication

Despite the urgent need for treatment throughout the United States, only about 21.5 percent of people with OUD received treatment from 2009 to 2013. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention lists more than 200 U.S. counties as at risk for an HIV or a hepatitis C virus outbreak related to injection drug use.[112]

F. Scope of the Problem

The number of patients presenting with OUD in medical clinics, community health centers, and private practices is increasing. Healthcare professionals in these general settings are in an important position to identify, assess, and treat OUD or to refer patients for treatment. Moreover, patients who are medically and mentally stable can benefit from receiving OUD medications in integrated care settings, where they often have already established therapeutic relationships with their healthcare providers.

G. Screening

Screening can identify patients who may have diseases or conditions related to their substance use. Health care in general medical settings routinely includes screening for common, treatable conditions such as cancer that are associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Screening for SUDs is important, as misuse of alcohol, tobacco, and other substances is common among patients in medical settings.

Screening can identify substance misuse in patients who wouldn't otherwise discuss it or connect it with the negative consequences they're experiencing. Some patients may spontaneously reveal their substance use and ask for help. This is more likely when they're experiencing harmful consequences of substance use. However, screening may identify unhealthy substance use (e.g., binge drinking) and SUDs before patients connect their

---

[111] Department of Health and Human Services, Office of the Surgeon General. (2016). *Facing addiction in America: The Surgeon General's report on alcohol, drugs, and health.* Washington, DC: Department of Health and Human Services.
[112] Van Handel, M. M., Rose, C. E., Hallisey, E. J., Kolling, J. L., Zibbell, J. E., Lewis, B., … Brooks, J. T. (2016). County-level vulnerability assessment for rapid dissemination of HIV or HCV infections among persons who inject drugs, United States. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes, 73*(3), 323–331.

substance use with their presenting complaint. Screening is also helpful when patients feel ashamed or afraid to reveal their concerns spontaneously.

Every medical practice should determine which screening tools to use and when, how, and by whom they will be administered.

Each practice should also identify steps to take when a patient screens positive. One efficient workflow strategy is to have clinical assistants or nurses administer the screening instrument in an interview or provide patients with a paper or computer tablet version for self-administration. (Self-administration is generally as reliable as interviewer administration.) Providers should be nonjudgmental and rely on established rapport when discussing screening results with patients.

Alcohol Screening

Screening for alcohol misuse can identify patients at increased risk for opioid use.

When screening patients for opioid misuse, providers should also screen for alcohol misuse and alcohol use disorder (AUD), which cause considerable morbidity and mortality. Providers should warn patients who use opioids that alcohol may increase opioid overdose risk.[113] The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommends screening adults for alcohol misuse, including risky drinking and AUD. USPSTF also recommends brief counseling for patients with risky drinking.

The TIP expert panel recommends that healthcare professionals screen patients for alcohol, tobacco, prescription drug, and illicit drug use at least annually.

Tobacco Screening

More than 80 percent of patients who are opioid dependent smoke cigarettes.[114]

Understanding of the major health consequences and risks associated with tobacco use has grown significantly over the past 50 years. Among preventable causes of premature death, smoking remains most prevalent, with more than 480,000 deaths per year in the United States. In addition, more than 40 percent of all people who smoke are mentally ill or have SUDs.[115]

---

[113] Warner-Smith, M., Darke, S., Lynskey, M., & Hall, W. (2001). Heroin overdose: Causes and consequences. *Addiction, 96*(8), 1113–1125.

[114] Kalman, D., Morissette, S. B., & George, T. P. (2005). Co-morbidity of smoking in patients with psychiatric and substance use disorders. *American Journal of Addictions, 14,* 106–123.

[115] Lasser, K., Boyd, J. W., Woolhandler, S., Himmelstein, D. U., McCormick, D., & Bor, D. H. (2000). Smoking and mental illness: A population-based prevalence study. *JAMA, 284,* 2606–2610.

USPSTF recommends that primary care providers screen for tobacco use, advise patients to quit, and provide counseling and FDA-approved medications for tobacco cessation. The six-item Fagerström Test for Nicotine Dependence assesses cigarette use and nicotine dependence. The maximum score is 10; the higher the total score, the more severe the patient's nicotine dependence. The two-item Heaviness of Smoking Index is also useful.[116]

Drug Screening

Screening for illicit drug use and prescription medication misuse is clinically advantageous. USPSTF's position as of this writing is that insufficient evidence exists to recommend for or against routine screening for illicit drug use in primary care. However, there are clinical reasons to screen for prescription medication misuse and use of illicit substances. Identifying misuse of prescription or illegal drugs can prevent harmful drug interactions, lead to adjustments in prescribing practices, improve medical care adherence, and increase the odds of patients getting needed interventions or treatment.

Brief screening instruments for drug use can determine which patients need further assessment. Providers should reinforce healthy behaviors among patients who report "no use" and direct those who report "some use" for further screening and assessment to obtain a diagnosis.

Several brief screening instruments for drug use can help primary care practitioners identify patients who use drugs. For example, a single-item screen is available for the general public.[117] A two-item valid screener is available for use with U.S. veterans.[118]

Brief drug screens don't indicate specific types of drugs used. If providers use nonspecific screens, they need to assess further which substances patients use and to what degree.

The TIP expert panel recommends universal OUD screening. Given the high prevalence of SUDs in patients visiting primary care settings and the effectiveness of medications to treat OUD specifically, the TIP expert panel recommends screening all patients for opioid misuse.

---

[116] John, U., Meyer, C., Schumann, A., Hapke, U., Rumpf, H. J., Adam, C., … Lüdemann, J. (2004). A short form of the Fagerström Test for Nicotine Dependence and the Heaviness of Smoking Index in two adult population samples. *Addictive Behaviors, 29*(6), 1207–1212.

[117] Smith, P. C., Schmidt, S. M., Allensworth-Davies, D., & Saitz, R. (2010). A single-question screening test for drug use in primary care. *Archives of Internal Medicine, 170*(13), 1155–1160.

[118] Tiet, Q. Q., Leyva, Y. E., Moos, R. H., Frayne, S. M., Osterberg, L., & Smith, B. (2015). Screen of drug use: Diagnostic accuracy of a new brief tool for primary care. *JAMA Internal Medicine, 175*(8), 1371–1377.

H. Assessment

Determine the Need for and Extent of Assessment

Assess patients for OUD if:

- They screen positive for opioid misuse.
- They disclose opioid misuse.
- Signs or symptoms of opioid misuse are present.

The extent of assessment depends on a provider's ability to treat patients directly.
If a provider does not offer pharmacotherapy, the focus should be on medical assessment, making a diagnosis of OUD, and patient safety. This allows the provider to refer patients to the appropriate level of treatment. The provider can also conduct:

- Assessment and treatment for co-occurring medical conditions or mental disorders.
- Motivational brief interventions to promote safer behavior and foster effective treatment engagement.
- Overdose prevention education and provide a naloxone prescription.
- Education for patients who inject drugs on how to access sterile injecting equipment.
- An in-person follow-up, regardless of referral to specialty treatment.

If the provider offers pharmacotherapy, the patient needs more comprehensive assessment, including:

- A review of the prescription drug monitoring program (PDMP).
- A history, including a review of systems.
- A targeted physical exam for signs of opioid withdrawal, intoxication, injection, and other medical consequences of misuse.
- Determination of OUD diagnosis and severity.
- Appropriate laboratory tests (e.g., urine or oral fluid drug tests, liver function tests, hepatitis B and C tests, HIV tests).

A comprehensive assessment is intended to:

- Establish the diagnosis of OUD.
- Determine the severity of OUD.
- Identify contraindicated medications.
- Indicate other medical conditions to address during treatment.
- Identify mental and social issues to address.

Set the Stage for Successful Assessment

The medical setting should create a welcoming environment that is nonjudgmental, respectful, and empathetic. Many patients with OUD are reluctant to discuss their opioid use in medical settings. A welcoming environment can help patients feel safe disclosing facts they may find embarrassing. Motivational interviewing strategies, such as asking open-ended questions, foster successful assessment. (Refer to TIP 34, *Brief Interventions and Brief Therapies for Substance Abuse*, for more specific examples of interview questions and responses.)

Staff should explore patients' ambivalence and highlight problem areas to help them find motivations for change. Almost all patients have some ambivalence about their opioid use. They will find some aspects pleasant and beneficial, but others problematic, painful, or destructive. By exploring that ambivalence and highlighting problem areas, providers can help patients discover their own motivations for change. *Motivational Interviewing: Helping People Change*[119] discusses specific applications of motivational interviewing in health care.

Take a Complete History

Staff should prioritize medical, mental health, substance use, and SUD treatment histories. When obtaining patient histories, staff should address these domains before starting treatment. As providers and staff build trust over future visits, they can get into more detailed elements of the assessment.

Medical history

Taking a complete medical history of patients with OUD is critical, as it is for patients with any other medical condition treatable with pharmacotherapy. Asking about patients' medical/ surgical history can:

- Reveal medical effects of substance use (e.g., endocarditis, soft tissue infection, hepatitis B or C, HIV infection) that may need treatment.
- Highlight consequences that motivate change.
- Identify medical issues (e.g., severe liver disease) that contraindicate or alter dosing approaches for OUD pharmacotherapies.
- Reveal chronic pain issues.
- Help providers consider interactions among various medications and other substances.

Mental health history

Assessing for comorbid mental illness is critical. Mental illness is prevalent among people with SUDs; it can complicate their treatment and worsen their prognosis. In one study, nearly

[119] Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing: Helping people change* (3rd ed.). New York, NY: Guilford Press.

20 percent of primary care patients with OUD had major depression.[120] SUDs can also mimic or induce depression and anxiety disorders. Although substance-induced depression and anxiety disorders may improve with abstinence, they may still require treatment in their own right after a period of careful observation. Take a history of the relationship between a patient's psychiatric symptoms and periods of substance use and abstinence. Treatment for mental disorders and SUDs can occur concurrently.

Substance use history

Substance use histories can help gauge OUD severity, inform treatment planning, clarify potential drug interactions, and highlight the negative consequences of patients' opioid use. To help determine the severity of patients' substance use, explore historical features of their use, like:

- Age at first use.
- Routes of ingestion (e.g., injection).
- History of tolerance, withdrawal, drug mixing, and overdose.

Histories should also explore current patterns of use, which inform treatment planning and include:

- Which drugs patients use.

Open-ended, thought-provoking questions encourage patients to explore their own experiences. Ask questions like "In what ways has oxycodone affected your life?" or "What could you do to prevent infections like this in the future?" Closed-ended questions with yes/no answers—like "Has oxycodone caused your family trouble?"—can seem judgmental to patients who already feel ashamed and defensive. Closed-ended questions don't help patients become aware of and express their own circumstances and motivations, nor do they encourage patients to identify what they see as the consequences of their substance use.

Understanding patients' motivations for change can be more useful than assessing "readiness" for change. Patients coerced into treatment—such as through parole and probation or drug courts—are as likely to succeed in treatment as patients engaging voluntarily. Readiness fluctuates and depends on context. Helping patients explore why

[120] Savant, J. D., Barry, D. T., Cutter, C. J., Joy, M. T., Dinh, A., Schottenfeld, R. S., & Fiellin, D. A. (2013). Prevalence of mood and substance use disorders among patients seeking primary care office-based buprenorphine/naloxone treatment. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 127*(1–3), 243–247.

they want to change their drug use can motivate them and prepare their providers to support them during assessment and treatment.

Social history

Information about a patient's social environments and relationships can aid treatment planning. Social factors that may influence treatment engagement and retention, guide treatment planning, and affect prognosis include:

- Transportation and child care needs.
- Adequacy and stability of housing.
- Criminal justice involvement.
- Employment status and quality of work environment.
- Close/ongoing relationships with people with SUDs.
- Details about drug use from people the patient lives or spends time with (obtained with patient's consent).
- Sexual orientation, identity, and history, including risk factors for HIV/sexually transmitted infections.
- Safety of the home environment. Substance misuse substantially increases the risk of intimate partner violence; screen all women presenting for treatment for domestic violence.

Family history

Learn the substance use histories of patients' parents, siblings, partners, and children. One of the strongest risk factors for developing SUDs is having a parent with an SUD. Genetic factors, exposure to substance use in the household during childhood, or both can contribute to the development of SUDs.

Conduct a Physical Examination

Perform a physical exam as soon as possible if recent exam records aren't accessible. Assess for:

- Opioid intoxication or withdrawal.
- Physical signs of opioid use.
- Medical consequences of opioid use.

PATIENT TESTIMONY

Opioid Withdrawal

"Severe opioid withdrawal isn't something I'd wish on my worst enemy. The last time I went cold turkey, I was determined to come off all the way. The physical symptoms were just the tip of the iceberg. My mind was a nightmare that I thought I would never wake up from. There were times when I was almost convinced that dying would be better than what I was feeling. I did not experience a moment of ease for the first 3 months, and it was 6 months until I started to feel normal."

Opioid withdrawal

Opioid withdrawal can be extremely uncomfortable. Symptoms are similar to experiencing gastroenteritis, severe influenza, anxiety, and dysphoria concurrently.

Severity of withdrawal can indicate a patient's level of physical dependence and can inform medication choices and dosing decisions. The duration of withdrawal depends on the specific opioid from which the patient is withdrawing and can last 1 to 4 weeks. After the initial withdrawal phase is complete, many patients experience a prolonged phase of dysphoria, craving, insomnia, and hyperalgesia that can last for weeks or months.

Assess opioid withdrawal in the physical exam by noting physical signs and symptoms
Structured measures (e.g., Clinical Opiate Withdrawal Scale [COWS]; Clinical Institute Narcotic Assessment Scale for Withdrawal Symptoms) can help standardize documentation of signs and symptoms to support diagnosis, initial management, and treatment planning.

The physical signs of opioid misuse vary depending on the route of ingestion:

- Patients who primarily smoke or sniff ("snort") opioids or take them orally often have few physical signs of use other than signs of intoxication and withdrawal. However, snorting can cause congestion and damage nasal mucosa.
- Patients who inject opioids may develop:
    - Sclerosis or scarring of the veins and needle marks, or "track marks," in the arms, legs, hands, neck, or feet (intravenous use).
    - Edema in the foot, hand, or both (common in injection use, but may occur in oral use).
    - Abscesses or cellulitis.
    - Jaundice, caput medusa, palmar erythema, spider angiomata, or an enlarged or hardened liver secondary to liver disease.
    - Heart murmur secondary to endocarditis.

Obtain Appropriate Laboratory Tests

Urine or oral fluid drug testing is useful before initiating OUD pharmacotherapy. Testing establishes a baseline of substances the patient has used so that the provider can monitor the patient's response to treatment over time. Testing for a range of commonly used substances helps confirm patient histories, facilitates discussion of recent drug use and symptoms, and aids in diagnosing and determining severity of SUDs. Drug testing is an important tool in the diagnosis and treatment of addiction. A national guideline on the use of drug testing is available from ASAM.[121]

Exhibit 2.12 Urine Drug Testing Window of Detection

DRUG	POSITIVE TEST	WINDOW OF DETECTION*	COMMENTS
Amphetamine; methamphetamine; 3,4-methylenedioxy-methamphetamine	Amphetamine	1–2 days	False positives with bupropion, chlorpromazine, desipramine, fuoxetine, labetalol, promethazine, ranitidine, pseudoephedrine, trazadone, and other common medications. Confirm unexpected positive results with the laboratory.
Barbiturates	Barbiturates	Up to 6 weeks	N/A
Benzodiazepines	Benzodiazepines	1–3 days; up to 6 weeks with heavy use of long-acting benzodiazepines	Immunoassays may not be sensitive to therapeutic doses, and most immunoassays have low sensitivity to clonazepam and lorazepam. Check with your laboratory regarding sensitivity and cutoffs. False positives with sertraline or oxaprozin.
Buprenorphine	Buprenorphine	3–4 days	Will screen negative on opiate screen. Tramadol can cause false positives. Can be tested for specifically.
Cocaine	Cocaine, benzoylecgonine	2–4 days; 10–22 days	N/A

[121] Milone, M. C. (2012). Laboratory testing for prescription opioids. *Journal of Medical Toxicology, 8*(4), 408–416

		with heavy use	
Codeine	Morphine, codeine, high-dose hydrocodone	1–2 days	Will screen positive on opiate immunoassay.
Fentanyl	Fentanyl	1–2 days	Will screen negative on opiate screen. Can be tested for specifically. May not detect all fentanyl-like substances.62
Heroin	Morphine, codeine	1–2 days	Will screen positive on opiate immunoassay. 6-monoacetylmorphine, a unique metabolite of heroin, is present in urine for about 6 hours. Can be tested for specifically to distinguish morphine from heroin, but this is rarely clinically useful.
Hydrocodone	Hydrocodone, hydromorphone	2 days	May screen negative on opiate immunoassay. Can be tested for specifically.
Hydromorphone	May not be detected	1–2 days	May screen negative on opiate immunoassay. Can be tested for specifically.
Marijuana	Tetrahydrocan-nabinol	Infrequent use of 1–3 days; chronic use of up to 30 days	False positives possible with efavirenz, ibuprofen, and pantoprazole.
Methadone	Methadone	2–11 days	Will screen negative on opiate screen. Can be tested for specifically.
Morphine	Morphine, hydromorphone	1–2 days	Will screen positive on opiate immunoassay. Ingestion of

			poppy plant/ seed may screen positive.
Oxycodone	Oxymorphone	1–1.5 days	Typically screens negative on opiate immunoassay. Can be tested for specifically.

Positive opioid tests can confirm recent use. Document recent use before starting patients on buprenorphine or methadone. Positive methadone or buprenorphine tests are expected for patients receiving these treatments.

Positive opioid tests contraindicate starting naltrexone.

Negative opioid test results require careful interpretation. A patient may test negative for opioids despite presenting with opioid withdrawal symptoms if he or she hasn't used opioids for several days. A negative opioid test in the absence of symptoms of opioid withdrawal likely indicates that the patient has little or no opioid tolerance, which is important information for assessment and treatment planning. Consider that the opioid the patient reports using may not be detected on the particular immunoassay.

Screening tests are not definitive; false positive and false negative test results are possible. Confirmatory testing should follow all unexpected positive screens. Urine drug testing will detect metabolites from many prescription opioids but miss others, so it is easy to misinterpret results in patients taking these medications. False positives are also common in amphetamine testing.

Point-of-service testing provides the opportunity to discuss results with patients immediately. However, cutoffs for positive screens are not standardized across point-of-service tests. Know the specifications of the screens used.

Other laboratory tests

Patients with OUD, particularly those who inject drugs, are at risk for liver disease and blood-borne viral infections. Pregnancy is another important consideration in determining treatment course. **Recommended laboratory tests for patients with OUD include:**

Pregnancy testing, which is important because:

- It is not advisable for patients to start naltrex-one during pregnancy.
- Pregnant women treated for active OUD typically receive buprenorphine or

methadone.

- The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and a recent SAMHSA-convened expert panel on the treatment of OUD in pregnancy recommend that pregnant women with OUD receive opioid receptor agonist pharmacotherapy.
- Providers should refer pregnant women to prenatal care or, if qualified, provide it themselves.

Liver function tests (e.g., aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, bilirubin), which can:

- Guide medication selection and dosing.
- Rule out severe liver disease, which may contraindicate OUD medication (see Part 3 of this TIP).

Hepatitis B and C serology, which can indicate:

- Patients with positive tests (evaluate for hepatitis treatment).
- The need to administer hepatitis A and B and tetanus vaccines, if appropriate.

HIV serology, which can help identify:

- Patients who are HIV positive (evaluate for antiretroviral treatment).
- Patients who are HIV negative (evaluate for preexposure prophylaxis and targeted education).

Review the PDMP

Before initiating OUD medication, providers should check their states' PDMPs to determine whether their patients receive prescriptions for controlled substances from other healthcare professionals. Using the PDMP improves the ability to manage the risks of controlled substances and to identify potentially harmful drug interactions. Although OTPs are not permitted to report methadone treatment to PDMPs, pharmacies that dispense buprenorphine and other controlled substances do report to PDMPs. Medications that need monitoring and required frequency of updates vary by state (for more information about state PDMPs, visit www.pdmpassist.org/content /state-profiles).

Determine Diagnosis and Severity of OUD

Use DSM-5 criteria to make an OUD diagnosis

Patients who meet two or three criteria have mild OUD. Those meeting four or five criteria have moderate OUD, and those meeting six or more criteria have severe OUD.

I. Treatment Planning or Referral

Making Decisions About Treatment

Start by sharing the diagnosis with patients and hearing their feedback. Patients with OUD need to make several important treatment decisions:

- Whether to begin medication to treat OUD.
- What type of OUD medication to take.

EXHIBIT 2.13. DSM-5 Criteria for OUD[122]

A problematic pattern of opioid use leading to clinically significant impairment or distress, as manifested by at least two of the following, occurring within a 12-month period:

1. Opioids are often taken in larger amounts or over a longer period of time than was intended.
2. There is a persistent desire or unsuccessful efforts to cut down or control opioid use.
3. A great deal of time is spent in activities to obtain the opioid, use the opioid, or recover from its effects.
4. Craving, or a strong desire or urge to use opioids.
5. Recurrent opioid use resulting in a failure to fulfill major role obligations at work, school, or home.
6. Continued opioid use despite having persistent or recurrent social or interpersonal problems caused by or exacerbated by the effects of opioids.
7. Important social, occupational, or recreational activities are given up or reduced because of opioid use.
8. Recurrent opioid use in situations in which it is physically hazardous.
9. Continued opioid use despite knowledge of having a persistent or recurrent physical or psychological problem that's likely to have been caused or exacerbated by the substance.
10. Tolerance,* as defined by either of the following: **a.** A need for markedly increased amounts of opioids to achieve intoxication or desired effect or **b.** A markedly diminished effect with continued use of the same amount of an opioid
11. Withdrawal,* as manifested by either of the following: **a.** The characteristic opioid withdrawal syndrome or **b.** The same—or a closely related—substance is taken to relieve or avoid withdrawal symptoms

*This criterion is not met for individuals taking opioids solely under appropriate medical supervision. Severity: mild = 2–3 symptoms; moderate = 4–5 symptoms; severe = 6 or more symptoms

[122] American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing

Offer information to patients about the various treatments for OUD and collaborate with them to make decisions about treatment plans or referrals (Exhibit 2.14). Consider discussing:

- Indications, risks, and benefits of medications and alternatives to pharmacotherapy.
- Types of settings that deliver medications (including healthcare professionals' own practice locations, if applicable).
- Availability of and accessibility to treatment (i.e., transportation).
- Alternative treatments without medication (e.g., residential treatment, which often offers medically supervised opioid withdrawal).
- Costs of treatment with OUD medication, including insurance coverage and affordability.

Give patients' expressed preferences significant weight when making decisions. Patient characteristics can't reliably predict greater likelihood of success with one approved medication or another. For detailed information on medications to treat OUD, refer to Part 3 of this TIP.

Strategies to engage patients in shared decision making include:

- Indicating to patients a desire to collaborate with them to find the best medication and treatment setting for them.
- Including family members in the treatment planning process, if possible (and only with patients' consent).
- Exploring what patients already know about treatment options and dispelling misconceptions.
- Offering information on medications and their side effects, benefits, and risks
- Informing patients of the requirements of the various treatment options (e.g., admission criteria to an OTP; frequency of visits to an OBOT or OTP).
- Offering options, giving recommendations after deliberation, and supporting patients' informed decisions.

Understanding Treatment Settings and Services

Support patient preferences for treatment settings and services. Some patients prefer to receive OUD medication via physicians' offices. Others choose outpatient treatment programs that provide opioid receptor agonist treatment for medically supervised

withdrawal (with or without naltrexone) or for ongoing opioid receptor agonist maintenance treatment. Still others may want OUD treatment in a residential program with or without pharmacotherapy.

Many patients initially form a preference for a certain treatment without knowing all the risks, benefits, and alternatives. Providers should ensure that patients understand the risks and benefits of all options. Without this understanding, patients can't give truly informed consent.

Outpatient OUD Treatment Settings

Refer patients who prefer treatment with methadone or buprenorphine via an OTP and explain that:

- They will have to visit the program from 6 to 7 times per week at first.
- Additional methadone take-home doses are possible at every 90 days of demonstrated progress in treatment.
- Buprenorphine take-home doses are not bound by the same limits as methadone.
- Counseling and drug testing are required parts of OTP treatment.
- Some programs also offer case management, peer support, medical services, mental disorder treatment, and other services.

Try to arrange OTP intake appointments for patients before they leave the office. If no immediate openings are available, consider starting buprenorphine as a bridge or alternative to the OTP.

Gauge the appropriate intensity level for patients seeking non-OTP outpatient treatment for OUD. These programs range from low intensity (individual or group counseling once to a few times a week) to high intensity (2 or more hours a day of individual and group counseling several days a week). Appropriate treatment intensity depends on each patient's:

- Social circumstances.
- Severity of addiction.
- Personal preferences.
- Psychiatric/psychological needs.
- Ability to afford treatment at a given intensity.

Outpatient medical settings

Healthcare professionals cannot provide methadone in their clinics. Only those with a buprenorphine waiver can provide buprenorphine. Any healthcare professional with a license can provide naltrexone.

Once providers obtain the necessary waiver, they should offer buprenorphine treatment to all patients who present with OUD if such treatment is available and appropriate. Referring them to treatment elsewhere will likely result in delay or lack of patient access to care. Develop a treatment plan to determine where patients will receive continuing care (see the "Treatment Planning" section). Continue to provide naltrexone for patients who were already receiving it from some other setting (e.g., a prison, a specialty addiction treatment program) or for patients who meet opioid abstinence requirements and wish to take a medication for relapse prevention.

Residential drug treatment settings

Patients who have OUD, concurrent other substance use problems, unstable living situations, or a combination of the three may be appropriate candidates for residential treatment, which can last from a week to several weeks or more. Inform patients about the services and requirements typical of this treatment setting.

Some patients taking buprenorphine (or methadone) who have other SUDs, such as AUD or cocaine use disorder, can benefit from residential treatment. If such treatment is indicated, determine whether the residential program allows patients to continue their opioid receptor agonist medication while in treatment. Some residential programs require patients to discontinue these medications to receive residential treatment, which could destabilize patients and result in opioid overdose.

Residential treatment programs typically provide:

- Room and board.
- Recovery support.
- Counseling.
- Case management.
- Medically supervised withdrawal (in some programs).
- Starting buprenorphine or naltrexone (in some programs).
- Onsite mental health services (in some cases).
- Buprenorphine or methadone continuation for patients already enrolled in treatment prior to admission if their healthcare professionals have waivers or their OTP permits.

Transitioning out of residential settings requires careful planning. During a patient's stay in residential treatment, plan for his or her transition out of the program. A good transition plan maximizes the likelihood of continuity of care after discharge. Plans should also address overdose risk. Patients who are no longer opioid tolerant are at heightened risk of opioid overdose if they don't get OUD medication at discharge. Providing XR-NTX, buprenorphine, or methadone during treatment and continuing the medication after discharge can help prevent return to opioid use after discharge. Providing a naloxone prescription and overdose prevention information is appropriate.

Resource Alert

Maintaining Confidentiality

Providers who treat patients with addiction must know substance use-related disclosure rules and confidentiality requirements. SAMHSA's webpage lists frequently asked questions on substance use confidentiality and summarizes federal regulations about disclosure and patient records that federal programs maintain on addiction treatment (https://www.samhsa.gov /about-us/who-we-are/laws-regulations/confidentiality-regulations-faqs).

Key points include:

- Confidentiality regulations prohibit specialty SUD treatment programs from sharing information with healthcare professionals about patients' SUD treatment without specific consent from patients.
- Referrals to other behavioral health services require consent for sharing information on treatment progress.
- Healthcare professionals should discuss confidentiality and consent with patients during the referral process.
- OUD pharmacotherapy prescribers may consider requiring patient consent for communicating with treatment programs as a condition of receiving OUD treatment.

Treatment program staff members can help identify returns to substance use, or risk of such, before the prescriber and can work with the prescriber to stabilize patients.

Determining OUD Service Intensity and Ensuring Follow-Through

Use ASAM placement criteria for guidance on selecting the right level of OUD treatment. ASAM criteria define the level of care and key features that may make a given level (e.g., residential, intensive outpatient, standard outpatient) appropriate for a patient[79] (see the "Treatment Planning" section). To help patients select programs, note that some focus on

specific populations (e.g., gender-specific programs; parents with children; lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and questioning populations).

Make an appointment with the referral program during the patient's visit rather than giving the patient a phone number to call. Follow up with the patient later to determine whether he or she kept the appointment. Doing so increases the chances of a successful referral.

Referring patients to behavioral health and support services

Discuss patients' potential need for behavioral health, peer support, and other ancillary services, like:

- Drug and alcohol counseling.
- Mental health services.
- Case management.
- Mutual-help groups.
- Peer recovery support services.

Offer referrals to counseling and tailored psychosocial support to patients receiving OUD medication.

Drug Addiction Treatment Act of 2000 legislation requires that buprenorphine prescribers be able to refer patients to counseling, but making referrals is not mandatory.[123] Many patients benefit from referral to mental health services or specialized addiction counseling and recovery support services. However, four randomized trials found no extra benefit to adding adjunctive counseling to well-conducted medical management visits delivered by the buprenorphine prescriber. There is evidence of benefits to adding contingency management to pharmacotherapy.

RESOURCE ALERT

Mutual-Support Groups

For an introduction to mutual-support groups, see SAMHSA's *Substance Abuse in Brief,* "An Introduction to Mutual Support Groups for Alcohol and Drug Abuse" (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content/SMA08-4336/SMA08-4336.pdf).

Make referrals to mutual-help groups.

[123] American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing

Patients may wish to participate in mutual-help groups (e.g., Alcoholics Anonymous, Narcotics Anonymous, Methadone Anonymous, Medication-Assisted Recovery Services, SMART Recovery) in addition to or instead of specialized treatment. These programs can be highly supportive, but they may pressure patients to stop taking OUD medication. If possible, refer patients to groups that welcome patients who take OUD medication.

Make referrals to medical and mental health services. Respectful, consistent medical care can support patients' efforts to recover from OUD and all other SUDs. As for any patient, providers should make appropriate referrals for patients with OUD to receive medical or mental health services beyond the providers' own scope of practice.

Patients with depression, anxiety disorders, and other mental disorders may be more likely to succeed in addiction treatment if those conditions are managed. If the severity or type of a patient's psychiatric comorbidity is beyond a provider's scope of practice, the provider should refer the patient to mental health services as appropriate.

Make referrals to ancillary services. Besides medical care and mental health services, OUD patients, like patients with other illnesses, may need more support in some areas, including ancillary services such as:

- Case management.
- Food access.
- Vocational training.
- Housing.
- Transportation.
- Legal assistance.

Helping patients who are not ready to engage in OUD treatment

Help reluctant patients be safer and approach readiness. Patients may seem unwilling to discuss their drug use if they're ashamed or fear being judged. Accepting, nonjudgmental attitudes help patients overcome shame and discuss concerns honestly while also instilling hope.

Every visit is a chance to help patients begin healthy changes and move toward treatment and recovery. Patients may not be ready to change right away. Successfully quitting drug use can take many attempts. Returns to substance use, even after periods of remission, are expected parts of the recovery process.

Patients with OUD are much more likely to die than their peers, and HIV, hepatitis C, and skin and soft tissue infections are common among this population. **Help reduce these OUD-related risks by educating patients** about:

- Using new syringes.
- Avoiding syringe sharing.
- Avoiding sharing other supplies during the injection process.
- Preventing opioid overdose (see the "Preventing Opioid-Related Overdose" section).
- Obtaining overdose prevention information and resources (e.g., *SAMHSA Opioid Overdose Prevention Toolkit* [https://store .samhsa.gov/product/SAMHSA-Opioid - Overdose-Prevention-Toolkit/SMA16-4742]).
- Obtaining naloxone and instructions for its use.

Refer patients to syringe exchange sites.

Preventing Opioid-Related Overdose

Every patient who misuses opioids or has OUD should receive opioid overdose prevention education and a naloxone prescription.[124]

- Healthcare professionals should educate patients and their families about overdose risk, prevention, identification, and response. FDA has approved an autoinjectable naloxone device (Evzio) and a naloxone nasal spray (Narcan) for use by patients and others. For information about all forms of naloxone, prescribing, and patient and community education, see the *SAMHSA Opioid Overdose Prevention Toolkit* (https://store.samhsa.gov /product/SAMHSA-Opioid-Overdose-Prevention -Toolkit/SMA16-4742).

Municipalities with community-based naloxone distribution programs have seen substantial decreases in opioid overdose death rates.[125]

Many syringe exchange programs also dispense naloxone. For information and resources on prescribing naloxone for overdose prevention, including educational patient handouts and videos, see the "Opioid-Related Overdose Prevention" section.

The United States is experiencing a death epidemic related to opioid overdose. Opioids (including prescription opioids and heroin) killed more than 33,000 people in 2015, more than in any prior year. Almost half of opioid overdose deaths involve prescription opioids.

---

[124] Department of Health and Human Services. (2016). *The opioid epidemic: By the numbers.* Washington, DC: Department of Health and Human Services.

[125] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017). Heroin overdose data. Retrieved November 20, 2017, from www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/data/heroin.html

Since 2010, heroin overdose deaths have more than quadrupled.[126] Overdose deaths from illicit fentanyl have risen sharply.[127]

Overdose risk

- Using heroin (possibly mixed with illicitly manufactured fentanyl or fentanyl analogs)
- Using prescription opioids that were not prescribed
- Using prescription opioids more frequently or at higher doses than prescribed
- Using opioids after a period of abstinence or reduced use (e.g., after medically supervised withdrawal or incarceration)
- Using opioids with alcohol, benzodiazepines, or both

Overdose prevention

- Don't use opioids that were not prescribed.
- Take medications only as prescribed.
- Don't use drugs when you are alone.
- Don't use multiple substances at once.
- Have naloxone available and make sure others know where it is and how to use it.
- Use a small "test dose" if returning to opioid use after a period of abstinence, if the substance appears altered, or if it has been acquired from an unfamiliar source. Beware: This doesn't guarantee safety; illicitly manufactured fentanyl or other substances may be present in the drug, and **any use may be fatal.**

Overdose identification

- Fingernails or lips are blue or purple.
- Breathing or heartbeat is slow or stopped.
- The person is vomiting or making gurgling noises.
- The person can't be awakened or is unable to speak.

Overdose response

- Call 9-1-1.
- Administer naloxone (more than one dose may be needed to restore adequate spontaneous breathing).
- Perform rescue breathing. If certified to provide cardiopulmonary resuscitation, perform chest compressions if there is no pulse.

---

[126] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017). Heroin overdose data. Retrieved November 20, 2017, from www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose/data/heroin.html

[127] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2016). Increases in drug and opioid-involved overdose deaths—United States, 2010–2015. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 65*(50–51), 1445–1452.

- Put the person in the "recovery position," on his or her side and with the mouth facing to the side to prevent aspiration of vomit, if he or she is breathing independently.
- Stay with the person until emergency services arrive. Naloxone's duration of action is 30–90 minutes. The person should be observed after this time for a return of opioid overdose symptoms.

Resources

Alcohol and Drug Use Screening

American Academy of Addiction Psychiatry: Provides Performance in Practice Clinical Modules for screening of tobacco use and AUD. www.aaap.org/education-training /cme-opportunities

NIAAA, Professional Education Materials: Provides links to screening, treatment planning, and general information for clinicians in outpatient programs. www.niaaa.nih.gov /publications/clinical-guides-and-manuals

NIDA, Medical and Health Professionals: Provides resources for providers to increase awareness of the impact of substance use on patients' health and help identify drug use early and prevent it from escalating to misuse or addiction. www.drugabuse.gov /nidamed-medical-health-professionals

Tobacco Screening

American Psychiatric Nursing Association, Tobacco & Nicotine Use Screening Tools and Assessments: Provides the Fagerström screening tools for nicotine dependence and smokeless tobacco and a screening checklist for tobacco use. www.apna.org/i4a/pages /index.cfm?pageID=6150

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services' Be Tobacco Free: Provides information for individuals struggling with nicotine addiction and links for clinicians that provide guidance on caring for patients with nicotine addiction. https://betobaccofree.hhs.gov /health-effects/nicotine-health

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services' Million Hearts Initiative: Provides templates for developing and guidance on implementing tobacco cessation programs and guidance on implementing them as part of clinical care. https://millionhearts.hhs.gov /tools-protocols/protocols.html

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Offers resources and information for patients and clinicians; includes a webpage with resource links for clinicians on treating tobacco dependence. www.cdc.gov/tobacco /index.htm and www.cdc.gov/tobacco/basic_information/related_links/index.htm

Buprenorphine Treatment Locator

SAMHSA, Buprenorphine Treatment Practitioner Locator: Provides a state-by-state list of providers who offer buprenorphine. www.samhsa.gov/medication-assisted -treatment/physician-program-data /treatment-physician-locator

Buprenorphine Training, Mentorship, and Waivers

SAMHSA, Buprenorphine Waiver Management: Provides information on buprenorphine waivers with links to waiver applications; explains waiver processes, requirements, and recordkeeping. www .samhsa.gov/medication-assisted-treatment /buprenorphine-waiver-management

SAMHSA, Buprenorphine Training for Physicians: Provides links to organizations that train physicians on buprenorphine treatment. www.samhsa.gov/medication -assisted-treatment/training-resources /buprenorphine-physician-training

SAMHSA, Qualify for NPs and PAs Waiver: Provides information for NPs and PAs about the buprenorphine waiver training, with links to trainings and the application process. www .samhsa.gov/medication-assisted-treatment /qualify-nps-pas-waivers

PCSS-MAT: Provides buprenorphine waiver training and mentorship for healthcare professionals (physicians, NPs, and PAs); includes updates and other resources about medication for OUD. http://pcssmat.org

Medication Treatment for OUD

SAMHSA, *Medication-Assisted Treatment of Opioid Use Disorder:* Provides a clinical pocket guide for medication treatment for OUD. https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content /SMA16-4892PG/SMA16-4892PG.pdf

SAMHSA, MATx Mobile App to Support Medication-Assisted Treatment of OUD: Provides a mobile app to support healthcare professionals providing medication treatment for OUD. https://store.samhsa.gov/apps/mat

SAMHSA, *Advisory,* Sublingual and Transmucosal Buprenorphine for Opioid Use Disorder: Review and Update: Summarizes information on the use of buprenorphine to treat OUD. https://store .samhsa.gov/product/Advisory-Sublingual -and-Transmucosal-Buprenorphine-for -Opioid-Use-Disorder-Review-and-Update /SMA16-4938

SAMHSA, *Clinical Use of Extended-Release Injectable Naltrexone in the Treatment of Opioid Use Disorder: A Brief Guide:* Provides a brief review of the use of XR-NTX. https://store.samhsa.gov/product/Clinical -Use-of-Extended-Release-Injectable -Naltrexone-in-the-Treatment-of-Opioid -Use-Disorder-A-Brief-Guide/SMA14-4892R

ASAM, *The ASAM National Practice Guideline for the Use of Medications in the Treatment of Addiction Involving Opioid Use:* Provides national practice guidelines for the use of medications to treat OUD. www.asam.org/docs/default-source/practice -support/guidelines-and-consensus-docs /asam-national-practice-guideline-supplement .pdf

Department of Veterans Affairs/ Department of Defense, *VA/DoD Clinical Practice Guideline for the Management of Substance Use Disorders:* Provides substance use disorder practice guidelines. www.healthquality.va.gov/guidelines/MH/sud /VADoDSUDCPGRevised22216.pdf

PCSS-MAT: Provides training and mentorship for healthcare professionals (physicians, NPs, and PAs) on medications for OUD treatment including buprenorphine, naltrexone, and methadone. https://pcssmat.org

Syringe Exchange

North American Syringe Exchange Network: Provides a national directory of syringe exchange programs in the United States. https://nasen.org/directory

Opioid-Related Overdose Prevention

Prescribe To Prevent: Provides information about naloxone prescribing for overdose prevention, including educational patient handouts and videos. http://prescribeto prevent.org

SAMHSA Opioid Overdose Prevention Toolkit: Provides healthcare professionals, communities, and local governments with material to develop practices and policies to help prevent opioid-related overdoses and deaths. It addresses issues for healthcare professionals, first responders, treatment providers, and those recovering from opioid

overdose as well as their families. https:// store.samhsa.gov/product/SAMHSA -Opioid-Overdose-Prevention-Toolkit /SMA16-4742

CDC—Injury Prevention and Overdose: Provides links and tools for clinicians to help prevent opioid overdose deaths. https://www .cdc.gov/drugoverdose/prevention/index.html

NIDA, Opioid Overdose Reversal with Naloxone (Narcan, Evzio): Provides naloxone information for providers. www.drugabuse .gov/related-topics/opioid-overdose -reversal-naloxone-narcan-evzio

Opioid Withdrawal Scales

WHO Guidelines for the Psychosocially Assisted Pharmacological Treatment of Opioid Dependence: Annex 10: Provides COWS and other opioid withdrawal scales. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK143183

The Clinical Institute Narcotic Assessment Scale for Withdrawal Symptoms: Provides a scale that measures signs and symptoms observed in patients during withdrawal. www .ncpoep.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/02 /Appendix_7_Clinical_Institute_Narcotic_Assessment_CINA_Scale_for_Withdrawal_Symptoms.pdf

Patient and Family Education on Medications To Treat OUD

SAMHSA Store: Provides patient and family educational resources about OUD and medication treatment for OUD; some resources are available in multiple languages, including Spanish. https://store.samhsa.gov Buprenorphine. https://store.samhsa.gov /product/The-Facts-about-Buprenorphine -for-Treatment-of-Opioid-Addiction /SMA15-4442
Methadone. https://store.samhsa.gov /product/What-Every-Individual-Needs-to -Know-About-Methadone-Maintenance /SMA06-4123

ASAM Resources: Provides patient and family education tools about addiction in general and OUD specifically. Patient Resources. www.asam.org /resources/patientresources
Opioid Addiction Treatment: A Guide for Patients, Families, and Friends. https:// www.asam.org/docs/default-source /publications/asam-opioid-patient-piece_-5bopt2-5d_3d.pdf

Referral and Treatment Locators

SAMHSA, OTP Directory: Provides a state-by-state directory of methadone OTPs. https:// dpt2.samhsa.gov/treatment/directory.aspx

SAMHSA, Behavioral Health Treatment Services Locator: Provides a directory of treatment facilities. https://fndtreatment .samhsa.gov

SAMHSA, Behavioral Health Treatment Services Locator—Self-Help, Peer Support, and Consumer Groups: Provides a directory for mutual-help groups. https://fndtreatment .samhsa.gov/locator/link-focSelfGP

Screening, Assessment, and Drug Testing Resources

NIDA, Screening, Assessment, and Drug Testing Resources: Provides an evidence-based screening tool chart for adolescents and adults, drug use screening tool support materials, and a clinician resource and quick reference guide for drug screening in general medical settings, including a brief version of the ASSIST-lite. www.drugabuse.gov/nidamed -medical-health-professionals/tool-resources -your-practice/additional-screening-resources

ASAM, *The ASAM Appropriate Use of Drug Testing in Clinical Addiction Medicine:* Discusses appropriate use of drug testing in identifying, diagnosing, and treating people with or at risk for SUDs. www.asam.org /quality-practice/guidelines-and-consensus -documents/drug-testing

Treatment Planning

The ASAM Criteria: Provides criteria and a comprehensive set of guidelines for placement, continued stay, and transfer/ discharge of patients with addiction and co-occurring conditions. The ASAM six-dimensional assessment tool is designed to guide treatment planning and offers a template to organize assessments and to determine level of care.[98] www.asam.org /quality-practice/guidelines-and-consensus -documents/the-asam-criteria

SAMHSA, Decisions in Recovery— Treatment for Opioid Use Disorder: Provides an online interactive tool to support people with OUD in making informed decisions about their care. https://archive.samhsa.gov /MAT-Decisions-in-Recovery An accompanying handbook is also available. https://store.samhsa.gov/product/Decisions-in -Recovery-Treatment-for-Opioid-Use -Disorders/SMA16-4993

SAMHSA, TIP 42, *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co-Occurring Disorders:* Provides comprehensive treatment guidance for individuals with co-occurring mental and substance use disorders. https:// store.samhsa.gov/shin/content//SMA13-3992 /SMA13-3992.pdf

K. Overview of Pharmacotherapy for Opioid Use Disorder

There are three FDA-approved medications used to treat OUD, including the mu-opioid receptor partial agonist buprenorphine, the mu-opioid receptor full agonist methadone, and the mu-opioid receptor antagonist naltrexone. Extended-release naltrexone (XR-NTX) is FDA approved to prevent relapse in patients who have remained opioid abstinent for sufficient time.

Discussing medications that can treat OUD with patients who have this disorder is the clinical standard of care and should cover at least:

- The proven effectiveness of methadone, naltrexone, and buprenorphine compared with placebo and with outpatient counseling without medication.
- Risks and benefits of pharmacotherapy with all three types of medication, treatment without medication, and no treatment.
- Safety and effectiveness of the medications when used appropriately.
- Pharmacologic properties, routes of administration, and where and how to access treatment with each medication

Introduction to Medications That Address OUD

1. Methadone

Methadone is the most used and most studied OUD medication in the world. The World Health Organization (WHO) considers it an essential medication.[128] Many clinical trials and meta-analyses have shown that **it effectively reduces illicit opioid use, treats OUD, and retains patients in treatment** better than placebo or no medication.

In the United States, roughly 1,500 federally certified opioid treatment programs (OTPs) offer methadone for OUD. Increasingly, they also offer buprenorphine, and some provide XR-NTX. Core OTP services include medical oversight of treatment, direct observation of dose administration, take-home dose dispensing under certain conditions, counseling, and drug testing.

Some OTPs provide other services, including mental health and primary care, HIV and hepatitis C virus care, and recovery support. Even so, significant demand remains for better integration and coordination of care among OTPs, primary care services, and mental health services to treat the range of needs common in people with OUD.[129] Coordination is

---

[128] World Health Organization. (2015). *19th WHO model list of essential medicines.* Geneva, Switzerland: Author

[129] Stoller, K. B., Stephens, M. A. C., & Schorr, A. (2016). Integrated service delivery models for opioid treatment programs in an era of increasing opioid addiction, health reform, and parity. Retrieved October 16, 2017, from www.aatod.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/07 /2nd-Whitepaper-.pdf

especially important for people with co-occurring medical, mental, and substance use disorders, who need multiple services and face challenges in treatment access and adherence.

Although only OTPs can administer or dispense methadone for OUD, all healthcare professionals and addiction and mental health counselors should be familiar with methadone. Their patients may be enrolled in or need referral to OTPs.

2. Naltrexone

XR-NTX has demonstrated efficacy in reducing return to illicit opioid use, increasing treatment retention, and reducing opioid craving compared with placebo or no medication in randomized controlled trials. Because the injectable form was approved more recently by FDA than methadone and buprenorphine, XR-NTX has been less studied than those medications. Physicians, NPs, and PAs may prescribe or order XR-NTX for administration by qualified staff members without additional waiver requirements.

XR-NTX initiated prior to release from controlled environments (e.g., jails, prisons, residential rehabilitation programs) **may be useful in preventing return to opioid use after release.**[130] These settings are typically associated with extended periods of opioid abstinence, so maintaining abstinence for sufficient time to start naltrexone is less challenging than initiating it among outpatients in the community. Short-term pilot studies show that offering naltrexone under these circumstances can increase treatment engagement after release.

The oral formulation of naltrexone is not widely used to treat OUD because of low rates of patient acceptance and high rates of nonadherence leading to a lack of efficacy.[131] However, consideration should be given to its use in situations where adherence can be ensured, such as with observed daily dosing. Naltrexone is also FDA approved for the treatment of alcohol use disorder and therefore may be useful for patients with both OUD and alcohol use disorder.

3. Buprenorphine

Buprenorphine is effective in retaining patients in treatment and reducing illicit opioid use, as demonstrated by many clinical trials comparing buprenorphine with placebo or no

---

[130] American Society of Addiction Medicine. (2015). *The ASAM national practice guideline for the use of medications in the treatment of addiction involving opioid use.* Chevy Chase, MD: Author.

[131] Sullivan, M. A., Garawi, F., Bisaga, A., Comer, S. D., Carpenter, K., Raby, W. N., … Nunes, E. V. (2007). Management of relapse in naltrexone maintenance for heroin dependence. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 91*(2–3), 289–292.

medication. Buprenorphine treatment is available throughout the world. WHO includes it in its list of essential medicines.[132]

Buprenorphine is a partial agonist with a ceiling effect on opioid activity. Hence, it is less likely than methadone and other full agonists to cause respiratory depression in an accidental overdose. This property contributed to the decision permitting buprenorphine to be prescribed to treat opioid dependence outside OTPs. That being said, lethal overdose with buprenorphine is possible in opioid-naïve individuals or when it is taken in combination with central nervous system depressants such as benzodiazepines or alcohol. Transmucosal buprenorphine is available by prescription through pharmacies, because the Drug Addiction Treatment Act of 2000 (DATA 2000) created an exception to the Controlled Substances Act to permit FDA schedule III, IV, and V medications approved to treat opioid dependence to be prescribed for that purpose outside OTPs. Buprenorphine, in various formulations, is the only medication to which DATA 2000 currently applies.

Qualifying physicians, NPs, and PAs can prescribe buprenorphine if they receive special training, obtain a SAMHSA waiver under DATA 2000, and get a unique Drug Enforcement Administration registration number. This has greatly increased the number and type of settings where medication for OUD is available and the number of patients in treatment. New settings include non-OTP outpatient addiction treatment programs, as well as general medical and mental health practices or clinics (office-based opioid treatment). OTPs can also provide buprenorphine.

In 2016, FDA approved buprenorphine implants (Probuphine) that last about 6 months for patients stabilized on sublingual or buccal formulations. Implants have been found to be more effective than placebo in reducing illicit opioid use among opioid-dependent patients receiving counseling. Implants are available in the same settings as other buprenorphine formulations but require waivered providers to receive specific training from the manufacturer on insertion and removal per the FDA-approved REMS (www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/rems/index.cfm?event=IndvRemsDetails.page&REMS=356).

In 2017, FDA approved a monthly extended-release buprenorphine injectable formulation (Sublocade) for patients with moderate-to-severe OUD who had been initiated and treated with transmucosal buprenorphine for at least 7 days. The medication is for subcutaneous abdominal injection by a healthcare provider and is intended to be available for ordering and

[132] World Health Organization. (2015). *19th WHO model list of essential medicines.* Geneva, Switzerland: Author

dispensing (not by prescription to patients) in healthcare settings that receive special certifcation, pursuant to the FDA-approved REMS (www .accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/rems/index .cfm?event=IndvRemsDetails.page&REMS=376).

Choosing an OUD Medication

Currently, no empirical data indicate which patients will respond better to which OUD medications. All patients considering treatment should be educated about the effectiveness, risks, and benefits of each of the three OUD medications, treatment without medication, and no treatment. Emphasize that OUD medications are safe and effective when used appropriately, and point out that these medications can help patients reduce or stop illicit opioid use and improve their health and functioning.

Tailor decisions to patients' medical, psychiatric, and substance use histories; to their preferences; and to treatment availability when deciding which medication and treatment to provide. Consider:

- Patients' prior response to a medication.
- The medication's side effect profile.
- The strength of the published data on safety and effectiveness.
- Patients' use of other substances (e.g., naltrexone is also approved for the treatment of alcohol dependence).
- Patients' occupation. For patients in safety-sensitive occupations, consider naltrexone.
- Patients' pregnancy status.*
- Patients' physical dependence on opioids. Patients not currently physically dependent on opioids who are returning to the community from a residential treatment program or incarceration should have the option of XR-NTX,[28] methadone, or buprenorphine based on which best suits their needs and circumstances (see below for special safety dosing considerations for methadone and buprenorphine in nontolerant patients).
- Patients' preferences. Respect patients' preferences for agonist versus antagonist medication. (See Part 2 of this TIP for an in-depth discussion of treatment planning.)

Comparative Effectiveness

A Cochrane review of 5 randomized clinical trials with 788 participants found that, when provided at flexible doses on an outpatient basis, methadone retained patients in treatment

longer than buprenorphine.[133] That same review found that methadone and buprenorphine equally reduced illicit opioid use based on 8 studies with urine drug testing data from 1,027 participants and 4 studies with self-reported drug use from 501 participants.

There is not yet a Cochrane review on the comparative effectiveness of XR-NTX and buprenorphine. However, in 2017, two randomized trials comparing buprenorphine to XR-NTX were published. A multisite study with 570 participants in the United States compared initiating buprenorphine versus XR-NTX at 8 inpatient treatment programs.[134] That study found that patients randomly assigned to start buprenorphine had significantly lower return-to-use rates during 24 weeks of outpatient treatment compared with those patients assigned to start XR-NTX. This finding was due to the known difficulty in successfully completing induction in the XR-NTX group. However, comparing only the subgroups of those participants who did start their assigned medication, there were no significant between-group differences in return-to-use rates. In a 12-week trial in Norway with 159 participants who were opioid abstinent at the time of random assignment, XR-NTX was found to be noninferior to buprenorphine in terms of treatment retention and illicit opioid use.[135] There is no extant literature evaluating the comparative effectiveness of methadone, XR-NTX, buprenorphine implant, or extended-release buprenorphine injection to one another.

Duration of Medication

Continued treatment with buprenorphine or methadone is associated with better outcomes than medically supervised withdrawal.[136] Continued treatment with XR-NTX is associated with better outcomes than discontinuing XR-NTX.[137] Patients should be informed of the risks and benefits of discontinuing medication. Buprenorphine or methadone can be used for medically supervised withdrawal over a period of days to weeks for patients who prefer it to ongoing opioid agonist treatment. When opioid agonist medications are unavailable, the alpha$_2$-adrenergic agonist clonidine can relieve some withdrawal symptoms, although clinical trials found it less effective.[138] Pair medically supervised withdrawal with the chance to begin XR-NTX. Discontinuing medication increases risk of return to substance use

---

[133] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2014). Buprenorphine maintenance versus placebo or methadone maintenance for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2014*(2). CD002207.

[134] Lee, J. D., Nunes, E. V., Jr., Novo, P., Bachrach, K., Bailey, G. L., Bhatt, S., … Rotrosen, J. (2018). Comparative effectiveness of extended-release naltrexone versus buprenorphine-naloxone for opioid relapse prevention (X:BOT): A multicenter, open-label, randomized controlled trial. *Lancet, 391*(10118), 309–318.

[135] Tanum, L., Solli, K. K., Latif, Z. E., Benth, J. Š., Opheim, A., Sharma-Haase, K., … Kunøe, N. (2017). The effectiveness of injectable extended-release naltrexone vs daily buprenorphine-naloxone for opioid dependence: A randomized clinical noninferiority trial. *JAMA Psychiatry, 74*(12), 1197–1205.

[136] Department of Veterans Affairs & Department of Defense. (2015). *VA/DoD clinical practice guideline for the management of substance use disorders.* Retrieved October 16, 2017, from www.healthquality.va.gov /guidelines/MH/sud/VADoDSUDCPGRevised22216.pdf

[137] Lee, J. D., Friedmann, P. D., Kinlock, T. W., Nunes, E. V., Boney, T. Y., Hoskinson, R. A., Jr., … O'Brien, C. P. (2016). Extended-release naltrexone to prevent opioid relapse in criminal justice offenders. *New England Journal of Medicine, 374*(13), 1232–1242.

[138] Gowing, L., Ali, R., White, J. M., & Mbewe, D. (2017). Buprenorphine for managing opioid withdrawal. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2017*(2). CD002025.

and overdose death. Stable patients can continue on their selected OUD medication indefinitely as long as it is beneficial.[139]
During medically supervised withdrawal, ancillary medications can treat some of the withdrawal symptoms.

Principles of OUD Pharmacotherapy

Basic Function

Several factors underlie the development of addiction involving opioids and the difficulty people have in achieving and maintaining abstinence from them. These factors include:[140]

- Short-term direct and indirect mu-opioid receptor agonist effects.
- Neuroplastic changes in the brain.
- Genetic, developmental, and environmental factors (e.g., exposure to high-risk environments, effect of stress on the hypothalamic– pituitary–adrenal axis).

Methadone, buprenorphine, and naltrexone bind to the mu-opioid receptors in the central and peripheral nervous systems, gastrointestinal tract, and vascular system. In the brain, these receptors mediate opioids' analgesic and other effects (e.g., euphoria, respiratory depression, meiosis). Through modulation of mu-opioid receptor activity in the brain, these medications exert therapeutic efficacy in treating OUD.

Intrinsic Activity

Intrinsic activity at the mu-opioid receptor varies based on whether the medication is a full agonist, partial agonist, or antagonist. The amount of intrinsic activity corresponds to the amount of opioid receptor agonist effects. **A full agonist exerts maximal effects at increasing doses. A partial agonist has a ceiling effect.** Its opioid effects increase as the dose increases, but only up to a certain point. **An antagonist binds to the opioid receptor but does not stimulate the receptor at all.** Thus, it has no intrinsic activity regardless of its dose.

Overview of Medication Indications and Dosing

Healthcare professionals should consider pharmacotherapy for all patients with OUD. Prescribers must read FDA labels (i.e., package inserts) for the medications they prescribe. They must also evaluate patients clinically to determine the safety and effectiveness of the medication and dose.

---

[139] Hser, Y. I., Huang, D., Saxon, A. J., Woody, G., Moskowitz, A. L., Matthews, A. G., & Ling, W. (2017). Distinctive trajectories of opioid use over an extended follow-up of patients in a multisite trial on buprenorphine + naloxone and methadone. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 11*(1), 63–69.
[140] Kreek, M. J., Levran, O., Reed, B., Schlussman, S. D., Zhou, Y., & Butelman, E. R. (2012). Opiate addiction and cocaine addiction: Underlying molecular neurobiology and genetics. *Journal of Clinical Investigation, 122*(10), 3387–3393.

The dosing guidance in subsequent chapters for methadone, naltrexone, and buprenorphine is for healthcare professionals in general medical and addiction treatment settings. This guidance is based on:

- A review of the literature.
- A review of national and international organizations' guidelines.
- FDA-approved medication labels.
- The TIP expert panel's recommendations.

Methadone is the most studied pharmacotherapy for opioid use disorder (OUD). Of all OUD pharmacotherapies, it is used to treat the most people throughout the world and has by far the longest track record (nearly 50 years).[141] Numerous clinical trials and meta-analyses have shown that methadone treatment is associated with significantly higher rates of treatment retention and lower rates of illicit opioid use compared with placebo and with no treatment. Other research associates methadone treatment with reduced mortality, criminal behavior, and HIV seroconversion.[142] A Cochrane meta-analysis found that, at flexible doses, methadone compared with buprenorphine retains patients in treatment significantly longer and equally reduces illicit opioid use.[143]

In the United States, OTPs can offer methadone to treat OUD, but all providers who may care for patients with OUD should be familiar with this treatment.

Formulations

There are several formulations of methadone:

- Liquid concentrate, which is the formulation most commonly used in treatment programs.
- Powder, which is dissolved in water and administered as a liquid.
- Dispersible tablets, which are scored tablets that are dissolved in water.
- Tablets, which are most commonly used outside of OTPs for analgesia.

Pharmacology

Methadone, a long-acting mu-opioid receptor full agonist, is a schedule II controlled medication. It is highly plasma–protein bound and binds to proteins within tissues throughout the body.[144] Through mu-opioid receptor binding and opioid cross-tolerance to other mu-opioid

[141] Kreek, M. J., Borg, L., Ducat, E., & Ray, B. (2010). Pharmacotherapy in the treatment of addiction: Methadone. *Journal of Addictive Diseases, 29*(2), 200–216.

[142] Degenhardt, L., Randall, D., Hall, W., Law, M., Butler, T., & Burns, L. (2009). Mortality among clients of a state-wide opioid pharmacotherapy program over 20 years: Risk factors and lives saved. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 105*(1–2), 9–15.

[143] Mattick, R. P., Breen, C., Kimber, J., & Davoli, M. (2014). Buprenorphine maintenance versus placebo or methadone maintenance for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2014*(2). CD002207.

[144] Walsh, S. L., & Strain, E. C. (2006). Pharmacology of methadone. In E. C. Strain & M. L. Stitzer (Eds.), *The treatment of opioid dependence* (pp. 59–76). Baltimore, MD: John Hopkins University Press.

agonists, at adequate doses, **methadone reduces opioid craving and withdrawal and blunts or blocks the effects of illicit opioids.**

There is wide individual variability in methadone pharmacokinetics. The half-life of methadone can vary from 8 to 59 hours depending on the patient. The average is 24 hours.[145]

Methadone has no ceiling effect. As a full agonist, increasing doses of methadone produce maximal physiological effects at the opioid receptors. Plasma levels reach steady state in about 5 days (i.e., five half-lives). Before achievement of steady state, release from tissue reservoirs can lead to increasing serum plasma levels and toxicity, even if the daily methadone dose is not changed.

Methadone induction, thus, should begin at a low dose and increase gradually with daily monitoring over days or weeks. At stable daily doses, serum levels peak 2 to 4 hours after dosing, then slowly decrease, providing 24 hours without overmedication or withdrawal.[146]

Bioavailability

Methadone is approximately 70 to 80 percent bioavailable when patients take it orally for OUD. There is notable individual variability in bioavailability, ranging from 36 to 100 percent.[147]

The liver's CYP450 3A4 enzyme is primarily responsible for metabolizing methadone, although CYP2B6 and CYP2D6 enzymes are also involved. At the start of methadone treatment, methadone can increase CYP3A4 activity and accelerate its own metabolism in some individuals.[148]

Dosing must be individualized because methadone's bioavailability, clearance, and half-life can vary considerably among patients. Providers should check for potential drug–drug interactions and monitor patients receiving concomitant medications. Some medications (e.g., benzodiazepines, anticonvulsants, antibiotics, antiretroviral agents, some

---

[145] Walsh, S. L., & Strain, E. C. (2006). Pharmacology of methadone. In E. C. Strain & M. L. Stitzer (Eds.), *The treatment of opioid dependence* (pp. 59–76). Baltimore, MD: John Hopkins University Press.

[146] Payte, J. T., & Zweben, J. E. (1998). Opioid maintenance therapies. In A. W. Graham, T. K. Schultz, & B. B. Wilford (Eds.), *Principles of addiction medicine* (pp. 557–570). Chevy Chase, MD: American Society of Addiction Medicine.

[147] Eap, C. B., Buclin, T., & Baumann, P. (2002). Interindividual variability of the clinical pharmacokinetics of methadone: Implications for the treatment of opioid dependence. *Clinical Pharmacokinetics, 41*(14), 1153–1193.

[148] Eap, C. B., Buclin, T., & Baumann, P. (2002). Interindividual variability of the clinical pharmacokinetics of methadone: Implications for the treatment of opioid dependence. *Clinical Pharmacokinetics, 41*(14), 1153–1193.

antidepressants) can induce or inhibit CYP450 enzymes, resulting in potential changes in methadone serum concentration, effectiveness, and side effect profile.

Dosing Considerations

Methadone is indicated for people meeting OTP admission criteria, which for people 18 and older are:

- Being currently "opioid-addicted"—the term the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA) OTP regulations use (e.g., meeting *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders,* Fifth Edition, criteria for OUD). Not all patients meeting OUD criteria, particularly those with mild OUD, are appropriate candidates for methadone.
- Having a history of at least 1 year of opioid addiction before admission.
- Providing voluntary, written informed consent.

OTP physicians can waive the history requirement per Code of Federal Regulations (42 CFR 8.12)[149] for:

- Women who are pregnant.
- Former patients (up to 2 years after discharge).
- Patients within 6 months of release from incarceration.

For patients younger than 18, admission criteria are different. They include two documented, unsuccessful, medically supervised withdrawals or treatments without OUD medication (e.g., methadone) in a 12-month period. The parent or legal guardian must provide written informed consent.

Contraindications

Contraindications to treatment with methadone include an allergy to methadone and other instances in which opioids are contraindicated, such as acute asthma, in patients with abnormally high carbon dioxide blood levels (e.g., from pulmonary disease or sleep apnea), or paralytic ileus.

Precautions and Warnings

Respiratory depression

Methadone can cause respiratory depression, particularly during initial dosing and dose titration. The goal of methadone dosing in the first weeks of treatment (i.e., induction) is to

[149] Federal opioid treatment standards, 42 CFR § 8.12 (2015).

relieve withdrawal but avoid over sedation and respiratory depression. Patients who are older or cachectic or who have chronic obstructive pulmonary disease are more susceptible to respiratory depression and should be treated cautiously with lower doses.

Individualize dosing decisions through daily monitoring of patients' responses to treatment. Opioid tolerance cannot be accurately gauged based on patient self-reports of the type, amount, or purity of the opioids they've used or of the severity of their opioid withdrawal symptoms.

The best approach to dosing is to start low and go slow. Methadone has a relatively long half-life (24–36 hours or longer). Steady-state serum levels are generally not reached until about five half-lives. **This means that patients will not feel the full effect of the initial dose for 4 or more days** even if the daily dose is the same. Slow release of methadone from tissues causes serum levels to continue to increase until reaching steady state. Initially a dose may seem appropriate, but the third or fourth day of the same dose can lead to over sedation and even respiratory depression and death.[150]

Use a lower-than-usual starting dose in individuals with no or low opioid tolerance (5 mg to 10 mg). Increase doses slowly and with careful monitoring for patients who:

- Have not used opioids for 5 or more days (e.g., after leaving a controlled environment).
- Do not use opioids daily.
- Use weaker opioids (e.g., codeine).

Do not determine doses by analgesic equivalence dose conversion tables for patients using high doses of prescription opioids, whether by prescription or illicitly. This can lead to death owing to incomplete cross-tolerance[151] and the unique pharmacology of methadone.

Concurrent substance use disorders (SUDs) involving benzodiazepines or alcohol

Concurrent misuse of alcohol or benzodiazepines with methadone (or buprenorphine) increases respiratory depression risk. Use of alcohol and benzodiazepines (illicit and prescription) is common in patients with OUD. Managing OUD with methadone for patients with alcohol or benzodiazepine use disorders is challenging and should be undertaken with

---

[150] Chou, R., Cruciani, R. A., Fiellin, D. A., Compton, P., Farrar, J. T., Haigney, M. C., … Zeltzer, L. (2014). Methadone safety: A clinical practice guideline from the American Pain Society and College on Problems of Drug Dependence, in collaboration with the Heart Rhythm Society. *Journal of Pain, 15*(4), 321–337.

[151] P., Martin, J. A., McNicholas, L., … Wilford, B. B. (2013). Safe methadone induction and stabilization: Report of an expert panel. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 7*(6), 377–386.

care. A 2017 Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Drug Safety Communication noted that although concomitant use of buprenorphine or methadone with benzodiazepines increases the risk of an adverse reaction, including overdose death, opioid agonist treatment should not be denied to patients solely on the basis of their taking benzodiazepines, because untreated OUD can pose a greater risk of morbidity and mortality.[152] FDA advises that careful medication management by healthcare professionals can reduce risk (see www.fda.gov/downloads /Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM576377.pdf for more information).

Strategies to manage patients with concurrent alcohol or benzodiazepine use disorders include the following:

- **Obtain permission to communicate with the benzodiazepine prescriber** to confirm the reason for use, adherence to treatment, and prescriber awareness of the patient's OUD. It can also help to speak (with permission) with close family members or friends to assess the extent and impact of any alcohol or benzodiazepine misuse.
- **Ensure that patients understand the risk** of potential respiratory depression and un-intentional overdose death when combining methadone with alcohol, benzodiazepines, or other central nervous system (CNS) depressants.
- **Determine whether patients require medically supervised withdrawal or tapering from alcohol or benzodiazepines.** Patients at risk for serious alcohol or benzodiazepine withdrawal syndrome (including seizures and delirium tremens) may need inpatient medically supervised withdrawal.
- **Attempt gradual outpatient medically supervised withdrawal for benzodiaze-pines when indicated.** Some OTPs have the staffing and capacity to provide a supervised outpatient taper from benzodiazepines. This usually requires use of a long-acting benzodiazepine, management of anxiety and sleeplessness, and careful monitoring with observed dosing and toxicology screening. It may also require lower-than-usual methadone doses. Engage in outpatient medically supervised withdrawal only with patients who are physically dependent on benzodiazepines but do not inject or binge. This may only be successful in a minority of patients. Attempt the taper while continuing treatment with methadone, subject to certain conditions that promote safety and reduce risk.
- **Consider increasing counseling frequency as appropriate.**
- For more information on managing benzodiaze-pine use, see *Management of Benzodiazepines in Medication-Assisted Treatment* (http://ireta .org/wp-content/uploads/2014/12/BP_Guidelines_for_Benzodiazepines.pdf).

[152] Food and Drug Administration. (2016, March). FDA Drug Safety Communications, FDA urges caution about withholding opioid addiction medications from patients taking benzodiazepines or CNS depressant: Careful medication management can reduce risks. Retrieved January 3, 2018, from www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs /DrugSafety/UCM576377.pdf

QTc prolongation and cardiac arrhythmia

Methadone treatment has been associated with QTc prolongation, which often occurs without clinical consequences.[153] Since 2006, methadone has had an FDA black box warning on QTc prolongation and Torsades de Pointes. QTc intervals above 500 milliseconds can increase risk for this rare ventricular arrhythmia, which can be lethal.[154] The prevalence of QTc prolongation among methadone patients is not known with certainty. It has been estimated that about 2 percent of patients in methadone treatment have QTc intervals greater than 500 milliseconds.[155] According to methadone's FDA label, most Torsades de Pointes cases occur in patients receiving methadone for pain treatment, although some cases have occurred among those in methadone maintenance. High methadone doses may be associated with prolonged QTc intervals.

Other risk factors include:

- Some medications (e.g., antidepressants, antibiotics, antifungals).
- Congenital prolonged QTc interval.
- Hypokalemia.
- Bradycardia.

There is considerable controversy about how best to screen for QTc prolongation without creating barriers to methadone treatment entry.[156] Indeed, a Cochrane review of the literature was unable to draw any conclusions about the effectiveness of QTc screening strategies in preventing cardiac morbidity or mortality among methadone patients. Notwithstanding the uncertainty about the best approach, OTPs can take steps to identify patients who may be at risk for cardiac arrhythmia. **The TIP expert panel concurs with the recommendations of other expert panels (which included cardiologists) that OTPs develop a cardiac risk management plan,[157]**to the extent possible. **OTPs should consider the following elements in crafting a cardiac risk management plan:**

- **An intake assessment of risk factors, which can include:** Family history of sudden cardiac death, arrhythmia, myocardial infarction, heart failure, prolonged QTc interval, or unexplained syncope.

---

[153] Bart, G., Wyman, Z., Wang, Q., Hodges, J. S., Karim, R., & Bart, B. A. (2017). Methadone and the QTc interval: Paucity of clinically significant factors in a retrospective cohort. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 11*(6), 489–493.

[154] Bednar, M. M., Harrigan, E. P., & Ruskin, J. N. (2002). Torsades de pointes associated with nonantiarrhythmic drugs and observations on gender and QTc. *American Journal of Cardiology, 89*(11), 1316–1319.

[155] Martin, J. A., Campbell, A., Killip, T., Kotz, M., Krantz, M. J., Kreek, M. J., … Wilford, B. B. (2011). QT interval screening in methadone maintenance treatment: Report of a SAMHSA expert panel. *Journal of Addictive Diseases, 30*(4), 283–306.

[156] Bart, G., Wyman, Z., Wang, Q., Hodges, J. S., Karim, R., & Bart, B. A. (2017). Methadone and the QTc interval: Paucity of clinically significant factors in a retrospective cohort. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 11*(6), 489–493.

[157] Martin, J. A., Campbell, A., Killip, T., Kotz, M., Krantz, M. J., Kreek, M. J., … Wilford, B. B. (2011). QT interval screening in methadone maintenance treatment: Report of a SAMHSA expert panel. *Journal of Addictive Diseases, 30*(4), 283–306.

- Patient history of arrhythmia, myocardial infarction, heart failure, prolonged QTc interval, unexplained syncope, palpitations, or seizures.
- Current use of medications that may increase QTc interval (for a complete list, see www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf /CompositeList.pdf; register for free for the most current list).
- Patient history of use of cocaine and methamphetamines (which can prolong the QTc interval).
- Electrolyte assessment (for hypokalemia or hypomagnesemia).
- **A risk stratification plan, which can include the following: Conduct an ECG for patients with significant risk factors** at admission; repeat within 30 days. Repeat once a year and if the patient is treated with more than 120 mg of methadone per day.
- Discuss risks and benefits of methadone with patients with QTc intervals between 450 and 500 milliseconds. Adjust modifiable risk factors to reduce their risk.
    - **Do not start methadone treatment for patients with known QTc intervals above 500 milliseconds.** If such an interval is discovered during treatment, have a risk/ benefit discussion. Strongly consider lowering the methadone dose, changing concurrent medications that prolong the QTc interval, eliminating other risk factors, and, if necessary, switching to buprenor-phine. Include follow-up ECG monitoring.

− Consider providing routine universal ECG screening if feasible, although there is insufficient evidence to formally recommend doing so.[158]

Accidental ingestion

Inform patients that accidental ingestion can be fatal for opioid-naïve individuals, particularly children. Patients should safeguard take-home methadone in a lockbox out of the reach of children.

Neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS)

Ensure awareness among pregnant patients or patients who may become pregnant that NAS can occur in newborns of mothers treated with methadone. Women receiving methadone treatment while pregnant should talk with their healthcare provider about NAS and how to reduce it. Research has shown that the dose of opioid agonist medication is not reliably related to the severity of NAS.[159] Thus, each woman should receive the dose of medication that best manages her illness.

---

[158] Chou, R., Cruciani, R. A., Fiellin, D. A., Compton, P., Farrar, J. T., Haigney, M. C., … Zeltzer, L. (2014). Methadone safety: A clinical practice guideline from the American Pain Society and College on Problems of Drug Dependence, in collaboration with the Heart Rhythm Society. *Journal of Pain, 15*(4), 321–337.

[159] Jones, H. E., Dengler, E., Garrison, A., O'Grady, K. E., Seashore, C., Horton, E., … Thorp, J. (2014). Neonatal outcomes and their relationship to maternal buprenorphine dose during pregnancy. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 134,* 414–417.

Misuse and diversion

Alert patients to the potential for misuse and diversion of methadone.

Physical dependence

Inform patients that they will develop physical dependence on methadone and will experience opioid withdrawal if they stop taking it.

Sedation

Caution patients that methadone may affect cognition and psychomotor performance and can have sedating effects. Urge patients to be cautious in using heavy machinery and driving until they are sure that their abilities are not compromised.

Adrenal insufficiency

Adrenal insufficiency has been reported in patients treated with opioids. Ask patients to alert healthcare providers of nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, fatigue, weakness, dizziness, or low blood pressure.[160]

Drug Interactions

Methadone has more clinically significant drug–drug interaction than buprenorphine. Carefully monitor each patient's response to treatment if they are prescribed or stop taking a CYP450 34A inducer or inhibitor. Methadone dosages may need to be adjusted up or down depending on the medication and whether treatment is starting or stopping. Exhibit 3B.2 lists common interactions between methadone and other medications.

Medications that induce CYP450 activity can increase methadone metabolism. Patients may experience craving or opioid withdrawal symptoms between doses if they begin these medications or become sedated if they discontinue them:

- Some antibiotics (e.g., rifampin).
- Antiretrovirals (e.g., efavirenz, nevirapine, ritonavir).
- Anticonvulsants (carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin).

Other medications can inhibit CYP450 activity and decrease methadone metabolism, causing symptoms of overmedication (e.g., sedation) when the medication is started and possibly withdrawal or cravings when it is stopped. Among such medications are:[117]

[160] Food and Drug Administration. (2016, March). FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA warns about several safety issues with opioid pain medicines; requires label changes. Retrieved December 18, 2017, from www.fda .gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM491302.pdf

- Some antibiotics (ciprofoxacin, erythromycin).
- Antacids (cimetidine).
- Antifungals (fuconazole).
- Antidepressants (e.g., fuvoxamine, paroxe-tine, sertraline).

Methadone can affect the metabolism of other medications. For example, zidovudine levels are reported to increase significantly during methadone treatment. Monitoring for zidovudine side effects during treatment is warranted.[119] Check drug–drug interactions online (www .drugs.com/drug_interactions.php).

Side Effects

Possible side effects of methadone include the following (methadone FDA labels list all potential side effects and are available at https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/search .cfm?labeltype=all&query=METHADONE:

- Constipation
- Nausea
- Sweating
- Sexual dysfunction or decreased libido
- Drowsiness
- Amenorrhea
- Weight gain
- Edema

L. Partnering Addiction Treatment Counselors With Clients and Healthcare Professionals

Overview and Context

Scope of the Problem

Opioid misuse has caused a growing nationwide epidemic of OUD and unintentional overdose deaths.[161] This epidemic affects people in all regions, of all ages, and from all walks of life. Opioid misuse devastates families, burdens emergency departments and first responders, fuels increases in hospital admissions, and strains criminal justice and child welfare systems.

Counselors can play an integral role in addressing this crisis. Counseling helps people with OUD and other substance use disorders (SUDs) change how they think, cope, react, and

---

[161] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2016). Increases in drug and opioid-involved overdose deaths—United States, 2010–2015. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 65*(50–51),1445–1452.

acquire the skills and confidence necessary for recovery. Counseling can provide support for people who take medication to treat their OUD. Patients may get counseling from prescribers or other staff members in the prescribers' practices or by referral to counselors at specialty addiction treatment programs or in private practice. Counselors and peer recovery support specialists can work with patients who take OUD medication and refer patients with active OUD to healthcare professionals for an assessment for treatment with medication.

[This section] uses "counselor" to refer to the range of professionals—including recovery coaches and other peer recovery support services specialists —who may counsel, coach, or mentor people who take OUD medication, although their titles, credentials, and range of responsibilities vary. At times, [This section] refers to individuals as "clients."

Counseling clients who take OUD medication requires understanding:

- Basic information about OUD.
- The role and function of OUD medications.
- Ways to create a supportive environment that helps clients work toward recovery.
- Counseling's role within a system of whole-person, recovery-oriented OUD care.

Setting the Stage

Since the 1990s, dramatic increases in controlled medication prescriptions—particularly opioid pain relievers—have coincided with increases in their misuse.[162] Since the mid-2000s, heroin and fentanyl (mainly illicit formulations)[163] consumption has also sharply increased. People who turn to illicit drugs after misusing opioid medications have driven greater use of heroin and fentanyl, which are cheaper and easier to obtain.

Approximately 1,500 OTPs currently dispense methadone, buprenorphine, or both.[164] They may also offer naltrexone. Historically, OTPs were the only source of OUD medication and offered only methadone.

Buprenorphine is increasingly available in general medical settings. Physicians, nurse practitioners, and physician assistants (whether or not they're addiction specialists) can get a

---

[162] 10 Manchikanti, L. (2007). National drug control policy and prescription drug abuse: Facts and fallacies. *Pain Physician, 10,* 399–424.

[163] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2016). Increases in drug and opioid-involved overdose deaths—United States, 2010–2015. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 65*(50–51),1445–1452.

[164] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (n.d.). Opioid treatment program directory. Retrieved October 19, 2017, from https:// dpt2.samhsa.gov/treatment/directory.aspx

federal waiver to prescribe buprenorphine. These healthcare professionals can also prescribe and administer naltrexone, which does not require a waiver or OTP program certification.

People with OUD should have access to the medication most appropriate for them. Medication helps establish and maintain OUD remission. By controlling withdrawal and cravings and blocking the euphoric effects of illicit opioids, OUD medication helps patients stop illicit opioid use and resolve OUD's psychosocial problems. For some people, OUD medication may be lifesaving. Ideally, patients with OUD should have access to all three FDA-approved pharmacotherapies. (See the "Quick Guide to Medications" section for an overview of each medication.)

Many patients taking OUD medication benefit from counseling as part of their treatment. Counseling helps people with OUD change how they think, cope, react, and acquire the skills and confidence needed for recovery. Patients may get counseling from medication prescribers or staff members in prescribers' practices or by referral to counselors at specialty addiction treatment programs or in private practice.

Distinguishing OUD From Physical Dependence on Opioid Medications

According to DSM-5[165] OUD falls under the general category of SUDs and is marked by:

- Compulsion and craving.
- Tolerance.
- Loss of control.
- Withdrawal when use stops.
- Continued opioid use despite adverse consequences.

Properly taken, some medications cause tolerance and physical dependence. Medications for some chronic illnesses (e.g., steroids for systemic lupus erythematosus) can make the body build tolerance to the medications over time. If people abruptly stop taking medications on which they've become physically dependent, they can experience withdrawal symptoms. This can be serious, even fatal.

Physical dependence on a prescribed, properly taken opioid medication is distinct from OUD and opioid addiction. OUD is a behavioral disorder associated with loss of control of

---

165 American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing.

opioid use, use despite adverse consequences, reduction in functioning, and compulsion to use. The professionals who revised DSM-5 diagnostic criteria for OUD made several significant changes. Among the most notable was differentiating physical dependence from OUD:

- Tolerance or withdrawal symptoms related to FDA-approved medications appropriately prescribed and taken to treat OUD (buprenorphine, methadone) don't count toward diagnostic criteria for OUD.

If the individual is being treated with an OUD medication and meets no OUD criteria other than tolerance, withdrawal, or craving (but did meet OUD criteria in the past), he or she is considered in remission on pharmacotherapy.

Accepting this distinction is essential to working with clients taking OUD medication. One common question about patients taking medication for OUD is "Aren't they still addicted?" The new DSM-5 distinction makes the answer to this question "No, they're not still addicted." A person can require OUD medication and be physically dependent on it but still be in remission and recovery from OUD.

Understanding the Benefits of Medication for OUD Medication is an effective treatment for OUD.[166] People with OUD should be referred for an assessment for pharmacotherapy unless they decline.[167] To be supportive and effective when counseling clients who could benefit from or who take medication for OUD, know that:

- **Treatment with methadone and buprenorphine is associated with lower likelihood of overdose death compared with not taking these medications.**[168]

- **Medication helps people reduce or stop opioid misuse.**[169]

- **Patients taking FDA-approved medication used to treat OUD can join residential or outpatient treatment.** Decades of clinical experience in OTPs, which must provide counseling, suggest that patients taking OUD medication can fully participate in group

---

[166] Connery, H. S. (2015). Medication-assisted treatment of opioid use disorder: Review of the evidence and future directions. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry, 23*(2), 63–75.

[167] American Society of Addiction Medicine. (2015). *The ASAM national practice guideline for the use of medications in the treatment of addiction involving opioid use.* Chevy Chase, MD: Author.

[168] Sordo, L., Barrio, G., Bravo, M. J., Indave, B. I., Degenhardt, L., Wiessing, L., ... Pastor-Barriuso, R. (2017). Mortality risk during and after opioid substitution treatment: Systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. *British Medical Journal (Clinical Research Ed.), 357,* j1550.

[169] Merlo, L. J., Greene, W. M., & Pomm, R. (2011). Mandatory naltrexone treatment prevents relapse among opiate-dependent anesthesiologists returning to practice. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 5*(4), 279–283.

and individual counseling, both cognitively and emotionally. Patients with concurrent SUDs (involving stimulants or alcohol) can benefit from residential treatment while continuing to take their OUD medication.

- **Randomized clinical trials indicate that OUD medication improves treatment retention and reduces illicit opioid use.**[170] Retention in treatment increases the opportunity to provide counseling and supportive services that can help patients stabilize their lives and maintain recovery.

- **The longer patients take medication, the less likely they are to return to opioid use,** whereas short-term medically supervised withdrawal rarely prevents return to use:[171] Conducting short-term medically supervised withdrawal may increase the risk of unintentional fatal overdose because of decreased tolerance after withdrawal completion.

  - Providing short-term medical treatment for OUD is the same as treating a heart attack without managing the underlying coronary disease.
  - Providing longer courses of medication that extend beyond withdrawal can allow patients to stabilize.
  - Getting stabilized, which may take months or even years, allows patients to focus on building and maintaining a healthy lifestyle.

- **Patients taking OUD medication can achieve long-term recovery.** People who continue to take medication can be in remission from OUD and live healthy, productive lives.[172]

Reviewing the Evidence on Counseling in Support of Medication To Treat OUD

Dedicated counseling can help clients address the challenges of extended recovery. For clients who seek a self-directed, purposeful life, counseling can help them:

- Improve problem-solving and interpersonal skills.
- Find incentives for reduced use and abstinence.
- Build a set of techniques to resist drug use.
- Replace drug use with constructive, rewarding activities.

---

[170] Krupitsky, E., Nunes, E. V., Ling, W., Illeperuma, A., Gastfend, D. R., & Silverman, B. L. (2011). Injectable extended-release naltrexone for opioid dependence: A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre randomized trial. *Lancet, 377*(9776), 1506–1533.

[171] Kakko, J., Svanborg, K. D., Kreek, M. J., & Heilig, M. (2003). 1-year retention and social function after buprenorphine-assisted relapse prevention treatment for heroin dependence in Sweden: A randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet, 361*(9358), 662–668.

[172] White, W. L. (2012). Medication-assisted recovery from opioid addiction: Historical and contemporary perspectives. *Journal of Addictive Diseases, 31*(3), 199–206.

Moreover, evidence shows that counseling can be a useful part of OUD treatment for people who take OUD medication. Impact studies of counseling for people with SUDs show that:

- **Motivational enhancement/interviewing is generally beneficial.** This approach helps get people into treatment. It also supports behavior change and, thus, recovery.

- **Cognitive–behavioral therapy (CBT) has demonstrated efficacy in the treatment of SUDs,** whether used alone or in combination with other strategies.[173] Clinical trials have not shown that CBT added to buprenorphine treatment with medical management is associated with significantly lower rates of illicit opioid use.[174] However, a secondary analysis of one of those trials found that CBT added to buprenorphine and medical management was associated with significantly greater reduction in any drug use among participants whose OUD was primarily linked to misuse of prescription opioids than among those whose OUD involved only heroin.[175] Thus, CBT may be helpful to those patients receiving buprenorphine treatment who have nonopioid drug use problems.

Case management helps establish the stability necessary for SUD remission.[176] Case management helps some people in SUD treatment get or sustain access to services and necessities, such as:

Food.
Shelter.
Income support.
Legal aid.
Dental services.
Transportation.
Vocational services.

Family therapy can address SUDs and various other family problems (e.g., family conflict, unemployment, conduct disorders). Several forms of family therapy are effective with

---

[173] McHugh, R. K., Hearon, B. A., & Otto, M. W. (2010). Cognitive behavioral therapy for substance use disorders. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America, 33*(3), 511–525.

[174] Ling, W., Hillhouse, M., Ang, A., Jenkins, J., & Fahey, J. (2013). Comparison of behavioral treatment conditions in buprenorphine maintenance. *Addiction, 108*(10), 1788–1798

[175] Moore, B. A., Fiellin, D. A., Cutter, C. J., Biondo, F. D., Barry, D. C., Fiellin, L. E., … Schottenfeld, R. S. (2016). Cognitive behavioral therapy improves treatment outcomes for prescription opioid users in primary care buprenorphine treatment.

[176] Abbott, P. J. (2010). Case management: Ongoing evaluation of patients' needs in an opioid treatment program. *Professional Case Management, 15*(3), 145–152.

adolescents [177] and can potentially address family members' biases about use of medication for OUD.[178]

There is more research on combined methadone treatment and various psychosocial treatments (e.g., different levels of counseling, contingency management) than on buprenorphine or naltrexone treatment in office-based settings. More research is needed to identify the best interventions to use with specific medications, populations, and treatment phases in outpatient settings.[179]

Motivational intervention, case management, or both can improve likelihood of entry into medication treatment for OUD among people who inject opioids, according to a systematic review of 13 studies plus data from a prior systematic review.[180]

Clinical trials have shown no differences in outcomes for buprenorphine with medical management between participants who get adjunctive counseling and those who don't (i.e., prescriber-provided guidance focused specifically on use of the medication).

Yet those trials:
Relied on well-structured medical management sessions that may not be typical in practice.
Excluded patients with certain co-occurring disorders or factors that complicated treatment.

Benefits from counseling may depend on factors such as the number of sessions and adherence.[181]

Using a Recovery-Oriented Approach to Treating Patients With OUD

Counseling for OUD gives patients tools to manage their illness, achieve and sustain better health, and improve their quality of life. There are limits to how much medication alone can accomplish. OUD medication will improve quality of life, but many clients in addiction treatment have complex issues that may decrease quality of life, such as:

---

[177] National Institute on Drug Abuse. (2012). *Principles of drug addiction treatment: A research-based guide* (3rd ed.). NIH Publication No. 12–4180. Bethesda, MD: Author.

[178] Woo, J., Bhalerao, A., Bawor, M., Bhatt, M., Dennis, B., Mouravska, N., … Samaan, Z. (2017). "Don't judge a book by its cover": A qualitative study of methadone patients' experiences of stigma. *Substance Abuse: Research and Treatment, 11,* 1–12.

[179] Dugosh, K., Abraham, A., Seymour, B., McLoyd, K., Chalk, M., & Festinger, D. (2016). A systematic review on the use of psychosocial interventions in conjunction with medications for the treatment of opioid addiction. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 10*(2), 93–103.

[180] Roberts, J., Annett, H., & Hickman, M. (2011). A systematic review of interventions to increase the uptake of opiate substitution therapy in injecting drug users. *Journal of Public Health, 33*(3), 378–384.

[181] Weiss, R. D., Griffn, M. L., Potter, J. S., Dodd, D. R., Dreifuss, J. A., Connery, H. S., & Carroll, K. M. (2014). Who benefts from additional drug counseling among prescription opioid-dependent patients receiving buprenorphine-naloxone and standard medical management? *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 140,* 118–122.

- Other SUDs (e.g., alcohol use disorder, cannabis use disorder).
- Mental distress (i.e., high levels of symptoms) and disorders (e.g., major depressive disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder).
- Medical problems (e.g., hepatitis, diabetes).
- History of trauma.
- Poor diet, lack of physical activity, or both.
- Lack of social support.
- Unemployment.

Acknowledge many pathways to recovery

Recovery occurs via many pathways. OUD medication may play a role in the beginning, middle, or entire continuum of care.

Support clients in making their own informed decisions about treatment. Counselors don't need to agree with clients' decisions but must respect them. Educate new clients about:

- Addiction as a chronic disease influenced by genetics and environment.
- How medications for OUD work.
- What occurs during dose stabilization.
- The benefits of longer-term medication use and the risks of abruptly ending treatment.

Promote recovery for clients with OUD

Focus on addressing personal and practical problems of greatest concern to clients, which can improve their engagement in treatment. Recovery supports can sustain the progress clients made in treatment and further improve their quality of life. Addressing the full range of client needs can improve clients' quality of life and lead to better long-term recovery outcomes. A recovery-oriented approach to traditional SUD counseling may help address client needs.[182]

Increasing recovery capital supports long-term abstinence and improved quality of life, especially for clients who decide to stop medication. Clients with substantial periods of abstinence from illicit drugs identify these strategies for increasing recovery capital as helpful:

- Forging new relationships with friends/family

[182] White, W. L., & Mojer-Torres, L. (2010). *Recovery-oriented methadone maintenance.* Retrieved October 23, 2017, from www.attcnetwork.org/userfles/fle /GreatLakes/5th%20Monograph_RM_Methadone.pdf

- Obtaining support from friends, family, partners, and communities
- Using positive coping strategies
- Finding meaning or a sense of purpose in life
- Engaging in a church or in spiritual practices
- Pursuing education, employment, or both
- Engaging in new interests or activities (e.g., joining a community group, exercising)
- Building confidence in ability to maintain abstinence (i.e., increasing abstinence-related self-efficacy)
- Finding ways to help other individuals who are new to recovery

Help clients further grow recovery capital by offering or connecting them to a range of services, such as:

- Ancillary services (e.g., vocational rehabilitation, supported housing).
- Additional counseling.
- Medical services.
- Mental health services.

Provide person-centered care

Clients' confidence in their ability to stay away from illicit substances, or self-efficacy, is an important factor in successful change. In person-centered care, also known as patient-centered care:

- Clients control the amount, duration, and scope of services they receive.
- They select the professionals they work with.
- Care is holistic; it respects and responds to clients' cultural, linguistic, and socioenvironmental-mental needs.[183]
- Providers implement services that recognize patients as equal partners in planning, developing, and monitoring care to ensure that it meets each patient's unique needs.

treatment empowers clients in making decisions, such as:

- Whether to take OUD medication.
- Which medication to take.
- Which counseling and ancillary services to receive.

---

[183] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2016). Person- and family-centered care and peer support. Retrieved October 23, 2017, from https://www.samhsa.gov/section-223/care -coordination/person-family-centered

Fragmented healthcare services are less likely to meet the full range of patients' needs. Integrated medical and behavioral healthcare delivery provides patient-focused, comprehensive treatment that meets the wide range of symptoms and service needs that patients with OUD may have. Significant demand remains for better integrated and coordinated SUD treatment (including OTP), medical, and mental health services.m Such improvements are particularly important for the many individuals with co-occurring substance use and mental disorders who receive OUD medication. In a randomized trial of methadone patients with co-occurring mental disorders receiving onsite versus offsite mental health services, those receiving services onsite had less psychiatric distress at follow-up.[184]

Promote family and social support

Support from family and friends can be the most important factor in long-term recovery, according to many people who have achieved long-term recovery from OUD.[185] Support from intimate partners helps all clients, especially women, avoid return to opioid use. But the more people in clients' social networks who use drugs, the more likely clients are to return to use.[186]

- **Most clients are willing to invite a substance-free family member or friend to support their recovery.98**

Most have at least one nearby family member who does not use illicit drugs.[99] A client's community may provide a cultural context for their recovery and culturally specific supports that may not otherwise be available in treatment.[100]

Help clients develop and support positive relations with their families by:

- Suggesting that clients invite family and friends to aid in the recovery planning process (Exhibit 4.4).
- Emphasizing the importance of relationships with family and friends who actively support recovery.
- Supporting clients in mending broken relationships with loved ones.
- Helping clients cut ties with individuals who still use drugs or enable clients' drug use.
- Encouraging clients to build new relationships that support recovery.

Provide trauma-informed care

[184] Brooner, R. K., Kidorf, M. S., King, V. L., Peirce, J., Neufeld, K., Stoller, K., & Kolodner, K. (2013). Managing psychiatric comorbidity within versus outside of methadone treatment settings: A randomized and controlled evaluation. *Addiction, 108*(11), 1942–1951.

[185] Hser, Y. I., Evans, E., Grella, C., Ling, W., & Anglin, D. (2015). Long-term course of opioid addiction. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry, 23*(2), 76–89.

[186] Schroeder, J. R., Latkin, C. A., Hoover, D. R., Curry, A. D., Knowlton, A. R., & Celentano, D. D. (2001). Illicit drug use in one's social network and in one's neighborhood predicts individual heroin and cocaine use. *Annals of Epidemiology, 11*(6), 389–394.

Trauma-informed service requires providers to realize the significance of trauma.
According to SAMHSA, trauma-informed counselors know what trauma is and also:

- Understand how trauma can affect clients, families, and communities.
- Apply knowledge of trauma extensively and consistently in both practice and policy.
- Know ways to promote recovery from trauma.
- Recognize the signs and symptoms of trauma in clients, families, staff members, and others.
- Resist things that may retraumatize or harm clients or staff.

Incorporate trauma-informed principles of care into recovery promotion efforts, because:

- Trauma histories and trauma-related disorders may increase clients' risk for various problems, including early drop-out from treatment[187] and greater problems with pain.

- Childhood trauma is highly prevalent among people with OUD.[188]
- People often suffer multiple traumas during opioid misuse.[189]
- An intervention that integrated trauma treatment and standard care (which goes further than the trauma-informed care detailed here) had better outcomes than standard care alone in a diverse group of women treated in various settings, including an OTP.[190]

Quick Guide to Medications

This section introduces the neurochemistry and biology of OUD and the medications that treat it. Reading this section will familiarize counselors with terminology healthcare professionals may use in discussing patients who take OUD medication.

Understanding the Neurobiology of OUD

Opioid receptors are a part of the body's natural endorphin system. Endorphins are chemicals our bodies release to help reduce our experience of pain. They can also contribute to euphoric feelings like the "runner's high" that some people experience. When endorphins or opioids bind to opioid receptors, the receptors activate, causing a variety of effects.

---

[187] Kumar, N., Stowe, Z. N., Han, X., & Mancino, M. J. (2016). Impact of early childhood trauma on retention and phase advancement in an outpatient buprenorphine treatment program. *American Journal on Addictions, 25*(7), 542–548.

[188] Sansone, R. A., Whitecar, P., & Wiederman, M. W. (2009). The prevalence of childhood trauma among those seeking buprenorphine treatment. *Journal of Addictive Disorders, 28*(1), 64–67.

[189] Jessell, L., Mateu-Gelabert, P., Guarino, H., Vakharia, S. P., Syckes, C., Goodbody, E., … Friedman, S. (2017). Sexual violence in the context of drug use among young adult opioid users in New York City. *Journal of Interpersonal Violence, 32*(19), 2885–2907.

[190] Amaro, H., Dai, J., Arévalo, S., Acevedo, A., Matsumoto, A., Nieves, R., & Prado, G. (2007). Effects of integrated trauma treatment on outcomes in a racially/ethnically diverse sample of women in urban community-based substance abuse treatment. *Journal of Urban Health, 84*(4), 508–522.

After taking opioids, molecules bind to and activate the brain's opioid receptors and release dopamine in a brain area called the nucleus accumbens (NAc), causing euphoria. Like opioid receptors, the NAc has a natural, healthy function. For example, when a person eats, the NAc releases dopamine to reinforce this essential behavior. The NAc is a key part of the brain's reward system.

Opioid use leads to an above-normal release of dopamine, essentially swamping the natural reward pathway and turning the brain strongly toward continued use. The brain also learns environmental cues associated with this dopamine release. It associates specific people, places, and things (e.g., music, drug paraphernalia) with the euphoria; these environmental cues then become triggers for drug use.

Intermittent opioid use causes periods of euphoria followed by periods of withdrawal. The brain's strong draw toward euphoria drives repeated and continued use. Few people with OUD reexperience the euphoria they obtained early in their opioid use, yet they continue to seek it.

Changes in brain function that result from repeated drug use cause a person who once took the drug for euphoria to seek it out of habit, then compulsion. People with OUD use opioids to stave off withdrawal. Without opioids, the person feels dysphoric and physically ill, only feeling normal by taking opioids again. At the same time, other areas of the brain begin to change:[191]

- The amygdala, which is associated with feelings of danger, fear, and anger, becomes overactive.
- The frontal cortex, which is associated with planning and self-control, becomes underactive.
- The ability to control impulses diminishes, and drug use becomes compulsive.
- The need to escape the discomfort and intensely negative emotional states of withdrawal becomes the driving force of continued use.

Even after opioid use stops, brain changes linger. A person's ability to make plans and manage impulses stays underactive. That's why return to substance use is very common even after a period of abstinence.

Medications for OUD promote emotional, psychological, and behavioral stabilization.

---

[191] Volkow, N. D., Koob, G. F., & McLellan, A. T. (2016). Neurobiologic advances from the brain disease model of addiction. *New England Journal of Medicine, 374*(4), 363–371.

By acting directly on the same opioid receptors as misused opioids (**but in different ways**), medications can **stabilize** abnormal brain activity.

Learning How OUD Medications Work

Buprenorphine

Buprenorphine reduces opioid misuse, HIV risk behaviors, and risk of overdose death.[192] Buprenorphine only partially activates opioid receptors; it is a partial agonist. It binds to and activates receptors sufficiently to prevent craving and withdrawal and to block the effects of illicit opioids. Appropriate doses of buprenorphine shouldn't make patients feel euphoric, sleepy, or foggy headed.

Buprenorphine has the benefit of a ceiling effect. Its effectiveness and sedation or respiratory effects don't increase after a certain dosing level, even if more is taken. This lowers risk of overdose and misuse.[193] Groups at particular risk for buprenorphine overdose include children who accidentally ingest the medication and patients who also use CNS depressants like benzodiazepines or alcohol.[194]

Buprenorphine is available outside of OTPs, through non-OTP healthcare settings (e.g., physicians' offices, outpatient drug treatment programs). Healthcare professionals (including nurse practitioners and physician assistants, per the Comprehensive Addiction and Recovery Act of 2016) can prescribe it outside of an OTP provided they have a specific federal waiver. This is often referred to as "being waivered" to prescribe buprenorphine.

Buprenorphine can cause opioid withdrawal in patients who have recently taken a full opioid agonist (e.g., heroin, oxycodone). This occurs because buprenorphine pushes the full opioid activator molecules off the receptors and replaces them with its weaker, partially activating effect. For this reason, patients must be in opioid withdrawal when they take their first dose of buprenorphine.

---

[192] Edelman, E. J., Chantarat, T., Caffrey, S., Chaudhry, A., O'Connor, P. G., Weiss, L., ... Fiellin, L. E. (2014). The impact of buprenorphine/naloxone treatment on HIV risk behaviors among HIV-infected, opioid-dependent patients. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 139,* 79–85.

[193] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2016). Buprenorphine. Retrieved October 23, 2017, from www.samhsa.gov/medication -assisted-treatment/treatment/buprenorphine

[194] Hakkinen, M., Launiainen, T., Vuori, E., & Ojanpera, I. (2012). Benzodiazepines and alcohol are associated with cases of fatal buprenorphine poisoning. *European Journal of Clinical Pharmacology, 68*(3), 301–309.

The most common buprenorphine formulation contains naloxone to reduce misuse. Naloxone is an opioid antagonist. It blocks rather than activates receptors and lets no opioids sit on receptors to activate them. Naloxone is poorly absorbed under the tongue/against the cheek, so when taking the combined medication as directed, it has no effect. If injected, naloxone causes sudden opioid withdrawal.

Buprenorphine comes in two forms that melt on the inside of the cheek or under the tongue: films (combined with naloxone) or tablets (buprenorphine/naloxone or buprenorphine alone). For treatment of OUD, patients take the films or tablets once daily, every other day, or three times a week. Various companies manufacture these forms of the medication. Some are brand name, and some are generic. The different kinds vary in strength or number of milligrams, but they have been designed and tested to provide roughly the same amount of medication as the first approved product.

Buprenorphine is also available in a long-acting implant that specially trained healthcare professionals place under the skin (subdermal implant) and an extended-release formulation that is administered under the skin (subcutaneous injection). The implant is appropriate for patients who have been stable on low doses of the films or tablets. It lasts for 6 months and can be replaced once after 6 months. The extended-release formulation lasts for 1 month and can be repeated monthly. It is appropriate for patients who have been stabilized on the films or tablets for at least 7 days.

Healthcare professionals with waivers can prescribe buprenorphine. Physicians who take an 8-hour training and get a waiver can prescribe buprenorphine. Nurse practitioners and physician assistants are eligible to apply for waivers after 24 hours of training. Providers who wish to deliver buprenorphine implants must receive special training on how to insert and remove them.

Buprenorphine can cause side effects including constipation, headache, nausea, and insomnia. These often improve over time and can be managed with dosage adjustments or other approaches. The following sections describe how each of the OUD medications functions. Discuss questions or concerns about a patient's medication, side effects, or dosage with the patient's prescriber after getting the patient's consent.

Methadone

Methadone is highly effective. Many studies over decades of research show that it:[195]

- Increases treatment retention.
- Reduces opioid misuse.
- Reduces drug-related HIV risk behavior.
- Lowers risk of overdose death.

Methadone is slow in onset and long acting, avoiding the highs and lows of short-acting opioids. It is a full agonist. Patients who take the same appropriate dose of methadone daily as prescribed will neither feel euphoric from the medication nor experience opioid withdrawal.

Methadone is an oral medication that is taken daily under observation by a nurse or pharmacist and under the supervision of an OTP physician. Methadone is available as a liquid concentrate, a tablet, or an oral solution made from a dispersible tablet or powder.

Methadone blunts or blocks the euphoric effects of illicit opioids because it occupies the opioid receptors. This "opioid blockade" helps patients stop taking illicit opioids because they no longer feel euphoric if they use illicit opioids. When on a proper dose of methadone, patients can:

- Keep regular schedules.
- Lead productive, healthy lives.
- Meet obligations (family, social, work).

Methadone can lead to overdose death in people who use a dose that's considerably higher than usual, as methadone is a full agonist. People who don't usually take opioids or have abstained from them for a while could overdose on a fairly small amount of methadone. Thus, patients start on low doses of methadone and gradually adjust upward to identify the optimal maintenance dose level.

Patients must attend a clinic for dose administration 6 to 7 days per week during the start of treatment. Healthcare professionals can thus observe patients' response to medication and discourage diversion to others. Visit frequency can lessen after patients spend time in treatment and show evidence of progress.

---

[195] Fullerton, C. A., Kim, M., Thomas, C. P., Lyman, D. R., Montejano, L. B., Dougherty, R. H., ... Delphin- Rittmon, M. E. (2014). Medication-assisted treatment with methadone: Assessing the evidence. *Psychiatric Services, 65*(2), 146–157.

Methadone can cause certain side effects.
Common potential side effects of methadone include:

- Constipation.
- Sleepiness.
- Sweating.
- Sexual dysfunction.
- Swelling of the hands and feet.

Sleepiness can be a warning sign of potential overdose. Patients who are drowsy should receive prompt medical assessment to determine the cause and appropriate steps to take—which may require a reduction in methadone dose. Some patients may appear sleepy or have trouble staying awake when idle, even if there is no immediate danger of evolving overdose. These patients may need a lower dose or may be taking other prescribed or nonprescribed medications (e.g., benzodiazepines, clonidine) that are interacting with the methadone.

Naltrexone

Naltrexone stops opioids from reaching and activating receptors, preventing any reward from use. Naltrexone is an antagonist of the opioid receptors—it does not activate them at all. Instead, it sits on the receptors and blocks other opioids from activating them.

Naltrexone appears to reduce opioid craving[196] but not opioid withdrawal (unlike buprenorphine and methadone, which reduce both craving and withdrawal). Someone starting naltrexone must be abstinent from short-acting opioids for at least 7 days and from long-acting opioids for 10 to 14 days before taking the first dose. Otherwise, it will cause opioid withdrawal, which can be more severe than that caused by reducing or stopping opioid use.

Naltrexone comes in two forms: tablet and injection.

- Patients take naltrexone tablets daily or three times per week. Tablets are rarely effective, as patients typically stop taking them after a short time.[197]

---

[196] Lee, J. D., Friedmann, P. D., Kinlock, T. W., Nunes, E. V., Boney, T. Y., Hoskinson, R. A., Jr., ... O'Brien, C. P. (2016). Extended-release naltrexone to prevent opioid relapse in criminal justice offenders. *New England Journal of Medicine, 374*(13), 1232–1242.

[197] Merlo, L. J., Greene, W. M., & Pomm, R. (2011). Mandatory naltrexone treatment prevents relapse among opiate-dependent anesthesiologists returning to practice. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 5(*4), 279–283.

- **Highly externally monitored populations in remission may do well with the tablet,**[198] such as physicians who have mandatory frequent urine drug testing and are at risk of losing their licenses.
- **The injected form is more effective than the tablet because it lasts for 1 month.** Patients can come to a clinic to receive an intramuscular injection in their buttock.

Naltrexone can produce certain side effects,
which may include:

- Nausea.
- Headache.
- Dizziness.
- Fatigue.

For the extended-release injectable formulation, potential reactions at the injection site include:

- Pain.
- Bumps.
- Blistering.
- Skin lesions (may require surgery).

Knowing What Prescribers Do
The following sections will help explain the role healthcare professionals play in providing each OUD medication as part of collaborative care.

Administer buprenorphine

Patients typically begin buprenorphine in opioid withdrawal. Patients may take their first dose in the prescriber's office so the prescriber can observe its initial effects. Increasingly often, patients take their first dose at home and follow up with prescribers by phone. Most people are stable on buprenorphine dosages between 8 mg and 24 mg each day.

Patients who take buprenorphine visit their prescriber regularly to allow monitoring of their response to treatment and side effects and to receive supportive counseling. The visits may result in specific actions, such as adjusting the dosage or making a referral for psychosocial services. Stable patients may obtain up to a 30-day prescription of this medication through community pharmacies. Visits may include urine drug testing. Early in

[198] Cornish, J. W., Metzger, D., Woody, G. E., Wilson, D., McLellan, A. T., Vandergrift, B., & O'Brien, C. (1997). Naltrexone pharmacotherapy for opioid dependent federal probationers. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 14*(6), 529–534.

treatment, patients typically see their prescribers at least weekly. Further along, they may visit prescribers every 1 to 2 weeks and then as infrequently as once a month or less.

The prescriber will make dosage adjustments as needed, reducing for side effects or increasing for unrelieved withdrawal or ongoing opioid misuse. OTPs that provide buprenorphine will typically follow a similar process, with the principal difference being that the program will administer or dispense the medication rather than the patient filling a prescription at a pharmacy.

Administer methadone

Only SAMHSA-certified OTPs may provide methadone by physician order for daily observed administration onsite or for self-administration at home by stable patients.[199] The physician will start patients on a low dose of methadone. People in early methadone treatment are required by federal regulation to visit the OTP six to seven times per week to take their medication under observation. The physician will monitor patients' initial response to the methadone and slowly increase the dose until withdrawal is completely relieved for 24 hours.

A prescriber can't predict at the start of treatment what daily methadone dose will work for a patient. An effective dose is one that eliminates withdrawal symptoms and most craving and blunts euphoria from self-administered illicit opioids without producing sedation. On average, higher dosages of methadone (60 mg to 100 mg daily) are associated with better outcomes than lower dosages.[200] That said, an effective dose of methadone for a particular patient can be above or below that range.

The prescriber will continue to monitor the patient and adjust dosage slowly up or down to find the optimum dose level. The dose may need further adjustment if the patient returns to opioid use, experiences side effects such as sedation, starts new medications that may interact with methadone, or has a change in health that causes the previously effective dose to become inadequate or too strong.

If patients taking methadone drink heavily or take sedatives (e.g., benzodiazepines), **physicians may:**

---

[199] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2016). *Medication-assisted treatment of opioid use disorder pocket guide.* HHS No. (SMA) 16-4892PG. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

[200] Faggiano, F., Vigna-Taglianti, F., Versino, E., & Lemma, P. (2003). Methadone maintenance at different dosages for opioid dependence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2003*(3), 1–45.

- Treat the alcohol misuse.
- Refer to a higher level of care.
- Address comorbid anxiety or depression.
- Decrease dosage to prevent overdose.

Administer naltrexone

To avoid severe withdrawal, prescribers will ensure that patients are abstinent from opioids at least 7 to 10 days before initiating or resuming naltrexone. Prescribers may require longer periods of abstinence for patients transitioning from buprenorphine or methadone to naltrexone.

Prescribers typically take urine drug screens to confirm abstinence before giving naltrexone. Healthcare professionals can confirm abstinence through a "challenge test" with naloxone, a short-acting opioid antagonist.

Healthcare professionals manage withdrawal symptoms with nonopioid medication. Prescribers are prepared to handle withdrawal caused by naltrexone despite a period of abstinence.[201] Ideally, they administer the first injection before patients' release from residential treatment or other controlled settings (e.g., prison) so qualified individuals can monitor them for symptoms of withdrawal.

Healthcare professionals typically see patients at least monthly to give naltrexone injections. For those taking oral naltrexone, prescribers schedule visits at their discretion. Thus, urine drug testing may be less frequent for these patients than for patients taking buprenorphine. But periodic drug testing should occur.

There is only one dose level for injected naltrexone,[202] so prescribers cannot adjust the dose. However, they can slightly shorten the dosing interval if the medication's effectiveness decreases toward the end of the monthly dosing interval. If the patient is having side effects or intense cravings, the prescriber may recommend switching to a different medication.

Set expectations

[201] Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2015). *Clinical use of extended-release injectable naltrexone in the treatment of opioid use disorder: A brief guide.* HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14-4892R. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

[202] National Library of Medicine. (2015). VIVITROL – naltrexone. Retrieved October 23, 2017, from https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo .cfm?setid=cd11c435-b0f0-4bb9-ae78-60f101f3703f

Ideally, prescribers will collaborate with counselors and other care providers involved in patients' care to set reasonable patient expectations. Medications can effectively treat OUD, but they don't treat other SUDs (save naltrexone, also FDA-approved to treat alcohol use disorder). Patients may still need:

- Counseling for psychosocial issues.
- Social supports/treatment to get back on track.
- Medications, therapy, or both for co-occurring conditions.

Collaboration between all involved healthcare providers helps patients understand the OUD treatment timeline, which generally lasts months or years. Courses of medically supervised withdrawal or tapering are considerably less effective than longer term maintenance treatment with buprenorphine or methadone and are often associated with return to substance use and a heightened risk of overdose.

Patients may still benefit from the counseling you can offer in addition to care from other providers, even if you can't communicate with those providers directly.

1. Counselor–Prescriber Communications

OUD medication can support counselors' work with clients who have OUD, and counseling supports the work prescribers do with them.

Good communication facilitates mutually supportive work. A counselor will probably:

- See patients more frequently than prescribers.
- Have a more complete sense of patients' issues.
- Offer providers valuable context and perspective.
- Help patients take medications appropriately.
- Ensure that patients receive high-quality care from their other providers.

Obtaining Consent

Get written consent from patients allowing communication directly with their providers (unless the counselor and the providers work in the same treatment program). The consent must explicitly state that the patient allows the counselor to discuss substance-use-related issues. It should also specify which kinds of information the counselor can share (e.g.,

medical records, diagnoses). Consent forms must comply with federal and state confidentiality laws that govern the sharing of information about patients with SUDs.[203] **Carefully protect any identifying information about patients and their medical and treatment information.** Don't send such information through unsecured channels, such as:

- Text messaging.
- Unsecure, unencrypted emails.
- Faxes to unsecured machines.

Good communication with prescribers and other treatment team members allows everyone to work together to:

- **Assess patient progress.**
- **Change treatment plans if needed.**
- **Make informed decisions about OUD medication.**

Phone calls are the most secure way to discuss patient cases, although it may be more convenient to reach out to healthcare professionals first through email.

Structuring Communications With Prescribers

Regular, structured communication can improve the flow of information between treatment teams. Some multidisciplinary programs produce regular reports for prescribers about patient progress.

Helping Clients Overcome Challenges in Accessing Resources

By collaborating with healthcare professionals in OUD care, counselors can help clients overcome challenges they face in obtaining treatment, such as:

Ability to pay for OUD medication. Counselors are often already skilled in helping clients address treatment costs (e.g., facilitating Medicaid applications, linking them to insurance navigators). Try to refer clients who face difficulty meeting prescription costs or copays back to the agency's financial department for sliding scale adjustments and ability-to-pay assessments. Also try to help patients find and apply for relevant pharmaceutical company medication prescription plans.

[203] Confidentiality of Substance Use Disorder Patient Records. ; HHS Final Rule, 82 Fed. Reg. 6052 (January 18, 2017) (to be codified at 42 CFR pt. 2). Retrieved November 13, 2017, from https://www.federalregister .gov/documents/2017/01/18/2017-00719/confidentiality -of-substance-use-disorder-patient-records

Transportation. Options to offer clients may include: Providing vouchers for public transportation.
Providing information on other subsidized transportation options.
Linking clients to peer support specialists and case managers who can arrange transportation.
Assisting eligible clients in navigating Medicaid to obtain transportation services.
If available, arranging for telehealth services to overcome clients' transportation barriers.

Access to medication in disaster situations. Counselors can review options with patients for obtaining prescription replacements and refills or daily medicine dosing under various scenarios. This could include if their usual clinic or primary pharmacy is closed or if they're relocated without notice because of an unforeseen emergency. Also advise patients on the items to take with them in such scenarios to facilitate refills from a new medication-dispensing facility. Key materials include: Photo identification.
Medication containers of currently prescribed medications (even if empty).
Written prescriptions.
Packaging labels that contain dosage, prescriber, and refill information.
Any payment receipts that contain medication information.

To overcome systemic barriers, help enact collaborative policies and procedures. Work with program management and the community at large to address the following issues:

Connection to treatment: Counselors may be able to participate in community efforts to ensure that information on how to obtain treatment for OUD is available wherever people with OUD: Gather (e.g., all-night diners, bars, free health clinics, injection equipment exchanges).
Seek help (e.g., emergency departments, houses of worship, social service agencies).
Reveal a need for help (e.g., encounters with law enforcement and child welfare agencies).
Encourage buprenorphine prescribers to make known their availability if they are prepared to accept new patients. Help disseminate lists of addiction treatment providers and share their information via peer recovery specialists.

Rapid assessment and treatment initiation: Try to help OUD pharmacotherapy providers, particularly in OTPs, streamline counseling intake processes to help patients receive medication efficiently. The expert panel of this TIP recognizes that same-day admission of patients with OUD may not be possible in all settings, but it's a worthwhile goal. Every program should streamline its intake processes and expedite admissions.

Return to treatment: When patients discontinue treatment prematurely and return to use of opioids, it can be hard for them to reengage in treatment because of the shame they feel or because there is a waiting list for admission. The waitlist problem may not be solvable because of capacity limitations, but all collaborative care team members— including counselors and prescribers—should: Inform patients from intake onward that the program will readmit them even if they drop out.
Encourage patients to seek readmission if they return to opioid use or feel that they are at risk for returning to opioid use.

Inform patients of the importance of overdose prevention
(see the "Counseling Patients on Overdose Prevention and Treatment" section).
Provide continued monitoring if possible; it can range from informal quarterly check-ins to regularly scheduled remote counseling or peer support (e.g., from a recovery coach).
Offer an expedited reentry process to encourage patients to return if they need to.
Engage in active outreach and reengage-ment with OTP patients, which can be effective.[204]
Try to contact patients who have dropped out to encourage them to return.

2. Creation of a Supportive Counseling Experience

Maintaining the Therapeutic Alliance

The therapeutic alliance is a counselor's most powerful tool for influencing outcomes.[205]
It underlies all types and modalities of therapy and helping services. A strong alliance welcomes patients into treatment and creates a sense of safety.

COUNSELING PATIENTS WITH OUD WHO DON'T TAKE MEDICATION

Patients who don't take an OUD medication after withdrawal are at high risk of return to opioid use, which can be fatal given the loss of opioid tolerance. Provide these patients with overdose prevention education and the overdose-reversal medication naloxone, or educate them about naloxone and how they can obtain it in their community. Advise them to report a return to opioid use or a feeling that they are at risk of relapsing. Work with them and their care team to either resume medication for OUD or enter a more intensive level of behavioral care.

---

[204] Coviello, D. M., Zanis, D. A., Wesnoski, S. A., & Alterman, A. I. (2006). The effectiveness of outreach case management in re-enrolling discharged methadone patients. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 85*(1), 56–65.
[205] Duncan, B. (2010). On becoming a better therapist. *Psychotherapy in Australia, 16*(4), 42–51.

Certain counselor skills help build and maintain a therapeutic alliance, including:

- Projecting empathy and warmth.
- Making patients feel respected and understood.
- Not allowing personal opinions, anecdotes, or feelings to influence the counseling process (unless done deliberately and with therapeutic intention).

These skills are relevant for working with all patients, including those taking medication for OUD. Apply them consistently from the very first interaction with a patient through the conclusion of services. For example, recognize and reconcile personal views about medication for OUD so that they don't influence counseling sessions.

Educating Patients About OUD and a Chronic Care Approach to Its Treatment
Help ensure that patients understand the chronic care approach to OUD and their:

- Diagnosis.
- Prognosis.
- Treatment options.
- Available recovery supports.
- Prescribed medications.
- Risk of overdose (and strategies to reduce it).

Seek to understand patients' preferences and goals. Doing so can help convey information meaningfully so patients understand the choices available to them. Also, help communicate patients' preferences and goals to healthcare professionals and family members.

Educate colleagues and other staff members so they can help create a supportive experience for patients with OUD:

- Provide basic education to colleagues about medications for OUD and how they work.
- Share evidence on how these medications reduce risky behavior, improve outcomes, and save lives.

- Note that major U.S. and international guidelines affirm use of medication to treat OUD.
- Ask about and address specific fears and concerns.
- Provide resources for additional information.

Counseling Patients on Overdose Prevention and Treatment

Know how to use naloxone to treat opioid overdose; share this information with patients and their family members and friends. Available by prescription (or without a prescription in some states), naloxone is an opioid antagonist that has successfully reversed many thousands of opioid overdoses. It comes in auto-injector and nasal spray formulations easy for laypeople to administer immediately on the scene of an overdose, before emergency responders arrive.

Ask patients if they have a naloxone prescription or help them get it without one if possible. Providers may prescribe naloxone in addition to OUD medication. Counselors should check state laws to learn their jurisdiction's naloxone prescription and dispensation policies (see "Resource Alert: Overdose Prevention/ Treatment").

Inform clients and their friends and families of any Good Samaritan laws in the jurisdiction, which protect against drug offenses for people who call for medical help while experiencing or observing overdose.

Emphasize that a person given naloxone to reverse overdose must go to the emergency department, because overdose can start again when naloxone wears off.

Consider working with the program administrator to place a naloxone rescue kit in the office, if one is not already available. To be ready for an emergency, learn:

- The signs of overmedication (which may progress to overdose) and overdose itself.
- What to do if an overdose is suspected.

- How to administer naloxone.

Consider working with the program administrators to set up a program to distribute naloxone directly to patients. Many states allow organizations to do this under a standing
order from a physician. Clients are more likely to access naloxone if their program provides it directly to them rather than sending them to another organization to get it. Learn more at Prescribe to Prevent (http://prescribetoprevent.org).

Helping Patients Cope With Bias and Discrimination
Patients taking medication for OUD must deal with people—including family members, friends, colleagues, employers, and community members—who are misinformed or biased about the nature of OUD and effective treatments for it.

Wherever possible, such as in a counseling session or a community education forum, counter misunderstandings with accurate information. Emphasize the message that addiction is governed by more powerful brain forces than those that determine habits. As a result, having a lot of positive intent, wanting to quit, and working hard at it sometimes won't be enough.

Remind patients about building recovery capital and sticking with their treatment plan and goals. A particularly good opportunity to do so arises when patients ask how to "get off medication." Statements such as "The longer you take medication, the more of your life you can get back and the less likely you are to return to opioid use" and "We usually recommend continuing medication long term because it helps people maintain recovery" can help clients understand that they are following medical recommendations and doing a good job of caring for themselves.

People may think that addiction is just a bad habit or willful self-destruction and that someone who has difficulty stopping opioid misuse is lazy. They may view OUD medication as "just another drug" and urge patients to stop taking it.

Review a client's motivation for tapering or quitting medication and have a conversation about the best timing for such a change. If the client has consented to communication with other providers, inform the client's prescriber about the client's desires or intent so that shared decision making can take place.

Be proactive in dispelling myths and providing facts about medications for OUD when countering misconceptions and judgmental attitudes. Point out that multiple organizations consider individuals to be in recovery if they take OUD medication as prescribed, including:

- The American Medical Association.[206]
- The American Society of Addiction Medicine.[207]
- The National Institute on Drug Abuse.[208]
- The Office of the Surgeon General.[209]
- SAMHSA.[210]
- The World Health Organization.[211]

Explain that alcohol and opioids are different substances with different effects on the body and brain. This counters the mistaken belief that people receiving buprenorphine or methadone are always "high" and as impaired as if they drank alcohol all day. People acquire tolerance to impairments that drinking causes in motor control and cognition. But this tolerance is partial; alcohol consumption always results in some deficits. Opioids don't have the same motor or cognitive effects. Complete tolerance develops to the psychoactive effects and related motor impairments opioids cause.

---

[206] American Medical Association. (2017). End the epidemic. Retrieved October 23, 2017, from https://www.end-opioid-epidemic.org/types/ama

[207] 143 Kampman, K., & Jarvis, M. (2015). American Society of Addiction Medicine (ASAM) national practice guideline for the use of medications in the treatment of addiction involving opioid use. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 9*(5), 358–367.

[208] National Institute on Drug Abuse. (n.d.). Effective treatments for opioid addiction. Retrieved October 23, 2017, from https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications /effective-treatments-opioid-addiction/effective -treatments-opioid-addiction

[209] Office of the Surgeon General. (2016). *Facing addiction in America: The Surgeon General's report on alcohol, drugs, and health.* Washington, DC: Department of Health and Human Services.

[210] Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. (2005). *Medication-assisted treatment for opioid addiction in opioid treatment programs.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 43. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 12-4214. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

[211] Equal Employment Opportunity Commission. (1992). *A technical assistance manual on the employment provisions (Title I) of the Americans with Disabilities Act.* Washington, DC: Author.

If a person takes a therapeutic dose of opioid agonist medication as prescribed, he or she may be as capable as anyone else of driving, being emotionally open, and working productively. Some people worry that OUD medication causes a "high" because they've seen patients taking OUD medication whose behavior was affected by other substances (e.g., benzodiaze-pines). Others may assume that someone is high on a medication for OUD who isn't taking any such medication at all.

Point out that many thousands of people are prescribed medication for OUD every year, are receiving appropriate treatment, and are indistinguishable from other people. People taking OUD medication rely on it to maintain daily function, like people with diabetes rely on insulin. Nevertheless, some people think that individuals taking buprenorphine or methadone are still addicted to opioids, even if they don't use illicit drugs. For people with OUD, the medication addresses the compulsion and craving to use. It also blocks the euphoric effects of illicit opioids, which over time helps people stop attempting to use. For people with diabetes, medication addresses the problems caused by inadequate production of insulin by the pancreas. Medication allows both populations to live life more fully.

It would be inappropriate for a medical team to refuse radiation for cancer patients because the team believes chemotherapy is always needed, or to refuse chemotherapy because they believe that radiation is always needed, regardless of each patient's diagnosis and condition. It would be just as inappropriate to refuse evidence-based treatment with medication for a patient with OUD, when that may be the most clinically appropriate course of treatment.

Focus on common ground—all patients want a healthy recovery and judging or isolating someone for return to use doesn't aid anyone's recovery. A divide may occur between

patients in a group setting over return to opioid use. People in the OUD community typically are forgiving of return to opioid use and recognize that it can occur on the path to long-term recovery. However, some people in mutual-help communities judge those who return to use (see the "Helping Clients Find Accepting Mutual-Help Groups" section). Address judgmental attitudes through this analogy: People with diabetes whose blood sugar spikes aren't condemned and ejected from treatment.

Dispel the myth that OUD medications make people sick. In fact, methadone and buprenorphine relieve opioid withdrawal, even if patients don't feel complete relief in the first few days. Taking naltrexone too soon after opioid use can cause opioid withdrawal, but withdrawal symptoms can generally be managed successfully. Point out that people taking medication for OUD sometimes get colds, the fu, or other illnesses, like everyone else. A similar misconception is that OUD medications make all patients sleepy.

When return to opioid use comes up in a group counseling setting, messages about getting back on track and avoiding shaming and blaming apply just as much to the patients taking OUD medication as to other participants. This topic is an opportunity to **address the dangers of overdose, especially the dangers of using an opioid after a period of abstinence or together with other CNS depressants.**

Helping Patients Advocate for Themselves

Educate clients so they can advocate for their treatment and personal needs. Key topics include:

- Addiction as a chronic disease influenced by genetics and environment.
- The ways that medications for OUD work.
- The process of dose stabilization.
- The benefits of longer-term medication use and risks of abrupt treatment termination.
- The role of recovery supports (e.g., mutual-help groups) in helping achieve goals.

Offer clients' family and friends education on these topics as well so that they can advocate for their loved ones. Encourage patients to let family and friends know how important they are and how valuable their support is. Also urge patients to ask loved ones to help them express concerns or fears.

Role-playing can help patients self-advocate.
It allows them to practice what to say, what reactions to expect, and ways to respond. Coach patients in active listening and in focusing on solutions rather than problems.
Urge patients to advocate for themselves beyond one-on-one conversations.
Options include sharing educational pamphlets, inviting loved ones to a counseling session, or referring them to websites.

Addressing Discrimination Against Clients Who Take OUD Medication

Patients can face discriminatory actions when dealing with individuals, organizations, or systems that make decisions based on misinformation about, or biases against, the use of medication for OUD. The following sections highlight issues patients taking OUD medication may face and how counselors can help.

Help clients address employment-related issues

Under the Americans With Disabilities Act, employers cannot discriminate against patients taking medication for OUD.[212]
However, the law doesn't always stop employers from taking such action. For example, some employers conduct workplace urine drug testing, either before offering employment or randomly during employment. The OUD medication they test for most frequently is methadone, but it's possible to test for buprenorphine. Naltrexone is generally not tested for. The TIP expert panel concludes, based on multiple patient experiences, that patients who take OUD medication find it intimidating to explain to their employers why their urine test results are positive

[212] Equal Employment Opportunity Commission. (1992). *A technical assistance manual on the employment provisions (Title I) of the Americans with Disabilities Act.* Washington, DC: Author.

for opioids. Yet if they offer no explanation, they don't get the callback for the job or are let go from the job they have.

Direct patients to legal resources and help them consider how to respond to discrimination at work based on misinterpreted drug tests. Offer to speak with their prospective/ current employers to address concerns and misperceptions about OUD medication and its effect on their ability to do work tasks.

Becoming a Certified Medication-Assisted Treatment Advocate
The National Alliance for Medication Assisted Recovery has a training and credentialing program for interested people—not just those who receive medication for OUD—to become Certified Medication-Assisted Treatment Advocates (www.methadone.org/certifcation /faq.html).

Understand potential legal issues
This section describes issues that can affect access to care for patients involved in the justice system who take buprenorphine or methadone for OUD. These issues usually don't apply for naltrexone.

Many jails (short term) and prisons (long term) restrict or disallow access to OUD medication
despite the federal mandate that people who are incarcerated have access to medical care.[213] For example:

- A jail may not continue methadone treatment or allow methadone delivery by patients' OTPs.
- Patients' medication may be seized upon arrest.
- Jail health officials may deny patients' buprenorphine prescriptions.

Help negotiate patient access to OUD medication during incarceration.
Negotiating access to OUD medication can be problematic and often requires

[213] Friedmann, P. D., Hoskinson, R., Gordon, M., Schwartz, R., Kinlock, T., Knight, K., ... Frisman, L. K. (2012). Medication-assisted treatment in criminal justice agencies affliated with the Criminal Justice-Drug Abuse Treatment Studies (CJ-DATS): Availability, barriers & intentions. *Substance Abuse, 33*(1), 9–18.

multiple meetings between care providers and jail staff members to resolve successfully. Patients taking OUD medication may be forced to go without medication during incarceration. This increases their risk for opioid overdose if they return to use after reentering the community, given the decreased tolerance that results from interrupted treatment.

Encourage patients to reengage in treatment as soon as they're released. People with OUD released from prison or jail who don't take OUD medication have higher risk of overdose death during their first few weeks in the community. Early after release, they are at very high risk of overdose, given possible:

- Decrease in opioid tolerance while incarcerated.
- Lack of appropriate OUD therapy while incarcerated.
- OUD medication initiation right before release.
- Release without coordination or a slot for community-based treatment.

Patients who aren't opioid tolerant need a lower starting dose that prescribers will increase more slowly than usual. Extended-release injectable naltrexone can be an effective alternative for these patients.

Support patients in getting legal advice or counsel via their OUD medication prescribers' healthcare organization. Members of the TIP expert panel have observed situations in which law enforcement personnel arrested patients leaving methadone clinics and charged them with driving under the influence or arrested them after finding buprenorphine prescription bottles in their cars. Discussions among treatment organizations and local law enforcement leadership can help address such situations.

Address concerns and advocate for addiction specialists to select treatments best suited for each patient. Sometimes, authorities insist that patients enter a particular kind of treatment or follow particular rules related to their OUD. To ensure a patient-centered focus, help involve addiction specialists in determining what kind of treatment best meets patients' needs. This kind of advocacy works best when counselors and the programs for which they work have preexisting

relationships with personnel in local employment, law enforcement, drug court, and child welfare facilities.

Address issues in dealing with healthcare providers

Misunderstandings about OUD and its treatment aren't rare among healthcare providers:

- Patients admitted to the hospital for medical issues may face prejudice from hospital staff members.
- Providers may not know how to manage patients' OUD medication during their hospital stay.
- Some providers don't know how to manage pain in someone taking medication for OUD.

Help communicate issues to patients' prescribers, who can advocate for proper handling of OUD medication. It is also possible to help hospital staff members see the patient as a whole person who deserves respect and to provide them with essential information about treatment for OUD.

Inpatient SUD treatment facilities may refuse admission until patients are off buprenorphine or methadone. Sometimes, patients taking OUD medication seek admission to inpatient facilities for treatment of an additional SUD, a mental disorder, or both. If a facility won't accept someone on OUD medication, call on local or state regulatory authorities (e.g., the State Opioid Treatment Authority) and patients' healthcare professionals to intervene with the facility's professional staff and management.

Demonstrate awareness of pregnancy and parenting issues

Healthcare professionals may be unaware of current guidelines for treating pregnant women with OUD. As a result, they may inappropriately:

- Deny OUD medication to pregnant women.
- Discourage breastfeeding by mothers taking OUD medication.

- Direct women who become pregnant while taking OUD medication to undergo withdrawal from their medication and attempt abstinence.

Hospital policies on screening infants for prenatal substance exposure vary considerably.
A positive screen may trigger involvement of Child Protective Services. This may occur even when the positive screen results from treatment with OUD medication under a physician's care rather than opioid misuse.

Help pregnant and postnatal clients in these situations by:
- **Educating them** and encouraging them to share pertinent information and resources with healthcare professionals involved in their care.
- **Coordinating with their prescribers** to help them get prenatal and postnatal care from well-informed healthcare professionals.
- **Getting involved in efforts to educate the local healthcare community** about best practices for the care of pregnant and postnatal women with OUD.

Legal problems can arise if Child Protective Services or legal personnel don't understand that parents receiving OUD medication are fully capable of caring for children and contributing to their families. Judges, probation or parole officers, or Child Protective Services workers may inappropriately request that patients discontinue medication as a condition of family reunification. Such orders are medically inappropriate and should be challenged. Possible ways to help:

- **Write letters to judges and lawyers** explaining how effective OUD medication can be.
- **Send judges and lawyers literature** about current medical recommendations (including this TIP).
- **Testify in court,** if necessary.

Helping Clients Find Accepting Mutual- Help Groups

Voluntary participation in 12-Step groups can improve abstinence and recovery-related skills and behaviors for some people with SUDs. Greater involvement (e.g., being a 12-Step sponsor) can increase these benefits.[214] However, not much research has explored less widespread types of groups (e.g., groups that follow a given religion's principles, secular groups that downplay the spiritual aspects of 12-Step groups). Research exploring longitudinal outcomes for people with OUD who attend NA is limited, but findings link more frequent attendance with abstinence.[215]

Clients taking medication for OUD may face challenges in attending mutual-help groups.

For example:

- NA, the most widely available program, treats illicit opioids and OUD medications equally in gauging abstinence and recovery. NA doesn't consider people taking OUD medication "clean and sober."[216]
- Local chapters of NA may decide not to allow people taking OUD medication to participate at meetings or may limit their participation (e.g., not allowing service work).
- Clients attending some NA meetings may encounter hostile attitudes toward the use of medication.
- AA's official policy is more accepting of the use of prescribed medication, but clients may still encounter negative attitudes toward their use of medications for OUD.
- Other groups, such as some religious mutual-help programs, SMART Recovery, and LifeRing Secular Recovery, also have policies that could challenge clients for taking medication for OUD.

---

[214] Donovan, D. M., Ingalsbe, M. H., Benbow, J., & Daley, D. C. (2013). 12-step interventions and mutual support programs for substance use disorders: An overview. *Social Work in Public Health, 28*(3–4), 313–332.

[215] Monico, L. B., Gryczynski, J., Mitchell, S. G., Schwartz, R. P., O'Grady, K. E., & Jaffe, J. H. (2015). Buprenorphine treatment and 12-step meeting attendance: Conficts, compatibilities, and patient outcomes. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 57,* 89–95.

[216] Narcotics Anonymous World Services. (2016). *Narcotics Anonymous and persons receiving medication-assisted treatment.* Chatsworth, CA: Author.

Clients will be better able to find supportive mutual-help groups if their counselor and program:

Evaluate attitudes toward medication for OUD among local mutual-help groups.

- **Keep on hand information** about all mutual-help options available in the clients' area.
- **Recruit volunteers from mutual-help groups** to help clients find and attend meetings (e.g., by providing transportation, serving as "sponsors," introducing clients).
- **Do not mandate meeting attendance.** Recommending participation is just as effective.[217]
- **Keep track of clients' experiences at different groups** to ensure that meetings remain welcoming.
- **Help clients start onsite mutual-help groups.**
- **Ask staff members to evaluate their own feelings and beliefs** about mutual-help groups.

Facilitate positive mutual-help group experiences

- **Educate clients about mutual-help groups.** Explore group types, risks and benefits of participation, and limitations of research in support of those risks and benefits.
- **Suggest buddying up.** Clients can attend meetings with other people who take medication for OUD.
- **Review with clients their understanding of and prior experience with mutual help.**
- **Explore clients' understanding of the benefits and risks of disclosure** about taking OUD medication.
- **Develop a risk-reduction plan** for disclosure if clients want to share their use of OUD medication (e.g., talking with an individual group member instead of disclosing to the entire group).

---

[217] Monico, L. B., Gryczynski, J., Mitchell, S. G., Schwartz, R. P., O'Grady, K. E., & Jaffe, J. H. (2015). Buprenorphine treatment and 12-step meeting attendance: Conficts, compatibilities, and patient outcomes. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 57,* 89–95.

Help clients anticipate and learn to handle negative responses: Develop sample scripts clients can use when questioned about their medication.
Role-play scenarios in which clients respond to questions about their use of medication.

Respect the privacy of clients' participation in mutual-help groups and recognize that some groups ask that participants not discuss what occurs in meetings.
Make sure clients know they can talk about their experiences in mutual-help groups but don't pressure them to disclose in these groups that they take OUD medication.
Consider mutual-help participation using groups more open to OUD medication (e.g., attending AA even if the client has no alcohol use disorder; attending groups for co-occurring substance use and mental disorders, such as Dual Recovery Anonymous or Double Trouble in Recovery). Clients with OUD who attend AA and not NA have similar recovery-related outcomes and retention rates.[218]

Online mutual-help groups

Before recommending an online group, check its content and tone on the use of medication.

Mutual help using the Internet (either through real-time chat rooms or discussion boards where one posts and waits for responses) has been growing in popularity. This is an especially valuable resource for clients living in rural and remote areas. Groups range from general meetings for people with a particular SUD (e.g., online AA meetings) to those that are very specific (e.g., Moms on Methadone). Moderated groups are preferable to unmoderated groups. TIP 60, *Using Technology-Based Therapeutic Tools in Behavioral Health Services*, addresses many of the pros and cons of online support groups.

---

[218] 164 Kelly, J. F., Greene, M. C., & Bergman, B. G. (2014). Do drug-dependent patients attending Alcoholics Anonymous rather than Narcotics Anonymous do as well? A prospective, lagged, matching analysis. *Alcohol and Alcoholism, 49*(6), 645–653.

Mutual-help groups specific to OTPs

Although these meetings occur mostly on the premises of OTPs, it may be possible to use the models developed by OTPs in more general SUD treatment settings. Because they serve only patients receiving medication to treat OUD, OTPs can create and sustain onsite mutual-help groups specific to this population. Such groups include Methadone Anonymous (MA),[219] other variations on a 12-Step model,[220] 170 and the mutual-help component of Medication- Assisted Recovery Services (MARS). MARS is a recovery community organization, not just a mutual-help program. MARS members design, implement, and evaluate a variety of peer-delivered recovery support services in addition to providing meetings.

Facilitating Groups That Include Patients Taking OUD Medication

Foster acceptance via attitude and behavior when facilitating groups that include patients taking OUD medication:

- **Establish ground rules** about being respectful, avoiding negative comments about group members, and keeping statements made in the group confidential—as with any group.
- **Be proactive.** State up front that ground rules apply to everyone, regardless of a given person's decisions about whether to include OUD medication in his or her path to recovery.
- **Ask members to discuss how to address any negative comments,** should they occur. This is especially important for mixed groups.
- **Ask group members to affirm that they will abide by the rules.**
- **Provide consistent reminders** throughout each session about the ground rules.

Group members may still make negative comments about medication for OUD. Avoid feeding the negativity with attention, which can worsen the situation.

---

[219] Ginter, W. (2012). Methadone Anonymous and mutual support for medication-assisted recovery. *Journal of Groups in Addiction and Recovery, 7*(2–4), 189–201.

[220] Ronel, N., Gueta, K., Abramsohn, Y., Caspi, N., & Adelson, M. (2011). Can a 12-step program work in methadone maintenance treatment? *International Journal of Offender Therapy and Comparative Criminology, 55*(7), 1135–1153.

Reframe negative comments to express underlying motivations, often based on fear or misunderstanding.

Remain positive; model expected behavior, which can benefit the person who made the negative remark.

Additional tips for leading mixed groups include the following:

- **Treat patients taking OUD medication the same as other patients in the group.** Patients taking medication can participate in and benefit from individual and group counseling just like other patients. There is no need to have separate counseling tracks
- based on OUD medication status, nor should that status limit a participant's responsibilities, leadership role, or level of participation.
- **Meet with patients taking OUD medication in advance to prepare them for mixed-group settings.** Advise them that they don't have to disclose their medication status to the group, just as they don't have to disclose any other health issues. Counsel them that if they choose to talk about their medication status, it helps to talk about how medication has helped shape their personal recovery.
- **Don't single out patients taking OUD medication.** Let participants decide whether to tell the group about any issue they want to share, including medication status. If a patient chooses to disclose that status, follow up after the session to ensure that he or she is in a positive space and feels supported.
- **Keep the session's focus on the topic and not on the pros and cons of medication for OUD.** If the person receiving medication for OUD or other group members have specific questions about such medications, have them ask their healthcare professionals.
- **Reinforce messages of acceptance.** During the wrap-up discussion at the end of a session, members may comment on points that stood out for them. This is a chance to restate information accurately and model respect for each patient's road to recovery, whether it includes OUD medication or not.
- **Review confidentiality rules.** Affirm that patients' OUD medication status will not be shared with other group members. Remind participants to think carefully before sharing personal details such as their medication status with the

group, because other participants may not respect confidentiality even if they have agreed to do so as part of the group guidelines.

3. Other Common Counseling Concerns

Patients must sign releases to permit ongoing conversations between care providers in accordance with federal regulations on confidentiality of medical records for patients in treatment for an SUD (42 CFR Part 2). When patients' primary care providers, prescribers of medication for OUD, and addiction-specific counselors don't work for the same entity, patients must consent for them to share information.

It can be challenging when a patient refuses to consent to collaborative communication among his or her healthcare team members.
In these cases, the professionals involved must decide whether they will continue to provide either medication or counseling services without permission to collaborate. In other words, is cross-communication among all providers required for collaborative care? The answer to this complicated question depends on each patient's circumstances.

The TIP expert panel recommends communication among providers as the standard of care for OUD treatment and recovery support.

Carefully consider deviations from this standard, which should occur only rarely. That said, individualize decisions about collaborative communication among providers to each patient's unique preferences, needs, and circumstances.

Patients may not consent to communication among providers if they:

- **Have experienced discrimination in healthcare systems.**
- **Have developed OUD after taking opioid pain medication.**

- **Have legitimate cause not to trust providers** (e.g., perceiving themselves as having been abused by a healthcare professional).[221]

Are not ready to make primary care providers aware of their disorder, even
- (or especially) if those providers have been prescribing opioid pain medication.
- **Encounter problems in making progress toward recovery.** After typically consenting to communication among providers, a patient's sudden revocation may signal trouble in recovery.
- Exhibit 4.16 lists common collaborative care issues and responses counselors can consider. Suggested responses assume that patients have consented to open exchange of information among all providers.

Exhibit 4.16. Common Collaborative Care Issues and Possible Counselor Responses

POTENTIAL MEDICATION-RELATED ISSUE	**COUNSELOR RESPONSE**
The patient complains of continued cravings.	Talk with the patient about his or her medication adherence. Review with the patient strategies for overcoming cravings using a CBT model. Communicate with the prescriber to see whether dosage can be adjusted to subdue the cravings.
A patient taking methadone does not appear engaged in counseling sessions and	Ask the patient whether drowsiness is caused by lack of sleep, disturbed sleep, substance use, or overmedication. Consider obtaining a spot urine test (if available). In all cases of drowsiness, alert the prescriber

[221] Palis, H., Marchand, K., Peng, D., Fikowski, J., Harrison, S., Spittal, P., … Oviedo-Joekes, E. (2016). Factors associated with perceived abuse in the health care system among long-term opioid users: A cross-sectional study. *Substance Use and Misuse, 51*(6), 763–776.

seems drowsy during conversations.	immediately so that the cause can be determined. This is particularly important during the first few weeks of treatment.
The patient is at risk for return to opioid use.	Inform the prescriber if the patient appears at risk for return to use given cravings, life stressors, changes in social circumstances, new triggers, or the like. This alerts the prescriber to monitor the patient more closely and consider medication changes to reduce likelihood of return to use.
The patient has recently returned to opioid misuse after a period of abstinence.	Gather details about circumstances surrounding the incident of use and, in collaboration with the prescriber and the patient, adjust the treatment plan accordingly. Reinforce the patient's understanding of the increased risk of opioid overdose given altered levels of tolerance.
The patient is discussing chronic pain with the counselor.	Direct the patient to a healthcare professional for assessment of pain and medical treatment as necessary. If indicated as appropriate by a healthcare professional, provide CBT for dealing with pain or instruct the patient in adjunct methods for pain relief (e.g., meditation, exercise, physical therapy).
The patient is asking the counselor for medical advice on what dose to take, side effects, how long to stay on the medication, and the like.	Answer questions based on your knowledge of medications for treatment of OUD but don't provide medical advice. Refer the patient to the prescriber for that. As appropriate, contact the prescriber with the patient to have a three-way discussion.
The counselor or patient is concerned that the prescriber is not giving quality care.	As appropriate, advocate for the patient with the prescribing medical team.

The patient discloses use of other drugs.	Use motivational interviewing techniques to have a collaborative conversation about the details of this drug use. For example, give a response like "Tell me more about this," followed by questions about the specific drugs used, why they were used, and what the patient's thoughts are about changing that drug use.
The patient discloses that she is pregnant.	Advise the patient to contact her prescriber immediately no matter what medication she is taking. Work with her to help her get access to prenatal care (if she doesn't have it already) and other health services related to pregnancy as needed.
The patient has a positive urine screen.	Using motivational interviewing tools, discuss with the patient the context of the substance use and what implications this use may have for the treatment plan. If the patient denies the substance use, reconsider the patient's readiness to change and how it affects the treatment plan.

Resources Related to Medications for Opioid Use Disorder

General Resources

Facts and Figures

American Association for the Treatment of Opioid Dependence (AATOD), Frequently Asked Questions (www.aatod.org/resources /frequently-asked-questions).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Smoking & Tobacco Use (www.cdc.gov /tobacco/index.htm).

Legal Action Center (LAC), Medication- Assisted Treatment for Opioid Addiction: Myths and Facts (http://lac.org/wp-content /uploads/2016/02/Myth-Fact-for-MAT.pdf).

Missouri Department of Mental Health, Methadone Maintenance Myths and Resources
(https://dmh.mo.gov/docs/ada/methadonemyths .pdf).
National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)
(www.drugabuse.gov):
Addiction Science (www.drugabuse.gov /related-topics/addiction-science). Provides two short videos that explain the nature of addiction. These are useful in educating people in primary care who suffer from addiction. This site has links to publications for professionals that explain the nature of addiction.

NIDAMED, Medical and Health Professionals (www.drugabuse.gov/nidamed-medical -health-professionals). Disseminates science-based resources to healthcare professionals on the causes and consequences of drug use and addiction and advances in pain management.

Office of National Drug Control Policy, Medication-Assisted Treatment for Opioid Addiction (https://online.ndbh.com/docs /providers/SubstanceUseCenter/Medication -Assisted-Treatment-Edited.pdf): Offers a factsheet with a useful summary of pharmacotherapy for OUD and its effectiveness.
Partnership for Drug-Free Kids, Commentary: Countering the Myths About Methadone
(www.drugfree.org/news-service/commentary -countering-the-myths-about-methadone).

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA):
Addiction Technology Transfer Center **(ATTC)** (http://attcnetwork.org/home). Network with 10 regional centers across the country that provide training and information on evidence-based practices to practitioners. The ATTC website's section on OUD medication has many resources for clinicians, patients, and family members (www.attcnetwork.org /explore/priorityareas/wfd/mat/mat.pubs.asp).

- State Opioid Treatment Authorities (SOTAs) (https://dpt2.samhsa.gov/regulations/smalist .aspx).

United States Surgeon General's Report,
Facing Addiction in America: The Surgeon General's Report on Alcohol, Drugs, and Health (https://addiction.surgeongeneral.gov).

Groups and Organizations
AATOD (www.aatod.org): Works with federal and state agencies on opioid treatment policy throughout the United States. Convenes conferences every 18 months on evidence-based clinical practice, current research, and organizational developments related to OUD treatment. AATOD develops publications that serve as resources for addiction counselors and peer support providers.

American Academy of Addiction Psychiatry (AAAP) (www.aaap.org): Offers education and training materials on addiction psychiatry (e.g., webinars, continuing medical education courses).

American Society of Addiction Medicine (ASAM) (www.asam.org): Provides medical education and resources on the treatment of SUDs, including OUD.
LAC (https://lac.org): Offers information about the rights of people with criminal records, HIV/AIDS, and SUDs.

Medical Assisted Treatment of America (www.medicalassistedtreatment.org): Raises awareness and understanding of substance misuse, the problems it creates, and ways to address these problems.

National Alliance for Medication Assisted Recovery (NAMA Recovery) (www.methadone .org): Supports quality opioid agonist treatment through its many U.S. chapters and its international network of affiliate chapters. Thousands of methadone clients and healthcare professionals belong to the organization.

National Alliance of Advocates for Buprenorphine Treatment (www.naabt.org): Aims to educate the public about opioid addiction and buprenorphine as a

treatment option, to reduce prejudice and discrimination against clients who have SUDs, and to connect clients in need to qualified treatment providers.

SAMHSA (www.samhsa.gov):

- Buprenorphine Practitioner Verification for Pharmacists (www.samhsa.gov/bupe /lookup-form)
- National Recovery Month (https://recovery month.gov)
- Opioid Treatment Program (OTP) Directory (https://dpt2.samhsa.gov/treatment)
- SOTAs (https://dpt2.samhsa.gov/regulations /smalist.aspx)

SAMHSA Publications

All publications listed in this section are available for free from SAMHSA's publications ordering webpage (https://store.samhsa.gov) or by calling 1-877-SAMHSA-7 (1-877-726-4727):

- TIP 42: *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co-Occurring Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov/product /TIP-42-Substance-Abuse-Treatment-for -Persons-With-Co-Occurring-Disorders /SMA13-3992)
- TIP 54: *Managing Chronic Pain in Adults With or in Recovery From Substance Use Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-54 -Managing-Chronic-Pain-in-Adults-With-or -in-Recovery-From-Substance-Use-Disorders /SMA13-4671)
- TIP 57: *Trauma-Informed Care in Behavioral Health Services* (https://store.samhsa.gov /product/TIP-57-Trauma-Informed-Care-in -Behavioral-Health-Services/SMA14-4816)
- TIP 62: *Relapse Prevention and Recovery Promotion in Behavioral Health Services* (Once published, this TIP will be available on SAMHSA's publications ordering webpage, https://store.samhsa.gov)
- *Advisory:* An Introduction to Extended- Release Injectable Naltrexone for the Treatment of People With Opioid Dependence (https://store.samhsa.gov /product/An-Introduction-to-Extended -Release-Injectable-Naltrexone-for-the -Treatment-of-People-with-Opioid -Dependence/SMA12-4682)

- *Advisory:* Sublingual and Transmucosal Buprenorphine for Opioid Use Disorder: Review and Update (https://store.samhsa .gov/product/Advisory-Sublingual-and -Transmucosal-Buprenorphine-for-Opioid -Use-Disorder-Review-and-Update /SMA16-4938)
- *Clinical Guidance for Treating Pregnant and Parenting Women With Opioid Use Disorder and Their Infants* (https://store.samhsa.gov /product/Clinical-Guidance-for-Treating -Pregnant-and-Parenting-Women-With -Opioid-Use-Disorder-and-Their-Infants /All-New-Products/SMA18-5054)
- *Clinical Use of Extended-Release Injectable Naltrexone in the Treatment of Opioid Use Disorders: A Brief Guide* (https://store .samhsa.gov/shin/content//SMA14-4892 /SMA14-4892.pdf)
- *A Collaborative Approach to the Treatment of Pregnant Women With Opioid Use Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov/product/A -Collaborative-Approach-to-the-Treatment -of-Pregnant-Women-with-Opioid-Use -Disorders/SMA16-4978)
- *Decisions in Recovery: Treatment for Opioid Use Disorders, Handbook* (https://store .samhsa.gov/product/SMA16-4993)
- Integrated Treatment for Co-Occurring Disorders Evidence-Based Practices (EBP) Kit (https://store.samhsa.gov/product/Integrated -Treatment-for-Co-Occurring-Disorders -Evidence-Based-Practices-EBP-KIT /SMA08-4367)
- Technical Assistance Publication 32: *Clinical Drug Testing in Primary Care* (https://store .samhsa.gov/shin/content//SMA12-4668 /SMA12-4668.pdf)
- *What Are Peer Recovery Support Services?* (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content /SMA09-4454/SMA09-4454.pdf)

General Information

Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality:

- *Medication-Assisted Treatment Models of Care for Opioid Use Disorder in Primary Care Settings* (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books /NBK402352)
- Academy for Integrating Behavioral Health and Primary Care (https://integrationacademy .ahrq.gov)

American Academy of Family Physicians:

- Chronic Pain Management and Opioid Misuse: A Public Health Concern (Position Paper) (www.aafp.org/about/policies/all/pain -management-opioid.html)
- Pain Management and Opioid Use Resources (www.aafp.org/patient-care/public-health /pain-opioids/resources.html)

ATTC Network (http://attcnetwork.org/home): This nationwide network of SAMHSA-sponsored regional centers is a multidisciplinary resource for professionals in the addiction treatment and recovery services fields. The network has many valuable resources and projects of interest to people involved in treating SUDs. Of particular interest to readers of this TIP are the training programs produced as part of the NIDA/ SAMHSA-ATTC Blending Initiative:

- Buprenorphine Treatment: Training for Multidisciplinary Addiction Professionals (www.attcnetwork.org/projects/buptx.aspx)
- Buprenorphine Treatment for Young Adults (www.attcnetwork.org/projects/bupyoung.aspx)
- Prescription Opioid Addiction Treatment Study (POATS) (www.attcnetwork.org/projects /poats.aspx)

BupPractice.com Federal Recordkeeping Requirements for Buprenorphine Treatment
(www.buppractice.com/node/12246): Provides information about federal recordkeeping requirements.

CDC Smoking & Tobacco Use (www.cdc.gov /tobacco/index.htm): Includes resource links for clinicians on smoking and the treatment of tobacco use.

Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services
(www.cms.gov/Medicare/Medicare-General -Information/Telehealth/index.html): Gives guidance on the delivery of telehealth.

Department of Health and Human Services (HHS):

- Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments Application for Certification (www.cms.gov/Medicare/CMS-Forms/CMS -Forms/downloads/cms116.pdf)

- Medication Assisted Treatment for Opioid Use Disorders: Final Rule (www.federalregister .gov/documents/2016/07/08/2016-16120 /medication-assisted-treatment-for-opioid -use-disorders)

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA):

- DEA Requirements for DATA Waived Physicians (www.deadiversion.usdoj.gov/pubs /docs/dwp_ buprenorphine.htm). Lists DEA requirements for Drug Addiction Treatment Act of 2000 (DATA 2000)-waivered healthcare professionals.
- Form DEA-106, Report of Theft or Loss of Controlled Substances (https://apps .deadiversion.usdoj.gov/webforms/dtlLogin .jsp). Provides instructions for completing form DEA-106, which must be fled when stored buprenorphine is lost or stolen.
- *Practitioner's Manual* (www.deadiversion .usdoj.gov/pubs/manuals/pract). Provides guidance on how to comply with federal requirements on recordkeeping for ordering, storing, and dispensing buprenorphine in the office. This manual is from the DEA's Office of Diversion Control.

Drugs.com:

- Buprenorphine Drug Interactions (www.drugs .com/drug-interactions/buprenorphine-index .html?flter=3&generic_only=)
- Drug Interactions Checker (www.drugs.com /drug_ interactions.php)

FDA:

- Approved Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS): Buprenorphine Transmucosal Products for Opioid Dependence (www .accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/rems/index .cfm?event=RemsDetails.page&REMS=9)
- REMS: Probuphine (buprenorphine hydrochloride) (www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts /cder/rems/index.cfm?event=IndvRemsDetails .page&REMS=356)

- REMS: Sublocade (extended-release injectable buprenorphine) (www.accessdata.fda.gov /scripts/cder/rems/index.cfm?event =IndvRemsDetails.page&REMS=376)
- REMS: Suboxone/Subutex (buprenorphine and naloxone/buprenorphine) (www.accessdata .fda.gov/scripts/cder/rems/index.cfm?event =IndvRemsDetails.page&REMS=352)
- REMS: Vivitrol (extended-release naltrexone [XR-NTX]) (www.vivitrolrems.com)

LAC (https://lac.org): LAC attorneys provide legal advice by phone to service providers and government agencies. They assist dozens of agencies annually with questions about confidentiality of treatment records, discrimination, and other issues. LAC's confidentiality hotline provides information about the federal law protecting the confidentiality of drug and alcohol treatment and prevention records (42 CFR Part 2). The hotline is free to New York treatment providers and government agencies. Outside New York, the hotline is accessible if the state alcohol/drug oversight agency subscribes to LAC's Actionline service. To speak with a hotline attorney, call LAC Monday through Friday 1–5 p.m. (Eastern Time Zone) at 1-212-243-1313, or toll-free at 1-800-223-4044.

National Alliance of Advocates for Buprenorphine Treatment 30–100 Patient Limit (www.naabt.org/30_patient_limit.cfm): Summarizes the DATA 2000 law.

National Association of State Controlled Substances Authorities State Profiles (www .nascsa.org/stateprofles.htm): Contains a directory of each state's prescription drug monitoring program (PDMP).

National Conference of State Legislatures Drug Overdose Immunity and Good Samaritan Laws (www.ncsl.org/research/civil-and-criminal -justice/drug-overdose-immunity-good-samaritan -laws.aspx): Provides information about naloxone and Good Samaritan immunity.

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (**NIAAA) Professional Education Materials** (www.niaaa.nih.gov/publications /clinical-guides-and-manuals): Provides professional education materials; offers links to screening, treatment planning, and general information for clinicians in outpatient programs.

National Library of Medicine's DailyMed:

- FDA label information for methadone (https:// dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/search .cfm?labeltype=all&query=METHADONE)
- FDA label information for naltrexone (https:// dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm ?setid=cd11c435-b0f0-4bb9-ae78 - 60f101f3703f)

NIDA:

- Available Treatments for Marijuana Use Disorders (www.drugabuse.gov/publications /research-reports/marijuana/available - treatments-marijuana-use-disorders). Provides information about treatment options for individuals with marijuana use disorder.
- Opioid Overdose Reversal With Naloxone (Narcan, Evzio) (www.drugabuse.gov/related -topics/opioid-overdose-reversal-naloxone -narcan-evzio). Contains naloxone information for providers.

- NIDAMED, Medical and Health Professionals (www.drugabuse.gov/nidamed-medical -health-professionals). Provides practice-related and professional education-related resources.
- Medications To Treat Opioid Addiction (www .drugabuse.gov/publications/research-reports /medications-to-treat-opioid-addiction /overview). Provides an overview of the need for and effcacy of OUD medications and discusses common misconceptions, impacts on outcome, and use of OUD medications with certain specific populations.
- *Effective Treatments for Opioid Addiction* (https://www.drugabuse.gov/publications /effective-treatments-opioid-addiction /effective-treatments-opioid-addiction).
- Therapeutic Communities (www.drugabuse .gov/publications/research-reports /therapeutic-communities/what-are -therapeutic-communities). Gives a brief overview of OUD medications and links to additional information.
- *Principles of Drug Addiction Treatment: A Research-Based Guide* (www.drugabuse.gov /publications/principles-drug-addiction -treatment-research-based-guide-third -edition/preface). Discusses how OUD affects the

brain and covers the state of addiction treatment in the United States, principles of effective treatment, frequently asked questions about OUD medication, evidence-based approaches to treatment, and additional resources.

- *Principles of Adolescent Substance Use Disorder Treatment: A Research-Based Guide* (www.drugabuse.gov/publications/principles -adolescent-substance-use-disorder-treatment -research-based-guide/introduction). Discusses principles of SUDs in adolescents, addresses frequently asked questions, summarizes treatment settings and evidence-based treatment approaches, and provides treatment referral resources.
- *Treating Opioid Use Disorder During Pregnancy* (www.drugabuse.gov/publications /treating-opioid-use-disorder-during -pregnancy/treating-opioid-use-disorder -during-pregnancy). Addresses the risks of OUD to the pregnant woman and the fetus, briefly summarizes OUD pharmacotherapies for use during pregnancy, and provides links to additional information.

North American Syringe Exchange Program (https://nasen.org/directory): Provides a national directory of syringe exchange programs in the United States.

Prescription Drug Abuse Policy System's Naloxone Overdose Prevention Laws (http://pdaps.org/datasets/laws-regulating -administration-of-naloxone-1501695139): Provides a map with a link to each state's naloxone overdose prevention laws, including policies on prescribing, dispensing, and civil and criminal immunity.

Project Lazarus's Naloxone: The Overdose Antidote (www.projectlazarus.org/naloxone): Provides guidance on administering naloxone.

Providers' Clinical Support System's (PCSS's) How To Prepare for a Visit From the Drug Enforcement Agency Regarding Buprenorphine Prescribing (http://pcssmat .org/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/FINAL-How -to-Prepare-for-a-DEA-Inspection.pdf): Provides a description of the DEA inspection process and how to comply with its requirements.

SAMHSA:

Dear Colleague Letters for Medication- Assisted Treatment Providers (www.samhsa .gov/medication-assisted-treatment /legislation-regulations-guidelines/dear -colleague-letters). Offers regular communications to the opioid treatment community regarding clinical and regulatory issues related to opioid treatment. Regulations, policies, and best practices for OTPs and office-based

- opioid treatment (OBOT) clinics can change, and Dear Colleague Letters help providers stay up to date.
- Understanding the Final Rule for a Patient Limit of 275 (www.samhsa.gov/sites/default /fles/programs_campaigns/medication_assisted/understanding-patient-limit275.pdf). Provides information about the final rule and how to use it to increase patient access to medication for OUD and associated reporting requirements.
- Buprenorphine Waiver Management (www .samhsa.gov/medication-assisted-treatment /buprenorphine-waiver-management). Provides information on the buprenorphine waiver, including links to the buprenorphine waiver application and an explanation of the processes, requirements, and recordkeeping strategies associated with prescribing buprenorphine.
- Qualify for Nurse Practitioners (NPs) and Physician Assistants (PAs) Waiver (www .samhsa.gov/medication-assisted-treatment /qualify-nps-pas-waivers). Provides information for NPs and PAs about the buprenorphine waiver training, with links to trainings and the application process.
- Buprenorphine Training for Physicians (www .samhsa.gov/medication-assisted-treatment /training-resources/buprenorphine-physician -training). Offers links to organizations that provide buprenorphine training for physicians.
- *SAMHSA Opioid Overdose Prevention Toolkit* (https://store.samhsa.gov/product/SAMHSA -Opioid-Overdose-Prevention-Toolkit/SMA16 -4742). Prepares healthcare professionals, communities, and local governments with material to develop practices and policies to help prevent opioid-related overdoses and deaths. It addresses issues for healthcare professionals, first responders, treatment providers, and those recovering from opioid overdose.
- *Federal Guidelines for Opioid Treatment Programs* (https://store.samhsa.gov/product /Federal-Guidelines-for-Opioid-Treatment -

Programs/PEP15-FEDGUIDEOTP). Provides updated guidelines for how OTPs can satisfy the federal regulations.

- Form SMA-168 Opioid Treatment Exception Request (www.samhsa.gov/medication -assisted-treatment/opioid-treatment -programs/submit-exception-request). Provides instructions for physicians on how to request exceptions to federal standards for opioid treatment.
- Laws and Regulations (www.samhsa.gov /about-us/who-we-are/laws-regulations). Provides an overview and summary of the most frequent questions about disclosure and patient records pertaining to substance use treatment that federal programs maintain.
- *Substance Abuse in Brief Fact Sheet:* Introduction to Mutual-Support Groups for Alcohol and Drug Abuse (https://store .samhsa.gov/shin/content/SMA08-4336 /SMA08-4336.pdf). Provides information to help medical and behavioral health service providers understand mutual-help groups and how to make referrals to such groups.

SAMHSA has developed several resources to guide healthcare professionals in their use of telehealth and telemedicine approaches for OUD: *In Brief:* Rural Behavioral Health: Telehealth Challenges and Opportunities (https:// store.samhsa.gov/shin/content/SMA16 -4989/SMA16-4989.pdf)
Certified Community Behavioral Health Clinics (CCBHCs) Using Telehealth or Telemedicine (www.samhsa.gov/section -223/care-coordination/telehealth -telemedicine)

Practice Guidelines and Decision- Support Tools

ASAM:

- *Appropriate Use of Drug Testing in Clinical Addiction Medicine* (http://download.lww.com /wolterskluwer_vitalstream_com/PermaLink /JAM/A/JAM_11_3_2017_06_02_SAFARIAN_JAM-D-17-00020_SDC1.pdf). Details the ASAM consensus statement on drug testing in addiction treatment.
- The ASAM Criteria (www.asam.org/quality -practice/guidelines-and-consensus -documents/the-asam-criteria). Provides criteria and a comprehensive set of guidelines for placement, continued stay, and transfer/ discharge of patients with addiction and co-occurring conditions.

- *The ASAM National Practice Guidelines: For the Use of Medication in the Treatment of Addiction Involving Opioid Use* (www.asam .org/docs/default-source/practice-support /guidelines-and-consensus-docs/asam -national-practice-guideline-supplement .pdf). Provides information on prescribing methadone, buprenorphine, naltrexone, and naloxone. The document also discusses the needs of special populations, including women during pregnancy, patients with chronic pain, adolescents, individuals in the criminal justice system, and patients with co-occurring psychiatric conditions.

CDC:

- CDC Guideline for Prescribing Opioids for Chronic Pain (www.cdc.gov/drugoverdose /prescribing/guideline.html).
- Guideline Resources: Clinical Tools (www.cdc .gov/drugoverdose/prescribing/clinical-tools .html). Provides links and tools to help clinicians prevent opioid overdose deaths.

Credible Meds (www.crediblemeds.org): Maintains a list of medications that may increase QTc intervals. Free registration is required to access the most up-to-date list.

HHS:

- BeTobaccoFree.gov News and Resources (https://betobaccofree.hhs.gov/quit-now /index.html#professionals). Offers links for clinicians that provide guidance on the care for patients with nicotine addiction. The Resources section is at the bottom of the page linked here.
- BeTobaccoFree.gov Nicotine Addiction and Your Health (https://betobaccofree.hhs.gov /health-effects/nicotine-health). Provides information on nicotine addiction and its health effects.

Institute for Research, Evaluation, and Training in Addictions' Management of Benzodiazepines in Medication-Assisted Treatment (http://ireta.org/wp-content/uploads /2014/12/BP_Guidelines_for_Benzodiazepines .pdf): Provides information on managing benzodiazepine use in patients taking medications for OUD.

PCSS for Medication Assisted Treatment (https://pcssmat.org): Provides buprenorphine waiver training for clinicians (physicians, NPs, and PAs).

PCSS Mentoring Program (https://pcssmat.org /mentoring): Gives providers guidance on prescribing OUD medications. This national network of experienced providers is available at no cost. Mentors provide support by telephone, email, or in person if possible.

PCSS Models of Buprenorphine Induction (http://pcssmat.org/wp-content/uploads/2015 /02/Buprenorphine-Induction-Online-Module .pdf): Provides information about various buprenorphine induction approaches including in-office, non-OTP, and at-home dosing.

Prescribe To Prevent (http://prescribetoprevent .org): Provides information about naloxone prescribing for overdose prevention, including educational patient handouts and videos.

SAMHSA:

- MATx Mobile App To Support Medication- Assisted Treatment of Opioid Use Disorder (https://store.samhsa.gov/apps/mat). Provides information on FDA-approved treatment approaches and medications used to treat OUD. It includes a buprenorphine prescribing guide with information on the DATA 2000 waiver process and patient limits. Clinical support tools (e.g., treatment guidelines; *International Classification of Diseases,* 10th Edition, coding; guidance on working with special populations), help lines, and SAMHSA's treatment locators are also included.
- *Pocket Guide: Medication-Assisted Treatment of Opioid Use Disorder* (https://store.samhsa .gov/shin/content/SMA16-4892PG/SMA16 -4892PG.pdf).
- Buprenorphine (www.samhsa.gov/medication -assisted-treatment/treatment/buprenorphine).
- Naltrexone (www.samhsa.gov/medication -assisted-treatment/treatment/naltrexone).
- Decisions in Recovery: Treatment for Opioid Use Disorder (https://media.samhsa.gov/MAT -Decisions-in-Recovery). Provides information on shared decision making in pharmaco-therapy for OUD.

- Decisions in Recovery: Treatment for Opioid Use Disorder, Planning for Success (https:// media.samhsa.gov/MAT-Decisions-in-Recovery /section/how/planning_for_success.aspx). Provides assistance in developing a recovery plan.
- Bringing Recovery Supports to Scale Technical Assistance Center Strategy (www.samhsa.gov /brss-tacs) and Shared Decision-Making Tools (www.samhsa.gov/brss-tacs/recovery-support -tools/shared-decision-making). Offers training and technical assistance on many topics related to medication for OUD, including recovery-oriented systems of care, mutual-support groups, capacity building, leadership by people in recovery and family members, certification requirements for peer specialists and mutual-support group coaches, and core competencies for recovery-oriented behavioral health workers.
- *Pharmacologic Guidelines for Treating Individuals With Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder and Co-Occurring Opioid Use Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin /content/SMA12-4688/SMA12-4688.pdf).
- *General Principles for the Use of Pharmacological Agents To Treat Individuals With Co-Occurring Mental and Substance Use Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin /content/SMA12-4689/SMA12-4689.pdf).

Veterans Administration (**VA)/Department of Defense** (**DoD)** ***Clinical Practice Guideline for the Management of Substance Use Disorders*** (www.healthquality.va.gov/guidelines/MH/sud /VADoDSUDCPGRevised22216.pdf): Provides information on screening, assessment, and treatment of OUD as well as other SUDs. It is primarily for VA and DoD healthcare providers and others involved in the care of service members or veterans with an SUD.

Assessment Scales and Screening Tools

AAAP, Education & Training (www.aaap.org /education-training/cme-opportunities): Provides Performance-in-Practice Clinical Modules for alcohol use disorder and tobacco use disorder.

American Psychiatric Nurses Association, Tobacco & Nicotine Use Screening Tools & Assessments (www.apna.org/i4a/pages/index .cfm?pageID=6150): Provides the Fagerström screening tools for nicotine dependence and smokeless tobacco and a screening checklist for adolescent tobacco use.

ASAM *Appropriate Use of Drug Testing in Clinical Addiction Medicine* (www.asam.org /quality-practice/guidelines-and-consensus -documents/drug-testing): Gives information on the appropriate use of drug testing in identifying, diagnosing, and treating people with or at risk for SUDs.

Clinical Institute Narcotic Assessment Scale for Withdrawal Symptoms (www.ncpoep.org /wp-content/uploads/2015/02/Appendix_7_Clinical_Institute_Narcotic_Assessment_CINA_Scale_for_Withdrawal_Symptoms.pdf).

NIDA, Screening, Assessment, and Drug Testing Resources (www.drugabuse.gov /nidamed-medical-health-professionals/tool -resources-your-practice/additional-screening -resources): Gives resources such as an evidence-based screening tool chart for adolescents and adults and drug use screening tool supports; also has a clinician resource and quick reference guide for drug screening in general medical settings.

World Health Organization *Guidelines for the Psychosocially Assisted Pharmacological Treatment of Opioid Dependence* (www.ncbi .nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK143183): Includes links to the Clinical Opiate Withdrawal Scale (www.drugabuse.gov/sites/default/fles/fles /ClinicalOpiateWithdrawalScale.pdf) and other opioid withdrawal scales from Annex 10 of the guidelines.

1. Resources for Counselors and Peer Providers

Organizations

Community Care Behavioral Health Organization (www.ccbh.com): A provider network focused on recovery that has published *Supporting Recovery From Opioid Addiction: Community Care Best Practice Guidelines for Recovery-Oriented Methadone Maintenance* (www.ccbh.com/pdfs/providers/healthchoices /bestpractice/MethadoneBestPracticeGuideline .pdf), a set of recovery-oriented practice implementation guidelines for methadone programs.

Faces & Voices of Recovery (https://facesand voicesofrecovery.org): Dedicated to organizing and mobilizing the millions of Americans in recovery from addiction to alcohol and drugs, their families and friends, and other allies into recovery community organizations and networks. Faces & Voices of Recovery promotes the right resources to recover through advocacy, education, and demonstration of the power and proof of long-term recovery.

International Association of Peer Supporters (https://inaops.org): An organization for mental health and addiction peer recovery support specialists, recovery coaches, recovery educators and trainers, administrators of consumer-operated or peer-run organizations, and others.

Medication-Assisted Recovery Services (MARS) Project (www.marsproject.org): A peer-initiated, peer-based recovery support project sponsored by NAMA Recovery that offers, among other resources, an educational video about the MARS peer support program and an online network for MARS peer support personnel:

- MARS Project Video (www.marsproject.org).
- New York State Peer Recovery Network, Peers Organizing for Results Through Advocacy and Leadership (PORTAL) (http://advocacy .marsproject.org). Created to help peers in recovery more effectively organize their communities, communicate with each other, and create a stronger voice for advocacy efforts.

Pillars of Peer Support Services (www.pillarsof peersupport.org): Develops and fosters the use of Medicaid funding to support peer recovery services in state mental health systems of care.

Recovery Community Services Program— Statewide Network (www.samhsa.gov/grants /grant-announcements/ti-14-001): A SAMHSA grant program for peer-to-peer recovery support services that help people initiate and sustain recovery from SUDs.

Publications and Other Resources

ATTC's Recovery-Oriented Methadone Maintenance (www.attcnetwork.org/userfles /fle/GreatLakes/5th%20Monograph_RM_Methadone.pdf): This guide is the most thorough document on this topic currently available and is applicable to clients receiving other medications for OUD.

Community Care Behavioral Health Organization: These publications outline phase-specific tasks and accompanying strategies for programs that serve clients who take methadone or buprenorphine:
Supporting Recovery From Opioid Addiction: Community Care Best Practice Guidelines for Recovery-Oriented Methadone Maintenance (www.williamwhitepapers.com/pr/Recovery -oriented%20Methadone%20Maintenance %20Best%20Practice%20Guidelines%20 2014%20-%20CCBHO.pdf)
Supporting Recovery From Opioid Addiction: Community Care Best Practice Guidelines for Buprenorphine and Suboxone (www.ccbh.com /pdfs/providers/healthchoices/bestpractice /Community_Care_BP_Guidelines_for_Buprenorphine_and_Suboxone.pdf)

Narcotics Anonymous (NA) (www.na.org): The organization's most recent statement on medications for treating OUD—*Narcotics Anonymous and Persons*

Receiving Medication-Assisted Treatment—is available online (www.na.org /admin/include/spaw2/uploads/pdf/pr/2306_NA_PRMAT_1021.pdf).

SAMHSA (https://store.samhsa.gov): This agency oversees medications to treat opioid addiction, including methadone, buprenorphine, and naltrexone; sets regulations; guides policy; and offers information and resources for the field. SAMHSA has many recovery-oriented publications for providers:

- *Dear Colleague Letters for Medication- Assisted Treatment Providers* (www.samhsa .gov/medication-assisted-treatment /legislation-regulations-guidelines/dear -colleague-letters). Regulations, policies, and best practices for OTPs can change; these regular communications help providers stay up to date on clinical and regulatory issues related to opioid treatment.
- *Medication-Assisted Recovery: Medication Assisted Peer Recovery Support Services Meeting Report* (www.samhsa.gov/sites /default/fles/programs_campaigns /medication_assisted/dear_colleague_letters/2015-prss-summary-report.pdf).
- *Financing Recovery Support Services: Review and Analysis of Funding Recovery Support Services and Policy Recommendations* (www .samhsa.gov/sites/default/fles/partnersfor recovery/docs/RSS_fnancing_report.pdf).
- SAMHSA's *Working Definition of Recovery* (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin/content /PEP12-RECDEF/PEP12-RECDEF.pdf).
- *Access to Recovery Approaches to Recovery- Oriented Systems of Care* (https://store .samhsa.gov/product/Access-to-Recovery -ATR-Approaches-to-Recovery-Oriented -Systems-of-Care/SMA09-4440).
- *Building Bridges—Co-Occurring Mental Illness and Addiction: Consumers and Service Providers, Policymakers, and Researchers in Dialogue* (https://store.samhsa.gov/shin /content//SMA04-3892/SMA04-3892.pdf).

Selected Papers of William L. White (www .williamwhitepapers.com): Contains papers, monographs, and presentations on recovery, including recovery-oriented methadone maintenance, methadone and anti-medication bias, discrimination

and methadone, NA and the pharmacotherapeutic treatment of OUD, and co-participation in 12-Step mutual-support groups and methadone maintenance.

2. Resources for Clients and Families

Organizations

AAOTD (www.aatod.org): Offers a variety of resources, news releases about medication for the treatment of OUD, and information about its national conferences.

Al-Anon Family Groups (www.al-anon.org): Describes group meetings where friends and family members of people with substance use issues share their experiences and learn how to apply the principles of the Al-Anon program to their individual situations. Sponsorship gives members the chance to get personal support from more experienced individuals in the program.

Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) (www.aa.org): Offers group meetings for people who have problems relating to drinking and wish to stop. AA sponsors provide members with more personal support from experienced individuals. Many people who are taking medication to treat OUD find AA increasingly receptive to their decisions about medication, and AA meetings are more widely available to these individuals.

ASAM: Provides patient and family education tools about addiction in general and OUD specifically:

- Patient Resources (www.asam.org/resources /patientresources)
- *Opioid Addiction Treatment: A Guide for Patients, Families, and Friends* (http://eguideline.guidelinecentral.com /i/706017-asam-opioid-patient-piece/0?)

Double Trouble in Recovery (www.hazelden.org /HAZ_MEDIA/3818_doubletroubleinrecovery. pdf): Describes a fellowship of people who support each other in recovering from substance use and mental disorders.

Dual Recovery Anonymous (www.draonline.org): Presents information on mutual-help organization that follows 12-Step principles in supporting people recovering from addiction and emotional or mental illness. Focuses on preventing relapse and actively improving members' quality of life through a community of mutual support.

Faces & Voices of Recovery (https://facesand voicesofrecovery.org): Offers recovery stories, news, events information, publications, and webinars.

Heroin Anonymous (http://heroinanonymous .org): Describes a nonprofit fellowship of individuals in recovery from heroin addiction committed to helping each other stay sober. This organization holds local support meetings, a directory of which can be found on its website.

LAC (https://lac.org): Offers information about the rights of people with criminal records, HIV/AIDS, and SUDs.

Learn to Cope (www.learn2cope.org): Describes a secular mutual-help group that offers education, resources, and peer support for the families of people with SUDs (although the focus is primarily on OUD). The organization maintains an online forum, but groups are only available in a few states.

NA (www.na.org): Provides a global, community-based organization with a multilingual, multicultural membership that supports addiction recovery via a 12-Step program, including regular group meeting attendance. Members hold nearly 67,000 meetings weekly in 139 countries. NA is an ongoing support network for maintaining a drug-free lifestyle. NA doesn't focus on a particular addictive substance.

NAMA Recovery (www.methadone.org): Offers an education series, provides training and certification for Certified MAT Advocates, and has local chapters and international affiliates that act to advocate for methadone patients. It has a

helpful webpage titled FAQs About Advocate Training and Certification (www.methadone.org /certifcation/faq.html).

Nar-Anon Family Groups (www.nar-anon.org): Provides group meetings where friends and family of people with drug use problems can share their experiences and learn to apply the 12-Step Nar-Anon program to their lives. Nar-Anon groups also offer more individualized support from experienced individuals in the program who act as sponsors.

National Alliance on Mental Illness (NAMI)
(www.nami.org): Describes the largest grassroots educational, peer support, and mental health advocacy organization in the United States. Founded in 1979 by a group of family members of people with mental disorders, NAMI has developed into an association of hundreds of local affiliates, state organizations, and volunteers.

Parents of Addicted Loved Ones (https:// palgroup.org): Presents a secular support group for parents who have a child with an SUD. The organization has meetings in only some states but also hosts telephone meetings.

Pills Anonymous (www.pillsanonymous.org): Offers a 12-Step mutual-support group that holds regular meetings in which individuals in recovery from addiction to pills share their experiences, build their strengths, and offer hope for recovery to one another.

Secular Organizations for Sobriety (www.sos sobriety.org): Describes a nonprofit, nonreligious network of autonomous, nonprofessional local groups that support people in achieving and maintaining abstinence from alcohol and drug addiction.

Self-Management for Addiction Recovery (SMART Recovery)
(www.smartrecovery.org): Is a self-empowering addiction recovery support

group; participants learn science-based tools for addiction recovery and have access to an international recovery community of mutual-help groups.

Stop Stigma Now (www.stopstigmanow.org): Describes an advocacy organization that works to eradicate prejudice associated with taking medication to treat OUD and offers resources and a media library.

Women for Sobriety (https://womenfor sobriety.org/beta2): Offers an abstinence-based mutual-help group that helps women find their individual paths to recovery by acknowledging the unique needs women have in recovery. This organization is not affiliated with any other recovery organization. It offers recovery tools to help women in recovery develop coping skills focused on emotional growth, spiritual growth, self-esteem, and a healthy lifestyle.

Publications and Other Resources

AAAP Patient Resources (www.aaap.org /patient-resources/helpful-links): Offers resources and publications for patients and their families.

Addiction Treatment Forum, *Narcotics Anonymous and the Pharmacotherapeutic Treatment of Opioid Addiction in the United States* (http://atforum.com/documents /2011NAandMedication-assistedTreatment.pdf): Presents William White's publication for people receiving medication for OUD that gives information on the pros and cons of 12-Step groups and how to prepare for meetings.

ASAM, Opioid Addiction Treatment: A Guide for Patients, Families, and Friends (http:// eguideline.guidelinecentral.com/i/706017-asam -opioid-patient-piece): Provides a guide about the treatment of OUD for patients, families, and friends.

HHS:

- Smokefree.gov (https://smokefree.gov). Provides useful information that helps individuals in planning and maintaining tobacco cessation.

- BeTobaccoFree.gov (https://betobaccofree .hhs.gov/health-effects/nicotine-health). Provides information for individuals struggling with nicotine addiction and links for clinicians that provide guidance on the care for patients with nicotine addiction.

LAC (https://lac.org/resources/substance-use -resources/medication-assisted-treatment -resources). Maintains a library of documents related to medication for the treatment of OUD and other resources, including an advocacy toolkit, sample support letter form, training materials, and webinars:

- *Driving on Methadone or Buprenorphine (Suboxone): DUI?* (http://lac.org/wp-content /uploads/2014/07/Driving-on-Methadone-or -Suboxone-DUI.pdf) factsheet.
- *Know Your Rights: Employment Discrimination Against People With Alcohol/Drug Histories* (https://lac.org/resources/substance-use -resources/employment-education-housing -resources/webinar-know-rights-employment -discrimination-people-alcoholdrug-histories) webinar.
- *Know Your Rights: Rights for Individuals on Medication-Assisted Treatment* (https://lac .org/wp-content/uploads/2014/12/Know Your Rts - MAT fnal 9.28.10.pdf) publication.
- *Medication-Assisted Treatment for Opioid Addiction: Myths and Facts* (http://lac.org /wp-content/uploads/2016/02/Myth-Fact -for-MAT.pdf) factsheet.

NAMA Recovery (www.methadone.org): Offers many resources and training opportunities to become a certifed advocate for pharmacotherapy for OUD and provides links to resources related to medication for the treatment of OUD.

National Council on Alcoholism and Drug Dependence's *Consumer Guide to Medication- Assisted Recovery* (www.ncadd.org/images /stories/PDF/Consumer-Guide-Medication -Assisted-Recovery.pdf).

NIAAA's Rethinking Drinking (www.rethinking drinking.niaaa.nih.gov/help-links): Provides links to patient and family education, help lines, and other recovery resources.

SAMHSA (https://store.samhsa.gov): Provides patient and family educational tools about OUD and medication treatment for OUD treatment. The resources below are available in several languages, including Spanish and Russian:

- *Decisions in Recovery: Treatment for Opioid Use Disorders* (https://store.samhsa.gov /product/Decisions-in-Recovery-Treatment -for-Opioid-Use-Disorders/SMA16-4993). Helps clients identify an appropriate path of recovery from OUD.
- *The Facts About Buprenorphine for Treatment of Opioid Addiction* (https://store.samhsa .gov/shin/content//SMA14-4442/SMA14 -4442.pdf).
- *The Facts About Naltrexone for Treatment of Opioid Addiction* (https://store.samhsa.gov /shin/content/SMA09-4444/SMA09-4444.pdf).
- *Know Your Rights: Rights for Individuals on Medication-Assisted Treatment* (https://store .samhsa.gov/product/Rights-for-Individuals -on-Medication-Assisted-Treatment /SMA09-4449).
- *Medication-Assisted Treatment for Opioid Addiction: Facts for Families and Friends* (www.ct.gov/dmhas/lib/dmhas/publications /MAT-InfoFamilyFriends.pdf).
- *What Every Individual Needs To Know About Methadone Maintenance* (https://store.samhsa .gov/product/What-Every-Individual-Needs -to-Know-About-Methadone-Maintenance /SMA06-4123).
- *What Is Substance Abuse Treatment? A Booklet for Families* (https://store.samhsa .gov/shin/content/SMA14-4126/SMA14 -4126.pdf)

3. Glossary of TIP Terminology

Abuse liability: The likelihood that a medication with central nervous system activity will cause desirable psychological effects, such as euphoria or mood changes, that promote the medication's misuse.

Addiction: As defined by ASAM,[55] "a primary, chronic disease of brain reward, motivation, memory, and related circuitry." It is characterized by inability to

consistently abstain, impairment in behavioral control, craving, diminished recognition of significant problems with one's behaviors and interpersonal relationships, and a dysfunctional emotional response. Like other chronic diseases, addiction often involves cycles of **relapse** and **remission**. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders,* Fifth Edition[56] (DSM-5), does not use the term for diagnostic purposes, but it commonly describes the more severe forms of opioid use disorder.

Bioavailability: Proportion of medication administered that reaches the bloodstream.

Care provider: Encompasses both **healthcare professionals** and other professionals who do not provide medical services, such as counselors or providers of supportive services. Often shortened to "provider."

Cross-tolerance: Potential for people tolerant to one opioid (e.g., heroin) to be tolerant to another (e.g., methadone).

Dissociation: Rate at which a drug uncouples from the receptor. A drug with a longer dissociation rate will have a longer duration of action than a drug with a shorter dissociation rate.

Half-life: Rate of removal of a drug from the body. One half-life removes 50 percent from the plasma. After a drug is stopped, it takes five half-lives to remove about 95 percent from the plasma. If a drug is continued at the same dose, its plasma level will continue to rise until it reaches steady state concentrations after about five half-lives.

Healthcare professionals: Physicians, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, and other medical service professionals who are eligible to prescribe medications for and treat patients with OUD. The term "**prescribers**" also refers to these healthcare professionals.

Induction: Process of initial dosing with medication for OUD treatment until the patient reaches a state of stability; also called initiation.

Intrinsic activity: The degree of receptor activation attributable to drug binding. **Full agonist, partial agonist**, and **antagonist** are terms that describe the intrinsic activity of a drug.

Maintenance treatment: Providing medications to achieve and sustain clinical remission of signs and symptoms of OUD and support the individual process of recovery without a specific endpoint (as with the typical standard of care in medical and psychiatric treatment of other chronic illnesses).

Medically supervised withdrawal (formerly called detoxification): Using an opioid agonist (or an alpha-2 adrenergic agonist if opioid agonist is not available) in tapering doses or other medications to help a patient discontinue illicit or prescription opioids.

Medical management: Process whereby healthcare professionals provide medication, basic brief supportive counseling, monitoring of drug use and medication adherence, and referrals, when necessary, to addiction counseling and other services to address the patient's medical, mental health, comorbid addiction, and psychosocial needs.

Mutual-help groups: Groups of people who work together on obtaining and maintaining recovery. Unlike peer support (e.g., the use of recovery coaches), mutual-help groups consist entirely of people who volunteer their time and typically have no official connection to treatment programs. Most are self-supporting. Although 12-Step groups such as AA and NA are the most widespread and well-researched type of mutual-help groups, other groups may be available in some areas. They range from groups affiliated with a religion or church (e.g., Celebrate Recovery, Millati Islami) to purely secular groups (e.g., SMART Recovery, Women for Sobriety).

Office-based opioid treatment (OBOT):
Providing medication for OUD in settings other than certified OTPs.

Opiates: A subclass of opioids derived from opium (e.g., morphine, codeine, thebaine).

Opioid misuse: The use of prescription opioids in any way other than as directed by a prescriber; the use of any opioid in a manner, situation, amount, or frequency that can cause harm to self or others.

Opioid receptor agonist: A substance that has an affinity for and stimulates physiological activity at cell receptors in the central nervous system that are normally stimulated by opioids. **Mu-opioid receptor full agonists** (e.g., methadone) bind to the mu-opioid receptor and produce actions similar to those produced by the endogenous opioid beta-endorphin. Increasing the dose increases the effect. **Mu-opioid receptor partial agonists** (e.g., buprenorphine) bind to the mu-opioid receptor. Unlike with full agonists, increasing their dose may not produce additional effects once they have reached their maximal effect. At low doses, partial agonists may produce effects similar to those of full agonists.

Opioid receptor antagonist: A substance that has an affinity for opioid receptors in the central nervous system without producing the physiological effects of opioid agonists. Mu-opioid receptor antagonists (e.g., naltrexone) can block the effects of exogenously administered opioids.
Opioid receptor blockade: Blunting or blocking of the euphoric effects of an opioid through opioid receptor occupancy by an opioid agonist (e.g., methadone, buprenorphine) or antagonist (e.g., naltrexone).

Opioids: All natural, synthetic, and semisynthetic substances that have effects similar to morphine. They can be used as medications having such effects (e.g., methadone, buprenorphine, oxycodone).

Opioid treatment program (OTP): An accredited treatment program with SAMHSA certification and DEA registration to administer and dispense opioid agonist medications that are approved by FDA to treat opioid addiction. Currently, these include methadone and buprenorphine products. Other pharmacotherapies, such as naltrexone, may be provided but are not subject to these regulations. OTPs must provide adequate medical, counseling, vocational, educational, and other assessment and treatment services either onsite or by referral to an outside agency or practitioner through a formal agreement.

Opioid use disorder (OUD): Per DSM-5, a disorder characterized by loss of control of opioid use, risky opioid use, impaired social functioning, tolerance, and withdrawal. Tolerance and withdrawal do not count toward the diagnosis in people experiencing these symptoms when using opioids under appropriate medical supervision. OUD covers a range of severity and replaces what the DSM-IV termed "opioid abuse" and "opioid dependence." An OUD diagnosis is applicable to a person who uses opioids and experiences at least 2 of the 11 symptoms in a 12-month period.

Peer support: The use of peer support specialists in recovery to provide nonclinical (i.e., not requiring training in diagnosis or treatment) recovery support services to individuals in recovery from addiction and to their families.

Peer support specialist: Someone in recovery who has lived experience in addiction plus skills learned in formal training. Peer support specialists may be paid professionals or volunteers. They are distinguished from members of mutual help groups because they maintain contact with treatment staff. They offer experiential knowledge that treatment staff often lack.

Prescribers: Healthcare professionals who are eligible to prescribe medications for OUD.

Psychosocial support: Ancillary services to enhance a patient's overall functioning and well-being, including recovery support services, case management, housing, employment, and educational services.

Psychosocial treatment: Interventions that seek to enhance a patient's social and mental functioning, including addiction counseling, contingency management, and mental health services.

Receptor affinity: Strength of the bond between a medication and its receptor. A medication with high mu-opioid receptor affinity requires lower concentrations to occupy the same number of mu-opioid receptors as a drug with lower mu-opioid receptor affinity. Drugs with high mu-opioid receptor affinity may displace drugs with lower affinity.

Recovery: A process of change through which individuals improve their health and wellness, live a self-directed life, and strive to reach their full potential. Even individuals with severe and chronic SUDs can, with help, overcome their SUDs and regain health and social function. Although abstinence from all substance misuse is a cardinal feature of a recovery lifestyle, it is not the only healthy, prosocial feature. Patients taking FDA-approved medication to treat OUD can be considered in recovery.

Recovery capital: The sum of the internal (e.g., motivation, self-efficacy, spirituality) and external (e.g., access to health care, employment, family support) resources that an individual can draw on to begin and sustain recovery from SUDs.

Recovery-oriented care: A service orientation that supports individuals with behavioral health conditions in a process of change through which they can improve their health and wellness, live self-directed lives, and strive to reach their full potential.

Relapse: A process in which a person with OUD who has been in **remission** experiences a return of symptoms or loss of remission. A relapse is different from a **return to opioid use** in that it involves more than a single incident of use. Relapses occur over a period of time and can be interrupted. Relapse need not be long lasting. The TIP uses relapse to describe relapse prevention, a common treatment modality.

Remission: A medical term meaning a disappearance of signs and symptoms of the disease. DSM-5 defines remission as present in people who previously met OUD criteria but no longer meet any OUD criteria (with the possible exception of craving). Remission is an essential element of **recovery**.

Return to opioid use: One or more instances of **opioid misuse** without a return of symptoms of OUD. A return to opioid use may lead to **relapse**.

Tolerance: Alteration of the body's responsiveness to alcohol or other drugs (including opioids) such that higher doses are required to produce the same effect achieved during initial use. See also **medically supervised withdrawal**.

You are more than half-way there!! Keep it up!

Part 2. Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment

Chapter 1—A New Look at Motivation

"Motivation to initiate and persist in change fluctuates over time regardless of the person's stage of readiness. From the client's perspective, a decision is just the beginning of change."
Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 293

Key Messages

- Motivation is the key to substance use behavior change.
- Counselor use of empathy, not authority and power, is essential to enhancing client motivation to change.
- The Transtheoretical Model (TTM) of the Stages of Change (SOC) approach is a useful overarching framework that can help you tailor specific counseling strategies to the different stages.

Why do people change? How is motivation linked to substance use behavior change? How can you help clients enhance their motivation to engage in substance use disorder (SUD) treatment and initiate recovery? This Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) will answer these and other important questions. Using the TTM of behavioral change as a foundation, Chapter 1 lays the groundwork for answering such questions. It offers an overview of the nature of motivation and its link to changing substance use behaviors. It also addresses the shift away from abstinence-only addiction treatment perspectives toward client-centered approaches that enhance motivation and reduce risk.

In the past three decades, the addiction treatment field has focused on discovering and applying science-informed practices that help people with SUDs enhance their motivation to stop or reduce alcohol, drug, and nicotine use. Research and clinical literature have explored how to help clients sustain behavior change in ongoing recovery. Such recovery support helps prevent or lessen the social, mental, and health problems that result from a recurrence of substance use or a relapse to previous levels of substance misuse.

This TIP examines motivational enhancement and substance use behavior change using two science-informed approaches (DiClemente, Corno, Graydon, Wiprovnick, & Knobloch, 2017):

1. Motivational interviewing (MI), which is a respectful counseling style that focuses on helping clients resolve ambivalence about and enhance motivation to change health-risk behaviors, including substance misuse

2. The TTM of the SOC, which provides an overarching framework for motivational counselling approaches throughout all phases of addiction treatment

Substance Category	Representative Examples
Alcohol	• Beer • Wine • Malt liquor • Distilled spirits

Illicit Drugs	• Cocaine, including crack
	• Heroin
	• Hallucinogens, including LSD, PCP, ecstasy, peyote, mescaline, psilocybin
	• Methamphetamines, including crystal meth
	• Marijuana, including hashish*
	• Synthetic drugs, including K2, Spice, and "bath salts"**
	• Prescription-type medications that are used for nonmedical purposes
	  ○ Pain Relievers - Synthetic, semi-synthetic, and non-synthetic opioid medications, including fentanyl, codeine, oxycodone, hydrocodone, and tramadol products
	  ○ Tranquilizers, including benzodiazepines, meprobamate products, and muscle relaxants
	  ○ Stimulants and Methamphetamine, including amphetamine, dextroamphetamine, and phentermine products; mazindol products; and methylphenidate or dexmethylphenidate products
	  ○ Sedatives, including temazepam, flurazepam, or triazolam and any barbiturates

Over-the-Counter Drugs and Other Substances	• Cough and cold medicines** • Inhalants, including amyl nitrite, cleaning fluids, gasoline and lighter gases, anesthetics, solvents, spray paint, nitrous oxide

* As of June 2016, 25 states and the District of Columbia have legalized medical marijuana use, four states have legalized retail marijuana sales, and the District of Columbia has legalized personal use and home cultivation (both medical and recreational). It should be noted that none of the permitted uses under state laws alter the status of marijuana and its constituent compounds as illicit drugs under Schedule I of the federal Controlled Substances Act. See the section on Marijuana: A Changing Legal and

*The definitions of all terms marked with an asterisk correspond closely to those given in Facing Addiction in America: The Surgeon General's Report on Alcohol, Drugs, and Health (Office of the Surgeon General, 2016). This resource provides a great deal of useful information about substance misuse and its impact on U.S. public health. The report is available online (*https://addiction.surgeongeneral.gov/sites/default/files/surgeon-generals-report.pdf*).

Key Terms

Addiction*: The most severe form of SUD, associated with compulsive or uncontrolled use of one or more substances. Addiction is a chronic brain disease that has the potential for both recurrence (relapse) and recovery.

Alcohol misuse: The use of alcohol in any harmful way, including use that constitutes alcohol use disorder (AUD).

Alcohol use disorder: Per the American Psychiatric Association's (APA) *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fifth Edition (DSM-5; APA, 2013), a diagnosis applicable to a person who uses alcohol and experiences at least 2 of the 11 symptoms in a 12-month period. Key aspects of AUD include loss of control, continued use despite adverse consequences, tolerance, and withdrawal. AUD covers a range of severity and replaces what DSM-IV, termed "alcohol abuse" and "alcohol dependence" (APA, 1994).

Health-risk behavior: Any behavior (e.g., tobacco or alcohol use, unsafe sexual practices, nonadherence to prescribed medication regimens) that increases the risk of disease or injury.

Recovery*: A process of change through which individuals improve their health and wellness, live a self-directed life, and strive to reach their full potential. Even individuals with severe and chronic SUDs can, with help, overcome their disorder and regain health and social function. This is called remission. When those positive changes and values become part of a voluntarily adopted lifestyle, that is called "being in recovery." Although abstinence from all substance misuse is a cardinal feature of a recovery lifestyle, it is not the only healthy, pro-social feature.

Recurrence: An instance of substance use that occurs after a period of abstinence. Where possible, this TIP uses the terms "recurrence" or "return to substance use" instead of "relapse," which can have negative connotations (see entry below).

Relapse*: A return to substance use after a significant period of abstinence.

Substance*: A psychoactive compound with the potential to cause health and social problems, including SUDs (and their most severe manifestation, addiction). The table at the end of this exhibit lists common examples of such substances.

Substance misuse*: The use of any substance in a manner, situation, amount, or frequency that can cause harm to users or to those around them. For some substances or individuals, any use would constitute misuse (e.g., underage drinking, injection drug use).

Substance use*: The use—even one time—of any of the substances listed in the table at the end of this exhibit.

Substance use disorder*: A medical illness caused by repeated misuse of a substance or substances. According to DSM-5 (APA, 2013), SUDs are characterized by clinically significant impairments in health, social function, and impaired control over substance use and are diagnosed through assessing cognitive, behavioral, and psychological symptoms. SUDs range from mild to severe and from temporary to chronic. They typically develop gradually over time with repeated misuse, leading to changes in brain circuits governing incentive salience (the ability of substance-associated cues to trigger substance seeking), reward, stress, and executive functions like decision making and self-control. Multiple factors influence whether and how rapidly a person will develop an SUD. These factors include the substance itself; the genetic vulnerability of the user; and the amount, frequency, and duration of the misuse. A severe SUD is commonly called an addiction.

Motivation and Behavior Change

Motivation is a critical element of behavior change (Flannery, 2017) that predicts client abstinence and reductions in substance use (DiClemente et al., 2017). You cannot give clients motivation, but you can help them identify their reasons and need for change and facilitate planning for change. Successful SUD treatment approaches **acknowledge motivation as a multidimensional, fluid state during which people make difficult changes to health-risk behaviors, like substance misuse.**

The Nature of Motivation

The following factors define motivation and its ability to help people change health-risk behaviors.

• **Motivation is a key to substance use behavior change.** Change, like motivation, is a complex construct with evolving meanings. One framework for understanding motivation and how it relates to behavior changes is the self-determination theory (SDT). SDT suggests that people inherently want to engage in activities that meet their need for autonomy, competency (i.e., self-efficacy), and relatedness

(i.e., having close personal relationships) (Deci & Ryan, 2012; Flannery, 2017). SDT describes two kinds of motivation:
– Intrinsic motivation (e.g., desires, needs, values, goals)
– Extrinsic motivation (e.g., social influences, external rewards, consequences)

MI is a counseling approach that is consistent with SDT and emphasizes enhancing internal motivation to change. In the SDT framework, providing a supportive relational context that promotes client autonomy and competence enhances intrinsic motivation, helps clients internalize extrinsic motivational rewards, and supports behavior change (Flannery, 2017; Kwasnicka, Dombrowski, White, & Sniehotta, 2016; Moyers, 2014).

• **Contingency management is a counseling strategy that can reinforce extrinsic motivation.** It uses external motivators or reinforcers (e.g., expectation of a reward or negative consequence) to enhance behavior change (Sayegh, Huey, Zara, & Jhaveri, 2017).

• **Motivation helps people resolve their ambivalence about making difficult lifestyle changes.** Helping clients strengthen their own motivation increases the likelihood that they will commit to a specific behavioral change plan (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Research supports the importance of SDT-based client motivation in positive addiction treatment outcomes (Wild, Yuan, Rush, & Urbanoski, 2016). Motivation and readiness to change are consistently associated with increased help seeking, treatment adherence and completion, and positive SUD treatment outcomes (Miller & Moyers, 2015).

• **Motivation is multidimensional.** Motivation includes clients' internal desires, needs, and values. It also includes external pressures, demands, and reinforcers (positive and negative) that influence clients and their perceptions about the risks and benefits of engaging in substance use behaviors. Two components of motivation predict good treatment outcomes (Miller & Moyers, 2015):
– The importance clients associate with changes
– Their confidence in their ability to make changes

• **Motivation is dynamic and fluctuates.** Motivation is a dynamic process that responds to interpersonal influences, including feedback and an awareness of

different available choices (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Motivation is a strong predictor of addiction treatment outcomes (Miller & Moyers, 2015). Motivation can fluctuate over different stages of the SOC and varies in intensity. It can decrease when the client feels doubt or ambivalence about change and increase when reasons for change and specific goals become clear. In this sense, motivation can be an ambivalent state or a resolute commitment to act—or not to act.

• **Motivation is influenced by social interactions.** An individual's motivation to change can be positively influenced by supportive family and friends as well as community support and negatively influenced by lack of social support, negative social support (e.g., a social network of friends and associates who misuse alcohol), and negative public perception of SUDs.

• **Motivation can be enhanced.** Motivation is a part of the human experience. No one is totally unmotivated (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Motivation is accessible and can be enhanced at many points in the change process. Historically, in addiction treatment it was thought that clients had to "hit bottom" or experience terrible, irreparable consequences of their substance misuse to become ready to change. Research now shows that counselors can help clients identify and explore their desire, ability, reasons, and need to change substance use behaviors; this effort enhances motivation and facilitates movement toward change (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

• **Motivation is influenced by the counselor's style.** The way you interact with clients impacts how they respond and whether treatment is successful. Counselor interpersonal skills are associated with better treatment outcomes. In particular, an empathetic counselor style predicts increased retention in treatment and reduced substance use across a wide range of clinical settings and types of clients (Moyers & Miller, 2013). The most desirable attributes for the counselor mirror those recommended in the general psychology literature and include nonpossessive warmth, genuineness,

counselor interaction with clients, such as challenging client defenses and arguing, tends to be counterproductive and is associated with poorer outcomes for clients, particularly when counselors are less skilled (Polcin, Mulia, & Jones, 2012; Roman & Peters, 2016).

• **Your task is to elicit and enhance motivation.** Although change is the responsibility of clients and many people change substance use behaviors on their own without formal treatment (Kelly, Bergman, Hoeppner, Vilsaint, & White, 2017), you can enhance clients' motivation for positive change at each stage of the SOC process. Your task is not to teach, instruct, or give unsolicited advice. Your role is to help clients recognize when a substance use behavior is inconsistent with their values or stated goals, regard positive change to be in their best interest, feel competent to change, develop a plan for change, begin taking action, and continue using strategies that lessen the risk of a return to substance misuse (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Finally, you should be sensitive and responsive to cultural factors that may influence client motivation. For more information about enhancing cultural awareness and responsiveness, see TIP 59: *Improving Cultural Competence* (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2014a).

Counselor Note: Are You Ready, Willing, and Able?

Motivation is captured, in part, in the popular phrase that a person is ready, willing, and able to change:

• "Ability" refers to the extent to which a person has the necessary skills, resources, and confidence to make a change.

• "Willingness" is linked to the importance a person places on changing—how much a change is wanted or desired. However, even willingness and ability are not always enough.

• "Ready" represents a final step in which a person finally decides to change a particular behavior.

Your task is to help the client become ready, willing, and able to change.

Why Enhance Motivation?

Although much progress has been made in identifying people who misuse substances and who have SUD and in using science-informed interventions such as motivational counseling approaches to treat them, the United States is still facing many SUD challenges. For example, the National Survey on Drug Use and Health (SAMHSA, 2018) reports that, in 2017, approximately:

• 140.6 million Americans ages 12 and older currently consumed alcohol, 66.6 million engaged in past-month binge drinking (defined as 5 or more drinks on the same occasion on at least 1 day in the past 30 days for men and 4 or more drinks on the same occasion on at least 1 day in the past 30 days for women), and 16.7 million drank heavily in the past month (defined as binge drinking on 5 or more days in the past 30 days).

• 30.5 million people ages 12 and older had past-month illicit drug use.

• 11.4 million people misused opioids (defined as prescription pain reliever misuse or heroin use) in the past year.

• 8.5 million adults ages 18 and older (3.4 percent of all adults) had both a mental disorder and at least one past-year SUD.

• 18.2 million people who needed SUD treatment did not receive specialty treatment.

• One-third of people who perceived a need for addiction treatment did not receive it because they lacked health insurance and could not pay for services.

Enhancing motivation can improve addiction treatment outcomes. In the United States, millions of people with SUDs are not receiving treatment. Many do not seek treatment because their motivation to change their substance use behaviors is low. Motivational counseling approaches are associated with greater participation in treatment and positive treatment outcomes. Such outcomes include increased motivation to change; reductions in consumption of alcohol, tobacco, cannabis, and other substances; increased abstinence rates; higher client confidence in ability to change behaviors; and greater treatment engagement (Copeland, McNamara, Kelson, & Simpson, 2015; DiClemente et al., 2017; Lundahl et al., 2013; Smedslund et al., 2011).

The benefits of motivational enhancement approaches include:

- Enhancing motivation to change.
- Preparing clients to enter treatment.
- Engaging and retaining clients in treatment.
- Increasing participation and involvement.
- Improving treatment outcomes.
- Encouraging rapid return to treatment if clients return to substance misuse.

Changing Perspectives on Addiction and Treatment

Historically, in the United States, different views about the nature of addiction and its causes have influenced the development of treatment approaches. For example, after the passage of the Harrison Narcotics Act in 1914, it was illegal for physicians to treat people with drug addiction. The only options for people with alcohol or drug use disorders were inebriate homes and asylums. The underlying assumption pervading these early treatment approaches was that alcohol and drug addiction was either a moral failing or a pernicious disease (White, 2014). By the 1920s, compassionate treatment of opioid addiction was available in medical clinics. At the same time, equally passionate support for the temperance movement, with its focus on drunkenness as a moral failing and abstinence as the only cure, was gaining momentum.

The development of the modern SUD treatment system dates only from the late 1950s. Even “modern” addiction treatment has not always acknowledged counselors’ capacity to support client motivation. Historically, motivation was considered a static client trait; the client either had it or did not have it, and there was nothing a counselor could do to influence it.

This view of motivation as static led to blaming clients for tension or discord in therapeutic relationships. Clients who disagreed with diagnoses, did not adhere to treatment plans, or refused to accept labels like “alcoholic” or “drug addict” were seen as difficult or resistant (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

SUD treatment has since evolved in response to new technologies, research, and theories of addiction with associated counseling approaches. Exhibit 1.1 summarizes some models of addiction that have influenced treatment methods in the United States (DiClemente, 2018).

Model	Underlying Assumptions	Treatment Approaches
Moral/legal	Addiction is a set of behaviors that violates religious, moral, or legal codes.	Abstinence and use of willpower External control through hospitalization or incarceration
Psychological	Addiction results from deficits in learning, emotional dysfunction, or psychopathology.	Cognitive, behavioral, psychoanalytic, or psychodynamic psychotherapies
Sociocultural	Addiction results from socialization and sociocultural factors. Contributing factors include socioeconomic status, cultural and ethnic beliefs, availability of substances, laws and penalties regulating substance use, norms and rules of families and other social groups, parental and peer expectations, modeling of acceptable behaviors,	Focus on building new social and family relationships, developing social competency and skills, and working within a client's culture

	and the presence or absence of reinforcers.	
Spiritual	Addiction is a spiritual disease. Recovery is predicated on a recognition of the limitations of the self and a desire to achieve health through a connection with that which transcends the individual.	Integrating 12-Step recovery principles or other culturally based spiritual practices (e.g., American Indian Wellbriety principles) into addiction treatment Linking clients to 12-Step, faith- and spiritual-based recovery, and other support groups
Medical	Addiction is a chronic, progressive, disease. Genetic predisposition and neurochemical brain changes are primary etiological factors.	Medical and behavioral interventions including pharmacotherapy, education, and behavioral change advice and monitoring
Integrated treatment	Addiction is a chronic disease that is best treated by collaborative and comprehensive approaches that address biopsychosocial and spiritual components.	Integrated treatment with a recovery focus across treatment settings

Earlier Perspectives

Although the field is evolving toward a more comprehensive understanding of SUD, **earlier views of addiction still persist in parts of the U.S. addiction treatment system.** For example, the psychological model of addiction treatment

gave rise, in part, to the idea of an "addictive personality" and that psychological defenses (e.g., denial) need to be confronted. Remnants of earlier perspectives of addiction and their associated treatment approaches, which are not supported by research, include:

• **An addictive personality leads to SUDs.** Although it is commonly believed that people with SUDs possess similar personality traits that make treatment difficult, no distinctive personality traits have been found to predict that an individual will develop an SUD (Amodeo, 2015). The tendencies of an addictive personality most often cited are denial, projection, poor insight, and poor self-esteem. This idea is a deficit-based concept that can lead to counselors and clients viewing addiction as a fixed part of an underlying personality disorder and therefore difficult to treat (Amodeo, 2015).

• **Rationalization and denial are characteristics of addiction.** Another leftover from earlier psychological perspectives on addiction is that people with SUDs have strong psychological defenses, such as denial and rationalization, which lead to challenging behaviors like evasiveness, manipulation, and resistance (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013). The clinical and research literature does not support the belief that people with SUDs have more or stronger defenses than other clients (Connors et al., 2013).

• **Resistance is a characteristic of "unmotivated" clients in addiction treatment** (Connors et al., 2013). When clients are labeled as manipulative or resistant, given no voice in selecting treatment goals, or directed authoritatively to do or not to do something, the result is a predictable response of resistance or reactivity to the counselor's directives (Beutler, Harwood, Michelson, Song, & Holman, 2011). Viewing resistance—along with rationalization and denial—as characteristic of addiction and making efforts to weaken these defenses actually strengthens them. This paradox seemed to confirm the idea that resistance and denial were essential components of addiction and traits of clients.

• **Confrontation of psychological defenses and substance misuse behaviors is an effective counseling approach.** Historically, the idea that resistance and denial are characteristic of addiction led to the use of confrontation as a way to aggressively break down these defenses (White & Miller, 2007). However,

adversarial confrontation is one of the least effective methods for helping clients change substance use behaviors, can paradoxically reduce motivation for beneficial change, and often contributes to poor outcomes (Bertholet, Palfai, Gaume, Daeppen, & Saitz, 2013; Moos, 2012; Moyers & Miller, 2013; Romano & Peters, 2016). Yet there is a constructive type of confrontation. This kind of confrontation must be done within the context of a trusting and respectful relationship and is delivered it in a supportive way that also elicits hope for change (Polcin et al., 2012).

For many reasons, the U.S. treatment field fell into some rather aggressive, argumentative, "denial-busting" methods for confronting people with alcohol and drug problems. This perspective was guided, in part, by the belief that substance misuse links to a particular personality pattern characterized by such rigid defense mechanisms as denial and rationalization. In this perspective, the counselor must take responsibility for impressing reality on clients, who cannot see it on their own. Such confrontation found its way into the popular Minnesota model of treatment and into Synanon (a drug treatment community known for group sessions in which participants verbally attacked each other) and other similar therapeutic community programs.

After the 1970s, the treatment field began to move away from such methods. The Hazelden Foundation officially renounced the "tear them down to build them up" approach in 1985, expressing regret that such confrontational approaches had become associated with the Minnesota model. Psychological studies have found no consistent pattern of personality or defense mechanisms associated with SUDs. Clinical studies have linked worse outcomes to more confrontational counselors, groups, and programs (Miller & Wilbourne, 2002; Moos, 2012; Romano & Peters, 2016). Instead, successful outcomes (Moyers, Houck, Rice, Longabaugh, & Miller, 2016) generally have been associated with counselors showing high levels of empathy as defined by Carl Rogers (1980). The Johnson Institute now emphasizes a supportive, compassionate style for conducting family interventions.

I was at first surprised when counselors attending my MI workshops and watching me demonstrate the style observed, “In a different way, you’re very confrontational.” This comes up in almost every training now. Some call it “gentle confrontation.” This got me thinking about what confrontation really means. The linguistic roots of the verb “to confront” mean “to come face-to-face.” When you think about it that way, confrontation is precisely what we are trying to accomplish: to allow our clients to come face-to-face with a difficult and often threatening reality, to “let it in” rather than “block it out,” and to allow this reality to change them. That makes confrontation a **goal** of counseling rather than a particular **style** or **technique**.

Once you see this—namely, that opening to new information, face-to-face, is a **goal** of counseling—then the question becomes, “What is the best way to achieve that goal?” Strong evidence suggests that direct, forceful, aggressive approaches are perhaps the **least** effective way to help people consider new information and change their perceptions. Such confrontation increases the very phenomenon it is supposed to overcome—defensiveness—and decreases clients’ likelihood of change (Miller, Benefield, & Tonigan, 1993; Miller & Wilbourne, 2002; Moos, 2012; Romano & Peters, 2016). It is also inappropriate in many cultures. Getting in a client’s face may work for some, but for most, it is exactly the opposite of what is needed—to come face-to-face with painful reality and to change.
William R. Miller, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Chair

A New Perspective

As the addiction treatment field has matured, it has tried to integrate conflicting theories and approaches and to incorporate research findings into a comprehensive model. The following sections address recent changes in addiction treatment with important implications for applying motivational methods.

Focus on client strengths

Historically the treatment field has focused on the deficits and limitations of clients. Today, greater emphasis is placed on **identifying, enhancing, and using clients’ strengths, abilities, and competencies.** This trend parallels the principles

of motivational counseling, which affirm clients, emphasize personal autonomy, support and strengthen self-efficacy, and reinforce that change is possible (see Chapter 4). The responsibility for recovery rests with clients, and the judgmental tone, which is a remnant of the moral model of addiction, is eliminated.

Individualized and person-centered treatment

In the past, clients frequently received standardized treatment, no matter what their problems or SUD severity. Today, **treatment is increasingly based on clients' individual needs, which are carefully and comprehensively assessed at intake.** Positive outcomes such as higher levels of engagement in psychosocial treatments, decreased alcohol use, and improved quality of life are associated with person-centered care and a focus on individualized treatment (Barrio & Gual, 2016; Bray et al., 2017; Jackson et al., 2014). In this perspective, clients have choices about desirable, suitable treatment options—they are not prescribed treatment. Motivational approaches emphasize choice by eliciting personal goals from clients and involving them in selecting the type of treatment needed or desired from a menu of options.

A shift away from labeling

Historically, a diagnosis or disease defined the client and became a dehumanizing attribute of the individual. Today, individuals with asthma or a psychosis are seldom referred to as "the asthmatic" or "the psychotic." Similarly, in the addiction treatment arena, there is a trend to avoid labeling clients with SUDs as "addicts" or "alcoholics." **Using a motivational style will help you avoid labeling clients,** especially those who may not agree with the diagnosis or do not see a particular behavior as problematic. Person-first language (e.g., a person with an SUD) is the new standard; it reduces stigma, helps clients disentangle addiction from identity, and eliminates the judgmental tone left over from the moral model of addiction (SAMHSA, Center for the Application of Prevention Technologies, 2017).

Therapeutic partnerships for change

In the past, especially in the medical model, the client passively **received** treatment. Today, treatment usually entails **a partnership in which you and the client agree on treatment goals and together develop strategies to meet those goals.** The client is seen as an active participant in treatment planning. Using motivational strategies fosters a therapeutic alliance with the client and elicits goals and change strategies from the client. The client has ultimate responsibility for making changes.

Use of empathy, not authority and power

Historically, addiction treatment providers were placed in the position of an authority with the power to recommend client termination for rule infractions, penalties for positive urine drug screens, or promotion to a higher phase of treatment for successfully following direction. Research now demonstrates that **counselors who operate from a more authority-driven way of relating to clients, such as confronting or being overly directive, are less effective than counselors who employ empathy, understanding, and support** with clients (Martin & Rehm, 2012). This style of counseling is a particularly poor match for clients who are angry or reactive to counselor direction (Beutler et al., 2011). Positive treatment outcomes, including decreased substance use, abstinence, and increased treatment retention, are associated with high levels of counselor empathy, good interpersonal skills, and a strong therapeutic alliance (Miller & Moyers, 2015; Moyers & Miller, 2013).

Focus on early and brief interventions

In the past, addiction treatment consisted of detoxification, inpatient rehabilitation, long-term rehabilitation in residential settings, and aftercare. When care was standardized, most programs had not only a routine protocol of services but also a fixed length of stay. Twenty-eight days was considered the proper length of time for successful inpatient (usually hospital-based) care in the popular Minnesota model of SUD treatment. Residential facilities and outpatient clinics also had standard courses of treatment. These services were geared to clients with chronic, severe SUDs. Addiction treatment was viewed as a discrete event instead of a range of services over a continuum of care as the treatment

provided for other chronic diseases like heart disease (Miller, Forehimes, & Zweben, 2011).

Recently, with the shift to a continuum of care model, **a variety of treatment programs have been established to intervene earlier** with those whose drinking or drug use is causing social, financial, or legal problems or increases their risk of health-related harms. These early intervention efforts range from educational programs (e.g., sentencing review or reduction for people apprehended for driving while intoxicated who participate in such programs) to brief interventions in opportunistic settings such as general hospital units, emergency departments (EDs), clinics, and doctors' offices that use motivational strategies to offer personalized feedback, point out the risks of substance use and misuse, suggest behavior change, and make referrals to formal treatment programs when necessary.

Early and brief interventions demonstrate positive outcomes such as reductions in alcohol consumption and drug use, reductions in alcohol misuse, decreases in tobacco and cannabis use, lower mortality rates, reductions in alcohol-related injuries, and decreases in ED return visits (Barata et al., 2017; Blow et al., 2017; DiClemente et al., 2017; McQueen, Howe, Allan, Mains, & Hardy, 2011).

Recognition of a continuum of substance misuse

Formerly, substance misuse was viewed as a progressive condition that, if left untreated, would inevitably lead to full-blown dependence and, likely, early death. Today, the addiction treatment field recognizes that **substance misuse exists along a continuum** from misuse to an SUD that meets the diagnostic criteria in DSM-5 (APA, 2013). Not all SUDs increase in severity. Many individuals never progress beyond substance use that poses a health risk, and others cycle back and forth through periods of abstinence, substance misuse, and meeting criteria for SUD.

Recovery from SUDs is seen as a multidimensional process along a continuum (Office of the Surgeon General, 2016) that differs among people and changes over

time within the individual. Motivational strategies can be effectively applied to a person throughout the addiction process. The crucial variable is not the severity of the substance use pattern but the client's readiness for change.

Recognition of multiple SUDs

Counselors have come to recognize not only that SUDs vary in intensity but also that **most involve more than one substance.** Formerly, alcohol and drug treatment programs were completely separated by ideology and policy, even though most individuals with SUDs also drink heavily and many people who misuse alcohol also experiment with other substances, including prescribed medications that can be substituted for alcohol or that alleviate withdrawal symptoms. Although many treatment programs specialize in serving particular types of clients for whom their treatment approaches are appropriate (e.g., methadone maintenance programs for clients with opioid use disorder [OUD]), most now also treat other SUDs, substance use, and psychological problems or at least identify these and make referrals as necessary. Some evidence shows that motivational counseling approaches (including individual and group MI and brief interventions) demonstrate positive outcomes for clients who misuse alcohol and other substances (Klimas et al., 2014). Motivational counseling approaches with this client population should involve engaging clients and prioritizing their change goals.

Acceptance of new treatment goals

In the past, addiction treatment, at least for clients having trouble with alcohol, was considered successful only if the client became abstinent and never returned to substance use following discharge. The focus of treatment was almost entirely to have the client stop using and to start understanding the nature of addiction. Today, **treatment goals include a broad range of biopsychosocial measures,** such as improved health and psychosocial functioning, improved employment stability, and reduction in crime. In addition, recent efforts have focused on trauma-informed care and treating co-occurring disorders in an integrated treatment setting, where client concerns are addressed simultaneously with SUDs. For more information on treating clients with trauma and co-occurring disorders, see TIP

57: *Trauma-Informed Care in Behavioral Health Services* (SAMHSA, 2014b) and TIP 42: *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co-Occurring Disorders* (SAMHSA, 2013), respectively.

Focus on risk reduction

The field has **expanded the definition of positive treatment outcomes to include intermediate goals of risk reduction.** The goal of risk reduction is to decrease clients' risks for alcohol- and drug-related health risks, legal involvement, sexual behavior that can lead to sexually transmitted diseases, social and financial problems, ED visits, hospitalization and rehospitalization, and relapse of substance use and mental disorders. Risk-reduction interventions include medication-assisted treatment for AUD and OUD and reduction in substance use as an intermediate step toward abstinence for clients who are not ready or willing to commit to full abstinence. Risk-reduction strategies can be an important goal in early treatment and have demonstrated effectiveness in reducing substance-use–related consequences (Office of the Surgeon General, 2016).

Integration of addiction, behavioral health, and healthcare services

Historically, the SUD treatment system was isolated from mainstream health care by different funding streams, health insurance restrictions, and lack of awareness and training among healthcare providers on recognizing, screening, assessing, and treating addiction as a chronic illness. Today, a concerted effort is under way to **integrate addiction treatment with other behavioral health and primary care services** to build a comprehensive healthcare delivery system. Key findings of *Facing Addiction in America: The Surgeon General's Report on Alcohol, Drugs, and Health* (Office of the Surgeon General, 2016) include the following:

• The separation of SUD treatment from mainstream healthcare services has created obstacles to successful treatment and care coordination. SUDs are medical conditions. Integration helps address health disparities, reduces healthcare costs, and improves general health outcomes.

• Many people with SUDs do not seek specialty addiction treatment but often enter the healthcare system through general medical settings. This is an

important but neglected opportunity to screen for substance misuse and provide brief interventions or referrals to specialty care.

Motivational enhancement strategies delivered in all settings can support client engagement in treatment and improve substance use outcomes, whether in EDs, primary care offices, office-based opioid treatment programs, criminal justice settings, social service programs, or specialized addiction treatment programs. Screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment (SBIRT), which includes motivational enhancement strategies, is an early intervention approach that can be a bridge from medical settings to specialty SUD treatment in an integrated healthcare system (McCance-Katz & Satterfeld, 2012). Chapter 2 provides detailed information on SBIRT.

TTM of the SOC

In developing a new understanding of motivation, substantial addiction research has focused on the determinants and mechanisms of change. By understanding better how people change without professional assistance, researchers and counselors have become better able to develop and apply interventions to facilitate changes in clients' substance use behaviors.

Natural Change

Many adults in the United States resolve an alcohol or drug use problem without assistance (Kelly et al., 2017). This is called "natural recovery." Recovery from SUDs can happen with limited treatment or participation in mutual-aid support groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous and Narcotics Anonymous. As many as 45 percent of participants in the National Prevalence Survey resolved their substance use problems through participation in mutual-aid support programs (Kelly et al., 2017).

Behavior change is a process that occurs over time; it is not an outcome of any one treatment episode (Miller et al., 2011). Everyone must make decisions about important life changes, such as marriage or divorce or buying a house. Sometimes, individuals consult a counselor or other specialist to help with these

ordinary decisions, but usually people decide on such changes without professional assistance. Natural change related to substance use also entails decisions to increase, decrease, or stop substance use. Some decisions are responses to critical life events, others reflect different kinds of external pressures, and still others are motivated by personal values.

Exhibit 1.2 illustrates two kinds of natural change. Natural changes related to substance use can go in either direction. In response to an impending divorce, for example, one individual may begin to drink heavily whereas another may reduce or stop using alcohol. Recognizing the processes involved in natural recovery and self-directed change illustrates how changes related to substance use behaviors can be precipitated and stimulated by enhancing motivation.

Common Natural Changes	Natural Changes in Substance Use
• Going to college	• Stopping drinking after an automobile accident
• Getting married	• Reducing alcohol use after college
• Getting divorced	• Stopping substance use before pregnancy
Changing jobs	• Increasing alcohol use during stressful periods
• Joining the Army	• Decreasing cigarette use after a price increase
• Taking a vacation	• Quitting cannabis use before looking for employment
• Moving	• Refraining from drinking with some friends
• Buying a home	• Reducing consumption following a physician’s advice
• Having a baby	
• Retiring	

SOC

Prochaska and DiClemente (1984) theorized that the change process is a journey through stages in which people typically think about behavior change, initiate behavior change, and maintain new behaviors. This model emerged from an examination of 18 psychological and behavioral theories about how change occurs, including components that compose a biopsychosocial framework for understanding addiction. In this sense, the model is "transtheoretical" (Prochaska & DiClemente, 1984). This model has come to be known as the TTM of the SOC. TTM is not the only SOC model, but it is the most widely researched (Connors et al., 2013).

SOC is not a specific counseling method but a framework that can help you tailor specific counseling strategies to clients in different stages. Although results are mixed regarding its usefulness, in the past 30 years, TTM has demonstrated effectiveness in predicting positive addiction treatment outcomes and has shown value as an overarching theoretical framework for counseling (Harrell, Trenz, Scherer, Martins, & Latimer, 2013; Norcross, Krebs, & Prochaska, 2011). Exhibit 1.3 displays the relationship among the five stages (i.e., Precontemplation, Contemplation, Preparation, Action, and Maintenance) in the SOC approach in the original TTM.

The associated features of the SOC approach are (Connors et al., 2013):

• **Precontemplation:** People who use substances are not considering change and do not intend to change in the foreseeable future. They may be partly or completely unaware that a problem exists, that they have to make changes, and that they may need help to change. Alternatively, they may be unwilling or too discouraged to change their behavior. Individuals in this stage often are not convinced that their pattern of use is problematic.

Contemplation: As these individuals become aware that a problem exists, they begin to perceive that there may be cause for concern and reasons to change. Typically, they are ambivalent, simultaneously seeing reasons to change and reasons not to change. Individuals in this stage are still using substances, but they are considering the possibility of stopping or cutting back in the near future. At this point, they may seek relevant information, reevaluate their substance use behavior, or seek help to support the possibility of changing. They typically weigh the positive and negative aspects of making a change. It is not uncommon for individuals to remain in this stage for extended periods, often for years, vacillating between wanting and not wanting to change.

- **Preparation:** When individuals perceive that the envisioned advantages of change and adverse consequences of substance use outweigh the benefits of maintaining the status quo, the decisional balance tips in favor of change. Once initiation of change occurs, individuals enter the Preparation stage and strengthen their commitment. Preparation entails more specific planning for change, such as making choices about whether treatment is needed and, if so, what kind. Preparation also entails examining clients' self-efficacy or confidence in their ability to change. Individuals in the Preparation stage are still using substances, but typically they intend to stop using very soon. They may already be making small changes, like cutting down on their substance use. They begin to set goals for themselves and make commitments to stop using, even telling close associates or significant others about their plans.

- **Action:** Here, individuals choose a strategy for change and begin to pursue it. Clients are actively engaged in changing substance use behaviors. They are making lifestyle changes and may face challenging situations (e.g., temptations to use, physiological effects of withdrawal). Clients may begin to reevaluate their self-image as they move from substance misuse to nonuse or safe use. Clients are committed to the change process and are willing to follow suggested change strategies.

• **Maintenance:** This stage entails efforts to sustain gains made during the Action stage and to prevent recurrence. Extra precautions may be necessary to keep from reverting to health-risk behaviors. Individuals learn to identify situations that may trigger a return to substance use and develop coping skills to manage such situations. During Maintenance, clients are building a new lifestyle that no longer includes the old substance use behaviors.

Most people who misuse substances progress through the stages in a circular or spiral pattern, not a linear one. Individuals typically move back and forth between the stages and cycle through the stages at different rates, as shown in the bidirectional arrows in Exhibit 1.3. As clients progress through the stages, they often have setbacks. However, most people do not typically return to the Precontemplation stage to start over again (Connors et al., 2013) and are unlikely to move from Precontemplation back to Maintenance. This movement through the stages can vary in relation to different behaviors or treatment goals. For example, a client might be in the Action stage with regard to quitting drinking but be in Precontemplation regarding his or her use of cannabis.

Relapse or recurrence of substance misuse is a common part of the process as people cycle through the different stages (note the circular movement of Relapse & Recycle in Exhibit 1.3). Although clients might return to substance misuse during any of the stages, relapse is most often discussed as a setback during the Maintenance stage (Connors et al., 2013). In this model, recurrence is viewed as a normal (not pathological) event because many clients cycle through different stages several times before achieving stable change. Recurrence is not considered a failure but rather a learning opportunity. Remember that each time clients have a setback, they are learning from the experience and applying whatever skills or knowledge they have gained to move forward in the process with greater understanding and awareness.

Counselor Note: Making Decisions

People make decisions about important life changes by weighing potential gains and losses associated with making a choice (Janis & Mann, 1977). Weighing the pros and cons of continuing to use substances or changing substance use behaviors is a key counseling strategy in the SOC model. During Contemplation, pros and cons tend to balance or cancel each other out. In Preparation, pros for changing substance use behavior outweigh cons. When the decisional balance tips toward commitment to change, clients are ready to take action.

Conclusion

Recent understanding of the key role motivation plays in addiction treatment has led to the development of clinical interventions to increase client motivation to change their substance use behaviors (DiClemente et al., 2017). Linking this new view of motivation, the strategies found to enhance it, and the SOC model, along with an understanding of what causes change, creates an effective motivational approach to helping clients with substance misuse and SUDs. This approach encourages clients to progress at their own pace toward deciding about, planning, making, and sustaining positive behavioral change.

In this treatment approach, motivation for change is seen as a dynamic state that you can help the client enhance. Motivational enhancement has evolved, and various myths about clients and what constitutes effective counseling have been dispelled. The notion of the addictive personality has lost credence, and a confrontational style has been discarded or significantly modified. Other factors in contemporary counseling practices have encouraged the development and implementation of motivational interventions, which are client centered and focus on client strengths. Counseling relationships are more likely to rely on empathy rather than authority and involve the client in all aspects of the treatment process. Less-intensive treatments have also become increasingly common.

Motivation is what propels people with SUDs to make changes in their lives. It guides clients through several stages of the SOC that are typical of people thinking about, initiating, and maintaining new behaviors. The remainder of this TIP examines how motivational interventions, when applied to SUD treatment, can

help clients move from not even considering changing their behavior to being ready, willing, and able to do so.

Chapter 2—Motivational Counseling and Brief Intervention

"The prevalent clinical focus on denial and motivation as client traits was misguided. Indeed, client motivation clearly was a dynamic process responding to a variety of interpersonal influences including advice, feedback, goal setting, contingencies, and perceived choice among alternatives."
Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 374

Key Messages

- Personalized feedback about a client's use of substances relative to others and level of health-related risk can enhance client motivation to change substance use behaviors.
- Counselor focus and motivational counseling strategies should be tailored to the client's stage in the Stage of Change (SOC) model.
- Effective motivational counseling approaches can be brief and include a brief intervention (BI) and brief treatment (BT) or comprehensive and include screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment (SBIRT)

Chapter 2 examines science-informed elements of motivational approaches that are effective in treating substance use disorders (SUDs). Any clinical strategy that enhances client motivation for change is a motivational intervention. Such interventions can include counseling, assessment, and feedback. They can occur over multiple sessions or during one BI, and they can be used in specialty SUD treatment settings or in other healthcare settings. Chapter 2 also highlights what you should focus on in each stage of the SOC approach and discusses how to adapt motivational interventions to be culturally responsive and suitable for clients with co-occurring substance use and mental disorders (CODs).

Elements of Effective Motivational Counseling Approaches

Motivational counseling strategies have been used in a wide variety of settings and with diverse client populations to increase motivation to change substance use behaviors. The following elements are important parts of motivational counseling:

- FRAMES approach
- Decisional balancing
- Developing discrepancy between personal goals and current behavior
- Flexible pacing
- Maintaining contact with clients

FRAMES Approach

Miller and Sanchez (1994) identified six common elements of effective motivational counseling, which are summarized by the acronym FRAMES:

- **F**eedback on personal risk relative to population norms is given to clients after substance use assessment.
- **R**esponsibility for change is placed with the client.
- **A**dvice about changing the client's substance use is given by the counselor nonjudgmentally.
- **M**enu of options and treatment alternatives is offered to the client.
- **E**mpathetic counseling style (i.e., warmth, respect, an understanding) is demonstrated and emphasized by the counselor.
- **S**elf-efficacy is supported by the counselor to encourage client change.

Since FRAMES was developed, research and clinical experience have expanded and refined elements of this motivational counseling approach. FRAMES is often incorporated into SBIRT interventions. It has also been combined with other interventions and tested in diverse settings and cultural contexts (Aldridge, Linford, & Bray, 2017; Manuel et al., 2015; Satre, Manuel, Larios, Steiger, & Satterfield, 2015).

Feedback

Give personalized feedback to clients about their substance use; feedback presented in this way is effective in reducing substance misuse and other

health-risk behaviors (Davis, Houck, Rowell, Benson, & Smith, 2015; DiClemente, Corno, Graydon, Wiprovnick, & Knoblach, 2017; Field et al., 2014; Kahler et al., 2018; McDevitt-Murphy et al., 2014; Walker et al., 2017). This type of feedback usually compares a client's scores or ratings on standard screening or assessment instruments with normative data from a general population or treatment groups. Feedback should address cultural differences and norms related to substance misuse. For example, a review of the research on adaptations of BI found that providing feedback specifically related to cultural and social aspects of drinking to Latino clients reduced drinking among these clients to a greater degree than standard feedback (Manuel et al., 2015; Satre et al., 2015).

Counselor Note: Motivational Enhancement Therapy

Motivational enhancement therapy (MET) is an early offshoot of the "drinker's check-up," which gave feedback nonjudgmentally to clients about their drinking. MET is a brief motivational counseling approach that provides personalized, neutral, motivational interviewing (MI)-style feedback to clients. Counselors elicit clients' understanding of feedback, followed by reflections and listening for signs that clients are considering behavioral changes based on the feedback (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Research on MET shows moderate to strong support for reductions in substance use versus no intervention (DiClemente et al., 2017; Lenz, Rosenbaum, & Sheperis, 2016).

Presenting and discussing assessment results can enhance client motivation to change health-risk behaviors. Providing personalized feedback is sometimes enough to move clients from the Precontemplation stage to Contemplation without additional counseling and guidance.

Structure a feedback session thoughtfully. Establish rapport before giving a client his or her score. Strategies to focus the conversation before offering feedback include the following:

- **Express appreciation** for the client's efforts in providing the information.

• **Ask whether the client had any difficulties** with answering questions or filling out forms. Explore specific questions that might need clarification.
• **Make clear that you may need the client's help** to interpret the findings accurately.
• **Encourage questions:** "I'll be giving you lots of information. Please stop me if you have a question or don't understand something. We have plenty of time today or in the next session, if needed."
• **Stress that the instruments provides objective data.** Give some background, if appropriate, about how the tests are standardized for all populations and how widely they are used.

When you provide feedback, show the client his or her score on any screening or assessment instrument and explain what the score means. Exhibit 2.1 is a sample feedback handout to share with a client after

completing the Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test (AUDIT). Appendix B presents the U.S AUDIT questionnaire and scoring instructions. Exhibit 2.1. The Drinker's Pyramid Feedback

Use a motivational style to present the information. Do not pressure clients to accept a diagnosis or offer unsolicited opinions about the meaning of results. Instead, preface explanations with statements like, "I don't know whether this will concern you, but …" or "I don't know what you'll make of this result, but…." Let clients form their own conclusions, but help them by asking, "What do you make of this?" or "What do you think about this?" Focus the conversation on clients' understanding of the feedback.

Strategies for presenting personalized feedback to clients include:
• Asking about the client's initial reaction to the tests (e.g., "Sometimes people learn surprising things when they complete an assessment. What were your reactions to the questionnaire?").
• Providing a handout or using visual aids that show the client's scores on screening instruments, normative data, and risks and consequences of his or her

level of substance use (see Exhibit 2.1 above). Written materials should be provided in the client's first language.
• Offering information in a neutral, nonjudgmental, and respectful way.
• Using easy-to-understand and culturally appropriate language.
• Providing small chunks of information.
• Using open questions to explore the client's understanding of the information.
• Using reflective listening and an empathetic counseling style that emphasizes the client's perspective on feedback and how it may have affected the client's readiness to change.
• Summarizing results, including risks and problems that have emerged, the client's reactions, and any change talk the feedback has prompted, then asking the client to add to or correct the summary.
• Providing a written summary to the client.

Clients' responses to feedback differ. One may be alarmed to find that she drinks much more in a given week than comparable peers but be unconcerned about potential health risks of drinking. Another may be concerned about his potential health risks at this level of drinking. The key to using feedback to enhance motivation is to **continue to explore the client's understanding of the information and what it may suggest about possible behavior change.** Personalized feedback is applicable to other health-risk behaviors issues, such as tobacco use (Steinberg, Williams, Stahl, Budsock, & Cooperman, 2015).

Responsibility

Use a motivational approach to encourage clients to actively participate in the change process by reinforcing personal autonomy. Individuals have the choice of continuing their behavior or changing it. Remind clients that it is up to them to make choices about whether they will change their substance use behaviors or enter treatment. Reinforcing personal autonomy is aligned with the self-determination theory discussed in Chapter 1 (Deci & Ryan, 2012; Flannery, 2017). Strategies for emphasizing client responsibility include the following:

• Ask clients' permission to talk about their substance use; invite them to consider the information you are presenting. If clients have choices, they feel less need to oppose or dismiss your ideas.
• State clearly that you will not ask clients to do anything they are unwilling to do. Let them know that it is up to them to make choices about behavior change.
• Determine a common agenda for each session.
• Agree on treatment goals that are acceptable to clients.

When clients realize they are responsible for the change process, they feel empowered and more invested in it. This results in better treatment outcomes (Deci & Ryan, 2012).

Advice

Practice the act of giving advice; this simple act can promote positive behavioral change. BI that includes advice delivered in the MET/MI counseling style can be effective in changing substance use behaviors such as drinking, drug use, and tobacco use (DiClemente et al., 2017; Steinberg et al., 2015). As with feedback, the manner in which you advise clients influences how or whether the client will use your advice. It is better **not to tell** people what to do; **suggestions** yield better results. A motivational approach to offering advice may be either directive (making a suggestion) or educational (providing information). Educational advice should be based on credible scientific evidence, such as safe drinking limits recommended by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism or facts that relate to the client's conditions (e.g., blood alcohol concentration levels at the time of an automobile crash).

Expert Comment: A Realistic Model of Change – Advice to Clients

Throughout the treatment process, clients should have permission to talk about their problems with substance use. During these dialogs, I often point out some of the realities of the recovery process

Most change does not occur overnight.

Change is best viewed as a gradual process with occasional setbacks, much like hiking up a bumpy hill.

Difficulties and setbacks can be reframed as learning experiences, not failures.

Linda C. Sobell, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member

Expert Comment: A Realistic Model of Change—Advice to Clients

Throughout the treatment process, clients should have permission to talk about their problems with substance use. During these dialogs, I often point out some of the realities of the recovery process:

- Most change does not occur overnight.
- Change is best viewed as a gradual process with occasional setbacks, much like hiking up a bumpy hill.
- Difficulties and setbacks can be reframed as learning experiences, not failures.

Linda C. Sobell, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member

Strategies for offering advice include the following:

- **Ask permission** to offer suggestions or provide information. For example, "Would you like to hear about safe drinking limits?" or "Can I tell you what tolerance to alcohol is?" Such questions provide a nondirective opportunity to share your knowledge about substance use in a respectful manner.
- **Ask what the client thinks** about your suggestions or information.
- **Ask for clarification** if the client makes a specific request, rather than give advice immediately.
- **Offer simple suggestions** that match the client's level of understanding and readiness, the urgency of the situation, and his or her culture. In some cultures, a directive approach is required to convey the importance of advice or situations; in others, a directive style is considered rude and intrusive.

This style of giving advice requires patience. The timing of any advice is important, relying on your ability to hear what clients are requesting and willing to receive. Chapter 3 provides more information about the structured format used in MI for offering clients feedback or giving advice.

Expert Comment: The PIES Approach
In World War I, military psychiatrists first realized that motivational interventions, done at the right time, could return many stressed soldiers to duty. To remember this method, they used the acronym PIES: • **P**roximity: Provide treatment near the place of duty; don't evacuate to a hospital. • **I**mmediacy: Intervene and treat at the first sign of the problem. • **E**xpectancy: Expect the intervention to be successful and return the person to duty. • **S**implicity: Listen, offer empathy, and show understanding; this simple approach works best. Highlight that the person's reactions are normal; it is the situation that is abnormal. The person will recover with rest and nourishment. No prolonged or complex therapy is needed for most cases. In the context of World War I, evacuation to higher levels of care was reserved for the low percentage of individuals who did not respond to this straightforward approach.

Menu of options

Offer choices to facilitate treatment initiation and engagement. These choices have been shown to enhance the therapeutic alliance, decrease dropout rates, and improve outcomes (Van Horn et al., 2015). Clients are more likely to adhere to a specific change strategy if they can choose from a menu of options. Giving

clients choices for treatment goals and types of available service increases their motivation to participate in treatment.

Strategies for offering a menu of options include the following:

- Provide accurate information on each option and potential implications for choosing that option.
- Elicit from clients which options they think would work or what has worked for them in the past.
- Brainstorm alternative options if none offered are acceptable to clients.

Providing a menu of options is consistent with the motivational principle of supporting client autonomy and responsibility. Clients feel more empowered when they take responsibility for their choices. Your role is to enhance their ability to make informed choices. When clients make independent decisions, they are likely to be more committed to them. This concept is examined more fully in Chapter 6.

Empathic counseling style

Use an empathic counseling style by showing active interest in understanding clients' perspectives

(Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Counselors who show high levels of empathy are curious, spend time exploring clients' ideas about their substance use, show an active interest in what clients are saying, and often encourage clients to elaborate on more than just the content of their story (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Counselor empathy is a moderately strong predictor of client treatment outcomes (Elliot, Bohart, Watson, & Murphy, 2018).

As explained in Chapter 3, reflective listening effectively communicates empathy. The client does most of the talking when a counselor uses an empathic style. It is your responsibility to create a safe environment that encourages a free flow of communication with the client. An empathic style appears easy to adopt, but it requires training and significant effort on your

part. This counseling style can be particularly effective with clients in the Precontemplation stage.

Self-efficacy

Help clients build self-efficacy by being supportive, identifying their strengths, reviewing past successes, and expressing optimism and confidence in their ability to change (Kaden & Litt, 2011). To succeed in changing, clients must believe they can undertake specific tasks in a specific situation (Bandura, 1977). In addiction treatment, self-efficacy usually refers to clients' ability to identify high-risk situations that trigger their urge to drink or use drugs and to develop coping skills to manage that urge and not return to substance use. Considerable evidence points to self-efficacy as an important factor in addiction treatment outcomes (Kadden & Litt, 2011; Kuerbis, Armeli, Muench, & Morgenstern, 2013; Litt & Kadden, 2015; Morgenstern et al., 2016).

Ask clients to identify how they have successfully coped with problems in the past: "How did you get from where you were to where you are now?" or "How have you resisted the urge to use in stressful situations?" Once you identify strengths, you can help clients build on past successes. Affirm small steps and reinforce any positive changes. Self-efficacy is discussed again in Chapters 3, 5, and 7.

Decisional Balancing

Explore with the client the benefits and drawbacks of change (Janis & Mann, 1977). Individuals naturally explore the pros and cons of any major life choice, such as changing jobs or getting married. In SUD recovery, the client weighs the pros and cons of changing versus not changing substance use behaviors. You assist this process by asking the client to articulate the positive and negative aspects of using substances. This process is usually called decisional balancing and is further described in Chapter 5.

Exploring the pros and cons of substance use behaviors can tip the scales toward a decision for positive change. The actual number of reasons a client lists on each side of a decisional balance sheet is not as important as the weight—or personal value—of each. For example, a 20-year-old who smokes cigarettes may put less weight on getting lung cancer than an older adult, but he may be very concerned that his diminished lung capacity interferes with playing basketball.

Developing Discrepancy

To enhance motivation for change, **help clients recognize any discrepancy or gap between their future goals and their current behavior.** You might clarify this discrepancy by asking, "How does drinking fit or not fit with your goal of improving your family relationships?" When individuals see that present actions conflict with important personal goals, such as good health, job success, or close personal relationships, change is more likely to occur (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). This concept is expanded in Chapter 3.

Flexible Pacing

Assess the client's readiness for change; resist your urges to go faster than the client's pace. Every client moves through the SOC at his or her own pace. Some will cycle back and forth numerous times between stages. Others need time to resolve their ambivalence about current substance use before making a change. A few are ready to get started and take action immediately. Knowing where a client has been and is now in the SOC helps you facilitate the change process at the right pace. Be aware of any discrepancies between where you want the client to be and where he or she actually is in the SOC. For example, if a client is still in the Contemplation stage, your suggestion to take steps that are in the Action stage can create discord.

Flexible pacing requires you to meet clients at their level and allow them as much or as little time as they need to address the essential tasks of each stage in the SOC. For example, with some clients, you may have to schedule frequent sessions at the beginning of treatment and fewer later. In other cases, clients

might need a break from the intensity of treatment to focus on specific aspect of recovery. If you push clients at a faster pace than they are ready to take, the treatment alliance may break down.

Maintaining Contact With Clients

Employ simple activities to enhance continuity of contact between you and the client. Such activities may include personal handwritten letters, telephone calls, texts, or emails. Use these simple motivation- enhancing interventions to encourage clients to return for another counseling session, return to treatment following a missed appointment, and stay involved in treatment.

Activities that foster consistent, ongoing contact with clients strengthen the therapeutic alliance. The treatment alliance is widely recognized as a significant factor in treatment outcomes in most treatment methods including addiction counseling (Brorson, Arnevik, Rand-Hendriksen, & Duckert, 2013). Low alliance predicts higher risk of clients dropping out of treatment (Brorson et al., 2013).

Make sure you and your clients follow all agency policies and ethical guidelines for making contact outside of sessions or after discharge. For more information on using technology to maintain contact with clients, see Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) 60: *Using Technology-Based Therapeutic Tools in Behavioral Health Services* (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2015b).

Motivational Counseling and the SOC

People considering major changes in their lives, such as adopting an alcohol- or drug-free lifestyle, go through different change processes. Your job as a counselor is to match your treatment focus and counseling strategies with these processes throughout the SOC.

Catalysts for Change

Understand how catalysts for change operate. This will help you use motivational counseling strategies that support and enhance changes clients are contemplating. Prochaska (1979) identified common personal growth processes linked to different behavioral counseling approaches. These processes or catalysts for change have been further developed and applied to the SOC model (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013). Catalysts are experiential or behavioral (Exhibit 2.2). Experiential catalysts are linked more frequently with early SOC phases and behavioral catalysts with later SOC phases.

Exhibit 2.2. Catalysts for Change

Type	Specific Client Change Processes	SOC
Experiential	**Consciousness raising:** Gains new awareness and understanding of substance use behavior.	Precontemplation/ Contemplation
	Emotional arousal: Is motivated to contemplate change after an important emotional reaction to current substance use behavior or the need to change.	Precontemplation/ Contemplation
	Environmental reevaluation: Evaluates pros and cons of current substance use behavior and its effects on others and the community.	Precontemplation/ Contemplation
	Self-reevaluation: Explores the current substance use behavior and the possibility of change in relation to own values.	Contemplation
	Social liberation: Recognizes and increases available positive social supports.	Contemplation/ Preparation
Behavioral	**Counterconditioning:** Begins to recognize the links between internal and external cues to use substances and experiments with substituting more healthful behaviors and activities in response to those cues.	Preparation/Action
	Helping relationships: Seeks and cultivates relationships that offer support, acceptance, and reinforcement for positive behavioral change.	Preparation/Action/ Maintenance
	Self-liberation: Begins to believe in ability to make choices/to change. Develops enhanced self-efficacy and commits to changing substance use behaviors.	Preparation/Action/ Maintenance
	Stimulus control: Avoids stimuli and cues that could trigger substance use.	Action
	Reinforcement management: Begins to self-reward positive behavioral changes and eliminates reinforcements for substance use.	Action/Maintenance

Counselor Focus in the SOC

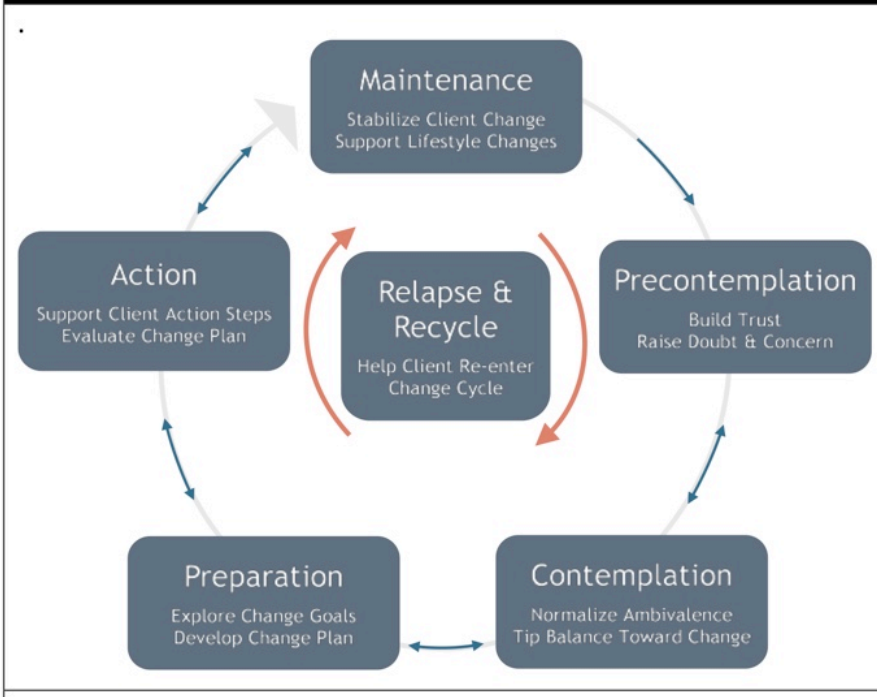
Use motivational supports that match the client's SOC. If you try to use strategies appropriate to a stage other than the one the client is in, the client might drop out or not follow through on treatment goals. For example, if a client in Contemplation is ambivalent about changing substance use behaviors and you argue for change or jump into the Preparation stage, the client is likely to become reactive.

Examples of how to tailor motivation support to the client's stage in the SOC include helping the client:

- In Precontemplation consider change by increasing awareness of behavior change.
- In Contemplation resolve ambivalence by helping him or her choose positive change over the current situation.
- In Preparation identify potential change strategies and choose the most appropriate one for the circumstances.
- In Action carry out and follow through with the change strategies.
- In Maintenance develop new skills to maintain recovery and a lifestyle without substance misuse. If misuse resumes, help the client recover as fast as possible; support reentering the change cycle.

  Exhibit 2.3 depicts the overarching counseling focus in each stage. Chapters 4 through 7 examine specific counseling strategies for each stage.

Exhibit 2.3. Counselor Focus in the SOC



Source: DiClemente, 2018.

Special Applications of Motivational Interventions

The principles underlying motivational counseling approaches have been applied across cultures, to different types of problems, in various treatment settings, and with many different populations (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The research literature suggests that motivational interventions (i.e., MI, MET, and BI) are associated with successful outcomes including adherence to and retention in SUD treatment; reduction in or abstinence from alcohol, cannabis, illicit drugs, and tobacco use; and reductions in substance misuse consequences and related problems (DiClemente et al., 2017). Motivational interventions have demonstrated efficacy across ages (i.e., adolescents, young adults, and older adults), genders, and racial and ethnic groups (Lenz et al., 2016).

Special applications of motivational approaches have been successfully employed as stand-alone or add- on interventions for people with diabetes, chronic pain, cardiovascular disease, HIV, CODs, eating disorders, and opioid use disorder, as

well as for pregnant women who drink or use illicit drugs (Alperstein & Sharpe, 2016; Barnes & Ivezaj, 2015; Dillard, Zuniga, & Holstad, 2017; Ekong & Kavookjian, 2016; Hunt, Siegfried, Morley, Sitharthan, & Cleary, 2013,: Ingersoll, Ceperich, Hettema, Farrell- Carnahan, & Penberthy, 2013; Lee, Choi, Yum, Yu, & Chair, 2016; Moore, Flamez, & Szirony, 2017; Mumba, Findlay, & Snow, 2018; Osterman, Lewis, & Winhusen, 2017; Soderlund, 2017; Vella-Zarb, Mills, Westra, Carter, & Keating, 2014). The universality of motivational intervention concepts permits broad application and offers great potential to reach diverse clients with many types of problems and in many settings.

Cultural Responsiveness

Clients in treatment for SUDs differ in ethnic, racial, and cultural backgrounds. Research and experience suggest that the change process is similar across different populations. The principles and mechanisms of enhancing motivation to change seem to be broadly applicable. For example, one study found that MI was one of two evidence-based treatments endorsed as culturally appropriate by a majority of surveyed SUD treatment programs serving American Indian and Alaska Native (AI/AN) clients (Novins, Croy, Moore, & Rieckmann, 2016).

> "Processes for engaging do differ across cultures, but listening lies at the heart of nearly all of them. Good listening crosses cultures as well. It stretches the imagination to think of people who don't appreciate being welcomed, heard, understood, affirmed, and recognized as autonomous human beings. In our experience these are universally valued."–Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 349

There may be important differences among populations and cultural contexts regarding expression of motivation for change and the importance of critical life events. Get familiar with the populations with whom you expect to establish treatment relationships, be open to listening to and learning from clients about their cultures and their own theories of change, and adapt motivational counseling approaches in consideration of specific cultural norms (Ewing, Wray, Mead, & Adams, 2012). For example, a manual for adapting MI for use in treating AI/AN populations includes a spiritual component that uses a prayer to describe

MI and several spiritual ceremonies to explain MI (Venner, Feldstein, & Tafoya, 2006).

MI's core elements, including its emphasis on collaboration, evoking clients' perspectives, and honoring clients' autonomy, align well culturally with African Americans (Harley, 2017; Montgomery, Robinson, Seaman, & Haeny, 2017). However, some African American women may be less comfortable with a purely client-centered approach (Ewing et al., 2012). Viable approaches to adapting MI for African Americans include training peers to deliver MI, incorporating moderate amounts of advice, and implementing MI approaches in community settings such as a local church (Harley, 2017).

Because motivational strategies emphasize the client's responsibility to voice personal goals and values as well as to select among options for change, you should respond in a nonjudgmental way to cultural differences. Cultural differences might be reflected in the value of health, the meaning of time, the meaning of alcohol or drug use, or responsibilities to community and family. Try to understand the client's perspective rather than impose mainstream values or make quick judgments. This requires knowledge of the influences that promote or sustain substance use and enhance motivation to change among different populations. Motivation-enhancing strategies should be congruent with a client's cultural and social principles, standards, and expectations. Exhibit 2.4 provides a mnemonic to help you remember the basic principles of cultural responsiveness.

Expert Comment: Cultural Responsiveness

In my practice with persons who have different worldviews, I've made a number of observations on the ways in which culture influences the change process. I try to pay attention to cultural effects on a person's style of receiving and processing information, making decisions, pacing, and being ready to act. The more clients are assimilated into the surrounding culture, the more likely they are to process information, respond, and make choices that are congruent with mainstream beliefs and styles. The responsibility for being aware of different cultural value systems lies with the provider, not the client being treated.

More specifically, the manner in which a person communicates, verbally and nonverbally, is often directly related to culture. One young American Indian stated on initial contact that he "might not be able to come back because his shoes were too tight." This was his way of saying he had no money.

However, ethnicity doesn't always determine the culture or values one chooses to live by. For example, White Americans may adopt Eastern worldviews and value systems. Furthermore, an advanced education doesn't necessarily indicate one's degree of assimilation or acculturation. Asian Americans or African Americans who are well educated may choose to live according to their traditional cultural value system and process information for change accordingly.

Culture is a powerful contributor to defining one's identity. Not having a healthy ethnic sense of self affects all stages of the change process. To have a strong sense of self, you have to be powerful in the areas of being, knowing, doing, and having. Racially and ethnically diverse individuals who have been raised in environments that isolate them from their own cultures may not have accurate information about their ethnicity and may not develop a healthy ethnic sense of self.

Expert Comment: Cultural Responsiveness

In my practice with persons who have different worldviews, I've made a number of observations on the ways in which culture influences the change process. I try to pay attention to cultural effects on a person's style of receiving and processing information, making decisions, pacing, and being ready to act. The more clients are assimilated into the surrounding culture, the more likely they are to process information, respond, and make choices that are congruent with mainstream beliefs and styles. The responsibility for being aware of different cultural value systems lies with the provider, not the client being treated.

More specifically, the manner in which a person communicates, verbally and nonverbally, is often directly related to culture. One young American Indian

stated on initial contact that he "might not be able to come back because his shoes were too tight." This was his way of saying he had no money.

However, ethnicity doesn't always determine the culture or values one chooses to live by. For example, White Americans may adopt Eastern worldviews and value systems. Furthermore, an advanced education doesn't necessarily indicate one's degree of assimilation or acculturation. Asian Americans or African Americans who are well educated may choose to live according to their traditional cultural value system and process information for change accordingly.

Culture is a powerful contributor to defining one's identity. Not having a healthy ethnic sense of self affects all stages of the change process. To have a strong sense of self, you have to be powerful in the areas of being, knowing, doing, and having. Racially and ethnically diverse individuals who have been raised in environments that isolate them from their own cultures may not have accurate information about their ethnicity and may not develop a healthy ethnic sense of self.

I believe counselors who use MET need to know different cultural value systems and be culturally sensitive. If in doubt of the client's beliefs, explore them with the client. Acknowledging and honoring differing cultural worldviews greatly influence both motivational style and therapeutic outcome.

Rosalyn Harris-Offutt, Consensus Panel Member

Understand not just how a client's cultural values encourage change, but how they may present barriers to change. Some clients identify strongly with cultural or religious traditions and work hard to gain respect from elders or group leaders. Others find membership or participation in such groups unhelpful. Some cultures support involvement of family members in counseling; others find this disrespectful.

Know what personal and material resources are available to clients, and be sensitive to issues of poverty, social isolation, historical trauma, and recent losses.

Recognize that access to financial and social resources is an important part of the motivation for and process of change. Poverty and lack of resources make change more difficult. It is hard to affirm self-efficacy and stimulate hope and optimism in clients who lack material resources and have experienced discrimination. You can firmly acknowledge the facts of the situation yet still enhance hope and motivation to change by affirming clients' strengths and capacity for endurance and growth despite difficult circumstances. For more information on cultural issues in treatment, see TIP 59: *Improving Cultural Competence* (SAMHSA, 2014a).

Adults With COD

Substance use and mental disorders often co-occur. According to 2017 data from the National Survey on Drug Use and Health (SAMHSA, 2018), 46.6 million adults ages 18 and older (19 percent of all U.S. adults) had any mental illness during the previous year, including 11.2 million (4.5 percent of all adults) with serious mental illness (SMI). Of this 46.6 million, 18 percent also had an SUD versus only 5 percent of adults without any mental illness in the past year. Of the 11.2 million adults with an SMI in the previous year, almost 28 percent also had a co-occurring SUD.

Even low levels of substance misuse can have a serious impact on the functioning of people with SMI (Hunt et al., 2013). For example, AUD often co-occurs with major depressive disorder (MDD), which results in greater disease burdens than either disorder separately (Riper et al., 2014). MI and MI combined with cognitive–behavioral therapy produce positive treatment outcomes, such as reductions in alcohol consumption, cannabis use, alcohol misuse, and depression and other psychiatric symptoms like anxiety (Baker et al., 2014; Baker, Thornton, Hiles, Hides, & Lubman, 2012; Riper et al., 2014; Satre, Delucchi, Lichtmacher, Sterling, & Weisner, 2013; Satre, Leibowitz, et al., 2016).

Having any mental disorder increases the risk of substance misuse. As indicated in TIP 42: *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co-Occurring Disorders* (SAMHSA, 2013), clients with mental illness or COD may find it harder to engage and remain in treatment. **Motivational interventions that engage and retain**

clients in treatment, increase motivation to adhere to treatment interventions, and reduce substance use are a good fit for these clients. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled treatment studies of people with SMI and substance misuse found that, although MI was not any more effective, in general, than other psychosocial treatments, clients who participated in an MI group reported to their first aftercare appointment significantly more often than clients in other treatment interventions and these clients had greater alcohol abstinence rates (Hunt et al., 2013). Another meta-analysis found that MI-based interventions emphasizing adherence to treatment significantly improved adherence and psychiatric symptoms (Wong-Anuchit, Chantamit-O-Pas, Schneider, & Mills, 2018). Dual Diagnosis MI (DDMI), a modified version of MI for adults with CODs, can effectively increase task-specific motivation and adherence to cognitive training interventions (Fiszdon, Kurtz, Choi, Bell, & Martino, 2015).

Counselor Note: Dual Diagnosis Motivational Interviewing

DDMI is a two-session intervention for substance misuse in clients with psychotic disorders (Fiszdon et al., 2015). It includes accommodations for cognitive impairments such as:

- Asking questions and reflecting in simple terms.
- Repeating information and summarizing session content frequently.
- Providing more structure to sessions.
- Being sensitive to emotional material.
- Using simple, concrete examples.
- Presenting information using visual aids and written materials.
- Restating information frequently.
- Going at a slower pace.
- Allowing pauses so clients can process questions, reflections, and information.

Motivational interventions for SMI and co-occurring SUDs should be modified to take into account potential cognitive impairment and focused on specific tasks that lead to the accomplishment of treatment goals, as defined by each client. For more information, see TIP 42: *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co-Occurring Disorders* (SAMHSA, 2013).

Expert Comment: MI for Adults With COD
I became interested in MI when my team and I were trying to improve the rate of attendance at aftercare appointments for clients with COD discharged from our psychiatric units. So, my team and I decided to investigate MI's effectiveness with clients with COD. We randomly assigned half of our clients to standard treatment, in which they received standard inpatient psychiatric care, including standard discharge planning where the team would encourage and explain the importance of aftercare. The other half were assigned to standard treatment but also received a motivational assessment, feedback on the results at admission, and a 1- hour MI just before discharge. We found that clients in the MI group attended their first outpatient appointment at a rate that was two and a half times greater than the standard treatment group. MI with virtually no modification, was effective, particularly for clients with very low motivation. This could have been because these clients were more verbal about their ambivalence than others and because we viewed MI as a perfect way to resolve ambivalence. Another thing we learned was that asking clients about why they would **not attend** aftercare had surprise value and greatly enhanced the rapport between therapist and client. It appeared to let clients know that we were not only going to tell them about the importance of aftercare, but that we were actually willing to discuss their ambivalence about it. Clients were also surprised when we did not directly counter their reasons for not going to aftercare. For example, if a client said, "I'm better now, I don't need aftercare," we would not say, "But to stay well, you need to continue your treatment." Instead, we used **open end questions** (e.g., "What do you think helped you get better?" or "Tell me more about that") or **amplified reflection**

(e.g., “So, you’re saying you probably won’t need any other treatment ever again” or, for more fragile clients, “It’s hard for you to imagine a reason why you might continue to need treatment”). When clients offered specific disadvantages of pursuing aftercare, such as loss of time from work or negative reactions from family, we similarly responded with open end questions and reflective listening (e.g., “It sounds like your job is very important to you and that you wouldn’t want anything to get in the way of that”). Frequently such questions and reflections would lead a client to counter his or her own statements. It turned out that client could sell themselves on the idea of aftercare better than we ever could, and MI gave us the perfect method for facilitating this process. What was most important, however, was what we did **not** do—namely, argue with the client or even attempt to therapeutically dispute his or her (sometimes) illogical ideas about aftercare. Instead, we waited for kernels of motivation and simply shaped them along until the client finally heard himself or herself arguing in favor of seeking further services.

Michael V. Pantalon, Ph.D., Field Reviewer

Brief Motivational Interventions

A growing trend worldwide is to view substance misuse in a much broader context than diagnosable SUDs. The recognition that people who misuse substances make up a much larger group—and pose a serious and costly public health threat—than the smaller number of people needing specialized addiction treatment is not always reflected in the organization and availability of treatment services. As part of a movement toward early identification of alcohol misuse and the development of effective and low-cost methods to ameliorate this widespread problem, BI strategies, which include motivational components, are widely disseminated in the United States and other countries (Joseph & Basu, 2016).

The impetus to expand the use of BI is a response to:

- The need for a broader base of treatment and prevention components to serve all segments of the population that have minimal to severe use and misuse patterns.
- The need for cost-effective interventions that satisfy cost-containment policies in an era of managed health care (Babor, Del Boca, & Bray, 2017).
- A growing body of research findings that consistently demonstrate the efficacy of BI relative to no intervention (DiClemente et al., 2017).

BI is a structured, person-centered counseling approach that can be delivered by trained health and behavioral health professionals in one to four sessions and typically lasts from 5 to 30 minutes (Mattoo, Prasad, & Gosh, 2018). Even single-session interventions incorporating MET/MI modalities have demonstrated effectiveness in reducing substance use behaviors (Samson & Tanner-Smith, 2015). BI for individuals who use substances are applied most often outside specialty addiction treatment settings (in what are often referred to as **opportunistic** settings), where clients are not seeking help for an SUD but have come, for example, to seek medical attention or treatment for a mental disorder (Mattoo et al., 2018). In these situations, people seeking services are routinely screened for substance misuse or asked about their substance use patterns. Those found to be misusing substances or who have related problems receive a specific BI.

Expert Comment: BI in the Emergency Department
When I apply an MI style in my practice of emergency medicine, I experience considerable professional satisfaction. Honestly, it's a struggle to let go of the need to be the expert in charge. It helps to recognize that the person I'm talking with in these medical encounters is also an expert—an expert in her own lifestyle, needs, and choices. After learning about the FRAMES principles in 1987, I tried them once or twice, and they worked, so I tried them again and again. This is not to say that I don't fall back to old ways and sometimes ask someone, "Do you want to go to detox?" But more often than not, I try to ask permission to discuss each individual's

substance use. I ask clients to help me understand what they enjoy about using substances and then what they enjoy less about it. Clients often tell me they like to get high because it helps them relax and forget their problems and it's a part of their social life. But they say they don't like getting sick from drugs. They don't like their family avoiding them or having car crashes. I listen attentively and reflect back what I understood each person to have said, summarize, and ask, "Where does this leave you?" I also inquire about how ready they are to change their substance use on a scale of 1 to 10. If someone is low on the scale, I inquire about what it will take to move forward. If someone is high on the scale, indicating readiness to change, I ask what this person thinks would work to change his or her substance use.

If a client expresses interest in treatment, I explore pros and cons of different choices. An emergency department (ED) specialist in SUDs then works with the person to find placement in a program and, if needed, provides a transportation voucher. This systematic approach, which incorporates MI principles, is helpful to me in our hectic practice setting. It's not only ethically sound, based as it is on respect for the individual's autonomy, but it's less time consuming and frustrating. Each person does the work for himself or herself by naming the problem and identifying possible solutions. My role is to facilitate that process.

Ed Bernstein, M.D., Consensus Panel Member

The purpose of a BI is usually to counsel individuals, using a motivational approach, about substance misuse patterns; increase awareness about the negative effects of substance misuse; and advise them to limit or stop their use altogether, depending on the circumstances (Nunes, Richmond, Marzano, Swenson, & Lockhart, 2017). If the initial intervention does not result in substantial improvement, the provider can make a referral for specialized SUD treatment. A BI also can explore the pros and cons of entering treatment and present a menu of options for treatment, as well as facilitate contact with the treatment system. There are several BI models, but FRAMES is the dominant BI method for substance misuse (Mattoo et al., 2018).

BI strategies have been used effectively in SUD treatment settings where people seek assistance but are placed on waiting lists, as a motivational prelude to engagement and participation in more intensive treatment, and as a first attempt to facilitate behavior change. A series of BI can constitute BT, an approach that applies motivational and other treatment methods (e.g., cognitive–behavioral therapy) for a limited timeframe, making the modality particularly effective for clients who want to abstain from, instead of reduce, alcohol or drug use (Barbosa et al., 2017). Research has found that BT may be more effective than BI in reducing illicit drug use patterns (Aldridge, Dowd, & Bray, 2017).

Screening, Brief Intervention, and Referral to Treatment

A specific BI called SBIRT, which adds screening and referral components, has been implemented widely in the United States in diverse settings, including EDs, primary care offices, and community-based health clinics, through a SAMHSA multisite initiative (Babor et al., 2017). It is the largest SBIRT dissemination effort in the United States (Aldridge, Linford, & Bray, 2017). SBIRT was specifically developed for nonspecialized treatment settings. It has demonstrated effectiveness in primary care offices, EDs, and general inpatient medical units in reducing substance use and misuse among adolescents, young adults, and adults, as well as in increasing participation in follow-up care (Barata et al., 2017; DiClemente et al., 2017; Kohler & Hoffman, 2015; McQueen, Howe, Allan, Mains, & Hardy, 2015; Merchant, Romanoff, Zhang, Liu, & Baird, 2017; Timko, Kong, Vittorio, & Cucciare, 2016; Woolard et al., 2013).

People often seek treatment for medical concerns that may be related to or impacted by substance misuse but are not specifically seeking help for substance use problems. Screening has become an integral component of BI in these opportunistic settings (Mattoo et al., 2018). The results of the screening determine whether the person seeking services is offered a BI such as FRAMES or is referred to specialized addiction treatment when the person meets the criteria for moderate or severe SUD. From a public health perspective, SBIRT is seen as both a prevention and a treatment strategy. Although, research results about the

effectiveness of SBIRT for illicit drug use are mixed (Hingson & Compton, 2014), recent outcome data from a SAMHSA initiative demonstrate its effectiveness to lower alcohol consumption, alcohol misuse, and illicit drug use (Aldridge, Linford, & Bray, 2017). Other studies found that initiation of buprenorphine treatment in the ED significantly increased clients' engagement in specialty addiction treatment and decreased illicit drug use (Bernstein & D'Onofrio, 2017) and that motivational interventions in ED and public health settings reduced overdose risk behaviors and nonmedical use of opioids (Bohnert et al., 2016; Coffin et al., 2017).

In addition, a growing body of evidence supports the use of SBIRT with adolescents, young adults, adults, and older adults, as well as ethnically and culturally diverse populations, particularly with careful selection of screening tools and tailoring the BI and referrals to each client's needs (Appiah-Brempong, Okyere, Owusu-Addo, & Cross, 2014; Gelberg et al., 2017; Manuel et al., 2015; Satre et al., 2015; Schonfeld et al., 2010; Tanner-Smith & Lipsey, 2015). For information about an SBIRT initiative for older adults (the BRITE Project), see the upcoming TIP on *Treating Addiction in Older Adults* (SAMHSA, planned).

Conclusion

Motivational interventions can be used in BI, in BT, and throughout the SOC process. Some strategies, like screening and FRAMES, are more applicable to BI methods whereas others, like developing discrepancy and decisional balancing, are more useful in specialized addiction counseling settings where clients receive longer and more intensive treatment. What is common in all motivational interventions, no matter the treatment setting or the client population, is the focus on engaging clients, building trust through empathetic listening, and demonstrating respect for clients' autonomy and cultural customs and perspectives.

Chapter 3—Motivational Interviewing as a Counseling Style

"Motivational interviewing is a person-centered counseling style for addressing the common problem of ambivalence about change."

Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 21

Key Messages

- The spirit of motivational interviewing (MI) is the foundation of the counseling skills required for enhancing clients' motivation to change.
- Ambivalence about change is normal; resolving clients' ambivalence about substance use is a key MI focus.
- Resistance to change is an expression of ambivalence about change, not a client trait or characteristic.
- Reflective listening is fundamental to the four MI process (i.e., engaging, focusing, evoking, and planning) and core counseling strategies.

Chapter 3 explores specific MI strategies you can use to help clients who misuse substances or who have substance use disorders (SUDs) strengthen their motivation and commitment to change their substance use behaviors. This chapter examines what's new in MI, the spirit of MI, the concept of ambivalence, core counseling skills, and the four processes of MI, as well as the effectiveness of MI in treating SUDs.

Introduction to MI

MI is a counseling style based on the following assumptions:

- Ambivalence about substance use and change is normal and is an important motivational barrier to substance use behavior change.
- Ambivalence can be resolved by exploring the client's intrinsic motivations and values.
- Your alliance with the client is a collaborative partnership to which you each bring important expertise.

- An empathic, supportive counseling style provides conditions under which change can occur.

You can use MI to effectively reduce or eliminate client substance use and other health-risk behaviors in many settings and across genders, ages, races, and ethnicities (DiClemente, Corno, Graydon, Wiprovnick, & Knoblach, 2017; Dillard, Zuniga, & Holstad, 2017; Lundahl et al., 2013). Analysis of more than 200 randomized clinical trials found significant efficacy of MI in the treatment of SUDs (Miller & Rollnick, 2014).

The MI counseling style helps clients resolve ambivalence that keeps them from reaching personal goals. MI builds on Carl Rogers' (1965) humanistic theories about people's capacity for exercising free choice and self-determination. Rogers identified the sufficient conditions for client change, which are now called "common factors" of therapy, including counselor empathy (Miller & Moyers, 2017).

As a counselor, your main goals in MI are to express empathy and elicit clients' reasons for and commitment to changing substance use behaviors (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). MI is particularly helpful when clients are in the Precontemplation and Contemplation stages of the Stages of Change (SOC), when readiness to change is low, but it can also be useful throughout the change cycle.

The Spirit of MI

Use an MI counseling style to support partnership with clients. Collaborative counselor–client relationships are the essence of MI, without which MI counseling techniques are ineffective. Counselor MI spirit is associated with positive client engagement behaviors (e.g., self-disclosure, cooperation) (Romano & Peters, 2016) and positive client outcomes in health-related behaviors (e.g., exercise, medication adherence) similar to those in addiction treatment (Copeland, McNamara, Kelson, & Simpson, 2015).

The spirit of MI (Miller & Rollnick, 2013) comprises the following elements:

- **Partnership** refers to an active collaboration between you and the client. A client is more willing to express concerns when you are empathetic and show genuine curiosity about the client's perspective. In this partnership, you are influential, but the client drives the conversation.
- **Acceptance** refers to your respect for and approval of the client. This doesn't mean agreeing with everything the client says but is a demonstration of your intention to understand the client's point of view and concerns. In the context of MI, there are four components of acceptance:
    - – ***Absolute worth:*** Prizing the inherent worth and potential of the client
    - – ***Accurate empathy:*** An active interest in, and an effort to understand, the client's internal

      perspective reflected by your genuine curiosity and reflective listening

    - – ***Autonomy support:*** Honoring and respecting a client's right to and capacity for self-direction
    - – ***Affirmation:*** Acknowledging the client's values and strengths
- **Compassion** refers to your active promotion of the client's welfare and prioritization of client needs.
- **Evocation** elicits and explores motivations, values, strengths, and resources the client already has.

  To remember the four elements, use the acronym PACE (Stinson & Clark, 2017). The specific counseling strategies you use in your counseling approach should emphasize one or more of these elements.

Principles of Person-Centered Counseling

MI reflects a longstanding tradition of humanistic counseling and the person-centered approach of Carl Rogers. It is theoretically linked to his theory of the "critical conditions for change," which states that clients change when they are

engaged in a therapeutic relationship in which the counselor is genuine and warm, expresses unconditional positive regard, and displays accurate empathy (Rogers, 1965).

MI adds another dimension in your efforts to provide person-centered counseling. In MI, the counselor follows the principles of person-centered counseling but also guides the conversation toward a specific, client-driven change goal. MI is more directive than purely person-centered counseling; it is guided by the following broad person-centered counseling principles (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- SUD treatment services exist to help recipients. The needs of the client take precedence over the counselor's or organization's needs or goals.
- The client engages in a process of self-change. You facilitate the client's natural process of change.
- The client is the expert in his or her own life and has knowledge of what works and what doesn't.
- As the counselor, you **do not** make change happen.
- People have their own motivation, strengths, and resources. Counselors help activate those resources.
- You are not responsible for coming up with all the good ideas about change, and you probably don't have the best ideas for any particular client.
- Change requires a partnership and "collaboration of expertise."
- You must understand the client's perspectives on his or her problems and need to change.
- The counseling relationship is not a power struggle. Conversations about change should not become debates. Avoid arguing with or trying to persuade the client that your position is correct.
- Motivation for change is evoked from, not given to, the client.
- People make their own decisions about taking action. It is not a change goal until the client says so.

- The spirit of MI and client-centered counseling principles foster a sound therapeutic alliance.

Research on person-centered counseling approaches consistent with MI in treating alcohol use disorder (AUD) found that several sessions improved client outcomes, including readiness to change and reductions in alcohol use (Barrio & Gual, 2016).

What Is New in MI

Much has changed in MI since Miller and Rollnick's original (1991) and updated (2002) work. Exhibit 3.1 summarizes important changes to MI based on decades of research and clinical experience.

Exhibit 3.1. A Comparison of Original and Updated Versions of MI	
Original Version	Updated Version
Four principles as the basis for the MI approach: 1. **Express empathy:** Demonstrate empathy through reflective listening. 2. **Develop discrepancy:** Guide conversations to highlight the difference between clients' goals or values and their current behavior. 3. **Roll with resistance:** Avoid arguing against the status quo or arguing for change. 4. **Support self-efficacy:** Support clients' beliefs that change is possible. Although these general principles are still helpful, the new emphasis in MI is on **evoking change talk** and **commitment to change** as primary principles.	Four processes as the basis for the MI approach: 1. **Engaging** is the relational foundation. 2. **Focusing** identifies agenda and change goals. 3. **Evoking** uses MI core skills and strategies for moving toward a specific change goal. 4. **Planning** is the bridge to behavior change. The four processes replace Phase I and II stages in the original version of MI. Core skills and strategies of MI include asking open questions, affirming, using reflective listening, and summarizing; all are integrated into the four processes. The original four principles have been folded into the four processes as reflective listening or strategic responses to move conversations along.
Resistance is a characteristic of the client.	Resistance is an expression of sustain talk and the status quo side of ambivalence, arising out of counselor–client discord.
Rolling with resistance	Strategies to lessen sustain talk and counselor–client discord
Self-motivating statements	Change talk
Decisional balancing is a strategy to help clients move in one direction toward changing a behavior.	Decisional balancing is used to help clients make a decision without favoring a specific direction of change. It may be useful as a way to assess client readiness to change but also may increase ambivalence for clients who are contemplating change.
Source: Miller & Rollnick, 1991, 2002, 2013; Miller & Rose, 2013.	

Exhibit 3.2 presents common misconceptions about MI and provides clarification of MI's underlying theoretical assumptions and counseling approach, which are described in the rest of this chapter.

Exhibit 3.2. Misconceptions and Clarifications About MI	
Misconception	Clarification
MI is a form of nondirective, Rogerian therapy.	MI shares many principles of the humanistic, person-centered approach pioneered by Rogers, but it is not Rogerian therapy. Characteristics that differentiate MI from Rogerian therapy include clearly identified target behaviors and change goals and differential evoking and strengthening of clients' motivation for changing target behavior. Unlike Rogerian therapy, MI has a strategic component that emphasizes helping clients move toward a specific behavioral change goal.
MI is a counseling technique.	Although there are specific MI counseling strategies, MI is not a counseling technique. It is a style of being with people that uses specific clinical skills to foster motivation to change.
MI is a "school" of counseling or psychotherapy.	Some psychological theories underlie the spirit and style of MI, but it was not meant to be a theory of change with a comprehensive set of associated clinical skills.
MI and the SOC approach are the same.	MI and the SOC were developed around the same time, and people confuse the two approaches. MI is not the SOC. MI is not an essential part of the SOC and vice versa. They are compatible and complementary. MI is also compatible with counseling approaches like cognitive–behavioral therapy (CBT).
MI always uses assessment feedback.	Assessment feedback delivered in the MI style was an adaptation of MI that became motivational enhancement therapy (MET). Although personalized feedback may be helpful to enhance motivation with clients who are on the lower end of the readiness to change spectrum, it is not a necessary part of MI.
Counselors can motivate clients to change.	You cannot manufacture motivation that is not already in clients. MI does not motive clients to change or to move toward a predetermined treatment goal. It is a collaborative partnership between you and clients to discover their motivation to change. It respects client autonomy and self-determination about goals for behavior change.
Sources: Miller & Rollnick, 2013, 2014; Moyers, 2014.	

Ambivalence

A key concept in MI is ambivalence. It is normal for people to feels two ways about making an important change in their lives. **Frequently, client ambivalence is a roadblock to change, not a lack of knowledge or skills about how to change** (Forman & Moyers, 2019). Individuals with SUDs are often aware of the risks

associated with their substance use but continue to use substances anyway. They may need to stop using substances, but they continue to use. The tension between these feelings is ambivalence.

Ambivalence about changing substance use behaviors is natural. As clients move from Precontemplation to Contemplation, their feelings of conflict about change increase. This tension may help move people toward change, but often the tension of ambivalence leads people to avoid thinking about the problem. They may tell themselves things aren't so bad (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). **View ambivalence not as denial or resistance, but as a normal experience in the change process.** If you interpret ambivalence as denial or resistance, you are likely to evoke discord between you and clients, which is counterproductive.

Sustain Talk and Change Talk

Recognizing sustain talk and change talk in clients will help you better explore and address their ambivalence. Sustain talk consists of client statements that support not changing a health-risk behavior, like substance misuse. Change talk consists of client statements that favor change (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Sustain talk and change talk are expressions of both sides of ambivalence about change. Over time, MI has evolved in its understanding of what keeps clients stuck in ambivalence about change and what supports clients to move in the direction of changing substance use behaviors. Client stuck in ambivalence will engage in a lot of sustain talk, whereas clients who are more ready to change will engage in more change talk with stronger statements supporting change.

Greater frequency of client sustain talk in sessions is linked to poorer substance use treatment outcomes (Lindqvist, Forsberg, Enebrink, Andersson, & Rosendahl, 2017; Magill et al., 2014; Rodriguez, Walters, Houck, Ortiz, & Taxman, 2017). Conversely, MI-consistent counselor behavior focused on eliciting and reflecting change talk, more client change talk compared with sustain talk, and stronger commitment change talk are linked to better substance use outcomes (Barnett, Moyers, et al., 2014; Borsari et al., 2018; Houck, Manuel, & Moyers, 2018; Magill

et al., 2014, 2018; Romano & Peters, 2016). Counselor empathy is also linked to eliciting client change talk (Pace et al., 2017).

In MI, your main goal is to evoke change talk and minimize evoking or reinforcing sustain talk in counseling sessions.

Another development in MI is the delineation of different kinds of change talk. The acronym for change talk in MI is DARN-CAT (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **D**esire to change: This is expressed in statements about wanting something different—"I want to find an Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) meeting" or "I hope to start going to AA."
- **A**bility to change: This is expressed in statements about self-perception of capability—"I could start going to AA."
- **R**easons to change: This is expressed as arguments for change—"I'd probably learn more about recovery if I went to AA" or "Going to AA would help me feel more supported."
- **N**eed to change: This is expressed in client statements about importance or urgency—"I have to stop drinking" or "I need to find a way to get my drinking under control."
- **C**ommitment: This is expressed as a promise to change—"I swear I will go to an AA meeting this year" or "I guarantee that I will start AA by next month."
- **A**ctivation: This is expressed in statements showing movement toward action—"I'm ready to go to my first AA meeting."
- **T**aking steps: This is expressed in statements indicating that the client has already done something to change—"I went to an AA meeting" or "I avoided a party where friends would be doing drugs."

Exhibit 3.3 depicts examples of change talk and sustain talk that correspond to DARN-CAT.

Exhibit 3.3. Examples of Change Talk and Sustain Talk		
Type of Statement	Examples of Change Talk	Examples of Sustain Talk
Desire	"I want to cut down on my drinking."	"I love how cocaine makes me feel."
Ability	"I could cut back to 1 drink with dinner on weekends."	"I can manage my life just fine without giving up the drug."
Reasons	"I'll miss less time at work if I cut down."	"Getting high helps me feel energized."
Need	"I have to cut down. My doctor told me that the amount I am drinking puts my health at risk."	"I need to get high to keep me going every day."
Commitment	"I promise to cut back this weekend."	"I am going to keep snorting cocaine."
Activation	"I am ready to do something about the drinking."	"I am not ready to give up the cocaine."
Taking steps	"I only had one drink with dinner on Saturday."	"I am still snorting cocaine every day."
Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013.		

To make the best use of clients' change talk and sustain talk that arise in sessions, remember to:

- Recognize client expressions of change talk but don't worry about differentiating various kinds of change talk during a counseling session.
- Use reflective listening to reinforce and help clients elaborate on change talk.
- Use DARN-CAT in conversations with clients.
- Recognize sustain talk and use MI strategies to lessen the impact of sustain talk on clients' readiness to change (see discussion of responding to change talk and sustain talk in the next section).
- Be aware that both sides of ambivalence (change talk and sustain talk) will be present in your conversations with clients.

A New Look at Resistance

Understanding the role of resistance and how to respond to it can help you maintain good counselor– client rapport. Resistance in SUD treatment has historically been considered a problem centered in the client. As MI has

developed over the years, its understanding of resistance has changed. Instead of emphasizing resistance as a pathological defense mechanism, MI views resistance as a normal part of ambivalence and a client's reaction to the counselor's approach in the moment (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

A client may express resistance in sustain talk that favors the "no change" side of ambivalence. The way you respond to sustain talk can contribute to the client becoming firmly planted in the status quo or help the client move toward contemplating change. For example, the client's show of ambivalence about change and your arguments for change can create discord in your therapeutic relationship.

Client sustain talk is often evoked by discord in the counseling relationship (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Resistance is a two-way street. If discord arises in conversation, change direction or listen more carefully.

This is an opportunity to respond in a new, perhaps surprising, way and to take advantage of the situation without being confrontational. This new way of looking at resistance is consistent with the principles of person-centered counseling described at the beginning of the chapter.

Core Skills of MI: OARS

To remember the core counseling skills of MI, use the acronym OARS (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- Asking **O**pen questions
- **A**ffirming
- **R**eflective listening
- **S**ummarizing

- These core skills are consistent with the principles of person-centered counseling and can be used throughout your work with clients. If you use these skills, you will more likely have greater success in engaging clients

and less incidence of discord within the counselor–client relationship. These core skills are described below.

Asking Open Questions

- **Use open questions to invite clients to tell their story rather than closed questions, which merely elicit brief information.** Open questions are questions that invite clients to reflect before answering and encourage them to elaborate. Asking open questions helps you understand their point of view. Open questions facilitate a dialog and do not require any particular response from you. They encourage clients to do most of the talking and keep the conversation moving forward. Closed questions evoke yes/no or short answers and sometimes make clients feel as if they have to come up with the right answer. One type of open question is actually a statement that begins with “Tell me about” or “Tell me more about.” The “Tell me about” statement invites clients to tell a story and serves as an open question.

Exhibit 3.4 provides examples of closed and open questions. As you read these examples, imagine you are a client and notice the difference in how you might receive and respond to each kind of question.

Exhibit 3.4. Closed and Open Questions	
Closed Questions	Open Questions
"So you are here because you are concerned about your use of alcohol, correct?"	"What is it that brings you here today?"
"How many children do you have?"	"Tell me about your family."
"Do you agree that it would be a good idea for you to go through detoxification?"	"What do you think about the possibility of going through detoxification?"
"On a typical day, how much marijuana do you smoke?"	"Tell me about your marijuana use on a typical day."
"Did your doctor tell you to quit smoke?"	"What did your doctor tell you about the health risks of smoking?"
"How has your drug use been this week compared with last week: more, less, or about the same?"	"What has your drug use been like during the past week?"
"Do you think you use amphetamines too often?"	"In what ways are you concerned about your use of amphetamines?"
"How long ago did you have your last drink?"	"Tell me about the last time you drank."
"Are you sure that your probation officer told you that it's only cocaine he is concerned about in your urine screens?"	"Tell me more about the conditions of your probation."
"When do you plan to quit drinking?"	"What do you think you want to do about your drinking?"

There may be times when you must ask closed questions, for example, to gather information for a screening or assessment. However, if you use open questions—"Tell me about the last time you used methamphetamines"—you will often get the information you need and enhance the process of engagement. **During assessment, avoid the question-and-answer trap, which can decrease rapport, become an obstacle to counselor–client engagement, and stall conversations**.

MI involves maintaining a balance between asking questions and reflective listening (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Ask one open question, and follow it with two or more reflective listening responses.

Affirming

Affirming is a way to express your genuine appreciation and positive regard for clients (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Affirming clients supports and promotes self-

efficacy. By affirming, you are saying, “I see you, what you say matters, and I want to understand what you think and feel” (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). **Affirming can boost clients’ confidence about taking action.** Using affirmations in conversations with clients consistently predicts positive client outcomes (Romano & Peters, 2016).

When affirming:

- Emphasize client strengths, past successes, and efforts to take steps, however small, to accomplish change goals.
- Do not confuse this type of feedback with praise, which can sometimes be a roadblock to effective listening (Gordon, 1970; see Exhibit 3.5 below in the section “Reflective Listening”).
- Frame your affirming statements with “you” instead of “I.” For example, instead of saying “I am proud of you,” which focuses more on you than on the client, try “You have worked really hard to get to where you are now in your life,” which demonstrates your appreciation, but keeps the focus on the client (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).
- Use statements such as (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):
    - – “You took a big step in coming here today.”
    - – “You got discouraged last week but kept going to your AA meetings. You are persistent.”
    - – “Although things didn’t turn out the way you hoped, you tried really hard, and that means a lot.”
    - – “That’s a good idea for how you can avoid situations where you might be tempted to drink.”

There may be ethnic, cultural, and even personal differences in how people respond to affirming statements. Be aware of verbal and nonverbal cues about how the client is reacting and be open to checking out the client’s reaction with an open question—“How was that for you to hear?” Strategies for forming affirmations that account for cultural and personal differences include (Rosengren, 2018):

- Focusing on specific behaviors to affirm.
- Avoiding using "I."
- Emphasizing descriptions instead of evaluations.
- Emphasizing positive developments instead of continuing problems.
- Affirming interesting qualities and strengths of clients.
- Holding an awareness of client strengths instead of deficits as you formulate affirmations.

Reflective Listening

Reflective listening is the key component of expressing empathy. Reflective listening is fundamental to person-centered counseling in general and MI in particular (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Reflective listening (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- Communicates respect for and acceptance of clients.
- Establishes trust and invites clients to explore their own perceptions, values, and feelings.
- Encourages a nonjudgmental, collaborative relationship.
- Allows you to be a supportive without agreeing with specific client statements.

Reflective listening builds collaboration and a safe and open environment that is conducive to examining issues and eliciting the client's reasons for change. It is both an expression of empathy and a way to selectively reinforce change talk (Romano & Peters, 2016). Reflective listening demonstrates that you are genuinely interested in understanding the client's unique perspective, feelings, and values. Expressions of counselor empathy predict better substance use outcomes (Moyers, Houck, Rice, Longabaugh, & Miller, 2016). Your attitude should be one of acceptance but not necessarily approval or agreement, recognizing that ambivalence about change is normal.

Consider ethnic and cultural differences when expressing empathy through reflective listening. These differences influence how both you and the client interpret verbal and nonverbal communications.

Expert Comment: Expressing Empathy With American Indian/Native American Clients

For many traditional American Indian groups, expressing empathy begins with the introduction. Native Americans generally expect the counselor to be aware of and practice the culturally accepted norms for introducing oneself and showing respect. For example, during the first meeting, the person often is expected to say his or her name, clan relationship or ethnic origin, and place of origin. Physical contact is kept to a minimum, except for a brief handshake, which may be no more than a soft touch of the palms.

Ray Daw, Consensus Panel Member

Expert Comment: Expressing Empathy With African American Clients

One way I empathize with African American clients is, first and foremost, to be a genuine person (not just a counselor). Clients may begin the relationship asking questions about you the person, not the professional, in an attempt to locate you in the world. It's as if clients' internal dialog says, "As you try to understand me, by what pathways, perspectives, life experiences, and values are you coming to that understanding of me?"

Typical questions my African American clients have asked me are:

- "Are you Christian?"
- "Where are you from?"
- "What part of town do you live in?"
- "Who are your folks?"
- "Are you married?"

All of these are reasonable questions that work to establish a real, not contrived, relationship with the counselor. As part of a democratic partnership, clients have a right and, in some instances, a cultural expectation to know about the helper.

On another level, many African Americans are very spiritual people. This spirituality is expressed and practiced in ways that supersede religious affiliations. Young people pat their chests and say, "I feel you," as a way to describe this sense of empathy. Understanding and working with this can enhance the counselor's expression of empathy. In other words, the therapeutic counselor–client alliance can be deepened, permitting another level of empathic connection that some might call an intuitive understanding and others might call a spiritual connection to each client. What emerges is a therapeutic alliance—a spiritual connection—that goes beyond what mere words can say. The more counselors express that side of themselves, whether they call it intuition or spirituality, the more intense the empathic connection the African American client will feel.

Cheryl Grills, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member

Reflective listening is not as easy as it sounds. It is not simply a matter of being quiet while the client is speaking. **Reflective listening requires you to make a mental hypothesis about the underlying meaning or feeling of client statements and then reflect that back to the client with your best guess about his or her meaning or feeling** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Gordon (1970) called this "active

listening" and identified 12 kinds of responses that people often give to others that are not active listening and can actually derail a conversation. Exhibit 3.5 describes these roadblocks to listening.

Exhibit 3.5. Gordon's 12 Roadblocks to Active Listening	
1. Ordering, directing, or commanding	Direction is given with a voice of authority. The speaker may be in a position of power (e.g., parent, employer, counselor) or the words may simply be phrased and spoken in a way that communicates that the speaker is the expert.
2. Warning, cautioning, or threatening	These statements carry an overt or covert threat of negative consequences. For example, "If you don't stop drinking, you are going to die."
3. Giving advice, making suggestions, or providing solutions prematurely or when unsolicited	The message recommends a course of action based on your knowledge and personal experience. These recommendations often begin with phrases like "What I would do is."
4. Persuading with logic, arguing, or lecturing	The underlying assumption of these messages is that the client has not reasoned through the problem adequately and needs help to do so. Trying to persuade the client that your position is correct will most likely evoke a reaction and the client taking the opposite position.
5. Moralizing, preaching, or telling people what they should do	These statements contain such words as "should" or "ought," which imply or directly convey negative judgment.
6. Judging, criticizing, disagreeing, or blaming	These messages imply that something is wrong with the client or with what the client has said. Even simple disagreement may be interpreted as critical.
7. Agreeing, approving, or praising	Praise or approval can be an obstacle if the message sanctions or implies agreement with whatever the client has said or if the praise is given too often or in general terms, like "great job." This can lessen the impact on the person or simply disrupt the flow of the conversation
8. Shaming, ridiculing, or labeling	These statements express disapproval and intent to correct a specific behavior or attitude. They can damage self-esteem and cause major disruptions in the counseling alliance.
9. Interpreting or analyzing	You may be tempted to impose your own interpretations on a client's statement and to find some hidden, analytical meaning. Interpretive statements might imply you know what the client's "real" problem is and puts you in a one-up position.
10. Reassuring, sympathizing, or consoling	Counselors often want to console the client. It is human nature to want to reassure someone who is in pain; however, sympathy is not the same as empathy. Such reassurance can interrupt the flow of communication and interfere with careful listening.
11. Questioning or probing	Do not mistake questioning for good listening. Although you may ask questions to learn more about the client, the underlying message is that you might find the right answer to all the client's problems if enough questions are asked. In

	fact, intensive questioning can disrupt communication, and sometimes the client feels as if he or she is being interrogated
12. Withdrawing, distracting, humoring, or changing the subject	Although shifting the focus or using humor may be helpful at times, it can also be a distraction and disrupt the communication.
Source: Gordon, 1970.	

If you engage in any of these 12 activities, you are talking and not listening. However well intentioned, these roadblocks to listening shift the focus of the conversation from the client to the counselor. They are not consistent with the principles of person-centered counseling.

Types of reflective listening

In MI, there are several kinds of reflective listening responses that range from simple (i.e., repeating or rephrasing a client statement) to complex (i.e., using different words to reflect the underlying meaning or feeling of a client statement). **Simple reflections engage clients and let them know that you're genuinely interested in understanding their perspective. Complex reflections invite clients to deepen their self-exploration** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). In MI, there are special complex reflections that you can use in specific counseling situations, like using a double-sided reflection when clients are expressing ambivalence about changing a substance use behavior. Exhibit 3.6 provides examples of simple and complex reflective listening responses to client statements about substance use.

Exhibit 3.6. Types of Reflective Listening Responses				
Type	Client Statement	Counselor Response	Purpose	Special Considerations
Simple				
Repeat	"My wife is nagging me about my drinking."	"Your wife is nagging you about your drinking."	Builds rapport. Expresses empathy.	Avoid mimicking.
Rephrase	"My wife is nagging me about my drinking."	"Your wife is pressuring you about your drinking."	Expresses empathy. Highlights selected meaning or feeling.	Move the conversation along, but more slowly than complex reflections.
Complex				
Feeling	"I'd like to quit smoking marijuana so that the second-hand pot smoke won't worsen my daughter's asthma."	"You're afraid that your daughter's asthma will get worse if you continue smoking marijuana."	Highlights selected feeling. Highlights discrepancy between values and current behavior.	Selectively reinforce change talk. Avoid reinforcing sustain talk.
Meaning	"I'd like to quit smoking marijuana because I read that second-hand pot smoke can make asthma worse and I don't want that to happen to my daughter."	"You want to protect your daughter from the possibility that her asthma will get worse if you continue smoking marijuana."	Highlights selected meaning. Highlights discrepancy between values and current behavior.	Selectively reinforce change talk. Avoid reinforcing sustain talk.
Double-sided	"I know I should give up drinking, but I can't imagine life without it."	"Giving up drinking would be hard, **and** you recognize that it's time to stop."	Resolves ambivalence. Acknowledges sustain talk **and** emphasizes change talk.	Use "and" to join two reflections. Start with sustain talk reflection and end with change talk reflection.
Amplified	"I think my cocaine use is just not a problem for me."	"There are absolutely no negative consequences of using cocaine."	Intensifies sustain talk to evoke change talk.	Use sparingly. Avoid getting stuck in sustain talk.
Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013.				

Forming complex reflections

Simple reflections are fairly straightforward. You simply repeat or paraphrase what the client said. Complex reflections are more challenging. A statement could have many meanings. The first step in making a complex reflection of meaning or feelings is to make a hypothesis in your mind about what the client is trying to say (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Use these steps to form a mental hypothesis about meaning or feelings:

1. If the client says, "I drink because I am lonely," think about the possible meanings of "lonely." Perhaps the client is saying, "I lost my spouse" or "It is hard for me to make friends" or "I can't think of anything to say when I am with my family."
2. Consider the larger conversational context. Has the client noted not having much of a social life?
3. Make your best guess about the meaning of the client's statement.
4. Offer a reflective listening response—"You drink because it is hard for you to make friends."
5. Wait for the client's response. The client will tell you either verbally or nonverbally if your guess is correct. If the client continues to talk and expands on the initial statement, you are on target.
6. Be open to being wrong. If you are, use client feedback to make another hypothesis about the client's meaning.

Remember that reflective listening is about refraining from making assumptions about the underlying message of client statements, making a hypothesis about the meaning or feeling of the statement, and then checking out your hypothesis by offering a reflective statement and listening carefully to the client's response (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Reflective listening is basic to all of four MI processes. **Follow open questions with at least one reflective listening response—but preferably two or three responses—before asking another question.** A higher ratio of reflections to questions consistently predicts positive client outcomes (Romano & Peters, 2016). It takes practice to become skillful, but the effort is worth it because careful reflective listening builds a strong therapeutic alliance

and facilitates the client's self-exploration—two essential components of person-centered counseling (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The key to expressing accurate empathy through reflective listening is your ability to shift gears from being an expert who gives advice to being an individual supporting the client's autonomy and expertise in making decisions about changing substance use behaviors (Moyers, 2014).

Summarizing

Summarizing is a form of reflective listening that distills the essence of several client statements and reflects them back to him or her. It is not simply a collection of statements. You intentionally select statements that may have particular meaning for the client and present them in a summary that paints a fuller picture of the client's experience than simply using reflections (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

There are several types of summarization in MI (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Collecting summary:** Recalls a series of related client statements, creating a narrative to reflect on.
- **Linking summary:** Reflects a client statement; links it to an earlier statement.
- **Transitional summary:** Wraps up a conversation or task; moves the client along the change process.
- **Ambivalence summary:** Gathers client statements of sustain talk and change talk during a session. This summary should acknowledge sustain talk but reinforce and highlight change talk.
- **Recapitulation summary:** Gathers all of the change talk of many conversations. It is useful during the transition from one stage to the next when making a change plan.

At the end of a summary, ask the client whether you left anything out. This opportunity lets the client correct or add more to the summary and often leads to further discussion. Summarizing encourages client self-reflection.

Summaries reinforce key statements of movement toward change. Clients hear change talk once when they make a statement, twice when the counselor reflects it, and again when the counselor summarizes the discussion.

Four Processes of MI

MI has moved away from the idea of phases of change to overlapping processes that more accurately describe how MI works in clinical practice. This change is a shift away from a linear, rigid model of change to a circular, fluid model of change within the context of the counseling relationship. This section reviews these MI processes, summarizes counseling strategies appropriate for each process, and integrates the four principles of MI from previous versions.

Engaging

Engaging clients is the first step in all counseling approaches. Specific counseling strategies or techniques will not be effective if you and the client haven't established a strong working relationship. MI is no exception to this. Miller and Rollnick (2013) define engaging in MI "as the process of establishing a mutually trusting and respectful helping relationship" (p. 40). Research supports the link between your ability to develop this kind of helping relationship and positive treatment outcomes such as reduced drinking (Moyers et al., 2016; Romano & Peters, 2016).

Opening strategies

Opening strategies promote engagement in MI by emphasizing OARS in the following ways:

- Ask open questions instead of closed questions.
- Offer affirmations of client self-efficacy, hope, and confidence in the client's ability to change.
- Emphasize reflective listening.
- Summarize to reinforce that you are listening and genuinely interested in the client's perspective.

- Determine the client's readiness to change or and specific stage in the SOC (see Chapters 1 and 2).
- Avoid prematurely focusing on taking action.
- Try not to identify the client's treatment goals until you have sufficiently explored the client's readiness. Then you can address the client's ambivalence.

These opening strategies ensure support for the client and help the client explore ambivalence in a safe setting. In the following initial conversation, the counselor uses OARS to establish rapport and address the client's drinking through reflective listening and asking open questions:

- **Counselor:** Jerry, thanks for coming in. *(Affirmation)* What brings you here today? *(Open question)*
- **Client:** My wife thinks I drink too much. She says that's why we argue all the time. She also thinks that my drinking is ruining my health.
- **Counselor:** So your wife has some concerns about your drinking interfering with your relationship and harming your health. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Yeah, she worries a lot.
- **Counselor:** You wife worries a lot about the drinking. *(Reflection)* What concerns **you** about it? *(Open question)*
- **Client:** I'm not sure I'm *concerned* about it, but I do wonder sometimes if I'm drinking too much.
- **Counselor:** You are wondering about the drinking. *(Reflection)* Too much for*...? (Open question that invites the client to complete the sentence)*
- **Client:** For my own good, I guess. I mean it's not like it's really serious, but sometimes when I wake up in the morning, I feel really awful, and I can't think straight most of the morning.
- **Counselor:** It messes up your thinking, your concentration. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Yeah, and sometimes I have trouble remembering things.

- **Counselor:** And you wonder if these problems are related to drinking too much. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Well, I know it is sometimes.
- **Counselor:** You're certain that sometimes drinking too much hurts you. *(Reflection)* Tell me what it's like to lose concentration and have trouble remembering. *(Open question in the form of a statement)*
- **Client:** It's kind of scary. I am way too young to have trouble with my memory. And now that I think about it, that's what usually causes the arguments with my wife. She'll ask me to pick up something from the store and when I forget to stop on my way home from work, she starts yelling at me.
- **Counselor:** You're scared that drinking is starting to have some negative effects on what's important to you like your ability to think clearly and good communication with your wife. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Yeah. But I don't think I'm an alcoholic or anything.
- **Counselor:** You don't think you're that bad off, but you do wonder if maybe you're overdoing it and hurting yourself and your relationship with your wife. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Yeah.
- **Counselor:** You know, Jerry, it takes courage to come talk to a stranger about something that's scary to talk about. *(Affirmation)* What do you think? *(Open question)*
- **Client:** I never thought of it like that. I guess it **is** important to figure out what to do about my drinking.

Counselor: So, Jerry, let's take a minute to review where we are today. Your wife is concerned about how much you drink. You have been having trouble concentrating and remembering things and are wondering if that has to do with how much you are drinking. You are now thinking that you need to figure out what to do about the drinking. Did I miss anything? *(Summary)*

Avoiding traps

Identify and avoid traps to help preserve client engagement. The above conversation shows use of core MI skills to engage the client and help him feel heard, understood, and respected while moving the conversation toward change. The counselor avoids common traps that increase disengagement.

Common traps to avoid include the following (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **The Expert Trap:** People often see a professional, like primary care physician or nurse practitioner, to get answers to questions and to help them make important decisions. But relying on another person (even a professional) to have all the answers is contrary to the spirit of MI and the principles of person-centered care. **Both you and the client have expertise.** You have knowledge and skills in listening and interviewing; the client has knowledge based on his or her life experience. In your conversations with a client, remember that you do not have to have all the answers, and trust that the client has knowledge about what is important to him or her, what needs to change, and what steps need to be taken to make those changes. Avoid falling into the expert trap by:
    - – **Refraining from acting on the "righting reflex,"** the natural impulse to jump into action and direct the client toward a specific change. Such a directive style is likely to produce sustain talk and discord in the counseling relationship.
    - – **Not arguing with the client.** If you try to prove a point, the client predictably takes the opposite side. Arguments with the client can rapidly degenerate into a power struggle and do not enhance motivation for change.
- **The Labeling Trap:** Diagnoses and labels like "alcoholic" or "addict" can evoke shame in clients. **There is no evidence that forcing a client to accept a label is helpful; in fact, it usually evokes discord in the counseling relationship.** In the conversation above, the counselor didn't argue with Jerry about whether he is an "alcoholic." If the counselor had done so, the outcome would likely have been different:
    - – **Client:** But I don't think I'm an alcoholic or anything.

- – **Counselor:** Well, based on what you've told me, I think we should do a comprehensive

  assessment to determine whether or not you are.

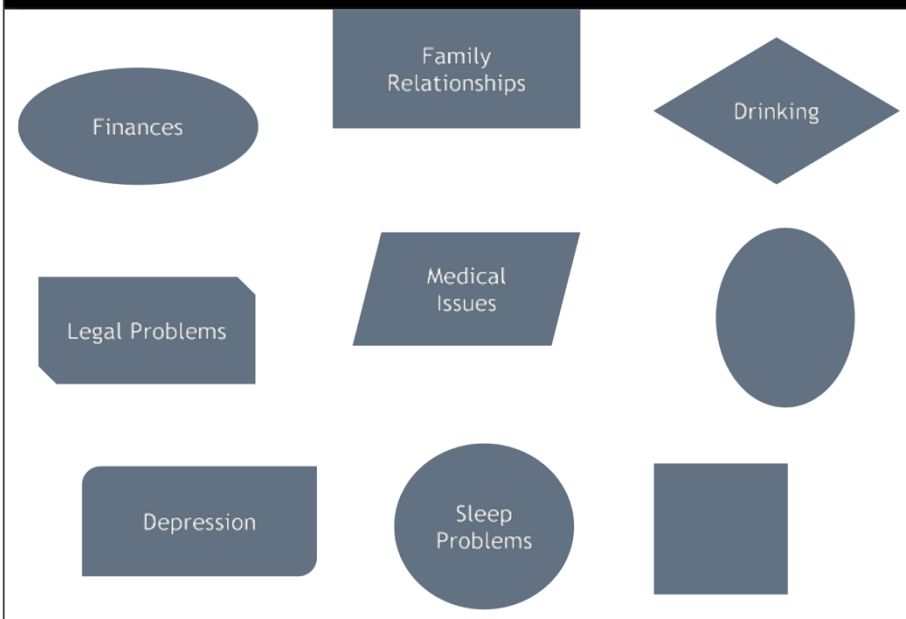
- – **Client:** Wait a minute. That's not what I came for. I don't think counseling is going to help me.

- **The Question-and-Answer Trap:** When your focus is on getting information from a client, particularly during an assessment, you and the client can easily fall into the question-and-answer trap. This can feel like an interrogation rather than a conversation. In addition, a pattern of asking closed questions and giving short answers sets you up in the expert role, and the client becomes a passive recipient of the treatment intervention instead of an active partner in the process. Remember to ask open questions, and follow them with reflective listening responses to avoid the question-and-answer trap.
- **The Premature Focus Trap:** You can fall into this trap when you focus on an agenda for change before the client is ready—for example, jumping into solving problems before developing a strong working alliance. When you focus on an issue that is important to **you** (e.g., admission to an inpatient treatment program) but not to the client, discord will occur. Remember that your approach should match where the client is with regard to his or her readiness to change.
- **The Blaming Trap:** Clients often enter treatment focused on who is to blame for their substance use problem. They may feel guarded and defensive, expecting you to judge them harshly as family, friends, coworkers, or others may have. Avoid the blame trap by immediately reassuring clients that you are uninterested in blaming anyone and that your role is to listen to what troubles them.
- **Focusing**
- **Once you have engaged the client, the next step in MI is to find a direction for the conversation and the counseling process as a whole.** This is called focusing in MI. With the client, you develop a mutually agreed-on

agenda that promotes change and then identify a specific target behavior to discuss. Without a clear focus, conversations about change can be unwieldy and unproductive (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

- ***Deciding on an agenda***
- MI is essentially a conversation you and the client have about change. The direction of the conversation is influenced by the client, the counselor, and the clinical setting (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). For example, a client walking through the door of an outpatient SUD treatment program understand that his or her use of alcohol and other drugs will be on the agenda.
- Clients, however, may be mandated to treatment and may not see their substance use as a problem, or they may have multiple issues (e.g., child care, relational, financial, legal problems) that interfere with recovery and that need to be addressed. When clients bring multiple problems to the table or are confused or uncertain about the direction of the conversation, you can engage in agenda mapping, which is a process consistent with MI that helps you and clients decide on the counseling focus. Exhibit 3.7 displays the components in an agenda map.

Exhibit 3.7. Components in a Sample Agenda Map



Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013.

To engage in agenda mapping (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- Have an empty agenda map handout handy, or draw 8 to 10 empty circles or shapes on a blank paper.
- Present the empty agenda map or the sheet of paper to the client by saying, "I know you were referred here to address [name the problem, such as drinking], but you may have other concerns you want to discuss. I'd like to take a few minutes and write down things you may want to talk about. That way, we'll have a map we can look at to see whether we're headed in the right direction. How does that sound?"
- Write a different concern or issue in each circle. Leave two or three circles blank so that you can add a new client concern or suggest a topic that may be important to discuss. If you suggest a topic, frame it in a way that asks permission and leaves the choice to the client: "You've mentioned a few different concerns that are important to discuss. Would it be okay to also talk about [name the problem, such as drug use] because that's why you were referred to treatment?"

- Ask the client what the most pressing concern is: “You’ve mentioned several things you’d like to talk about. (Summarize) Where would you like to start?”
- Leave time to guide the client back to the substance use concern if not discussed during the session.
- Keep the map as a visual record, and refer back to it with the client as a reminder of the focus and

  direction of the counseling process. Add and delete topics as needed.

- Remember to use OARS throughout this process to move the conversation along.

Identifying a target behavior

Once you and the client agree on a general direction, focus on a specific behavior the client is ready to discuss. Change talk links to a specific behavior change target (Miller & Rollnick, 2010); you can’t evoke change talk until you identify a target behavior. For example, if the client is ready to discuss drinking, guide the conversation toward details specific to that concern. A sample of such a conversation follows:

- **Counselor:** Marla, you said you’d like to talk about your drinking. It would help if you’d give me a sense of what your specific concerns are about drinking. *(Open question in the form of a statement)*
- **Client:** Well, after work I go home to my apartment and I am so tired; I don’t want to do anything but watch TV, microwave a meal, and drink till I fall asleep. Then I wake up with a big hangover in the morning and have a hard time getting to work on time. My supervisor has given me a warning.
- **Counselor:** You’re worried that the amount you drink affects your sleep and ability to get to work on time. *(Reflection)* What do you think you’d like to change about the drinking? *(Open question)*

- **Client:** I think I need to stop drinking completely for a while, so I can get into a healthy sleep pattern.
- **Counselor:** So I'd like to put stop drinking for a while on the map, is that okay? *[Asks permission.*

  Pauses. Waits for permission.] Let's focus our conversations on that goal.

  Notice that this client is already expressing change talk about her alcohol use. By narrowing the focus from drinking as a general concern to stopping drinking as a possible target behavior, the counselor moved into the MI process of evoking.

Evoking

Evoking elicits client motivations for change. It shapes conversations in ways that encourage clients, not counselors, to argue for change. Evoking is the core of MI and differentiates it from other counseling methods (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The following sections explore evoking change talk, responding to change talk and sustain talk, developing discrepancy, evoking hope and confidence to support self- efficacy, recognizing signs of readiness to change, and asking key questions.

Evoking change talk

Engaging the client in the process of change is the fundamental task of MI. Rather than identifying the problem and promoting ways to solve it, your task is to help clients recognize that their use of substances may be contributing to their distress and that they have a choice about how to move forward in life in ways that enhance their health and well-being. **One signal that clients' ambivalence about change is decreasing is when they start to express change talk.**

The first step to evoking change talk is to ask open questions. There are seven kinds of change talk, reflected in the DARN acronym. DARN questions can help you generate open questions that evoke change talk. Exhibit 3.8 provides

examples of open questions that elicit change talk in preparation for taking steps to change.

Exhibit 3.8. Examples of Open Questions to Evoke Change Talk Using DARN

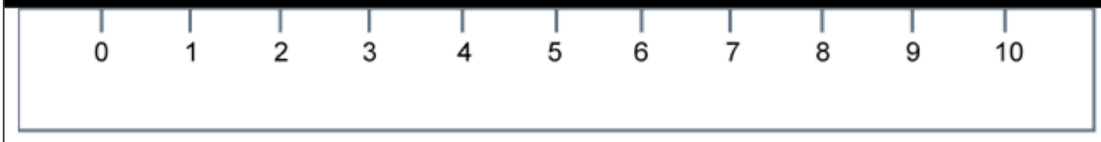
Desire	"How would you **like** for things to change?" "What do you **hope** our work together will accomplish?" "What don't you **like** about how things are now?" "What don't you **like** about the effects of drinking or drug use?" "What do you **wish** for your relationship with _____?" "How do you **want** your life to be different a year from now?" "What are you **looking for** from this program?"
Ability	"If you decided to quit drinking, how **could** you do it?" "What do you think you might be **able** to change?" "What ideas do you have for how you **could** _____?" "What **encourages** you that you could **change** if you decided to?" "How **confident** are you that you could _____ if you made up your mind?" "Of the different options you've considered, what seems most **possible**?" "How likely are you to be **able** to _____?"
Reasons	"What are some of the reasons you have for making this change?" "Why would you want to stop or cut back on your use of _____?" "What's the downside of the way things are now?" "What might be the good things about quitting _____?" "What would make it worthwhile for you to _____?" "What might be some of the advantages of _____?" "What might be the three best reasons for _____?"
Need	"What **needs** to happen?" "How **important** is it for you to _____?" "What makes you think that you might **need** to make a change?" "How **serious** or **urgent** does this feel to you?"
	"What do you think **has** to change?"

Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013. Motivational Interviewing: Helping People Change (3rd ed.), *pp. 171–173. Adapted with permission from Guilford Press.*

Other strategies for evoking change talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013) include:

• **Eliciting importance of change.** Ask an open question that elicits "Need" change talk (Exhibit 3.8): "How important is it for you to *[name the change in the target behavior, such as cutting back on drinking]*?" You can also use scaling questions such as those in the Importance Ruler in Exhibit 3.9 to help the client explore change talk about need more fully.

Exhibit 3.9. The Importance Ruler



Not Important — Extremely Important

- Initial question: "On a scale of 0 to 10, how important is it for you to change *[name the target behavior, like how much the client drinks]* if you decided to?"
- Follow-up question 1: "How are you at a *[fill in the number on the scale]* instead of a *[choose a lower number on the scale]*?" When you use a lower number, you are inviting the client to reflect on how he or she is already considering change. If you use a higher number, it will likely evoke sustain talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Notice the difference in the following examples:

  Lower number
  - **Counselor:** You mention that you are at a 6 on the importance of quitting drinking. How are you at a 6 instead of a 3?
  - **Client:** I'm realizing that drinking causes more problems in my life now than when I was younger.

  Higher number
  - **Counselor:** You mention that you are at a 6 on the importance of quitting drinking. How are you at a 6 instead of a 9?
  - **Client:** Well, I am just not ready to quit right this second.

  In the higher number example, the counselor evokes sustain talk, but it is still useful information and can be the beginning of a deep conversation about the client's readiness to change.
- Follow-up question 2: "What would help move from a *[fill in the number on the scale]* to a *[choose a slightly higher number on the scale]*?" This question invites the client to reflect on reasons to increase readiness to change.

- **Exploring extremes.** Ask the client to identify the extremes of the problem; this enhances his or her motivation. For example: "What concerns you the most about *[name the target behavior, like using cocaine]?"*
- **Looking back.** To point out discrepancies and evoke change talk, ask the client about what it was like before experiencing substance use problems, and compare that response with what it is like now. For example: "What was it like before you started using heroin?"
- **Looking forward.** Ask the client to envision what he or she would like for the future. This can elicit change talk and identify goals to work toward. For

example: “If you decided to *[describe the change in target behavior, such as quit smoking],* how do you think your life would be different a month, a year, or 5 years from now?”

Reinforce change talk by reflecting it back verbally, nodding, or making approving facial expressions and affirming statements. Encourage the client to continue exploring the possibility of change by asking for elaboration, explicit examples, or details about remaining concerns. Questions that begin with “What else” effectively invite elaboration.

Your task is to evoke change talk and selectively reinforce it via reflective listening. The amount of change talk versus sustain talk is linked to client behavior change and positive substance use outcomes (Houck et al., 2018; Lindqvist et al., 2017; Magill et al., 2014).

Responding to change talk and sustain talk

Your focus should be on evoking change talk and minimizing sustain talk. Sustain talk expresses the side of ambivalence that favors continuing one’s pattern of substance use. Don’t argue with the client’s sustain talk, and don’t try to persuade the client to take the change side of ambivalence.

There are many ways to respond to sustain talk that acknowledge it without getting stuck in it. You can use (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Simple reflections.** Acknowledge sustain talk with a simple reflective listening response. This validates what the client has said and sometimes elicits change talk. Give the client an opportunity to respond before moving on.
    - – **Client:** I don’t plan to quit drinking anytime soon.
    - – **Counselor:** You don’t think that abstinence would work for you right now.
- **Amplified reflections.** Accurately reflect the client’s statement but with emphasis (and without sarcasm). An amplified reflection overstates the

client's point of view, which can nudge the client to take the other side of ambivalence (i.e., change talk).

  - – **Client:** But I can't quit smoking pot. All my friends smoke pot.
  - – **Counselor:** So you really can't quit because you'd be too different from your friends.

- **Double-sided reflections.** A double-sided reflection acknowledges sustain talk, then pairs it with change talk either in the same client statement or in a previous statement. It acknowledges the client's ambivalence yet selectively reinforces change talk. Use "and" to join the two statements and make change talk the second statement (see Counselor Response in Exhibit 3.6).
  - – **Client:** I know I should quit smoking now that I am pregnant. But I tried to go cold turkey before, and it was just too hard.
  - – **Counselor:** You're worried that you won't be able to quit all at once, and you want your baby to be born healthy.
- **Agreements with a twist.** A subtle strategy is to agree, but with a slight twist or change of direction that moves the discussion forward. The twist should be said without emphasis or sarcasm.
  - – **Client:** I can't imagine what I would do if I stopped drinking. It's part of who I am. How could I go to the bar and hang out with my friends?
  - – **Counselor:** You just wouldn't be you without drinking. You have to keep drinking no matter how it effects your health.
- **Reframing.** Reframing acknowledges the client's experience yet suggests alternative meanings. It invites the client to consider a different perspective (Barnett, Spruijt-Metz, et al., 2014). Reframing is also a way to refocus the conversation from emphasizing sustain talk to eliciting change talk (Barnett, Spruijt-Metz, et al., 2014).

– **Client:** My husband always nags me about my drinking and calls me an alcoholic. It bugs me.

Counselor: Although your husband expresses it in a way that frustrates you, he really cares and is concerned about the drinking.

- **A shift in focus.** Defuse discord and tension by shifting the conversational focus.
    - – **Client:** The way you're talking, you think I'm an alcoholic, don't you?
    - – **Counselor:** Labels aren't important to me. What I care about is how to best help you.
- **Emphasis on personal autonomy.** Emphasizing that people have choices (even if all the choices have a downside) reinforces personal autonomy and opens up the possibility for clients to choose change instead of the status quo. When you make these statements, remember to use a neutral, nonjudgmental tone, without sarcasm. A dismissive tone can evoke strong reactions from the client.

– **Client:** I am really not interested in giving up drinking completely.
– **Counselor:** It's really up to you. No one can make that decision for you.

All of these strategies have one thing in common: They are delivered in the spirit of MI.

Developing discrepancy: A values conversation

Developing discrepancy has been a key element of MI since its inception. It was originally one of the four principles of MI. In the current version, exploring the discrepancy between clients' values and their substance use behavior has been folded into the evoking process. When clients recognize discrepancies in their values, goals, and hopes for the future, their motivation to change increases. **Your task is to help clients focus on how their behavior conflicts with their values and goals.** The focus is on intrinsic motivation. MI doesn't work if you focus only on

how clients' substance use behavior is in conflict with external pressure (e.g., family, an employer, the court) (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

To facilitate discrepancy, have a values conversation to explore what is important to the client (e.g., good heath, positive relationships with family, being a responsible member of the community, preventing another hospitalization, staying out of jail), then highlight the conflict the client feels between his or her substance use behaviors and those values. Client experience of discrepancy between values and substance use behavior is related to better client outcomes (Apodaca & Longabaugh, 2009).

This process can raise uncomfortable feelings like guilt or shame. Frame the conversation by conveying acceptance, compassion, and affirmation. The paradox of acceptance is that it helps people tolerate more discrepancy and, instead of avoiding that tension, propels them toward change (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). However, too much discrepancy may overwhelm the client and cause him or her to think change is not possible (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

To help a client perceive discrepancy, you can use what is sometimes termed the "Columbo approach." Initially developed by Kanfer & Schefft (1988), this approach remains a staple of MI and is particularly useful with a client who is in the Precontemplation stage and needs to be in charge of the conversation. Essentially, the counselor expresses understanding and continuously seeks clarification of the client's problem but appears unable to perceive any solution.

Expert Comment: The Columbo Approach
Sometimes I use what I refer to as the Columbo approach to develop discrepancy with clients. In the old *Columbo* television series, Peter Falk played a detective named Columbo who had a sense of what had really occurred but used a somewhat bumbling, unassuming, Socratic style of querying his prime suspect, strategically posing questions and making reflections to piece together a picture of what really happened. As the pieces began to fall into place, the object of Columbo's investigation would often reveal the real story.

The counselor plays the role of a detective who is trying to solve a mystery but is having a difficult time because the clues don't add up. The "Columbo counselor" engages the client in solving the mystery:

Example #1: "Hmm. Help me figure this out. You've told me that keeping custody of your daughter and being a good parent are the most important things to you now. How does your heroin use fit in with that?"

Example #2: "So, sometimes when you drink during the week, you can't get out of bed to get to work. Last month, you missed 5 days. But you enjoy your work, and doing well in your job is very important to you."

In both cases, the counselor expresses confusion, which allows the client to take over and explain how these conflicting desires fit together.

The value of the Columbo approach is that it forces the client, rather than the counselor, to grapple with discrepancies and attempt to resolve them. This approach reinforces the notion that the client is the expert on his or her behavior and values. The client is truly the only one who can resolve the discrepancy. If the counselor attempts to do this instead of the client, the counselor risks making the wrong interpretation, rushing to the client to conclusions rather than listening to the client's perspective, and, perhaps most important, making the client a passive rather than an active participant in the process.

Cheryl Grills, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member

In addition to providing personalized feedback (as discussed in Chapter 2), **you can facilitate discrepancy by** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Identifying personal values.** For clients to feel discrepancy between their values and actions, they need to recognize what those values are. Some clients may have only a vague understanding of their values or goals. A tool to help you and clients explore values is the Values Card Sort.
    - – Print different values like "Achievement—to have important accomplishments" (Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 80) on individual cards.

    - – Invite clients to sort the cards into piles by importance; those that are most important are place in one pile, and those that are least important are in another pile.
    - – Ask clients to pick up to 10 cards from the most important pile; converse about each one.
    - – Use OARS to facilitate the conversations.
    - – Pay attention to statements about discrepancy between these important values and clients' substance use behaviors, and reinforce these statements.
    - – A downloadable, public domain version of the Value Card Sort activity is available online (www.motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/valuescardsort_0.pdf).
- **Providing information.** Avoid being the expert and treating clients as passive recipients when giving information about the negative physical, emotional, mental, social, or spiritual effects or consequences of substance misuse. Instead, engage the client in a process of mutual exchange. This process is called Elicit-Provide-Elicit (EPE) and has three steps (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):
    - – **Elicit readiness or interest in the information.** Don't assume that clients are interested in hearing the information you want to offer; start by asking permission. For example: "Would it be okay if I shared some information with you about the health risks of using heroin?" Don't assume that clients lack this knowledge. Ask what they already know about the risks of using heroin. For example: "What would you most like to know about the health risks of heroin use?"
    - – **Provide information neutrally (i.e., without judgement).** Prioritize what clients have said they would most like to know. Fill in knowledge gaps. Present the information clearly and in small chunks. Too much information can overwhelm clients. Invite them to ask more questions about the information you're providing.

- **Elicit clients' understanding of the information.** Don't assume that you know how clients will react to the information you have provided. Ask questions:

  - "So, what do you make of this information?"
  - "What do you think about that?
  - "How does this information impact the way you might be thinking about *[name the substance use behavior, such as drinking]?*

- – Allow clients plenty of time to consider and reflect on the information you presented. Invite them to ask questions for clarification. Follow clients' responses to your open questions with reflective listening statements that emphasize change talk whenever you hear it. **EPE is an MI strategy to facilitate identifying discrepancy and is an effective and respectful way to give advice to clients about behavior change strategies during the planning process.**

• **Exploring others' concerns.** Another way to build discrepancy is to explore the clients' understanding of the concerns other people have expressed about their substance use. This differs from focusing on the external pressure that a family member, an employer, or the criminal justice system may be putting on clients to reduce or abstain from substance use. The purpose is to invite clients to explore the impact of substance use behaviors on the people with whom they are emotionally connected in a nonthreatening way. Approach this conversation from a place of genuine curiosity and even a bit of confusion (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Here is a brief example of what this conversation might look like using an open question about a significant other's concern, where reflecting sustain talk actually has the effect of eliciting change talk:

- – **Counselor:** You mentioned that your husband is concerned about your drinking. What do you think concerns him? *(Open question)*

- – **Client:** He worries about everything. The other day, he got really upset because I drove a block home from a friend's house after a party. He shouldn't worry so much. *(Sustain talk)*
- – **Counselor:** He's worried that you could crash and hurt yourself or someone else or get arrested for driving under the influence. But you think his concern is overblown. *(Complex reflection)*

– **Client:** I can see he may have a point. I really shouldn't drive after drinking. *(Change talk)* ***Evoking hope and confidence to support self-efficacy***

Many clients do not have a well-developed sense of self-efficacy. They find it hard to believe that they can begin or maintain behavior change. **Improving self-efficacy requires eliciting confidence, hope, and optimism that change, in general, is possible and that clients, specifically, can change.** This positive impact on self-efficacy may be one of the ways MI promotes behavior change (Chariyeva et al., 2013).

One of the most consistent predictors of positive client behavior change is "ability" change talk

(Romano & Peters, 2016). Unless a client believes change is possible, the perceived discrepancy between desire for change and feelings of hopelessness about accomplishing change is likely to result in continued sustain talk and no change. When clients express confidence in their ability to change, they are more likely to engage in behavior change (Romano & Peters, 2016).

Counselor Note: Self-Efficacy

Self-efficacy is a person's confidence in his or her ability to change a behavior (Miller & Rollnick, 2013), such as a behavior that risks one's health. Research has found that MI is effective in enhancing a client's self-efficacy and positive outcomes including treatment completion, lower substance use at the end of treatment, greater desire to quit cannabis use, and reductions in risky sexual

behavior for someone with HIV (Caviness et al., 2013; Chariyeva et al., 2013; Dufett, & Ward, 2015; Moore, Flamez,, & Szirony, 2017).

Because self-efficacy is a critical component of behavior change, it is crucial that you also believe in clients' capacity to reach their goals. You can help clients strengthen hope and confidence in MI by evoking confidence talk. Here are two strategies for evoking confidence talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

• **Use the Confidence Ruler** (Exhibit 3.10) and scaling questions to assess clients' confidence level and evoke confidence talk.

Exhibit 3.10. The Confidence Ruler

Not Confident — Extremely Confident

- Initial question: "On a scale of 0 to 10, how confident are you that you could change *[name the target behavior, like stop drinking]* if you decided to?"
- Follow-up questions:
  - "How are you at a [*fill in the number on the scale*] instead of a *[choose a lower number on the scale]*?" Using a lower number helps clients reflect on how far they've come on the confidence scale. Using a higher number with this question may discourage clients, which can elicit sustain talk. If that should happen, use strategies discussed previously for responding to sustain talk.
  - "What would help you get from a *[fill in the number on the scale]* to a *[choose a slightly higher number on the scale]*?" This open question invites clients to reflect on strategies to build confidence. Don't jump to a much higher number, which can overwhelm clients and lower confidence.

Whatever the client's response to these scaling questions, use it as an opportunity to begin a conversation about his or her confidence or perceived ability to move forward in the change process.

Ask open questions that evoke client strengths and abilities. Follow the open questions with reflective listening responses. Here are some examples of open questions that elicit confidence talk:

- – "Knowing yourself as well as you do, how do you think you could [name the target behavior change, like cutting back on smoking marijuana]?"
- – "How have you made difficult changes in the past?"
- – "How could you apply what you learned then to this situation?"

– “What gives you confidence that you could [name the target behavior change, like stopping cocaine use]?”

In addition, **you can help enhance clients’ hope and confidence about change by:**

- Exploring clients’ strengths and brainstorming how to apply those strengths to the current situation.
- Giving information via EPE about the efficacy of treatment to increase clients’ sense of self-efficacy.
- Discussing what worked and didn’t work in previous treatment episodes and offering change options based on what worked before.
- Describing how people in similar situations have successfully changed their behavior. Other clients in treatment can serve as role models and offer encouragement.
- Offering some cognitive tools, like the AA slogan “One day at a time” or “Keep it simple” to break down an overwhelming task into smaller changes that may be more manageable.
- Educating clients about the biology of addiction and the medical effects of substance use to alleviate shame and instill hope that recovery is possible.

Engaging, focusing, and evoking set the stage for mobilizing action to change. During these MI processes, your task is to evoke DARN change talk. This moves the client along toward taking action to change substance use behaviors. At this point, your task is to evoke and respond to CAT change talk.

Recognizing signs of readiness to change

As you evoke and respond to DARN change talk, you will begin to observe these signs of readiness to change in the client’s statements (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Increased change talk:** As DARN change talk increases, commitment and activation change talk begin to be expressed. The client may show optimism about change and an intention to change.

- **Decreased sustain talk:** As change talk increases, sustain talk decreases. When change talk overtakes sustain talk, it is a sign that the client is moving toward change.
- **Resolve:** The client seems more relaxed. The client talks less about the problem, and sometimes expresses a sense of resolution.
- **Questions about change:** The client asks what to do about the problem, how people change if they want to, and so forth. For example: "What do people do to get off pain pills?"
- **Envisioning:** The client begins to talk about life after a change, anticipate difficulties, or discuss the advantages of change. Envisioning requires imagining something different—not necessarily how to get to that something different, but simply imagining how things could be different.
- **Taking steps:** The client begins to experiment with small steps toward change (e.g., going to an AA meeting, going without drinking for a few days, reading a self-help book). Affirming small change steps helps the client build self-efficacy and confidence.

When you notice these signs of readiness to change, it is a good time to offer the client a recapitulation summary in which you restate his or her change talk and minimize reflections of sustain talk. **The recapitulation summary is a good way to transition into asking key questions** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Asking key questions

To help a client move from preparing to mobilizing for change, ask key questions (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- "What do you think you will do about your drinking?"
- "After reviewing the situation, what's the next step for you?"
- "What do you want to do about your drug use?"
- "What can you do about your smoking?"
- "Where do you go from here?"
- "What you might do next?"

When the client responds with change talk (e.g., “I intend to stop using heroin”), you can move forward to the planning process. If the client responds with sustain talk (e.g., “It would be too hard for me to quit using heroin right now”), you should go back to the evoking process. Remember that change is not a linear process for most people.

Do not jump into the planning process if the client expresses enough sustain talk to indicate not being ready to take the next step. The ambivalence about taking the next step may be uncertainty about giving up the substance use behavior or a lack of confidence about being able to make the change.

Planning

Your task in the process is to help the client develop a change plan that is acceptable, accessible, and appropriate. Once a client decides to change a substance use behavior, he or she may already have ideas about how to make that change. For example, a client may have previously stopped smoking cannabis and already knows what worked in the past. Your task is to simply reinforce the client’s plan.

Don’t assume that all clients need a structured method to develop a change plan. Many people can make significant lifestyle changes and initiate recovery from SUDs without formal assistance (Kelly, Bergman, Hoeppner, Vilsaint, & White, 2017). **For clients who need help developing a change plan, remember to continue using MI techniques and OARS to move the process from *why* change and *what* to change to *how* to change** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). A change plan is like a treatment plan but broader (e.g., going to an addiction treatment program may be part of a change plan), and the client, rather than you or the treatment program, is the driver of the planning process (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Identifying a change goal

Part of planning is working with the client to identify or clarify a change goal. At this point, the client may have identified a change goal. For example, when you ask a key question such as "What do you want to do about the drinking?" the client might say, "I want to cut back to two drinks a day on weekends." In this situation, the focus shifts to developing a plan with specific steps the client might take to reach the change goal. If the client is vague about a change goal and says, "I really need to do something about my drinking," the first step is to help the client clarify the change goal.

Here is an example of a dialog that helps the client get more specific:

- **Counselor:** You are committed to making some changes to your drinking. *(Reflection)* What would

  that look like? *(Open question)*

- **Client:** Well, I tried to cut back to one drink a day, but all I could think about was going to the bar and getting drunk. I cut back for 2 days but did end up back at the bar, and then it just got worse from there. At this point, I don't think I can just cut back.
- **Counselor:** You made a good-faith effort to control the drinking and learned a lot from that experiment. *(Affirmation)* You now think that cutting back is probably not a good strategy for you. *(Reflection)*
- **Client:** Yeah. It's time to quit. But I'm not sure I can do that on my own.
- **Counselor:** You're ready to quit drinking completely and realize that you could use some help with

  making that kind of change*. (Reflection)*

- **Client:** Yeah. It's time to give it up.
- **Counselor:** Let's review the conversation, *(Summarization)* and then talk about next steps.

  The counselor uses OARS to help the client clarify the change goal. The counselor also hears that the client lacks confidence that he or she can

achieve the change goal and reinforces the client's desire for some help in making the change. The next step with this client is to develop a change plan.

Developing a change plan

Begin with the change goal identified by the client; then, explore specific steps the client can take to achieve it. In the planning process, use OARS and pay attention to CAT change talk. As you proceed, carefully note the shift from change talk that is more general to change talk that is specific to the change plan (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). (See Chapter 6 for information on a developing a change plan.) Some evidence shows that change talk is related to the completion of a change plan (Roman & Peters, 2016). **Here are some strategies for helping clients develop a change plan** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Confirm the change goal.** Make sure that you and the client agree on what substance use behavior the client wants to change and what the ultimate goal is (i.e., to cut back or to abstain). This goal might change as the client takes steps to achieve it. For example, a client who tries to cut back on cannabis use may find that that it is not a workable plan and may decide to abstain completely.
- **Elicit the client's ideas about how to change.** There may be many different pathways to achieve the desired goal. For example, a client whose goal is to stop drinking may go to AA or SMART Recovery meetings for support, get a prescription for naltrexone (a medication that reduces craving and the pleasurable effects of alcohol [Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration & National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism, 2015]) from a primary care provider, enter an intensive outpatient treatment program, or try some combination of these. Before you jump in with your ideas, elicit the client's ideas about strategies to make the change. Explore pros and cons of the client's ideas; determine which appeals to the client most and is most appropriate for this client.

- **Offer a menu of options.** Use the EPE process (see the section "Developing discrepancy: A values conversation" above) to ask permission to offer suggestions about accessible treatment options, provide information about those options, and elicit the client's understanding of options and which ones seem acceptable.
- **Summarize the change plan.** Once you and the client have a clear plan, summarize the plan and the specific steps or pathways the client has identified. Listen for CAT change talk, and reinforce it through reflective listening.
- **Explore obstacles.** Once the client applies the change plan to his or her life, there will inevitably be setbacks. Try to anticipate potential obstacles and how the client might respond to them before the client takes steps to implement the plan. Then reevaluate the change plan, and help the client tweak it using the information about what did and didn't work from prior attempts.

Strengthening Commitment to Change

The planning process is just the beginning of change. Clients must commit to the plan and show that commitment by taking action. There is some evidence that client commitment change talk is associated with positive AUD outcomes (Romano & Peters, 2016). One study found that counselor efforts to elicit client commitment to change alcohol use is associated with reduced alcohol consumption and increased abstinence for clients in outpatient treatment (Magill, Stout, & Apodoaca, 2013).

Usually, people express an intention to make a change before they make a firm commitment to taking action. You can evoke the client's intention to take action by asking open questions: "What are you **willing** to do this week?" or "What specific steps of the change plan are you **ready** to take?" (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Remember that the client may have an end goal (e.g., to quit drinking) and intermediate action steps to achieving that goal (e.g., filling a naltrexone prescription, going to an AA meeting).

Once the client has expressed an intention to change, elicit commitment change talk. Try asking an open question that invites the client to explore his or her commitment more clearly: "What would help you strengthen your commitment to _____ *[name the step or ultimate goal for change, for example, getting that prescription from your doctor for naltrexone]*?" (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Other strategies to strengthen commitment to action steps and change goals include (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

• Exploring any ambivalence clients have about change goals or specific elements of change plans.

- Reinforcing CAT change talk through reflective listening.
- Inviting clients to state their commitment to their significant others.
- Asking clients to self-monitor by recording progress toward change goals (e.g., with a drinking log).
- Exploring, with clients' consent, whether supportive significant others can help with medication adherence or other activities that reinforce commitment (e.g., getting to AA meetings).

The change plan process lends itself to using other counseling methods like CBT and MET. For example, you can encourage clients to monitor their thoughts and feelings in high-risk situations where they are more likely to return to substance use or misuse. Chapter 7 provides more information on relapse prevention. No matter what counseling strategies you use, keep to the spirit of MI by working with clients and honoring and respecting their right to and capacity for self-direction.

Benefits of MI in Treating SUDs

The number of research studies on MI has doubled about every 3 years from 1999 to 2013 (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Many studies were randomized clinical trials reflecting a range of clinical populations, types of problems, provider settings,

types of SUDs, and co-occurring substance use and mental disorders (Smedslund et al., 2011). Although some studies report mixed results, the overall scientific evidence suggests that MI is associated with small to strong (and significant) effects for positive substance use behavioral outcomes compared with no treatment. MI is as effective as other counseling approaches (DiClemente et al., 2017). A research review found strong, significant support for MI and combined MI/MET in client outcomes for alcohol, tobacco, and cannabis and some support for its use in treating cocaine and combined illicit drug use disorders (DiClemente et al., 2017). Positive outcomes included reduced alcohol, tobacco, and cannabis use; fewer alcohol-related problems; and improved client engagement and retention (DiClemente et al., 2017). MI and combined MI/MET were effective with adolescents, young adults, college students, adults, and pregnant women.

Counselor adherence to MI skills is important for producing client outcomes (Apodaca et al., 2016; Magill et al., 2013). For instance, using open questions, simple and complex reflective listening responses, and affirmations is associated with change talk (Apodaca et al., 2016; Romano & Peters, 2016). Open questions and reflective listening responses can elicit sustain talk when counselors explore ambivalence with clients (Apodaca et al., 2016). However, growing evidence suggests that the amount and strength of client change talk versus sustain talk in counseling sessions are key components of MI associated with behavior change (Gaume et al., 2016; Houck et al., 2018; Lindqvist et al., 2017; Magill et al., 2014).

Other benefits of MI include (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **Cost effectiveness.** MI can be delivered in brief interventions like SBIRT (screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment) and FRAMES (**F**eedback, **R**esponsibility, **A**dvice, **M**enu of options, **E**mpathy, and **S**elf-efficacy, see Chapter 2), which makes it cost effective. In addition, including significant others in MI interventions is also cost effective (Shepard et al., 2016).
- **Ease of use.** MI has been adapted and integrated into many settings, including primary care facilities, emergency departments, behavioral health

centers, and criminal justice and social service agencies. It is useful anywhere that focuses on helping people manage substance misuse and SUDs.

- **Broad dissemination.** MI has been disseminated throughout the United States and internationally.
- **Applicability to diverse health and behavioral health problems.** Beyond substance use behaviors,

  MI has demonstrated benefits across a wide range of behavior change goals.

- **Effectiveness.** Positive effects from MI counseling occur across a range of real-life clinical settings.
- **Ability to complement other treatment approaches.** MI fits well with other counseling approaches, such as CBT. It can enhance client motivation to engage in specialized addiction treatment services and stay in and adhere to treatment.
- **Ease of adoption by a range of providers.** MI can be implemented by primary care and behavioral health professionals, peer providers, criminal justice personnel, and various other professionals.
- **Role in mobilizing client resources.** MI is based on person-centered counseling principles. It focuses on mobilizing the client's own resources for change. It is consistent with the healthcare model of helping people learn to self-manage chronic illnesses like diabetes and heart disease.

Conclusion

MI is a directed, person-centered counseling style that is effective in helping clients change their substance use behaviors. When delivered in the spirit of MI, the core skills of asking open questions, affirming, using reflective listening, and summarizing enhance client motivation and readiness to change. Counselor empathy, shown through reflective listening and evoking change talk, is another important element of MI's effectiveness and is associated with positive client outcomes. MI has been adapted for use in brief interventions and across a wide

range of clinical settings and client populations. It is compatible with other counseling models and theories of change, including CBT and the SOC.

Chapter 4—From Precontemplation to Contemplation: Building Readiness

"The task for individuals in Precontemplation is to become conscious of and concerned about the current pattern of behavior and/or interested in a new behavior. From a change perspective, it is more important to recognize an individual's current views on change and address her or his reasons for not wanting to change than it is to understand how the status quo came to be."

DiClemente, 2018, p. 29

Key Messages

- In the Precontemplation stage, clients do not recognize that they have a problem with substance use or they recognize the problem but are not ready to change their substance use behaviors.
- Counselors should be nonjudgmental about clients' low motivation to change and instead focus on building a strong working alliance.
- A key strategy to helping clients move from the Precontemplation stage to contemplating change is to raise their level of concern and awareness of the risk associated with their current substance use behaviors.
- Involving family members and significant others (SOs) can increase clients' concern about substance use.

Chapter 4 discusses strategies you can use to help clients raise doubt and concern about their substance use and related health, social, emotional, mental, financial, and legal problems. It highlights areas of focus and key counseling strategies that will help clients move from the Precontemplation stage to Contemplation. This chapter also addresses issues that may arise for clients mandated to treatment.

In the Stages of Change (SOC) model, clients who are unconcerned about their current substance use or may be concerned but aren't considering change are in Precontemplation. They may remain there or in the early Contemplation stage for years, rarely or possibly never thinking about change.

You can take advantage of many opportunities and scenarios to help someone who is misusing substances start on a journey toward change—to move from Precontemplation to Contemplation. A client in Precontemplation is often moved to enter the cycle of change by extrinsic sources of motivation. The following situations might lead a person who is misusing a substance to treatment:

- A college coach refers an athlete for treatment after he tests positive for cocaine use.
- A wife worries about her husband's drinking and insists she'll file for divorce unless he gets treatment.
- A tenant is displaced from a federal housing project because of his substance use.
- A driver is referred for treatment by the court for driving while intoxicated.
- A woman tests positive for substances during a prenatal visit to a public health clinic.
- An employer sends an employee whose job performance has declined to the company's employee assistance program, and the employee is subsequently referred for substance use treatment.
- A physician in an emergency department treats a driver involved in a serious automobile crash and discovers alcohol in his system.
- A family physician screens a patient for alcohol use disorder (AUD) and suggests treatment based on
- the patient's high score on the Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test.
- • A mother whose children were taken into custody by Child Protective Services because of neglect learns that she cannot get them back until she stops using substances and seeks treatment.
- In each situation, someone with an important relationship to the person misusing substances stated his or her concerns about the person's

substance misuse and its negative effects. The response to these concerns depends, in part, on the person's perception of the circumstances as well as the way feedback about substance misuse is presented. An individual will be better motivated to abstain from or moderate his or her substance use if these concerned others offer relevant information in a supportive and empathic manner rather than in a judgmental, dismissive, or confrontational way.

- Exhibit 4.1 presents counseling strategies for Precontemplation.

Exhibit 4.1. Counseling Strategies for Precontemplation

Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
• The client is not concerned about substance use or lacks awareness about any problems. • The client is not yet considering change or is unwilling or unable to change. • The client is often pressured by others to seek help.	• Develop rapport and build trust to establish a strong counseling alliance. • Raise doubts and concerns about the client's substance use. • Understand special motivational counseling considerations for clients mandated to treatment.	• Elicit the client's perceptions of the problem. • Explore the events that led to entering treatment. • Assess the client's stage in the SOC and readiness to change. • Commend the client for coming to treatment. • Agree on a direction. • Provide information about the effects and risks of substance misuse. • Evoke concern about the client's substance use. • Provide personalized feedback on assessment findings. • Involve SOs in treatment to raise concern about the client's substance use. • Express concern, and leave the door open.

Develop Rapport and Build Trust

Before you raise the topic of change with people who are not thinking about it, establish rapport and trust. The challenge is to create a safe and supportive environment in which clients can feel comfortable about engaging in authentic dialog. As clients become more engaged in counseling, their defensiveness and reluctance to change decreases (Prochaska, Norcross, & DiClemente, 2013). Some motivational strategies for establishing rapport in initial conversations about behavior change include:

- **Asking the client for permission** to address the topic of changing substance use behaviors; this shows respect for the client's autonomy.

- **Telling the client something about how you or your program operates and how you and the client could work together.** State how long sessions will last and what you expect to accomplish both now and over a specified time. Try not to overwhelm the new client with all the program's rules and regulations. Specify what assessments or other formal arrangements will be needed, if appropriate.
- **Raising confidentiality issues up front.** You must inform the client which information will be kept private, which can be released with permission, and which must be sent back to a referring agency.
- **Explaining that you will not tell the client what to do or how and whether to change.** Rather, you will be asking the client to do most of the talking—giving him or her perspective about what is

happening while inviting the client to share his or her own perspective. You can also invite comments about what the client expects or hopes to achieve.

- **Asking the client to tell you why he or she has come to treatment, mentioning what you know about the reasons, and asking for the client's version or elaboration** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). If the client seems particularly hesitant or defensive, one strategy is to choose a topic of interest to the client that can be linked to substance use. (For more information about setting an agenda, see Chapter 3.) Such information might be provided by the referral source or can be learned by asking whether the client is dealing with any stressful situations, such as illness, marital discord, or extremely heavy workload. This can lead naturally to questions such as "How does your use of alcohol fit into this?" or "How does your use of heroin affect your health?"
- **Avoiding referring to the client's "problem" or "substance misuse," because this may not reflect the client's perspective about substance use** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). You are trying to understand the context in which substances are used and the client's readiness to change. As mentioned previously, labels can raise a person's defenses.

- **Aligning your counseling approach to the client's current stage in the SOC.** For example, move to strategies more appropriate to a later stage in the SOC if you discover that the client is already contemplating or committed to change. (For more information on the later stages in the SOC, see Chapters 5 and 6.)

- **Counselor Note: Agency Policy About Client Intoxication**
- **In your first session, discuss your agency's policy on having conversations with clients who are intoxicated.** Be transparent about the policy and what actions you will take if the client comes to a session intoxicated. Coming to treatment intoxicated on alcohol or drugs impairs ability to participate in treatment, whether it is for an initial counseling session, assessment, or individual or group treatment (Miller, Forechimes, & Zweben, 2011).
- Many programs administer breathalyzer tests for alcohol or urinalysis for drugs and reschedule counseling sessions if substances are detected at a specified level or if a client appears to be under the influence (Miller et al., 2011). If you determine that a client is intoxicated, ask the client in a nonjudgmental way to leave. Reschedule the appointment, and help the client get home safely (Miller et al., 2011).

Elicit the Client's Perception of the Problem

- **To engage clients, invite them to explain their understanding of the problem.** Be direct, but remain nonjudgmental. You might say, "Can you tell me a bit about what brings you here today?" or "I'd like to understand your perspective on why you're here. Can we start there?" Asking these open questions invites clients to tell you their story and shows your genuine interest in their perspective.

Explore the Events That Led to Entering Treatment

- **Explore what brought the client to treatment, starting by recognizing his or her emotional state.** The emotional state in which the client comes to treatment is an important part of the context in which counseling begins. A client referred to treatment will exhibit a range of emotions associated with

the experiences that led to counseling—for example, an arrest, a confrontation with a spouse or employer, or a health crisis. People may enter treatment feeling shaken, angry, withdrawn, ashamed, terrified, or relieved and are often experiencing a combination of feelings. **Strong emotions can become obstacles to change if you do not acknowledge them through reflective listening.**

- **Your initial conversation with clients should focus on their recent experience.** For example, an athlete is likely to be concerned about his or her continued participation in sports, as well as athletic performance; an employee may want to keep his or her job; and a driver is probably worried about the
- possibility of losing his or her license, going to jail, or injuring someone. A pregnant woman wants a healthy child; a mother may want to regain custody of her children; and a concerned husband needs specific guidance on encouraging his spouse to enter treatment.
- Many people with substance use problems seek treatment in response to external pressure from family, friends, employers, healthcare providers, or the legal system (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013). A client sometimes blames the referring source or someone else for pressuring him or her into treatment and report that the referring provider simply doesn't view the situation accurately. **Start with these external sources of motivation as a way to raise the client's awareness about the impact of his or her substance use on others.** For example, if the client's wife has insisted he start treatment and the client denies any problem, you might ask, "What kind of things seem to bother her?" or "What do you think makes her believe there is a problem associated with your drinking?" If the wife's perceptions are inconsistent with the client's, you might suggest that the wife come to treatment so that you can explore their different perspectives.
- Similarly, you may have to review and confirm a referring agency's account or the physical evidence forwarded by a healthcare provider to help you introduce alternative viewpoints to the client in nonthreatening ways. If the client thinks a probation officer is the problem, you can ask, "Why do you

think your probation officer believes you have a problem?" This lets the client express the problem from the perspective of the referring party and can raise awareness. Use reflective listening responses to let the client know you are listening. **Avoid agreeing or disagreeing with the client's position.**

Assess the Client's SOC and Readiness to Change

- **When you first meet the client, determine his or her readiness to change and where he or she is in the SOC; this determines what counseling strategies are likely to work.** It is tempting to assume that the client with obvious signs of a substance use disorder (SUD) must already be contemplating or ready for change. However, such assumptions may be wrong. The new client could be at any point on the severity continuum (from substance misuse to severe SUD), could have few or many associated health or social problems, and could be at any stage of readiness to change. The strategies you use to engage clients in initial conversations about change should be guided by your assessment of the client's motivation and readiness.

The Importance and Confidence Rulers

- **The simplest way to assess the client's readiness to change is to use the Importance Ruler and the Confidence Ruler described in Chapter 3** (see Exhibit 3.9 and Exhibit 3.10, respectively). The Importance Ruler indicates how important it is for the client to make a change right now. The Confidence Ruler indicates a client's sense of self-efficacy about making a change right now. Together, they indicate how ready the client is to change target behaviors. Clients in Precontemplation will typically be at the lower end of the rulers, generally between 0 and 3.
- Keep in mind that these numerical assessments are neither fixed nor always linear. The client moves forward or backward across stages or jumps from one part of the continuum to another, in either direction and at various

times. **Your role is to facilitate movement in the direction of positive change.**

Identification of the client's style of Precontemplation

- **You should tailor your counseling approach to the ways in which the client talks about being in Precontemplation.** Clients will present with different expressions of sustain talk (see Chapter 3), which is the status quo side of ambivalence about changing substance use behaviors. Exhibit 4.2 describes
- different styles of expressions of ambivalence about change during the Precontemplation stage (known as the 5 Rs) and counseling strategies aligned with these different expressions of sustain talk during Precontemplation.

Exhibit 4.2. Styles of Expression in the Precontemplation Stage: The 5 Rs	
Individuals with addictive behaviors who are not yet contemplating change usually express sustain talk in one or more of five different ways. Identifying each client's style of expression helps determine the counseling approach to follow.	
Reveling	Clients are still focused on good experiences about substance use and have not necessarily experienced many substance-use–related negative consequences. Providing objective, nonjudgmental feedback about their substance use and associated health risks or other negative consequences can raise doubt about their ability to avoid negative effects of substance use on their lives.
Reluctance	Clients lack knowledge about the dimensions of the problem or the personal impact it can have to think change is necessary. They often respond to nonjudgmental feedback about how substance use is affecting their lives. They also respond to reassurance that they will be able to function without the addictive behavior.
Rebellion	Clients are afraid of losing control over their lives and have a large investment in their substance of choice. Your challenge is to help them make more positive choices for themselves rather than rebel against what they view as pressure to change. Emphasizing personal choice and responsibility can work well with them.
Resignation	Clients may feel hopeless, helpless, and overwhelmed by the energy required to change. They probably have been in treatment many times before or have tried repeatedly with little success to quit on their own. These clients must regain hope and optimism about their capacity for change. Explore with them specific barriers to change and successful change attempts with other behaviors. Offer information about how treatment has helped many people who thought they couldn't change, and link them to others in recovery who can provide additional hope and support.
Rationalization	Clients think they have all the answers and that substance use may be a problem for others but not for them. Using double-sided reflection (see Chapter 3), rather than arguing for change, seems the most effective strategy for clients expressing rationalizations. Acknowledge what these clients say, but point out any reservations they may have expressed earlier about current substance use.
Source: DiClemente, 2018.	

Readiness assessment instruments

Use assessment tools to help determine the client's readiness to change and place in the SOC. These instruments can give overall scores that correspond to levels of readiness to change. You may find it useful to **explore client responses to specific questions** to raise awareness of his or her substance use and what may be getting in the way of making a change. Several assessment tools widely used in clinical and research settings are discussed briefly below and presented in full in Appendix B:

• **The University of Rhode Island Change Assessment Scale (URICA)** was originally developed to measure a client's change stage in psychotherapy (McConnaughy, Prochaska, & Velicer, 1983) in terms of four stages of the SOC: Precontemplation, Contemplation, Action, and Maintenance. It has been adapted for addiction treatment and is the most common way of measuring the client's stage of change in clinical settings (Connors et al., 2013).

- The scale has 32 items—8 items for each of the 4 stage-specific subscales. A client rates items on a 5-point scale from 1 (strong disagreement) to 5 (strong agreement). The instrument covers a range of concerns and asks clients general questions about the client's "problem." URICA subscales have good internal consistency and validity for SUDs (Field, Adinoff, Harris, Ball, & Carroll, 2009).
- − To use this tool, the client is asked to identify a specific "problem" (e.g., cocaine use) and then fills out the form keeping the specific problem in mind. There may be more than one "problem" for which the client is seeking help, so you may want to have the client fill out the instrument more than once. You can use the URICA to track a client's movement through the SOC by asking the client to fill it out periodically.

- **The Stages of Change Readiness and Treatment Eagerness Scale (SOCRATES)** measures readiness to change. The original SOCRATES was a 32-item questionnaire that used a 5-point scale ranging from 5 (strongly agree) to 1 (strongly disagree). A 19-item version was developed for clinical use and is a self-administered paper-and-pencil questionnaire (Miller & Tonigan, 1996). The SOCRATES 8A is for alcohol use, and the SOCRATES 8D is for drug use. The items on the short version assess the recognition of the problem, ambivalence, and efforts to take steps.

  SOCRATES provides clients with feedback about their scores as a starting point for discussion.

Changes in scores over time can help you learn the impact of an intervention on problem recognition, ambivalence, and progress on making changes.

- **The Readiness To Change Questionnaire** was developed to help healthcare providers who are not addiction treatment specialists assess the stage of change of clients misusing alcohol (Rollnick, Heather, Gold, & Hall, 1992). The 12 items, which were adapted from the URICA, are associated with 3 stages—Precontemplation, Contemplation, and Action—and reflect typical attitudes of clients in each readiness level. For example, a person not yet contemplating change would likely give a positive response to the statement "It's a waste of time thinking about my drinking because I do not have a problem," whereas a person already taking action would probably agree with the statement "I am actively working on my drinking problem." Another individual already contemplating change would likely agree with the item "Sometimes I think I should quit or cut down on my drinking." A 5-point scale is used for rating responses, from 5 (strongly agree) to 1 (strongly disagree).

Commend the Client for Coming to Treatment

Offering clients affirmations over responsible behaviors, like entering treatment, can increase their confidence that change is possible. Clients referred for treatment may feel they have little control in the process. Some will expect to be criticized or blamed; some will expect you to cure them; and still others will hope that counseling can solve all their problems without too much effort. Whatever their expectations, affirm their courage for coming to treatment by saying things like, "It took you a lot of effort to get here. You are determined to figure out what's going on and how you can change things." For example, you can praise a client's decision to come to treatment rather than risk losing custody of her child by saying, "You must care very much about your child." Such affirmations are supportive and remind clients that they are capable of making good choices that match their values.

Agree on a Direction

In helping clients who are not yet thinking seriously of changing, plan your strategies carefully and work with them to find an acceptable pathway. Some clients will agree on one option but not on another. It may be appropriate to give advice based on your own experience and concern. **However, always ask permission to offer advice and make sure that clients want to hear what you have to say.**

Asking permission demonstrates respect for client autonomy and is consistent with person-centered counseling principles and the spirit of MI (as discussed in Chapter 3). For example: "I'd like to tell you about what we could do here. Would that be all right?"

Whenever you express a different viewpoint from that of the client, do so in a way that is supportive, not authoritative or confrontational. The client still has the choice of whether to accept your advice and to agree to a plan. It is not necessary at the beginning of the process to agree on treatment goals; however, you can use motivational strategies, like the agenda mapping discussed in Chapter 3, to agree on how to proceed in the current conversation.

Throughout the process of establishing rapport and building trust, use the OARS (asking **O**pen questions, **A**ffirming, **R**eflective listening, and **S**ummarizing) approach and person-centered counseling principles (described in Chapter 3) to create a sense of safety and respect for the client, as well as a genuine interest in the client's perspective and well-being. **Emphasizing personal autonomy will go a long way toward showing the client that you are not pressuring him or her to change.**

Raise Doubts and Concerns About the Client's Substance Use Once you have engaged the client and developed rapport, **use the following strategies to increase the**

client's readiness to change and move closer to Contemplation.

Provide Information About the Effects and Risks of Substance Misuse

Psychoeducational programs can increase clients' ambivalence about substance misuse and related problems and move them toward contemplation of change (Yeh, Tung, Horng, & Sung, 2017). Be sure to:

- Provide basic information about substance use early in the treatment process if clients have not been exposed to drug and alcohol education before.
- Use the motivational strategy of Elicit-Provide-Elicit (EPE, described in Chapter 3) to engage clients in a joint discussion rather than lecture them (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).
- Ask permission, for example, "Would it be okay to tell you a bit about the effects of _____?" or ask them to describe what they know about the effects or risks of the substances used.
- Talk about what happens to any user of the substance rather than referring just to the client.
- State what **experts** have found, not what **you** think happens.
- Provide small chunks of information then elicit the client's understanding. For example, "What do you make of all this?"
- Describe the addiction process in biological terms. Understanding facts about addiction can increase hope as well as readiness to change. For example, "When you first start using substances, it provides a pleasurable sensation. As you keep using substances, your mind begins to believe that you need these substances in the same way you need life-sustaining things like food—that you need them to survive. You're not stronger than this process, but you can be smarter, and you can regain your independence from substances."

Expert Comment: Liver Transplantation—Precontemplation to Contemplation
The client in Precontemplation can appear in surprising medical settings. It is not uncommon for me to find myself sitting across from a client with end-stage liver disease being evaluated for a liver transplant. From a medical perspective, the cause of the client's liver disease appears to be alcoholic hepatitis, which led to

cirrhosis. A variety of laboratory and other information further supports a history of years of alcohol misuse. The diagnosis of AUD is not only supported by the medical information but also is made clear when the person's family indicates years of alcohol misuse despite intensely negative consequences, such as being charged with driving while intoxicated and marital stress related to the drinking. Yet, despite what might seem to be an overwhelming amount of evidence, the client himself, for a variety of dynamic and motivational reasons, cannot see himself as having a problem with alcohol. The client may feel guilty that he caused his liver damage and think he doesn't deserve this life-saving intervention. Or he may be fearful that if he examines his alcohol use too closely and shares his history, he may not be considered for transplantation at all. He may even have already been told that if he is actively drinking, he will not be listed for transplantation.

It is important for me as a counselor not to be surprised or judgmental about the client not wanting to see his problematic relationship with alcohol. The simple fact is that he has never connected his health problems with his use of alcohol. To confront the client with the overwhelming evidence about his problem drinking only makes him more defensive, reinforces his denial, and strengthens his feelings of guilt and shame.

During assessment, I take every opportunity to connect with the client's history and current situation without excessive self-disclosure. Being particularly sensitive to what the client needs and what he fears, I will help support the therapeutic alliance by asking him to share the positive side of his alcohol and drug use, thus acknowledging that, from his perspective, his use serves a purpose.

In a situation such as this, it is not uncommon for me, after completing a thorough assessment, to provide the client with a medical perspective on alcohol dependence. I will talk about changes in brain chemistry, reward systems, issues of tolerance, genetic factors, and different chemical responses to alcohol, as well as other biological processes that support addictive disease, depending on the client's educational background and medical understanding. I may go into great detail. If the client has fewer years of education, I will compare addiction to other, more familiar diseases, such as diabetes. As the client asks questions, he sees a new picture of addictive disease and sees himself in that picture. By tailoring the presentation to each client and encouraging questions throughout, I provide him and his family, if present, with important information about the biological factors supporting alcohol dependence. This knowledge often leads to self-diagnosis.

This psychoeducational reframing gives the client a different view on his relationship with alcohol, taking away some of the guilt and shame that was based on him thinking of the disease as a moral failing. The very act of self-diagnosis is a movement from Precontemplation to Contemplation. It can be accomplished by a simple cognitive reframe within the context of a thorough and caring assessment completed in a professional, yet genuinely compassionate manner.

Jeffrey M. Georgi, M.Div., Consensus Panel Member

Similarly, people who have driven under the influence of alcohol may be surprised to learn how few drinks are needed to meet the definition of legal intoxication and how drinking at these levels affects their responses. Women hoping to have children may not understand how substances can diminish fertility and potentially harm the fetus even before they know they are pregnant. Clients may not realize how alcohol interacts with other medications they are taking for depression or hypertension.

Counselor Note: Use Motivational Language in Written Materials

Remember that the effective strategies for increasing motivation in face-to-face contacts also apply to written language. Brochures, fliers, educational materials, and advertisements can help a client think differently about change. However, judgmental language like "abuse" or "denial" is just as off-putting in writing as it is when spoken in counseling sessions. **You should provide all written material in plain language** with motivation in mind. If your brochure starts with a long list of rules, the client may be scared away rather than encouraged to begin treatment. **Review written materials from the viewpoint of the client**, and keep in mind your role as a partner in a change process for which the client must take ultimate responsibility.

Evoke Concern About the Client's Substance Use

You can help move clients from Precontemplation to Contemplation by raising doubts about the harmlessness of their substance use and concerns about their substance use behaviors. As clients move beyond the Precontemplation stage and become aware of or acknowledge some problems in relation to their substance use, change becomes increasingly possible. Such clients become more aware of conflict and feel greater ambivalence (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

One way to raise concern in the client is to explore the "positive" and "less-positive" aspects of his or her substance use. For example:

- Start with the client's views on possible "benefits" of alcohol or drugs and move to less-beneficial aspects rather than simply ask about **bad things** or **problems** associated with substance use.
- Do not focus only on negative aspects of substance use because the client could end up defending his or her substance use while you push for unwanted change.
- Avoid spending too much time exploring the "good" things about substance use that may reinforce sustain talk. Higher levels of client sustain talk is associated with lower motivation to change and negative treatment

outcomes (Lindqvist, Forsberg, Enebrink, Andersson, & Rosendahl, 2017; Magill et al., 2014).

- Be aware that the client may not be ready to accept he or she has experienced any harmful effects of substance use. By showing that you understand why the client "values" alcohol or drug experiences, you help the client become more open to accepting possible problems. For example, you might ask, "Help me understand what you like about your drinking. What do you enjoy about it?" Then ask, "What do you like less about drinking?" The client who cannot recognize any things that he or she "likes less" about substance use is probably not ready to consider change and may need more information.
- After this exploration, summarize the interchange in personal language so that the client can clearly hear any ambivalence that is developing.

As mentioned in Chapter 3, you can **use double-sided reflections to respond to client ambivalence and sustain talk** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). For example, you can say, "So, drinking helps you relax. Yet, you say you sometimes resent all the money you are spending, and it's hard for you to get to work on time, especially Monday mornings." Chapter 5 provides additional guidance on working with ambivalence.

You can also **move clients toward the Contemplation stage by having them consider the many ways in which substance use can affect life experiences.** For example, you might ask, "How is your substance use affecting your studies? How is your drinking affecting your family life?"

As you explore the effects of substance use in the individual's life, use balanced reflective listening: "Help me understand. You've been saying you see no need to change, **and** you are concerned about losing your family. I don't see how this fits together. I'm wondering if this is confusing for you, too."

Provide Personalized Feedback on Assessment Findings

Another effective strategy for raising doubt and concern is to provide clients with personalized feedback about assessment findings. As mentioned in Chapter 2, giving personalized feedback about clients' substance use is effective (Davis, Houck, Rowell, Benson, & Smith, 2015; DiClemente, Corno, Graydon, Wiprovnick, & Knoblach, 2017; Field et al., 2014; Kahler et al., 2018; McDevitt-Murphy et al.; 2014; Miller et al., 2013; Walker et al., 2017). In brief interventions, the feedback is usually short and focused on screening results. In specialty addiction treatment settings, feedback can focus on results of a comprehensive assessment, which often includes:

- Substance use patterns and history.
- *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fifth Edition, diagnostic criteria for SUDs.
- General functioning and links between substance use and lowered functioning.
- Health and biomedical effects including sleep disorders, HIV, and diabetes.
- Neuropsychological effects of long-term substance use.
- Family history of mental disorders and SUDs, which put clients at risk for SUDs and co-occurring substance use and mental disorders (CODs).
- CODs and effects of substance use on mental illness.
- Functional analysis of substance use triggers.

Provide clients with personalized feedback on the risks associated with their own substance use and how their consumption compares with others of the same culture, age, or gender. When clients hear about assessment results and understand the risks and consequences, many recognize the gap between where they are and where their values lie.

To make findings from an assessment a useful part of the counseling process, make sure the client understands the value of such information and believes the results will be helpful. If possible, schedule formal assessments after the client has had at least one session with you or use a motivational interviewing (MI) assessment strategy that involves having a brief MI conversation before and after

the assessment (see Chapter 8 for more information). This approach will help establish rapport, determine the client's readiness for change, and measure his or her potential response to personalized feedback.

Start a standard assessment by **explaining what types of tests or questionnaires will be administered and what information these tools will reveal.** Estimate how long the process usually takes, and give any other necessary instructions. Make sure the client is comfortable with the assessment format (e.g., have self-administered tests available in the client's first language, do a face-to-face interview instead of a self-administered assessment if the client has cognitive challenges).

Counselor Note: Description of a Typical Day

An informal way to engage clients, build rapport as part of an assessment, and encourage clients to talk about substance use patterns in a nonjudgmental framework is to ask them to describe a typical day (Rollnick, Miller, & Butler, 2008). This approach can help you understand the context of clients' substance use. For example, it may reveal how much of each day is spent trying to get drugs and how little time is left to spend with loved ones. By asking about both behaviors and feelings, you can learn much about what substance use means to clients and how difficult or simple it may be to give it up. This strategy invites clients to tell a story; that story provides important details about clients' substance use patterns and related negative effects.

- **Start by asking permission.** "It would help me to understand how *[name the substance use behavior, such as drinking or smoking cannabis]* fits into to your life. Would it be okay if we spend a few minutes going through a typical day from beginning to end? Let's start from the time you get up in the morning."
- **Be curious.**
- **Avoid the use of the word "problem"** (unless the client uses it) in relation to substance use, otherwise you

might create discord (Rosengren, 2018).

- **Follow the client through the sequence of events for an entire day, focusing on both behaviors and feelings**. Keep asking, "What happens when... ?"
- **Ask questions carefully and slowly.** Do not add your own thoughts about why certain events transpired.
- **Let the client use his or her own words.**
- **Ask for clarification** only if you do not understand a term the client uses or if some information is missing.

Once the client completes the assessment, review findings with the client. Present personalized feedback to the client in a way that is likely to increase his or her awareness and develop discrepancy between the client's substance use and values. Appendix C provides a link to the *Motivational Enhancement Therapy Manual*, which includes an example of a personal feedback report to include in a comprehensive assessment. You should adapt this report for the specific kinds of assessment information you gather at your program.

When providing extensive feedback about assessment results, divide it into small chunks, and use the EPE approach, otherwise, the client might feel overwhelmed. You may only need to provide one or two pieces of feedback to raise doubts and concerns and to move the client toward Contemplation.

Involve Significant Others

Including people with whom the client has a close relationship can make treatment more effective.

Many people who misuse substances or who have SUDs respond to motivation from spouses and SOs to enter treatment (Connors et al., 2013). An SO is typically a parent, spouse, live-in partner, or other family member but can be any person with a close personal relationship to the client.

Supportive SOs can help clients become intrinsically rather than just extrinsically motivated for behavior change (Bourke, Magill, & Apodaca, 2016). Including supportive SOs is cost effective and can foster positive client outcomes, including increased client change talk; increased client commitment to change; and reduced substance use, alcohol consumption, and alcohol-related consequences (Apodaca, Magill, Longabaugh, Jackson, & Monti, 2013; Bourke et al., 2016; Monti et al., 2014; Shepard et al., 2016; Smeerdijk et al., 2015).

SOs can encourage clients to use their inner resources to identify, implement, and sustain actions leading to a lifestyle free from substance misuse. They can be important in increasing clients' readiness to change by addressing substance use in the following ways:

- Reminding clients about the importance of family, their relationship to an SO in their lives, or both
- Providing helpful feedback to clients about the negative effects of their substance use behavior
- Encouraging clients to change substance use behaviors
- Alerting clients to social and individual coping resources that support recovery
- Providing positive reinforcement for using social/coping resources to change substance use

Expert Comment: Involving an SO in the Change Process
I have found that actively involving an SO, such as a spouse, relative, or friend, in motivational counseling can affect a client's commitment to change. The SO provides helpful input for clients who are ambivalent about changing addictive behaviors. SO feedback can raise the client's awareness of the negative effects of substance use. The SO can also offer needed support in sustaining the client's commitment to change. Before involving the SO, I determine whether the SO has a positive relationship with the client and a genuine investment in affecting the change process. SOs with strong ties to the client and an interest in helping the client change substance use can help support change; those who lack these qualities can make this process more difficult. Before involving the SO, I assess the interactions between the client and the SO. I am particularly interested in learning whether the client's motivational statements are supported by the SO.

Following this brief assessment, I use many different commitment-enhancing strategies with the SO to help him or her affect the motivational process. I try to ask questions that will help the SO feel optimistic about the client's ability to change. For example, I may ask the SO the following questions:

- "Have you noticed what efforts Jack has made to change his drinking?"
- "What has been most helpful to you in helping Jack deal with the drinking?"
- "What is different now that leads you to feel better about Jack's ability to change?" Through techniques such as eliciting change talk from clients, SOs can help the change process.

Allen Zweben, D.S.W., Consensus Panel Member

Before involving an SO in the client's treatment:

- Ask the client for permission to contact the SO.
- Describe the benefits of SO support.
- Review confidentiality concerns.
- If the client agrees, obtain the necessary written releases.

Some strategies for engaging an SO in an initial meeting with you and the client include the following:

- Use MI strategies to engage the SO in the counseling process (Belmontes, 2018).

- Praise the SO for his or her willingness to participate in the client's efforts to change.
- Offer conversation guidelines (e.g., use "I" statements, don't use language that blames or shames).
- Define the SO's role (e.g., offering emotional/instrumental support, giving helpful feedback, reinforcing positive reasons for change, working with client to change substance use behavior).
- Be optimistic about how the SO's support and nonjudgmental feedback can be an important factor in increasing the client's motivation to change.
- Invite the SO to be on the client's team that is working to reduce the impact of substance misuse on the couple or family.
- Provide brief instructions to the SO on how to ask open questions, use reflective listening, and support client change talk (Smeerdijk et al., 2015).
- Invite the SO to identify the family's values and how the substance use behavior might not fit with those values (Belmontes, 2018).
- Reinforce positive comments made by the SO about the client's current change efforts. Refocus the conversation if the feedback from the SO is negative or reinforces the client's sustain talk.
- Use EPE to give the SO information on support services (e.g., Al-Anon, family peer support providers, individual counseling) that will help focus on his or her own recovery while supporting the client.
- If the SO cannot be supportive and nonconfrontational or has substance misuse or behavioral health concerns that interfere with his or her ability to participate fully and supportively in the client's treatment, consider limiting the SO's role to mainly information sharing. Refer the SO to SUD treatment or behavioral health services and a recovery support group (e.g., Al-Anon).
- If the SO cannot attend counseling sessions with the client, invite the SO to the session figuratively by evoking and reinforcing client change talk associated with the significance of family and friends in the client's motivation to change (Sarpavaara, 2015). For example, you might ask, "You have mentioned that your relationship with your daughter is very important to you. How would not drinking, impact the quality of your relationship?"

For more information on families and SUD treatment, see Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) 39:

Substance Abuse Treatment and Family Therapy (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, 2015a).

Express Concern, and Leave the Door Open

In the initial engagement and assessment phase, if the client remains in Precontemplation and you cannot mutually agree on treatment goals, **express concern about the client's substance misuse and leave the door open for the client to return to treatment any time**. Do this by:

- Summarizing your concern based on screening or assessment results or feedback from SOs.
- Presenting feedback in a factual, nonjudgmental way.
- Reminding the client that you respect his or her decision, even if data suggest a different choice.
- **Emphasize personal choice to maintain rapport with clients in Precontemplation.**
- Making sure the client has your contact information and appropriate crisis or emergency contact information before ending the session.
- Asking the client's permission for you or someone at your program to contact him or her by phone in a month to check in briefly. If the client says yes, follow up. This is an opportunity to assess the situation and encourage the client to return to treatment if desired.

Understand Special Motivational Counseling Considerations for Clients Mandated to Treatment

An increasing number of clients are mandated to treatment (i.e., ordered to attend) by an employer, an employee assistance program, or the criminal justice system. In such cases, failure to enter and remain in treatment may result in punishment or negative consequences (e.g., job loss, revocation of probation or

parole, prosecution, imprisonment), often for a specified time or until satisfactory completion.

Your challenge is to engage clients who are mandated to the treatment process. Although many of these clients are at the Precontemplation stage, the temptation is to use Action stage interventions immediately that are not compatible with the client's motivation level. This can be counterproductive. Clients arrive with strong emotions because of the referral process and the consequences they will face if they do not succeed in changing a pattern of use they may not believe is problematic.

In addition, evidence shows that clients mandated to treatment tend to engage in a great deal of sustain talk, which is consistent with being in the Precontemplation stage and predicts negative substance use treatment outcomes (Apodaca et al., 2014; Moyers, Houck, Glynn, Hallgren, & Manuel, 2017). **An important motivational strategy with these clients is to lessen or "soften" sustain talk before trying to evoke change talk** (Moyers et al., 2017). (See Chapter 3 for strategies for responding to sustain talk that you can apply to clients who are mandated to treatment.)

Despite these obstacles, clients mandated to treatment have similar treatment outcomes as those who attend treatment voluntarily (Kiluk et al., 2015). If you use motivational counseling strategies appropriate to their stage in the SOC, they may become invested in the change process and benefit from the opportunity to consider the consequences of use and the possibility of change.

You may have to spend your first session "decontaminating" the referral process. Some counselors say explicitly, "I'm sorry you came through the door this way." Important principles to keep in mind are to:

• Honor the client's anger and sense of powerlessness.

- Avoid assumptions about the type of treatment needed.

- Make it clear that you will help the client explore what he or she perceives is needed and useful

  from your time together.

  When working with clients who are mandated to treatment, you are required to establish what information will be shared with the referring agency. In addition, you should:

- Formalize the release of information with clients and the agency through a written consent for release of information that adheres to federal confidentiality regulations.
- Inform clients about what information (e.g., attendance, urine test results, treatment participation) will be released, and get their consent to share this information.
- Be sure clients understand which choices they have about the information to be released and which choices are not yours or theirs to make (e.g., information related to child abuse or neglect).
- Take into account the role of the clients' attorneys (if any) in releasing information.
- Clearly delineate different levels of permission.
- Be clear with clients about consequences they may experience from the referring agency if they do not participate in treatment as required. Motivational strategies to help maintain a collaborative working alliance with clients while presenting such consequences (Stinson & Clark, 2017) include:
    - – Acknowledge clients' ambivalence about participating in counseling.
    - – Differentiate your role from the authority of the referring agency (e.g., "I am here to help you make some decisions about how you might want to change, not to pressure you to change").
    - – Describe the consequences of not participating in treatment in a neutral, nonjudgmental tone.

- – Avoid siding with clients or the referring agency about the fairness of possible consequences and punishments. Take a neutral stance.

– Emphasize personal choice/responsibility (e.g., “It’s up to you whether you participate in treatment”).

Exhibit 4.3 provides an example of an initial conversation with a client who has been required to attend counseling as a condition of parole.

Exhibit 4.3. An Opening Dialog With a Client Who Has Been Mandated to Treatment

This dialog illustrates the first meeting between a counselor and a client who is required to attend group counseling as a condition of parole. The counselor is seeking ways to affirm the client, to find incentives that matter to the client, to support the client in achieving his most important personal goals, and to help the client regain control by choosing to engage in treatment with an open mind.

The setting is an outpatient treatment program that accepts private and court-ordered referrals to a counseling group for people who use substances. The program uses a cognitive–behavioral approach. The primary interventional tool is rational behavior training. This is the first session between the counselor and the court-ordered probation client.

Counselor: Good morning. My name is Jeff. You must be Paul.

Client: Yep.

Counselor: Come on in, and sit wherever you’re comfortable. I got some information from your probation officer, but what would really help me is to hear from you, Paul, a bit more about what’s going on in your life, and how we might help. *(Open question in the form of a statement)*

Client: The biggest thing is this 4-year sentence hanging over me and this crap I have to do to stay out of prison.

Counselor: Well, again, Paul, it sounds like you're busy and you have a lot of pressures. *(Reflection)* But I wonder if there's something the program offers that you could use.

Client: What I need from you is to get that blasted probation officer off my back.

Counselor: I'm not exactly sure what you mean, Paul.

Client: What I mean is that, I'm already running all over the place to give urine samples and meet all the other conditions of probation, and now the court says I've got to do this treatment program to stay out of jail.

Counselor: I'm still a little confused. What is it that I can do that might help? *(Open question)*

Client: You can tell my probation officer I don't need to be here and that she should stay out of my business.

Counselor: I may be wrong, Paul, but as I understand it, that's not an option for either one of us. I want to support you so that you don't conflict with your probation officer. For you and her to be in an angry relationship seems a recipe for disaster. I get the sense from listening to you that you're really committed to yourself **and** to your family. *(Affirmation)* The last thing you want to do is to wind up in prison facing that 4-year sentence.

Client: You got that straight.

Counselor: So, it seems to me you've made some good choices so far. *(Reframe)*

Client: What do you mean?

Counselor: Well, you could have just blown this whole appointment off, but you didn't. You made a series of choices that make it clear to me that you're committed to your family, yourself, your business, and for that matter your freedom. I can respect that commitment and would like to support you in honoring the choices you've already made. *(Affirmation and emphasizing personal autonomy)*

Client: Does that mean I'm not going to have to come to these classes?

Counselor: No, I don't have the power to make that kind of decision. However, you and I can work together to figure out how you might use this course to benefit you. *(Partnership)*

Client: I can't imagine getting anything out of sitting around with a bunch of drunks, talking about our feelings, and whining about all the bad things going on in our lives.

Counselor: You just don't seem like a whiner to me. And in any case, that's not what this group is about. What we really do is give people the opportunity to learn new skills and apply those skills in their daily lives to make their lives more enjoyable and meaningful. What you've already shown me today is that you can use some of those skills to support even further the good choices that you've already made. *(Affirmation)*

Client: That's just a bunch of shrink talk. I already told you, all I need is to get my probation officer off my back and live my life the way I want to live it.

Counselor: Completing this program is going to help you do that. I think from what you've already demonstrated that you'll do well in the group. I believe you can learn something that you can use in your daily life and perhaps teach some of the other people in the group as well. I am certainly willing to work with you to help you accomplish your goal in terms of meeting the requirements of probation. My suggestion is that you take it one group at a time and see how it goes. All I would ask of you is what, in a sense, you have already demonstrated, and that is the willingness to keep your mind open and keep your goals for life clearly in front of you. I see that you're committed to your family, you're committed to yourself, and you're committed to your freedom. I want to support all three of those goals. *(Affirmation)*

Client: Well, I guess I can do this group thing, at least for now. I'm still not sure what I'm going to get from sitting around with a bunch of other guys, telling stories, but I'm willing to give it a try.

Counselor: That sounds reasonable and like another good choice to me, Paul. (*Affirmation*) Let me give you a handbook that will tell you a little bit more about the group, and I'll see you tomorrow night at 6:30 at this office for our first group. It's been nice to meet you. I look forward to getting to know you better.

Client: I'll see you tomorrow night. You know, this wasn't as bad as I thought it would be.

Jeffrey M. Georgi, M.Div., Consensus Panel Member

Although this counseling scenario relies primarily on cognitive–behavioral therapy strategies, the counselor engages the client in the spirit of MI by emphasizing partnership and acceptance of the client. The counselor also uses affirmations and maintains a nonjudgmental, neutral tone throughout the conversation, emphasizing the client's autonomy and values. This approach is consistent with an effective way to engage a client in Precontemplation who has been mandated to treatment.

Conclusion

The first step in working with clients in the Precontemplation stage of the SOC is to develop rapport and establish a counseling alliance. The next step is to assess their readiness to change, then help them begin to develop an awareness that their use of substances is linked to problems in their lives. Motivational counseling strategies from motivational enhancement therapy (e.g., providing personalized feedback about assessment results) and MI (e.g., using reflective listening to engage, emphasizing personal choice and responsibility, exploring discrepancy) are suited to helping clients move from Precontemplation to Contemplation.

Chapter 5—From Contemplation to Preparation: Increasing Commitment

"The reasons for change need to be important and substantive enough to move the individual into deciding to make the effort to change. The task for individuals in Contemplation is to resolve their decisional balance consideration in favor of change. The decision to change marks the transition out of the Contemplation stage and into Preparation."

DiClemente, 2018, p. 29

Key Messages

- Clients in Contemplation begin to recognize concerns about substance use but are ambivalent about change.
- You can use motivational counseling strategies to help clients resolve ambivalence about change.
- When using a decisional balance (DB) strategy, you briefly reflect clients' reasons for continuing substance use (i.e., sustain talk) but emphasize clients' reasons for change (i.e., change talk).
- Motivational counseling strategies to enhance commitment to change move clients closer to the Preparation stage and taking steps to change.

Chapter 5 describes strategies to increase clients' commitment to change by normalizing and resolving ambivalence about change and enhancing clients' decision-making capabilities. Central to most strategies is the process of evoking and exploring reasons to change through asking open question and reflective listening. The chapter begins with a discussion of ambivalence, extrinsic (external) and intrinsic (internal) motivation, and ways to help clients connect with internal motivators to enhance decision making and their commitment to change. It then focuses on DB strategies—ways to explore the costs and benefits of change and clients' values about changing substance use behaviors. Chapter 5 also addresses the importance of self-efficacy in clients' decisions to change and provides strategies for enhancing commitment to change once clients decide to change.

Exhibit 5.1 presents counseling strategies for Contemplation.

Exhibit 5.1. Counseling Strategies for Contemplation		
Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
• The client acknowledges concerns and is considering the possibility of change but is ambivalent and uncertain. • The client begins to reflect on his or her substance use behavior and considers choices and options for change.	• Normalize and resolve client's ambivalence about change. • Help the client tip the DB scales toward change.	• Shift focus from extrinsic to intrinsic motivation. • Summarize client concerns. • Assess where the client is on the decisional scale. • Explore pros/cons of substance use and behavior change. • Reexplore values in relation to change. • Emphasize personal choice and responsibility. • Explore client's understanding of change and expectations of treatment. • Reintroduce feedback. • Explore self-efficacy. • Summarize change talk.
		• Enhance commitment to change.

Normalize and Resolve Ambivalence

You must be prepared to address ambivalence to help clients move through the Stages of Change (SOC) process. Ambivalence is a normal part of any change process. Ambivalence is uncomfortable because it involves conflicting motivations about change (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). For example, a client may enjoy drinking because it relaxes him or her but may feel guilty about losing a job because of drinking and putting his or her family in financial risk. Clients often have conflicting feelings and motivations (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). During Contemplation, ambivalence is strong. As you help clients move toward Preparation and Action, ambivalence lessens. Miller and Rollnick (2013) use the metaphor of a hill of ambivalence wherein clients move up the hill during Precontemplation/Contemplation and then journey down the hill through the resolution of ambivalence, which moves them into Preparation and Action (Exhibit 5.2). Chapter 2 provides a thorough description of DARN CAT (**D**esire, **A**bility, **R**easons, **N**eed, **C**ommitment **A**ctivation, **T**aking steps) change talk.

Exhibit 5.2. The Motivational Interviewing (MI) Hill of Ambivalence

Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013. Motivational Interviewing: Helping People Change (3rd ed.), *p. 164. Adapted with permission from Guilford Press.*

The two key motivational strategies you can use to resolve ambivalence in Contemplation are:

1. **Normalizing ambivalence.** As they move closer to a decision to change, clients often feel increasing

   conflict and doubt about whether they can or want to change. **Reassure clients that conflicting feelings, uncertainties, and reservations are common.** Normalize ambivalence by explaining that many clients experience similar strong ambivalence at this stage, even when they believe they have resolved their mixed feelings and are nearing a decision. Clients need to understand that many people go back and forth between wanting to maintain the status quo and wanting to change and yet have been able to stay on track by continuing to explore and discuss their ambivalence.

2. **Evoking DARN change talk.** DARN refers to clients' **d**esire, **a**bility, **r**easons, and **n**eed to change. During Contemplation, help clients move up the hill of ambivalence and guide them toward Preparation by evoking and reflecting DARN change talk. Use open questions: "How would you like things to change so you don't feel scared when you can't remember what happened after drinking the night before?" Exhibit 3.8 in Chapter 3 offers more

examples of open questions that evoke DARN change talk. Use reflective listening responses to highlight the change talk. **Remember that the goal is to guide clients to make the arguments for change** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The key is to avoid jumping too quickly into evoking CAT (i.e., **c**ommitment, **a**ctivation, and **t**aking steps) change talk, solving problems in response to ambivalence, or making a plan of action. The client has to climb up the hill of ambivalence before easing down the other side.

Shift the Focus From Extrinsic to Intrinsic Motivation

To help clients prepare for change, explore the range of both extrinsic and intrinsic motivators that have brought them to this point. Many clients move through the Contemplation stage acknowledging only the extrinsic motivators that push them to change and that brought them to treatment. External motivators may pressure clients into treatment, including a spouse, employer, healthcare provider, family member, friend, or the child welfare or criminal justice system. **Extrinsic motivators can help bring clients into and stay in treatment, but intrinsic motivators are important for significant, long- lasting change** (Flannery, 2017; Kwasnicka, Dombrowski, White, & Sniehotta, 2016; Mahmoodabad, Tonekaboni, Farmanbar, Fallahzadeh, & Kamalikhah, 2017).

You can help clients develop intrinsic motivation by assisting them in recognizing the discrepancies between "where they are" and "where they want to be":

- Invite clients to explore their life goals and values, which can strengthen internal motivation. In searching for answers, clients often reevaluate past mistakes and activities that were self- destructive or harmful to others.
- Encourage this exploration through asking open questions about client goals: "Where would you like to be in 5 years?" and "How does your substance use fit or not fit with your goals?"
- Highlight clients' recognition of discrepancies between the current situation and their hopes for the future through reflective listening. Awareness of

discrepancy often evokes desire change talk, an essential source of intrinsic motivation.

Sometimes, intrinsic motivation emerges from role conflicts and family or community expectations. For example, a single mother who lost her job because of substance use may have a strong motivation to get and keep another job to provide for her children. For other clients, substance misuse has cut their cultural or community ties. For example, they stop going to church or neglect culturally affirmed roles, such as helping others or serving as role models for young people. A desire to reconnect with cultural traditions as a source of identity and strength can be a powerful motivator for some clients, as can the desire to regain others' respect. Positive change also leads to improved self-image and self-esteem.

Expert Comment: Linking Family, Community, and Cultural Values to a Desire for Change

Working with a group of Latino men in the Southwest who were mandated into treatment as a condition of parole and had spent most of their lives in prisons, we found that as these men aged, they seemed to tire of criminal life. In counseling, some expressed concerns about losing touch with their families and culture, and many reported a desire to serve as male role models for their sons and nephews. They all wanted to restore their own sense of pride and self-worth in the small community where many of their families had lived for generations.

Newly trained in MI, we recognized a large, untapped source of self-motivation in a population that we had long before decided did not want help. We had to change our previous beliefs about this population as not wanting treatment to seeing these men as requesting help and support to maintain themselves outside the prison system and in the community.

Carole Janis Otero, M.A., Consensus Panel Member

Helping clients shift from extrinsic to intrinsic motivation helps them move from contemplating change to deciding to act. Start with clients' current situations, and find a natural link between existing external motivators and intrinsic ones that they may not be aware of or find easy to describe. Through compassionate and respectful exploration, you may discover untapped intrinsic motivation.

Along with MI techniques presented in Chapter 3, use these strategies to identify and strengthen intrinsic motivation:

- **Show genuine curiosity about clients.** Show interest in their lives at the first meeting and over time. Because clients' desire to change is rarely limited to substance use, they may find it easier to talk about changing other behaviors. Most clients have concerns about several areas of their lives and wish to reconnect with their community, improve their finances, find work, or fall in love. Many are highly functional and productive in some aspects of their lives and take great pride in special skills, knowledge, or other abilities they do not want to lose.
- **Do not wait for clients to talk spontaneously about their substance use.** Show interest, and ask how their substance use affects these aspects of their lives. Even with clients who do not acknowledge any problems, question them about their lives to show concern and strengthen the counseling alliance.
- **Reframe clients' negative statements about external pressure to get treatment.** For example, help clients reframe anger expressed toward their spouse who has pressured them to enter treatment as seeing their spouse as caring and invested in the marriage
- **Identify and strengthen intrinsic motivation of clients who have been mandated to treatment.** Emphasize personal choice and responsibility with these clients. Help clients understand that they can freely choose to change because doing so makes good sense and is desirable, not because negative consequences will happen if they choose not to change.

Summarize Client Concerns

As you evoke DARN change talk and explore intrinsic and extrinsic motivations, you gather important information for helping the client resolve ambivalence about change. You have a working knowledge, and perhaps even a written list, of issues and areas about which the client has conflicting feelings and which are important intrinsic motivators for changing substance use behaviors. **A first step in helping the client to weigh the pros and cons of change is to organize the list of concerns and present them to the client in a careful summary that expresses empathy, develops discrepancy, and shifts the balance toward change.** Because

you should reach agreement on these issues, the summary should end by asking whether the client agrees that these are his or her concerns about the substance use. You might ask, “Is this accurate?” or “Did I leave anything out?”

Help Tip the Decisional Balance Toward Change

For any decision, most people naturally weigh costs and benefits of the potential action. In behavioral change, these considerations are called “decisional balancing.” This is a process of appraising or evaluating the “good” aspects of substance use—the reasons **not to change** (expressed through sustain talk)—and the “less-good” aspects—the reasons **to change** (expressed through change talk). DB originated with Janis and Mann (1977) as a motivational counseling strategy. It is used widely in substance use disorder (SUD) treatment to explore benefits and costs of continued substance use and of changing substance use behaviors**.** Research on DB in SUD treatment has shown that DB is associated with increased motivation to change in diverse client populations and favorable client outcomes (Elliot & Carey, 2013; Foster & Neighbors, 2013; Hennessy, Tanner-Smith, & Steinka-Fry, 2015).

Motivation to reduce or stop substance use increases when the costs of use outweigh the benefits and when the pros of changing substance use outweigh the cons (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013). **Your task is to help clients recognize and weigh negative aspects of substance use to tip the scale in favor of change.**

Assess Where the Client Is on the Decisional Scale

Start by getting a sense of where the client is with regard to the decision-making process. The Alcohol Decisional Balance Scale and the Drug Use Decisional Balance Scale in Appendix B are validated instruments that ask clients to rate, on a scale of 1 to 5, the importance of statements like “Having to lie to others about my drinking bothers me” in making a decision about changing substance use behaviors (Prochaska et al., 1994). The scores give you and the client a sense of where the client is with regard to reporting more pros versus more cons for

continued substance use. You can also explore specific items on the measure on which the client scores high (e.g., "Some people close to me are disappointed in me because of my drug use") as a way to build discrepancy between the client's values and substance use, thus evoking change talk.

Explore the Pros and Cons of Substance Use and Behavior Change

Weighing benefits and costs of substance use and change is at the heart of DB work. To accomplish this, **invite the client to write out a list of positives and negatives of substance use and changing substance use behaviors.** This can be a homework assignment that is discussed at the next session, or the list can be generated during a session. Putting the items on paper makes it seem more "real" to the client and can help structure the conversation. You can generate a list of the pros and cons of substance use and a list of pros and cons of changing substance use behaviors separately or use a grid like the one in Exhibit 5.3.

Exhibit 5.3. Decisional Balance Sheet for Substance Use

Reasons to Continue Substance Use (Status Quo)	Reasons to Change Substance Use (Change)
Positives of substance use	Negatives of substance use
Negatives of changing substance use	Positives of changing substance use

Source: Connors et al., 2013.

Presenting to clients a long list of reasons to change and a short list of reasons not to change may finally upset the balance and tip the scale toward change. However, the opposite (i.e., a long list of reasons not to change and a short life of reason to change) can show how much work remains and can be used to prevent premature decision making.

Recognize that many clients find that one or two reasons to change counterbalance the weight of many reasons not to change and vice versa. Therefore, it is not just the number of reasons to change or not change but the strength of each reason that matters. **Explore the relative strength of each motivational factor, and highlight the weight clients place on each change factor.** Reasons for and against continuing substance use, or for and against

aspects of change, are highly individual. Factors that shift the balance toward positive change for one person may barely matter to another. Also, the value or weight given to a particular item in this inventory of pros and cons is likely to change over time.

Whether or not you use a written worksheet, **always listen carefully when clients express ambivalence.** Both sides of ambivalence, expressed through sustain talk and change talk, are present in clients at the same time (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). You may hear both in a single client statement—for example, "I get so energized when I snort cocaine, but it's so expensive. I'm not sure how I'll pay the bills this month." Although discussing with clients what they like about drinking or using drugs may establish rapport, increasing expressions of sustain talk is associated with negative client outcomes (Foster, Neighbors, & Pai, 2015; Houck & Moyers, 2015; Lindqvist, Forsberg, Enebrink, Andersson, & Rosendahl, 2017; Magill et al., 2014).

In DB, explore both sides of ambivalence, but avoid reinforcing sustain talk, **which can be counterproductive** (Krigel et al., 2017; Lindqvist et al., 2017; Miller & Rose, 2013). Once a client decides to change a substance use behavior, a DB exercise on the pros and cons of change may increase commitment to change (Miller & Rose, 2013). Carefully consider your own intention and the client's stage in the SOC before using a structured DB that explores both sides of client ambivalence equally.

Exhibit 5.4 describes other issues that may arise as clients explore pros and cons of change.

Exhibit 5.4. Other Issues in Decisional Balance	
Loss and grief	Giving up a way of life can be as intense as the loss of a close friend. Many clients need time for grieving. They have to acknowledge and mourn this loss before they are ready to build a strong attachment to recovery. Pushing them to change too fast can weaken determination. Patience and empathy are reassuring at this time.
Reservations or reluctance	Serious reservations about change can be a signal that you and clients have different views. As clients move into the Preparation stage, they may become defensive if pushed to commit to change before they are ready or if their goals conflict with yours. They may express this reluctance in behaviors rather than words. For example, some will miss appointments, sending a message that they need more time and want to slow the process. Continue to explore ambivalence with these clients, and reassess where they are in the change process.
Premature decision making	DB exercises give you a sense of whether clients are ready for change. If clients' description of pros and cons is unclear, they may express goals for change that are unrealistic or reflect a lack of understanding of their abilities and resources. Clients may say what they think you want to hear. Clients who are not ready to decide to change will let you know. Allowing clients to set themselves up for failure can result in them stopping the change process altogether or losing trust in you. Delay the commitment process, and return to Contemplation.
Keeping pace	Some clients enter treatment after they have stopped using substances on their own. Others stop substance use the day they call the program for the first appointment. They have already made a commitment to stop. If you try to elicit these clients' concerns or conduct DB exercises, you might evoke sustain talk unnecessarily and miss an important opportunity to provide the encouragement, incentives, and skills needed to help action-oriented and action-ready individuals make progress. Move with these clients immediately to create a change plan and enter the Action stage, but be alert for ambivalence that may remain or develop.
Free choice	Clients may begin using drugs or alcohol out of rebelliousness toward their family or society. Substance use may be an expression of continued freedom—freedom from the demands of others to act or live in a certain way. You may hear clients say that they cannot change because they do not want to lose their freedom. Because this belief is tied to some clients' early-forged identities, it may be a strong factor in their list of reasons not to change. However, as clients age, they may be more willing to explore whether "freedom to rebel" is actually freedom or its opposite. If you address this issue, you can reframe the rebellion as reflection of a limitation of choices (i.e., the person must do the opposite of what is expected). As clients age, they may be more open to making a choice that represents real freedom—the freedom not to rebel but to do what they truly choose.

Reexplore Values in Relation to Change

Use DB exercises as opportunities to help clients explore and articulate their values and to connect these values with positive change. Clients' values influence their reasons for and against change. For example, an adolescent involved in drug dealing with a neighborhood gang may say that leaving the gang is not possible because of his loyalty to the other members. Loyalty and belonging are important values to him. Relate them to other groups that inspire similar allegiance, such as a sports team or scouting—organizations that create a sense of belonging and reflect his core values. A young woman with a family history of hard work and academic achievement may wish to return to those values by finishing high school and becoming financially independent.

Hearing themselves articulate their core values helps clients increase their commitment to positive change. If they can frame the process of change within the larger context of values shared with their family, community, and culture, they may find it easier to contemplate change.

Emphasize Personal Choice and Responsibility

In a motivational approach to counseling, you don't "give" a client a choice. The choice is not yours to give; rather, it is the client's to make. Your task is to help the client make choices that are in his or her best interest and that align with his or her values and goals. Consistently emphasize the client's responsibility and freedom of choice. The client should be used to hearing you make statements such as:

- "It's up to you to decide what to do about this."
- "No one can decide this for you."
- "No one can change your drug use for you. Only you can."
- "You can decide to go on drinking or to change."

Explore the Client's Understanding of Change and Expectations of Treatment

In working toward a decision, understand what change means to clients and what their expectations of treatment are. Some clients believe that quitting or

cutting down means changing their entire life— moving from their neighborhood or cutting ties with all their friends, even their family. Some believe they have to change everything overnight. This can be overwhelming. Tell clients who have never been in treatment before about the level of motivation and openness required to get the most from their treatment experience (Raylu & Kaur, 2012).

In exploring these meanings and expectations with the client, you will get a sense of which actions the client might consider and which he or she will not. For example, a client might state that she could never move from her neighborhood, a well-known drug market, because her family is there. Another says he will not consider anything but cutting down on his drinking. A third client may just as strongly state that total abstinence and a stay in a therapeutic community are the only options, as all others have failed.

By exploring treatment expectations with clients, you introduce information about the benefits of treatment and can begin a discussion about available options. When clients' expectations about treatment match what actually happens and they have positive expectations about treatment, they have better outcomes (Kuusisto, Knuuttila, & Saarnio, 2011). It is never too soon to elicit clients' expectations about treatment through reflective listening. Show that you understand their concerns, and provide accurate information about your treatment program and the benefits of treatment using motivational strategies like Elicit-Provide-Elicit (described in Chapter 3).

Reintroduce Feedback

Use personalized feedback after assessments to motivate clients. Continue to use assessment results to influence clients' decisional considerations. Objective medical, social, and neuropsychological feedback prompts many clients to contemplate change. Reviewing assessment information can refocus clients on the need for change. Reintroducing objective assessment data reminds clients of earlier insights into the need for change.

For example, a client may be intrinsically motivated to stop alcohol misuse because of health concerns yet feel overwhelmed by fear that quitting is impossible. Reintroducing feedback from the medical assessment about the risk of serious liver damage or a family history of heart disease could add significant additional weight to the DB and tip the balance in the direction of change.

Explore Self-Efficacy

By listening for self-efficacy statements from clients, you can discover what they feel they can and cannot do. Self-efficacy is a critical determinant of behavior change—it is the belief that they can act in a certain way or perform a particular task. Even clients who admit to having a serious problem are not likely to move toward positive change unless they have some hope of success. Self-efficacy can be thought of as hope or optimism, but clients do not have to have an overall optimistic view to believe a certain behavior can be changed.

Statements about self-efficacy could include the following:

- "I can't do that."
- "That is beyond my powers."
- "That would be easy."
- "I think I can manage that."

Self-efficacy is not a global measure, like self-esteem. Rather, it is behavior specific. Underlying any discussion of self-efficacy is the question "Efficacy to perform what specific behavior?" There are five categories of self-efficacy related to SUDs (DiClemente, Carbonari, Montgomery, & Hughes, 1994: Glozah, Adu, & Komesuor, 2015):

- **Coping self-efficacy** is dealing successfully with situations that tempt one to use substances, such as by being assertive with friends or talking with someone when upset rather than using the substance.
- **Treatment behavior self-efficacy** involves the client's ability to perform behaviors related to treatment, such as self-monitoring or stimulus control.

- **Recovery self-efficacy** is the ability to recover from a recurrence of the addictive behavior.
- **Control self-efficacy** is confidence in one's ability to control behavior in risky situations.
- **Abstinence self-efficacy** is confidence in one's ability to abstain despite cues or triggers to use.

Explore clients' sense of self-efficacy as they move toward Preparation. This may help you determine more specifically whether self-efficacy is a potential support or obstacle to change. Remember, you can enhance client self-efficacy by using the Confidence Ruler (see Exhibit 3.10) and eliciting confidence talk (see the section "Evoking hope and confidence to support self-efficacy" in Chapter 3).

Summarize Change Talk

As the client transitions from Contemplation to Preparation, you will notice that the client has moved to the top of the MI Hill of Ambivalence (see Exhibit 5.2 above) and is expressing less sustain talk and more change talk. This is a good time to offer a recapitulation summary, as described in Exhibit 5.5.

Exhibit 5.5. Recapitulation Summary

At the end of DB exercises, you may sense that the client is ready to commit to change. At this point, you should summarize the client's current situation as reflected in your interactions thus far. The purpose of the summary is to draw together as many reasons for change as possible while pointing out the client's reluctance or ambivalence.

Your summary should include as many of the following elements as possible:

- A summary of the client's own perceptions of the problem
- A summary of the client's ambivalence, including what remains positive or attractive about substance use
- A review of objective evidence you have regarding the presence of risks and problems
- Your assessment of the client's situation, particularly when it aligns with the client's own concerns
- A summary of the client's change talk, emphasizing desire, ability, reasons, and need to change

Remember to recognize the client's sustain talk (i.e., reasons for staying with the status quo), but emphasize client change talk to tip the balance in favor of change.

Enhance Commitment to Change

You should still reinforce the client's commitment to change even after the client has decided to change and has begun to set goals. You should expect client indecision at any point in the change process. Additional strategies that enhance commitment at this point include asking key questions, taking small steps, going public, and envisioning.

Asking key questions

After the summary, ask a key question—for example, "What do you think you will do now?" (see the section "Asking key questions" in Chapter 3)—to help the client move over the top of the MI Hill of Ambivalence toward Preparation. Key questions will elicit CAT change talk. One of the main signs that the client is intending and committed to taking steps is an increase in CAT change talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The client is making statements of **commitment** (e.g., "I will call the treatment facility to set up an intake"), **activation** (e.g., "I am willing to stop smoking marijuana for a month), and **taking steps** (e.g., "I looked up the schedule for Narcotics Anonymous meetings on its website") (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). **Reinforce CAT change talk through reflective listening and summarizing.**

Taking small steps

You have asked the client key questions such as "What's next?" and have presented options to emphasize the client's choice to change and to select areas of focus. Remind the client that he or she has choices and can control the change process to reinforce commitment. **Reassure the client who is overwhelmed by thinking of change that he or she can set the pace and begin with small steps.** Some clients respond well to stories of others who made large, seemingly impossible life changes one step at a time. Don't underestimate the value of such stories and models in enhancing motivation.

Going public

Sharing a commitment to change with at least one other person besides the counselor can keep clients accountable. Telling a significant other about one's

desire to change usually enhances commitment to change. “Going public” can be a critical step for a client who may not have been ready to tell others until this point. Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) has applied the clinical wisdom of public commitment to change through use of the “white chip.” An attendee at an AA meeting who has an intention to quit drinking can pick up a white chip. The white chip is also called a Beginner’s Chip or Surrender Chip and is a public acknowledgment of the person’s intention to start recovery.

Envisioning

Helping clients visualize their life after change can be a powerful motivator and an effective means of strengthening their commitment. In addition, stories about how others have successfully achieved their goals can be excellent motivators. An exercise for envisioning change is to ask clients to picture themselves after a year has passed, during which time they have made the changes they desire in the areas of their lives most hurt by their substance use. Some clients may find it valuable to write a letter to themselves that is dated in the future and describes what life will be like at that point. The letter can have the tone of a vacation postcard (“Wishing you were here!”). Others will be more comfortable describing these scenes to you. Chapter 3 provides more information MI strategies to strengthen commitment.

Conclusion

To help clients move from Contemplation to Preparation, explore and resolve ambivalence about change. Help clients climb the MI Hill of Ambivalence and journey down the other side toward commitment and change. DB exercises can help clients explore ambivalence, clarify reasons to change, and identify barriers to change (e.g., reasons to continue substance use). When tipping the balance in favor of change, emphasize reflections of change talk, minimize the focus on sustain talk, and use motivational strategies to enhance commitment and facilitate clients’ movement into Preparation.

Chapter 6—From Preparation to Action: Initiating Change

”The Preparation stage of change entails developing a plan of action and creating the commitment needed to implement that plan. Decisions do not translate automatically into action. To change a behavior, one needs to focus attention on breaking the old pattern and creating a new one. Planning is the activity that organizes the environment and develops the strategies for making change.”

DiClemente, 2018, pp. 29–30

Key Messages

- During the Preparation stage, clients are considering possible paths toward changing substance use behaviors and beginning to take small steps to reach the final change goal.
- You can support clients’ movement from Preparation to Action by exploring client change goals and helping them develop a change plan.
- You can maintain a client-centered focus by eliciting clients’ change goals and not imposing goals on them.

Chapter 6 describes the process of identifying and clarifying change goals. It also focuses on how and when to develop a change plan with the client and suggests ways to ensure a sound plan by offering the client a menu of options, contracting for change, identifying and lowering barriers to action, and enlisting social support. This chapter also describes your tasks while the client moves into the Action stage, like helping the client initiate the plan and evaluating the effectiveness of the plan.

In earlier stages of the Stages of Change (SOC) approach, you use motivational strategies to increase clients’ readiness. **In Preparation, you use motivational strategies to strengthen clients’ commitment and help them make a firm decision to change.** Clients who commit to change and believe change is possible are prepared for the Action stage. Clients who are actively taking steps to change substance use behaviors have better long-term outcomes after treatment than clients who have not reached this stage of the SOC (Heather & McCambridge, 2013).

Your task is to help clients set clear goals for change in preparation for developing a change plan.

Changing any longstanding behavior requires preparation and planning. Clients must see change as being in their best interest before they can move into the Action stage. Developing a change plan that is accessible, acceptable, and appropriate for each client is key. The negative consequences of ignoring the Preparation stage can be a brief course of action followed by rapid return to substance use. By the end of the Preparation stage, clients should have a plan for change that guides them into the Action stage.

Exhibit 6.1 presents counseling strategies for Preparation and Action.

Exhibit 6.1. Counseling Strategies for Preparation and Action

SOC	Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
Preparation	The client is committed and planning to make a change in the near future but is still considering what to do.	• Explore client change goals. • Develop a change plan.	• Clarify the client's own goals. • Sample goals; encourage experimenting. • Elicit change strategies from the client. • Offer a menu of change options. • Negotiate a behavioral contract.

Exhibit 6.1. Counseling Strategies for Preparation and Action

SOC	Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
			• Explore and lower barriers to action. • Enlist social support.
Action	The client actively takes steps to change but is not yet stable.	• Support the client's action steps. • Evaluate the change plan.	• Help the client determine which change strategies are working and which are not. • Change the strategies as needed.

Explore Client Change Goals

Once the client has decided to make a positive change and the commitment is clear, goals should be set. Setting goals is part of the exploring and envisioning activities in the early and middle parts of the Preparation stage. Having summarized and reviewed the client's decisional considerations, you should now be prepared to ask about ways in which the client might want to address some of

the reasons to change listed on the positive side of the decisional balance sheet. **The process of talking about and setting goals strengthens commitment to change.**

Clarify the Client's Goals

Help the client set goals that are as realistic and specific as possible and that address the concerns he or she described earlier about substance use. The client may set goals in multiple areas, not just substance use. He or she may work toward goals such as regaining custody of children, getting a job, becoming financially independent, leaving an abusive relationship, and returning to school. The client who sets several goals may need help deciding which to focus on first.

Early on, goals should be short term, measurable, and realistic so that clients can begin measuring success and feeling good about themselves as well as hopeful about the change. If goals seem unreachable to you, discuss your concerns. Use OARS (**O**pen questions, **A**ffirmations, **R**eflective listening, and **S**ummarization) to help clients clarify their goals, decide on which goal to focus first, and identify steps to achieving their goals. For example, if one goal is to get a job, you can start with an open question: "What do you think is the first step toward meeting this goal?" The goal is the vision, and the steps are the specific tasks that clients perform to meet the goal.

Setting goals is a joint process. The counselor and client work together, moving from general ideas and visions to specific goals. Seeing how the client sets goals and the types of goals he or she sets provides information on the client's sense of self-efficacy, level of commitment, and readiness for change. The more hopeful a client feels about the future, the more likely he or she is to achieve treatment goals.

Make identifying and clarifying treatment goals a client-driven process. Doing so is consistent with the principles of person-centered counseling and the spirit of motivational interviewing (MI). It is up to the client to decide what actions to take or treatment options to seek to address a substance use problem. Matching the

client to the preferred substance use disorder (SUD) treatment options can help reduce alcohol consumption and improve drug-related outcomes (Friedrichs, Spies, Härter, & Buchholz, 2016). In a systematic review, brief motivational alcohol interventions for adolescents had significantly larger effects on alcohol consumption if they included goal-setting exercises (Tanner-Smith & Lipsey, 2015).

Your task is to help clients identify their preferred change goals and to enhance their decision making by teaching them about their treatment options. (See Chapter 3 for more information about and strategies for identifying change goals using MI.)

Remember that the client's preferred treatment goals may not match what you prefer. A client might choose a course of action with which you do not agree or that is not in line with the treatment agency's policies. A decision to reduce but not completely stop substance use, for example, may go against the agency's policy of zero tolerance for illicit substance use. Exhibit 6.2 offers some strategies for addressing these types of situations.

Exhibit 6.2. When Treatment Goals Differ

What do you do when the client's goals differ from yours or those of your agency? This issue arises in all behavioral health services but especially in a motivational approach, where you listen reflectively to a client and actively involve him or her in decision making. As you elicit goals for change and treatment, a client may not choose goals that you think are right for him or her.

Before exploring different ways of handling this common situation, try to clarify how the client's goals and your own (or your agency's goals) do not match. For a client, goals are by definition the objectives he or she is motivated (ready, willing, and able) to work toward. If the client is not motivated to work toward it, it is not a goal. You or your agency, however, may have specific plans or hopes for the client. You cannot push your hopes and plans onto the client. This situation can become an ethical problem if you focus too much on trying to get a client to change in the direction of your or the agency's goals (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

What are your clinical options when goals differ? You can choose from the following strategies:

- **Negotiate** (i.e., figure out how to work out the differences)
  - Rework the agenda and be open about your concerns as well as your hopes for the client (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).
  - Find goals on which you and the client can agree, and work together on those.
  - Start with areas in which the client is motivated to change. Women with alcohol or drug use disorders, for example, often come to treatment with a wide range of other problems, many of which they see as more pressing than making a change in substance use.
  - Start with the problems that the client feels are most urgent, and then address substance use when its relationship to other problems becomes obvious.
- **Approximate** (i.e., try to find an agreed-on goal that is similar)
  - Even if a client is not willing to accept your recommendations, consider the possibility of agreeing on a goal that is still a step in the right direction. Your hope, for example, might be that the client would eventually become free from all psychoactive substance use. The client, however, is most concerned about cocaine and is not ready to talk about changing cannabis, tobacco, or alcohol use.
  - Rather than dismiss the client for not accepting a goal of immediate abstinence from all substances, focus on stopping cocaine use, and then consider next steps.
- **Refer**
  - If you can't help the client with treatment goals even after trying to negotiate or approximate, refer the client to another provider or program.
  - Work within state licensing and professional ethical codes to avoid suddenly ending treatment.
  - Offer a menu of options, and take an active role in linking the client to other treatment and community-based services.
  - Be open in a nonjudgmental and neutral way about the fact that you cannot help the client with his or her treatment goal (Moyers & Houck, 2011).

Sample Goals and Encourage Experimenting

You may need to help some clients sample or try out their goals before getting them to commit to long-term change. For instance, some clients benefit from experimenting with abstinence or cutting down their substance use for a short period. The following approaches to goal sampling may be helpful for clients who are not committed to abstinence as a change goal:

- **Sobriety sampling.** This trial period of abstinence is commonly used with clients who (Boston Center for Treatment Development and Training [BCTDT], 2016):
    - – Are not interested in abstinence as a treatment goal.
    - – Express significant need or desire to address misuse but are not ready to commit to abstinence.
    - – Have had many past unsuccessful attempts at moderate use.

    A successful trial of sobriety sampling can enhance clients' commitment to a goal of abstinence. Even a 2-to-3–week period of abstinence before treatment can lead to positive client outcomes,

    including reductions in alcohol misuse (Gueorguieva et al., 2014). However, longer periods of trial abstinence may give clients more of an opportunity to experience the benefits of abstinence, like clearer thinking, a better ability to recognize substance use triggers, and more time to experience the positive feeling of living without substance use (BCTDT, 2016).

- **Tapering down.** This approach has been widely used with people who smoke to reduce physical dependence and cravings before the quit date and is an option for some substances like alcohol or cannabis. This approach consists of setting increasingly lower daily and weekly limits on use of the substance while working toward a long-range goal of abstinence. The client keeps careful daily records of consumption and schedules sessions with the counselor as needed. **Tapering off opioids, benzodiazepines, or multiple substances should be done under medical supervision.**
- **Trial moderation.** Trial moderation (i.e., clients try to reduce substance use with careful monitoring) may be the only acceptable goal for some clients who are in Precontemplation. Don't assume that clients will fail at moderation; however, if the moderation experiment fails after a reasonable effort, try to get clients to reconsider abstinence as a change goal. Clients can gain insight into their ability to reduce their substance use,

and many will ultimately decide to abstain if they cannot reduce their use without negative consequences. Research indicates that clients whose goal is moderation have larger social networks of people who drink daily (Gueorguieva et al., 2014). Therefore, you should address clients' drinking social network as a potential barrier to moderation as a long-term goal.

Develop a Change Plan

Your final step in readying the client to act is to work with him or her in creating a plan for change.

(Chapter 3 provides a summary of MI-specific strategies for developing a change plan.) Think of a change plan as a roadmap for the client to reach his or her change goals. A solid plan for change enhances the client's self-efficacy and provides an opportunity to consider potential barriers and the likely outcomes of each change strategy. As mentioned in Chapter 3, some clients need no structured change plan.

Use these strategies to work with clients to create a sound change plan:

- Elicit change strategies from the client.
- Offer a menu of change options.
- Negotiate a behavioral contract.
- Explore and lower barriers to action.
- Enlist social support.

Elicit Change Strategies From the Client

Work with clients to develop a change plan by eliciting their own ideas about what will work for them.

This approach is a particularly helpful if clients have made past attempts to address substance use behaviors or have been in treatment before. For example, you might begin with a reflection of commitment talk and follow with an open question: "You clearly think that giving up cocaine is the best thing for you right now. What steps do you think you can take to reach this goal?"

Help clients create plans to match their concerns and goals. Plans will differ among clients:

- The plan can be very general or very specific and can be short term or long term.
- Some clients can commit only to a very limited plan, like going home, thinking about change, and returning on a specific date to talk further. Even a small, short-term plan like this can include specific steps for helping clients avoid high-risk situations as well as identifying specific coping strategies.
- Some plans are very simple, such as stating only that clients will enter outpatient treatment and attend an Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) meeting every day.
- Other plans include details (e.g., transportation to treatment, new ways to spend weekends).
- Many plans include specific steps to overcome anticipated barriers to success (Exhibit 6.3). Some plans lay out a sequence of steps. For example, working mothers with children who must enter inpatient treatment may develop a sequenced plan for arranging for child care.

Exhibit 6.3. Change Plan Worksheet
The most important reasons I want to make this change are:
My main goals for myself in making this change are:
I plan to do these things to reach my goals: Specific action When?
The first steps I plan to take in changing are:
Other people could help me in changing in these ways: Person Possible ways he or she can help
These are some possible obstacles to change and ways I could handle them: Possible obstacles to change How to respond
I will know that my plan is working when I see these results:

Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2002. Motivational Interviewing: Preparing People for Change (2nd ed). *Adapted with permission from Guildford Press.*

Create a change plan using a joint process in which you and the client work together. One of your most important tasks is to ensure that the plan is realistic and can be carried out. When the client offers a plan that seems unrealistic, too ambitious, or not ambitious enough, use shared decision making to rework the plan. The following areas are often part of such discussions:

- **Intensity and amount of help needed.** Encourage participation in community-based recovery support groups (e.g., AA, Narcotics Anonymous [NA], SMART Recovery, Women for Sobriety), enrolling in intensive outpatient treatment (IOP), or entering a 2-year therapeutic community.
- **Timeframe.** Choose a short-term rather than a long-term plan and a start date for the plan.

- **Available social support.** Discuss who will be involved in treatment (e.g., family, Women for Sobriety members, community members), where it will take place (e.g., at home, in the community), and when it will occur (e.g., after work, weekends, twice a week).
- **The order of subgoals and strategies or steps in the plan.** For example:
    1. Stop dealing marijuana.
    2. Stop smoking marijuana.
    3. Call friends or family to tell them about the plan.
    4. Visit friends or family who know about the plan.
    5. Learn relaxation techniques.
    6. Use relaxation techniques when feeling stressed at work.
- **Ways to address multiple problems.** Consider legal, financial, and health problems, among others.

  Clients may ask you for information and advice about specific steps to add to the plan. You should:

    - Ask permission to offer advice.
    - Use the Elicit-Provide-Elicit (EPE) approach to keep the client in the center of the conversation (see the section "Developing discrepancy: A values conversation" in Chapter 3).
    - Provide accurate and specific facts, and always ask whether they understand them.
    - Elicit responses to such information by asking, "What do you think about this?"

The last step in EPE is key to completing the information exchange between you and the client.

How specific should you be when clients ask what **you** think they should do? Providing your best advice is an important part of your role. It is also appropriate to share your own views and opinions, although it is helpful to "soften" your statements and give clients permission to disagree. For example, you might soften your suggestion by saying, "This may or may not work for you, but a lot of people

find it helpful to go to NA meetings to meet others who are trying to stay away from cocaine." Other techniques of MI, such as developing discrepancy, empathizing, and avoiding arguments, also are useful during this process.

The Change Plan Worksheet in Exhibit 6.3 helps clients focus their attention on the details of the plan, increase commitment to change, enlist social support, and troubleshoot potential roadblocks to change.

Use the Importance and Confidence Rulers in Exhibit 3.9 and Exhibit 3.10 to determine the client's readiness and self-efficacy about each change goal. These tools can help you and the client determine which goals to address first and which strategies to begin with. Ideally, the top goal will be one with higher ratings on both importance and confidence. If the client rates one goal as high in importance and low in confidence, focus on exploring self-efficacy and evoking confidence talk to prepare the client for taking action.

Offer a Menu of Change Options

Enhance clients' motivation to take action by offering them a variety of treatment choices. Choices can be about treatment options or about other types of services. For example, clients who will not go to AA meetings might be willing to go to a Rational Recovery, SMART Recovery, or Women for Sobriety group; clients who will not consider abstinence might be willing to decrease their consumption. **Encourage clients to learn about their options and make informed choices to enhance their commitment to the change plan.**

Expert Comment: Treatment Options and Resources
In our alcohol treatment program, I found that having lists of both community resources and diverse treatment modules helps counselors and case managers engage clients, offer individualized programming, and meet clients' multiple needs. The following are some options we offer our clients: Treatment Module Options • Values clarification/decision making • Social-skills training (e.g., assertiveness, communication) • Anxiety management/relaxation • Anger management • Marital and family therapy • Adjunctive medication (i.e., disulfiram, naltrexone, or acamprosate) • Problem-solving groups • Intensive group therapy Community Treatment Resources • Halfway houses • Support groups (e.g., AA, NA, Rational Recovery, SMART Recovery, Women for Sobriety) • Social services (e.g., child care, vocational rehabilitation, food, shelter) • Medical care • Transportation • Legal services • Psychiatric services • Academic and technical schools *Carlo C. DiClemente, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member*

Know your community's treatment facilities and resources. This helps you provide clients with suitable options and makes you an invaluable resource for clients. Offer clients information on:

- Specific contact people.
- Program graduates.
- Typical space availability.
- Funding issues.
- Eligibility criteria.
- Program rules and characteristics.

Community resources in other service areas, such as:

- – Food banks
- – Job training programs

- – Special programs for clients with co-occurring medical and mental disorders
- – Safe shelters for clients experiencing intimate partner violence

In addition, knowledge about clients' resources, insurance coverage, job situation, parenting responsibilities, and other factors is crucial in considering options. Initial assessment information also helps establish treatment options and priorities.

When discussing treatment options with clients, be sure to:

- Provide basic information in simple language about levels, intensities, and appropriateness of care.
- Avoid professional jargon and technical terms for treatment types or philosophies.
- Limit options to several that are appropriate, and describe these, one at a time, in language that is understandable and matches clients' concerns.
- Describe the purpose of a particular treatment, how it works, and what clients can expect.
- Ask clients to wait to make a decision about treatment until they understand all the options.
- Ask clients if they have questions, and ask their opinions about how to handle each option.
- Review the concept of the SOC; note that it is common for people to go through the stages several times as they move closer to maintaining substance use behavior change and stable recovery.
- Remind clients that not completing a treatment program and returning to substance use are not failures, but opportunities to reevaluate which change strategies are working or not working.
- Point out that, with all the options, they are certain to find some form of treatment that will work.

- Reassure clients that you are willing to work with them until they find the right choice.

Exhibit 6.4 provides a change-planning strategy for situations with many possible change options.

Exhibit 6.4. Mapping a Path for Change When There Are Multiple Options

- **Confirm the change goal.** If there are action steps to meet the change goal, decide which step to take first. For example, the client's goal might be to stop drinking completely. Some action steps might include talking with a healthcare provider about medication, going to an AA meeting, and telling a spouse about the decision. Which step does the client think is most important?
- **Make a list of the change options available to the client** (e.g., inpatient treatment, community-based recovery support groups, IOP treatment, a sober living house or therapeutic community, medication-assisted treatment).
- **Elicit the client's feelings, preferences, or both on the best way to proceed.** For example, ask, "Here are the different options we have discussed that might work for you. Which one do you like the most?" You can also discuss the pros and cons of different options (i.e., perform a decisional balance).
- **Summarize the plan and strengthen commitment.** Summarize the action steps and change goal, then evoke and reflect CAT (**C**ommitment, **A**ctivation, and **T**aking steps) change talk.
- **Troubleshoot.** Explore barriers to taking steps; raise any concerns about how realistic the plan is. Avoid the expert trap (see Chapter 3), and elicit the client's own ideas about how to manage barriers to change.

Source: Miller & Rollnick, 2013.

Negotiate a Behavioral Contract

Develop a written or oral contract to help clients start working on their change plans. A contract is a formal agreement between two parties. Clients may choose to make a signed statement at the bottom of the Change Plan Worksheet or may prefer a separate document. Be sure to:

- Explain that others have found contracts useful at this stage, and invite them to try writing one.
- Avoid writing contracts for clients. **Composing and signing it is a small but important ritual of**

  "going public" that can enhance commitment (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013).

- Encourage clients to use their own words.

- Be flexible. With some clients, a handshake is a good substitute for a written contract, particularly with clients who have challenges with reading and writing or whose first language is not English.

Establishing a contract raises issues for discussion about the client's reasons for change. What parties does the contract involve? Some contracts include the counselor as a party in the contract, specifying the counselor's functions and responsibilities. Other clients regard the contract as a promise to themselves, to a spouse, or to other family members.

Contracts are often used in treatment programs that employ behavioral techniques, such as contingency management (CM). For many counselors, contracts mean **contingencies** (i.e., rewards and consequences), and programs often build contingencies into the structure of their programs. For example, in many methadone maintenance programs, take-home medications are contingent on substance-free urinalyses. Rewards or incentives have been shown to be highly effective external reinforcers. For instance, CM rewards are effective in reducing use and misuse of a range of substances including alcohol, tobacco, cannabis, and stimulants, as well as polysubstance use (Aisncough, McNeill, Strang, Calder, & Brose, 2017; Litt, Kadden, & Petry, 2013; Sayegh, Huey, Zara, & Jhaveri, 2017).

Clients may decide to include contingencies, especially rewards or positive incentives, in the contract. Rewards can:

- Be highly individual.
- Include enjoyable activities, favorite foods, desired objects, or rituals and ceremonies, all of which

  can be powerful objective markers of change and reinforcers of commitment.

- Be tied to length of abstinence, quit-date anniversaries, or achievement of subgoals. For instance:

- – A client may plan an afternoon at a baseball game with her son to celebrate a month of abstinence.
- – One client might go out to dinner with friends after attending his 50th AA meeting.
- – Another client may light a candle at church.
- – Still another client might hike to the top of a nearby mountain to mark an improvement in energy and health.

Explore and Lower Barriers to Action

One category in the Change Plan Worksheet in Exhibit 6.3 addresses possible obstacles to change and ways to handle them. Identifying barriers to action is an important part of the change plan. Potential roadblocks to taking action on change goals might include:

- A lack of non-substance–using social supports.
- Unsupportive family members.
- Co-occurring medical or mental disorders.
- Distressing side effects from medication-assisted treatment or psychiatric medications.

- Physical cravings or withdrawal symptoms.
- Legal issues, money-related problems, or both.
- Lack of child care.
- Transportation issues.
- A lack of cultural responsiveness of some agencies, programs, or services.

Clients can predict some barriers better than you can, so **allow them to identify and discuss possible problems.** Specifically:

- Do not try to predict everything that could go wrong.
- Focus on events or situations that are likely to be problematic.
- Build alternatives and solutions into the plan.

- Before offering advice, explore clients' ideas about how they might handle issues as they arise.
- Explore the ways clients may have overcome these or similar barriers in the past. This is a way to open a conversation about their strengths and coping skills.

Some problems are evident immediately. For instance, a highly motivated client may plan to attend an IOP treatment program 50 miles away 3 times a week, even though this requires bus and train rides and late-night travel. Explore the pros and cons of this part of the change plan with the client, and brainstorm alternative solutions, like finding a program closer to home or a family member, case manager, peer support specialist, or program volunteer who can drive the client to the program. **Remember, the change plan should include strategies that are accessible, acceptable, and appropriate for each client.**

You may need to refer clients to another treatment program or other services following initial consultation or evaluation, but this too is another common barrier to action. When you refer clients:

- Ensure they have **information** about how to get to the program, whom and when to telephone, and what to expect on the call (e.g., what type of personal information may be requested).
- Give them any **"insider information"** you have about the program or provider, which can reduce clients' anxiety and makes the process easier. For example, you may know that the receptionist at the program is a friendly person or that many people get lost by entering the building on the wrong side or that a nearby diner serves good food.
- Use **active linkage and referral interventions**, which enhance client engagement and retention in SUD treatment and ancillary services and improve outcomes (Rapp, Van Den Noortgate, Broekaert, & Vanderplasschen, 2014). Strategies for active referral procedures include:
- – **Helping the client make the telephone call to set up the intake appointment at the chosen program.** Some clients may want to make the

phone call from your office; others might wish to call from home and call you later to tell you that they made an appointment. Some clients prefer to think things over first and make the call from your office at the next session.

- – **Following up with clients and the program**, if possible and with client permission, to ensure that clients are connected to the new service.
- – **Offering a "warm handoff,"** if possible, which involves introducing clients to the new provider.

– Linking clients to a case manager, peer recovery support specialist, program alumnus, or community-based recovery support group volunteer to act as a liaison and actively engage clients in treatment programs; social, legal, or employment services; or community-based recovery support programs.

Enlist Social Support

Help clients enlist social support and build or enhance social networks that support recovery from SUDs. Positive social support for substance use behavior change is an important factor in clients' initiating and sustaining behavior change (Black & Chung, 2014; Fergie et al., 2018; Rhoades et al., 2018).

As a counselor, you are a central support for clients, but you cannot provide all the support they need. In general, a supportive person is someone who will listen and not be judgmental. This supportive person should have a helpful and encouraging attitude toward clients. Ideally, this person does not use or misuse substances and understands the processes of addiction and change. The Change Plan Worksheet (Exhibit 6.3) includes space for listing supportive individuals and describing how they can help. As discussed in Chapter 4, concerned significant others can offer support by learning some MI skills (e.g., offering simple reflective listening responses, becoming effective partners in change).

Encourage clients to include social support strategies in their change plans. These include:

- **Engaging in activities with friends that don't involve substance use.** Social support often entails participating in non-substance–use activities, so close friends with whom clients have a history of shared interests other than substance use are good candidates for this helpful role. Members of social groups who drink and use drugs are not likely to offer the support clients need in recovery.
- **Repairing or resuming connections with supportive family members and significant others.** Clients can find supportive people among their family members and close friends as well as in faith-based and spiritual organizations, recreational centers, and community volunteer organizations. To make these connections, encourage clients to explore and discuss a time in their lives before substance use became a central focus. Ask them what gave meaning to their lives at that time.
- **Participating in AA or other recovery support groups.** Recovery groups provide clients with social support for behavior change, positive role models of recovery, recovering friendship networks, and hope that recovery is possible. Research confirms that participation in AA is associated with positive alcohol-related, psychological, and social outcomes (Humphreys, Blodgett, & Wagner, 2014).
- **Connecting with addiction-focused peer support.** Peer recovery support specialists can be recovery role models and an important source of social support for clients. Client participation in peer recovery support services with a peer specialist leads to positive social support and improved substance use outcomes, including decreased alcohol use and hospitalizations as well as better adherence to treatment goals after discharge (Bassuk, Hanson, Greene, Richard, & Laudet, 2016). Oxford Houses and similar sober living housing options have built-in social support systems.
- **Connecting clients with a case manager.** For some clients, especially those with chronic medical or serious mental illness, case management teams provide a sense of safety, structure, and support. A case manager can also actively link clients to community-based social services, federal and state

financial assistance, and other ancillary services that support clients' recovery efforts.

When helping clients enlist social support, be particularly alert for clients who have limited social skills or social networks. Some clients may have to learn social skills and ways to structure leisure time. Add social skill-building steps into the change plan. Some clients may not be connected to any social network that is not organized around substance use. Furthermore, addiction may have so narrowed their focus to the point where they have trouble recalling activities that once held their interest or appealed to them. However, most people have unfulfilled desires to pursue an activity at some time in their lives. Ask about these wishes. One client may want to learn ballroom dancing, another to learn a martial art, or still another to take a creative writing class. Planning for change can be a particularly productive time for clients to reconnect with this desire to find fulfilling activities, and seeking such activities provides opportunities for making new friends.

Clients with a carefully drafted change plan, knowledge of both high-risk situations and potential barriers to getting started, and a group of supportive friends, family members, or recovery supports should be fully prepared and ready to move into the Action stage.

Support the Client's Action Steps

DiClemente (2018) describes four main tasks for client in the Action stage of the SOC:

1. Breaking free of the addiction using the strategies in the change plan
2. Continuing commitment to change and establishing a new pattern of behavior
3. Managing internal/external barriers to change (e.g., physical cravings, lack of positive social support)
4. Revising and refining the change plan

Your role is to continue using motivational counseling approaches to support the client in completing these tasks and moving into the Maintenance stage and stable recovery. To support clients in breaking free of substance use behaviors:

- Encourage clients to set a specific start date for each behavior change (e.g., a smoking quit date, date to enter an inpatient addiction treatment program). Setting a start date increases commitment.
- Help clients create rituals that symbolize them leaving old behaviors behind. For example, some clients may make a ritual of burning or disposing of substance paraphernalia, cigarettes, beer mugs, or liquor. Support clients in creating personally meaningful rituals. As mentioned previously, picking up a chip at an AA meeting is a ritual that supports clients' action steps toward abstinence and a new lifestyle.

To reinforce clients' commitment to change:

- Continue to evoke and reflect CAT change talk in your ongoing conversations with clients.
- Use reflective listening, summaries, and affirmations.
- Manage barriers to change by identifying those barriers (as described above in the section "Explore and Lower Barriers to Action"), working with clients to brainstorm personally relevant strategies for lowering or reducing the impact of those barriers, and offering a menu of treatment options. For example, if a client experiences intense alcohol or drug cravings, you might explore the possibility of referring the client to a medical provider for a medication evaluation, encouraging participation in a mindfulness meditation group, or both.
- Evaluate, revise, and refine the change plan as the final step in the Action stage.

Evaluate the Change Plan

Your goal of this stage of the change cycle is to help the client sustain successful actions for a long enough time that he or she gains stability and moves into Maintenance (Connors et al., 2013). It is not likely that you and the client will be able to predict all of the issues that will come up as the client initiates the change plan. The client's circumstances likely will change (e.g., a spouse might file for divorce), unanticipated issues arise (e.g., the client's drug-using social network might put pressure on the client to return to drug use), and change strategies may not turn out to work well for the client (e.g., the client loses his or her driver's license and has to find alternative transportation to NA meetings). These unanticipated issues can become a barrier to sustaining change plan actions and may require revisions to the change plan (Connors et al., 2013).

Your task is to work with the client at each encounter to evaluate the change plan and revise it as necessary. Ask the client, "What's working?" and "What's not working?" Miller and Rollnick (2013) suggest that counselors think about this process as "flexible revisiting." The same strategies used in the planning process of MI apply to revising the change plan, including confirming the change goal, eliciting the client's ideas about how to change, offering a menu of options, summarizing the change plan, and exploring obstacles (see Chapter 3). Some strategies for change may need to be removed, whereas others can be adjusted. For example, one client's goal is to quit drinking, and her action steps include attending three AA meetings a week, including one women's meeting. The client stops going to the women's meeting because one of the regular attendees is a coworker who likes to gossip, and the client is afraid that the coworker will break her anonymity at work. Your first step is to identify the issue, and then elicit the client's ideas about what else might work for her.

Open questions to start this process if a change strategy is not working include (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- "What now?"
- "What else might work?"
- "What's your next step?

Avoid jumping in too quickly with your own ideas. Adjusting a change plan, like creating the initial change plan, is a joint process between you and the client; the client's own ideas and resources are key (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Finally, summarize the new change strategy and explore how the client might respond to any new obstacles that might come up while initiating the revised change plan (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

Conclusion

As clients move from contemplating change into preparing for change, your task is to continue to reinforce clients' commitment to change and take action. You can support clients to take this next step by working together to develop a change plan, imagining possible barriers to change that might occur, and enlisting social support for taking action. Change plans are client driven and based on clients' own goals. Continue to use motivational counseling strategies to help clients identify and clarify their change goals, develop a change plan, and refine and revise the change plan as needed. Your role is to help clients sustain their goals for change, gain stability, and move into the Maintenance stage of the SOC.

Chapter 7—From Action to Maintenance: Stabilizing Change

"To become habitual, the new behavior must become integrated into the individual's lifestyle. This is the task of the Maintenance stage of change. During this stage, the new behavior pattern becomes automatic, requiring less thought or effort to sustain it.... However, even during Maintenance there is an ever-present danger of reverting to the old pattern. In fact, the new behavior becomes fully maintained only when there is little or no energy or effort needed to continue it and the individual can terminate the cycle of change."

DiClemente, 2018, p. 31

Key Messages

- In the Maintenance stage of the Stages of Change (SOC) model, clients work toward stabilizing the substance use behavioral changes they have made.

- You can support clients in the Maintenance stage by helping them stay motivated, identify triggers that might lead to a return to substance misuse, and develop a plan for coping with situational triggers when they arise.
- Relapse prevention counseling (RPC) using a motivational counseling style can prevent a return to substance misuse and help clients reenter the cycle of change quickly if they do return to substance use.

Maintaining change is often more challenging than taking one's first steps toward change. Chapter 7 addresses ways that you can use motivational strategies to help clients maintain their success in recovering from substance use disorders (SUDs). It presents strategies for stabilizing change, supporting lifestyle changes, managing setbacks during Maintenance, and helping clients reenter the cycle of change if a relapse or a return to substance misuse occurs.

Using a motivational counseling style with clients in the Precontemplation through Preparation stages helps them move toward initiating behavioral change. Yet when clients do take action, they face the reality of stopping or reducing substance use. This obstacle is more difficult than just contemplating action. Once clients have decided to take action, they are on the downslope of the Motivational Interviewing (MI) Hill of Ambivalence presented in Exhibit 5.2.

Exhibit 7.1 presents counseling strategies for Action and Relapse.

Exhibit 7.1. Counseling Strategies for Action and Relapse

SOC	Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
Maintenance	The client has achieved initial goals, such as abstinence, reduced substance use behaviors, or entering treatment, and is now working to maintain these goals.	• Stabilize client change. • Support the client's lifestyle changes.	• Engage and retain the client in SUD treatment. • Create a coping plan. • Identify new behaviors that reinforce change. • Identify recovery capital (RC). • Reinforce family and social support.

Exhibit 7.1. Counseling Strategies for Action and Relapse			
SOC	Client Motivation	Counselor Focus	Counseling Strategies
Relapse and Recycle	The client returns to substance misuse and temporarily exits the change cycle.	Help the client reenter the change cycle.	• Provide RPC. • Reenter the cycle of change.

Stabilize Client Change

One of the key change goals for many clients is entry into a specialized addiction treatment program. Options include outpatient, intensive outpatient, inpatient, and short- or long-term residential treatment; methadone maintenance treatment; and office-based opioid treatment. Making the decision to enter treatment is an action step. **To maintain that behavior change, you should engage and retain clients in treatment.** Unfortunately, many clients enter and stop treatment before they achieve their other change goals. Engaging and retaining clients in treatment are important strategies for stabilizing substance use behavior change. Other stabilization strategies include identifying high-risk situations and triggers for substance use, creating a coping plan, and helping clients practice and use new coping skills.

Engage and Retain Clients in SUD Treatment

You play an important role in preventing clients from stopping or dropping out of treatment before completion—a major concern for SUD treatment providers. A consistent predictor of positive client outcomes across SUD treatment services is treatment completion (Brorson, Arnevik, Rand-Hendriksen, & Duckert, 2013). Longer lengths of stay in treatment are consistent indicators of reliable behavior change and positive treatment outcomes (Running Bear, Beals, Novins, & Manson, 2017; Jason, Salina, & Ram, 2016; Turner & Deanne, 2016).

Causes of stopping treatment early vary:

- For some clients, dropping out, missing appointments, or nonadherence with other aspects of the treatment program are clear messages of **disappointment, hopelessness, or changes of heart.**
- Some clients drop out of treatment **because their treatment or behavior change goals don't match** those of the counselor or program (Connors, DiClemente, Velasquez, & Donovan, 2013).
- Strong evidence shows that **low treatment alliance** is linked to client dropout in SUD treatment (Brorson et al., 2013).
- Clients with **co-occurring substance use and mental disorders (CODs)** and those with **cognitive problems** are especially likely to end treatment early (Running Bear et al., 2017; Brorson et al., 2013; Krawczyk et al., 2017; Teeson et al., 2015). For more information about engaging clients with CODs, see Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) 42: *Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons With Co- Occurring Disorders* (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2013).
- For others, dropping out may mean they have **successfully changed their substance use behaviors on their own** (Connors et al., 2013).
- Perhaps the strongest predictor of dropout in SUD treatment is **addiction severity at treatment entry.** For example, one study of men and women in treatment for posttraumatic stress disorder found that a diagnosis of both an alcohol use disorder (AUD) and a drug use disorder strongly predicted higher dropout rates, drug use severity predicted worse adherence to treatment, and drug use severity or a lifetime diagnosis of an alcohol or drug use disorder predicted worse treatment outcomes (Bedard-Gilligan, Garcia, Zoellner, & Feeny 2018).

MI and motivational enhancement therapy are effective in improving treatment adherence to and retention in SUD treatment for certain substances (e.g., cocaine), especially for clients who enter treatment with low motivation to change (DiClemente, Corno, Graydon, Wiprovnick, & Knoblach, 2017). Motivational-based strategies that increase client engagement and retention in SUD treatment and reduce client dropout are addressed below.

Build a strong counseling alliance

As noted in Chapters 3 and 4, **your counseling style is an important element for establishing rapport and building a trusting relationship with clients.** MI strategies appropriate during the engaging process (see Chapter 3) help you connect with and understand clients' unique perspectives and personal values. For example, empathy, as expressed through reflective listening, is key in developing rapport with clients and predicts positive treatment alliance and client outcomes (Anderson, Crowley, Himawan, Holmberg, & Uhlin, 2016; Miller & Moyers, 2015; Moyers, 2014; Moyers, Houck, Rice, Longabaugh, & Miller, 2016).

To help clients confide in you, make them feel comfortable and safe within the treatment setting.

Clients' natural reactions may depend on such factors as their gender, age, race, ethnicity, sexual or gender identity, and previous experience. For example, some ethnic or racial groups may be hesitant to enter treatment based on negative life experiences, discrimination, or problems encountered with earlier episodes of treatment. Initially, for these clients and others who have been marginalized or experienced trauma, safety in the treatment setting is a particularly important issue. (See the section "Special Applications of Motivational Interventions" in Chapter 2 for culturally responsive ways to engage clients in treatment.) You should also consider gender differences regarding the importance of establishing a strong counseling alliance. For example, one study found that women who received intensive MI over nine sessions (versus a single session) showed significantly higher counseling alliance and better alcohol use outcomes than men did (Korcha, Polcin, Evans, Bond, & Galloway, 2015).

Inform clients about program rules and expectations

Clients must become acquainted with you and the treatment program. To accomplish this:

- Tell clients explicitly what treatment involves, what is expected of them, and what rules they must follow. If clients have not been prepared by a referring source, review exactly what will happen in treatment to eliminate and confusion.
- Use language clients understand.
- Encourage questions, and provide clarification of anything that seems confusing.
- Explain what information must be reported to a referring agency that has mandated the treatment, including what it means to consent to release of information. This discussion is part of the regular informed consent process that should happen when clients enter treatment.

Address client expectations about treatment

One of the first things you should discuss with new clients is their expectations about the treatment process. Ask clients about their past treatment experiences and what they think the current treatment experience will be like. Clients who are in SUD treatment for the first time do not know much about what the counseling process entails and tend to underestimate the level of motivation, personal commitment, and responsibility required to take action to change (Raylu & Kaur, 2012). This suggests that **clients without previous SUD treatment experience benefit from discussions about treatment expectations and the importance of being open to the counseling process** (Raylu & Kaur, 2012).

Ask clients for permission to explore their treatment expectations. Ask for elaboration on their initial impressions as well as their expectations, hopes, and fears. Some common client fears about treatment are that:

- The counselor will be confrontational and force treatment goals on them.
- Treatment will take too long and require the client to give up too much.
- The rules are too strict, and clients will be discharged for the smallest mistake.
- Medication will not be prescribed for painful withdrawal symptoms.

- The program does not understand women, members of different ethnic/racial groups, or people who use certain substances or combinations of substances.
- A spouse or other family member will be required to participate.

Many clients have negative expectations based on previous treatment. A motivational approach can help you understand their concerns, which is especially important for clients who feel forced into treatment by someone else (e.g., by an employer, the court, a spouse). When clients have unrealistic expectations, like believing the treatment program will get their driver's license reinstated or restore a marriage, be open and honest about what the program can and cannot do. **Use OARS (Open questions, Affirmations, Reflective listening, and Summarization) to explore negative expectations about treatment and the client's hopes about what treatment can accomplish.**

Explore and resolve barriers to completing treatment

Work with clients to brainstorm and explore solutions to common issues. As treatment progresses, clients may experience barriers that slow their success and could result in them stopping treatment early. Sometimes clients do not feel ready to participate or suddenly rethink their decision to enter treatment. Rethinking participation in treatment is a sign that clients may have returned to the Contemplation stage. If this is the case, reengage the client using the motivational strategies discussed in Chapter 5. **If clients are clearly not ready to participate in specialized treatment, leave the door open for them to return at another time, and provide a menu of options for referral to other services.**

During treatment, clients may have negative reactions or embarrassing moments when they:

- Share with you more than they had planned to share.
- Experience intense or overwhelming emotions.
- Realize the mismatch in information they have given you.
- Realize how they have hurt others or their own futures.

You can deal with these difficult reactions by:

- Anticipating and discussing such problems before they occur.
- Letting clients know that these reactions are a normal part of the recovery process.
- Working with clients to develop a plan to handle these difficult reactions.
- Exploring previous treatment, including their reasons for leaving early and how to better match current treatment to their needs.

If this is the client's first treatment experience, get his or her ideas about what might be a roadblock to completing treatment:

• Start with an affirmation, and ask an open question:
"It took a lot of determination and effort for you to be here. Good for you! Sometimes things come up during counseling sessions that are difficult and might make you wonder if staying in treatment is worth the effort. That's normal. What are some things you can imagine that might make it challenging for you to follow through with your commitment to completing the program?"

- Follow with reflective listening responses.
- Ask the client for ideas about strategies to deal with ambivalence about staying in treatment.
- Be culturally aware as you help the client manage or try to prevent common difficulties.

Increase congruence between intrinsic and extrinsic motivation

Exploring with clients their internal and external reasons for entering and staying in treatment can help reduce their chances of early dropout. Self-determination theory proposes that intrinsic (internal) motivation may have a stronger impact on maintaining behavior change than extrinsic (external) motivation, which may be more effective in helping clients initiate behavior

change. A meta-analysis of MI (which emphasizes increasing internal motivation) and contingency management (which emphasizes external motivators) found that both approaches were effective in reducing use of a wide variety of substances (Sayegh, Huey, Zara, & Jhaveri, 2017). The analysis also found evidence to suggest that extrinsically focused counseling strategies produced short-term treatment effects, whereas intrinsically focused counseling strategies produced long-term treatment effects.

Help clients increase congruence, or agreement, between internal and external motivations. You can explore external motivations clients may view as forced or unwanted and reframe them as positive reasons that align with their internal reasons for staying in treatment to increase congruence.

Explore client nonadherence

Clients' nonadherence to treatment is often a sign that they are unhappy with the counseling process. For example, clients may miss appointments, arrive late, fail to complete required forms, or remain silent when asked to participate. Any occurrence of such behavior provides an opportunity to discuss the reasons for the behavior and learn from it. Often clients are expressing their ambivalence and are not ready to make a change. Explore the behavior in a nonjudgmental, problem-solving manner that helps you discover whether the behavior was intentional or whether a reasonable explanation for the behavior exists. For example, clients might be late as a sign of "rebelling" against what they think will be a stressful session, or it could simply be that their car broke down.

As with all motivational strategies, **you need to draw out clients' views of and thoughts about the event.** Generally, if you can get clients to voice their frustrations, they will come up with the answers themselves. Asking a question such as "What do you think is getting in the way of being here on time?" is likely to open a dialog. Respond with reflective listening, open questions that evoke change talk, and affirmations. For example, you might ask, "How does being late fit or not fit with your goal of getting the most out of this treatment experience?" Remember to praise the client for simply getting to the session.

Missed appointments or not showing up for scheduled activities require a more proactive approach. Some strategies for responding to missed appointments are listed in Exhibit 7.2.

Exhibit 7.2. Options for Responding to a Missed Appointment

- Place a telephone call.
- Send a text message.
- Write an email.
- Mail a personal letter.

- Contact preapproved relatives or significant or concerned others.
- Pay the client a personal visit (if appropriate for your role and agency policy).
- Contact the referral source.

As part of the informed consent process, find out from clients which contact methods they prefer, discuss confidentiality and security issues (e.g., protection of clients' personal health information, agency policies regarding email and texting), and obtain appropriate releases to contact other individuals or organizations.

Reach out and follow up

You might need to reach out to the client following certain events, such as a wedding, birth of a child, traumatic injury or illness, or several missed appointments. Doing so shows your personal concern and genuine interest in protecting the counseling relationship and enhancing the recovery process. As mentioned previously, explore the client's preferred methods for you to reach out if he or she misses appointments or drops out of treatment. Make sure to get written consent to contact relatives, friends, or others. In addition, you should be aware of and abide by the client's cultural rules and values about having contact outside the SUD setting.

If clients complete their initial treatment goals and end treatment, follow up with them periodically.

Setbacks, particularly with maintenance of substance use behavior change, often occurs between 3 and 6 months after treatment, and you should plan regular follow-up sessions with clients to reinforce and support maintenance of treatment gains (Miller, Forcehimes, & Zweben, 2011).

Create a Coping Plan

To help clients move fully into Maintenance, help them stabilize actual change in their substance use behavior. Support clients' stabilization by helping them develop a coping plan that lists strategies for managing thoughts, urges, and impulses to drink or use drugs. This planning process includes:

- Assessing and enhancing self-efficacy.
- Identifying high-risk situations that trigger the impulse to drink or use drugs.
- Identifying coping strategies to manage high-risk situations.
- Helping clients practice and use effective coping skills.

Assess and enhance self-efficacy

Help clients improve their self-efficacy. Self-efficacy is important for changing substance use behaviors as well as sustaining those changes. There is a strong relationship between client self-efficacy and SUD treatment outcomes across a variety of substances (e.g., alcohol, cannabis, cocaine) and different counseling approaches. There is also evidence that a strong counseling alliance helps clients enhance self-efficacy and increase positive treatment outcomes for alcohol use (Kadden & Litt, 2011).

Clients may have high self-efficacy in some situations and low self-efficacy in others. Several validated tools can help assess clients' level of self-efficacy or confidence in how well they would cope with the temptation to use substances in high-risk situations. Scores provide feedback about clients' self-efficacy for a specific behavior over a range of high-risk situations. Some computerized versions of these instruments generate charts that present clients' scores in an easy-to-understand way. Descriptions of the Situational Confidence Questionnaire (SCQ)/Brief SCQ (BSCQ) and the Alcohol Abstinence Self- Efficacy Scale (AASES), three of the most widely used instruments, follow:

• The **SCQ** and **BSCQ** have been used with people who misuse alcohol. The 100-item SCQ asks clients to identify their level of confidence in resisting drinking in 8 circumstances (Breslin, Sobell, Sobell, & Agrawal, 2000):

- – Unpleasant emotions
- – Physical discomfort
- – Testing personal control over substance use
- – Urges and temptations to drink
- – Pleasant times with others
- – Conflicts with others
- – Pleasant emotions
- – Social pressure to drink

Clients are asked to imagine themselves in each situation and rate their confidence on a 6-point scale, ranging from not at all confident (a rating of 0) to totally confident (a rating of 6), that they can resist the urge to drink heavily. The BSCQ is a shortened 8-question form that asks clients to rate these circumstances using a scale of 0% to 100%, with 0% indicating not at all confident and 100% indicating totally confident. The BSCQ and its scoring instruments are available in Appendix B.

• The **AASES** measures an individual's self-efficacy in abstaining from alcohol (DiClemente, Carbonari, Montgomery, & Hughes, 1994). Although similar to the SCQ/BSCQ, the AASES focuses on clients' confidence in their ability to abstain from drinking across 20 different situations. The AASES consists of 20 items and can be used to assess both the temptation to drink and the confidence to abstain. The AASES and its scoring instructions are available in Appendix B.

By using these tools, clients can better understand the high-risk situations in which they have low self- efficacy. This information can be helpful in setting realistic goals and developing an individualized coping plan. Clients who rank

many situations as high risk (i.e., low self-efficacy) may need to identify and develop new coping strategies.

Other **strategies to enhance client self-efficacy in Maintenance include** (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- Expressing confidence in the client's ability to change.
- Reviewing past success with changing substance use or other health behaviors.
- Reviewing the client's current strengths.
- Using the Confidence Ruler (Exhibit 3.10) to measure coping strategies.
- Presenting a menu of coping strategies that have a high likelihood of success.

Identify high-risk situations and coping strategies

Another approach to helping clients identify high-risk situations is to use a structured interview that identifies the high-risk situation (i.e., who, where, and when), external triggers (i.e., what), and internal triggers (i.e., thoughts, feelings, and physical cravings) that led to substance use in the past. Once these situations are identified, clients explore coping strategies to manage these triggers that have worked in the past and that might work now and in the future. Understanding these triggers helps clients target specific strategies for coping with these triggers.

Strategies for conducting the interview include the following:

• **Let the client know the purpose of the interview, and ask permission to conduct it.** For example, you might say, "It can be helpful to explore some of the situations when you drank or used drugs in the past and what led to your decision to use in those situations. Sometimes those can be thoughts or feelings or the situation itself. We sometimes call what led to substance use internal and external triggers. Once we know what has 'triggered' your drinking or drug use in the past, we can brainstorm ways to cope with those triggers now, instead of drinking or using. Is that okay?"

• **Draw a four-column table on a piece of paper and label the columns** High-Risk Situation, External Triggers, Internal Triggers, and Coping Strategies as in Exhibit 7.3.

Exhibit 7.3. Triggers and Coping Strategies			
High-Risk Situation (who, where, when)	External Triggers (what)	Internal Triggers (thoughts, feelings, impulses, cravings)	Coping Strategies
Example: "Watching a football game with my drinking buddies."	Example: "A beer commercial comes on."	Example: "My mouth waters, and I think about how good a beer would taste."	Example: "I could go to the refrigerator and get a cold soft drink instead of a beer."

- **Ask an open question to start the discussion.** "Tell me about situations in which you have been most likely to drink or use drugs in the past, or times when you have tended to drink or use more than expected. These might be when you were with specific people, in specific places, or at certain times of day, or perhaps when you were feeling a particular way."
- **Elicit ideas from the client about ways he or she might have resisted temptation to use in the past.**
- **Elicit ideas from the client about strategies he or she could use now** to avoid high-risk situation or

  external triggers as well as ways to manage the internal triggers without resorting to substance use.

- **Ask the client to elaborate on possible coping strategies.**
- **Use the Confidence Ruler** (Exhibit 3.10) to evaluate the client's confidence in applying these coping

  strategies. Evoke confidence talk to reinforce and enhance self-efficacy (see Chapter 3).

  As you explore triggers, do not solely use reflective listening. This technique might accidentally evoke sustain talk from the client and decrease his or

her commitment to engaging in coping strategies. Instead, **use affirmations and reflective listening responses to reinforce the client's commitment to engaging in coping strategies as an alternative to substance use.**

If the client has difficulty identifying coping strategies:

- Offer some ideas that others have found helpful.
- Brainstorm with the client.
- Offer a menu of possible coping strategies.
- Explore with the client which options are more likely to work as in the examples in Exhibit 7.4.

Exhibit 7.4. A Menu of Coping Strategies

Coping strategies are not mutually exclusive; different ones can be used at different times. In addition, not all are equally good; some involve getting uncomfortably close to trigger situations. Here are some examples of a menu of strategies that might help clients in different high-risk situations.

Example #1: Client X typically uses cocaine whenever his cousin, who uses regularly, drops by the house. Coping strategies to consider include (1) call the cousin and ask him not to come by anymore; (2) call the cousin and ask him not to bring cocaine when he visits; (3) if there is a pattern to when the cousin comes, plan to be out of the house at that time; or (4) if someone else lives in the house, ask him or her to be present for the cousin's visit.

Example #2: Client Y typically uses cocaine when she goes with a particular group of friends, one of whom often brings drugs along. She is particularly vulnerable when they all drink alcohol. Coping strategies to consider might include (1) go out with a different set of friends; (2) go along with this group only for activities that do not involve drinking; (3) leave the group as soon as drinking seems imminent; (4) tell the supplier that she is trying to stay off cocaine and would appreciate not being offered any; or (5) ask all of her friends, or one especially close friend, to help her out by not using when she is around or by telling the supplier to stop offering it to her.

Example #3: Client Z typically uses cocaine when feeling tired or stressed. Coping strategies might include (1) scheduling activities to get more sleep at night, (2) scheduling activities to have 1 hour per day of relaxation time, (3) learning and practicing specific stress reduction and relaxation techniques, or (4) learning problem-solving techniques that can reduce stress in high-risk situations.

Use the coping strategies identified in the structured interview to develop a written coping plan. This could be as simple as jotting down a few ideas for managing triggers in high-risk situations on a file card or it could be as detailed as creating a change plan using the Change Plan Worksheet in Exhibit 6.3.

Help the clients practice new coping skills

Just as you would monitor and reevaluate a change plan with clients, revisit the coping plan, and modify it as necessary. Ask clients to rehearse coping strategies in counseling sessions and to try to implement those strategies in everyday life. For example, growing evidence shows that practicing mindfulness is an effective strategy for managing cravings and urges to use substances (Grant et al., 2017). If this coping strategy is new to clients, help them develop a change plan that might include attending a mindfulness class or group and practicing mindfulness at home or in a counseling session that focuses on managing cravings. **Rehearsing new skills reinforces them and helps build self-efficacy.**

Support the Client's Lifestyle Changes

Your task in the Maintenance stage is to support and praise clients' positive lifestyle and identify behaviors that reinforce these changes. Clients must put forth ongoing and sustained effort to maintain their change of substance use behaviors. As clients successfully maintain changes, they develop a strong sense of self-efficacy. They use less effort to cope with temptations and triggers, and new behaviors become the norm (DiClemente, 2018). As substance use behavior change becomes a new lifestyle, the client develops a new sense of identity. For some, this is expressed in self-identification as a "nonsmoker" or a "recovering addict." For others, the new story of identity is about becoming an integral member of the family or community.

Identify New Behaviors that Reinforce Change

You should examine all areas of clients' life for new reinforcers, which should come from multiple sources and be of various types. A setback in one area can be counterbalanced by a positive reinforcer from another area. As the motivation for positive change becomes harder to sustain, clients need strong reasons for overcoming the challenges they will face. Help them select positive reinforcers that will prevail over substance use over time.

Small steps are helpful, but they cannot fill a whole life. Abstaining from substances is a sudden change and often leaves a large space in clients' lives. You

can help clients fill this space by exploring activities that will support their healthy new identity such as:

- **Doing volunteer work** links clients to the community. Clients can fill time, decrease isolation, and improve self-efficacy through this prosocial activity, making positive contributions to the community.
- **Becoming involved in 12-Step activities.** Similar to volunteering, this fills a need to be involved with a group and contributes to a worthwhile organization.

- **Setting goals** to improve work, education, health, and nutrition.
- **Spending more time with family, significant others, and friends.**
- **Participating in spiritual or cultural activities.**
- **Learning new skills or improving old ones** in such areas as sports, art, music, and hobbies.

Identify Recovery Capital

Help clients tap into and build new sources of positive RC and lessen the impact of negative sources of RC as a way to support the maintenance of change. "Recovery capital" refers to internal and external resources a person draws on to begin and sustain recovery. Internal resources include, but are not limited to, values, knowledge, skills, self-efficacy, and hope. External resources include, but are not limited to, employment; safe housing; financial resources; access to health care; and social, family, spiritual, cultural, and community supports (Granfield & Cloud, 1999). RC can be positive (e.g., drug-free social network) or negative (e.g., drug-using social network) (Hennesey, 2017). Positive and negative RC interact with each other in the recovery process and change over time (Hennessy, 2017). RC is linked with clients' natural recovery resources. (See also the "Natural Change" section in Chapter 1.)

Reinforce Family and Social Support

Family and social support are important sources of RC. They can help clients permanently break free from addiction and engage in a new lifestyle (DiClemente, 2018). Family and friends who are supportive of the clients' recovery can be especially helpful in stabilizing change because they can reinforce new behavior and provide positive incentives to continue in recovery. They can involve clients in new social and recreational activities and be a source of emotional and financial support. Other types of support they provide can be instrumental (e.g., babysitting, carpooling), romantic, spiritual, and communal (i.e., belonging to a particular group or community).

Identify different types of social supports that clients have available to help determine gaps in their support system and help them build a larger, more diverse social network. Clients with more severe AUD tend to have smaller, less diverse social networks (i.e., supports other than family or close friends) than those with no history of AUD or less severe alcohol misuse experiences (Mowbray, Quinn, & Cranford, 2014). More extensive social networks in which individuals with addiction exchange support with one another can help individuals sustain recovery over time (Panebianco, Gallupe, Carrington, & Colozzi, 2016). An extended and diverse social network might comprise:

- Family members.
- Friends.
- Peer support specialists.
- Members of recovery support groups.
- Healthcare providers.
- Employers.
- 12-Step sponsors.
- Spiritual advisors.
- Members of a church or spiritual community.
- Neighbors.
- Members of community groups.
- • Participants in organized recreational activities.

Use motivational counseling strategies to explore current and potential sources of social support and how those supports could help clients maintain recovery and lifestyle changes. For example, family members can act as a warning system if they see early signs of possible relapse. A peer recovery support specialist can link clients to alcohol- and drug-free recreational events in the community or other recovery support. Exhibit 7.5 describes a brief clinical scenario with a client who lacks social support.

Exhibit 7.5. Susan's Story: A Client Lacking Social Support

Client context: Susan is 41 years old and has a long history of AUD and multiple treatment episodes. The longest period Susan has been able to maintain abstinence from alcohol has been 1 month. She has tried to participate in Alcoholics Anonymous (AA); however, she finds that most of the meetings she can get to without a car are primarily attended by men, and she does not feel comfortable there. Susan's mother has been diagnosed with schizophrenia. Susan reports that her father has been diagnosed with AUD. Her father sexually abused her for years when she was a child. Susan is divorced and has only one friend she talks to, infrequently. Her only source of regular support is her father.

Susan recently participated in an IOP addiction treatment program where she also attended a Seeking Safety support group for women with histories of trauma. (For more information about Seeking Safety, see Chapter 6 of TIP 57: *Trauma-Informed Care in Behavioral Health Services* [SAMHSA, 2014b].) This is the first treatment experience in which Susan's history of trauma has been addressed simultaneously with her AUD. Susan completes the program and is referred to outpatient counseling. Once she leaves the IOP treatment program, however, her only recovery support is her outpatient counselor, Arlene.

Counseling strategies: Arlene recognizes that Susan lacks an effective social support network that can help her maintain the progress she made in the IOP program. Arlene explores Susan's recent treatment experience, her prior involvement in AA, and her transportation needs. She affirms Susan's persistence in returning to treatment and completing the IOP program and then elicits from Susan what she thinks was different for her this time in treatment. Susan says that she felt safe and supported by the women in the Seeking Safety group.

Arlene works with Susan to develop a plan to re-create that experience of support now that she is back home. The plan includes introducing Susan to a peer recovery support specialist who can help Susan remove any barriers to becoming more engaged in community-based recovery support services, like transportation. Arlene also suggests a menu of social support options to Susan, including a Women for Sobriety group, a small women's AA meeting, and an outpatient trauma recovery support group. Finally, Arlene lets Susan know that she is available by phone and between sessions until Susan has connected with other women who will be part of her ongoing support network. They discuss the boundaries around between-session contact and agree on an initial plan for weekly counseling sessions for the next 12 weeks.

Arlene sees that she can't be Susan's only source of recovery support. With motivational counseling strategies, she helps Arlene build a new support network to reinforce her recovery, maintain her long-term recovery goal of abstinence, and help her heal from trauma and previous disruptions to her social support network.

Help the Client Reenter the Change Cycle

To help clients maintain substance use behavior change, you must address the issue of relapse.

Historically, the term "relapse" in addiction treatment had come to mean an all-or-nothing understanding of clients' return to substance use after a period of abstinence and judgment about their lack of motivation. This TIP uses the term "relapse" in part because the SOC model uses the term to describe points in the recovery process when clients leave the change cycle and then recycle through the SOC again with more awareness and a better understanding of how to reach the Maintenance stage. In addition, addiction treatment clinical research refers to relapse prevention as a key counseling approach to supporting clients' ongoing recovery maintenance.

A return to substance use after a period of abstinence does not mean a client has failed or is no longer in recovery. The consensus panel of this TIP seeks to reconceptualize the recurrence of substance use after treatment as **a common aspect of recovery from SUDs** based on well-documented observations:

- **Recurrence of substance use is common.** Although relapse is not technically a stage in the SOC, it is a normal part of change and recovery processes.
- **The term "relapse" itself implies only two possible outcomes—success or failure—that do not fully describe what actually occurs.** Client outcomes are much more complex than this. Often in the course of recovery, clients manage to have longer and longer periods between episodes of use, and use episodes themselves grow shorter and less severe.
- **The assumption that abstinence equals success and return to use equals failure creates a self- fulfilling prophecy.** It implies that once substance use resumes, there is nothing to lose and little that can be done. Instead, the point is to get back on track as soon as possible.
- **Recurrence of symptoms is common** to substance use behaviors and chronic illness in general. Part of a motivational approach in Maintenance has to do with your perspective on a client's return to substance misuse and how you respond to it.

You should:

- Avoid the expert and labeling traps when a client returns to substance use or substance misuse.
- Avoid the "righting reflex" and any temptation to lecture, educate, blame, or judge the client (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).
- Explore the client's understanding of his or her return to substance use.
- Use the same motivational counseling approaches as in Precontemplation, Contemplation,

  Preparation, and Action, depending on which stage the client is in after the recurrence.

Counselor Note: The Righting Reflex

Miller and Rollnick (2013) use the term "righting reflex" to describe the natural response to "fix" a person's problems from a desire to help. This impulse can lead you to becoming overly directive and **telling** a client what to do instead of **evoking the client's own motivation and strategies** for change.

1. **Provide Relapse Prevention Counseling**

   Recurrence is common in recovery; offer RPC during Maintenance. RPC is a cognitive–behavioral therapy (CBT) approach to identifying and managing triggers to use, developing coping skills, building self-efficacy, and managing setbacks. Although this is a CBT method, you can use motivational counseling strategies to engage clients in the process and help them resolve ambivalence about learning and practicing new coping skills. (Chapter 8 provides more information about blending motivational interviewing and CBT.)

   The two major components of RPC are:

   - **Addressing the nature of the relapse process** through education and an analysis of high-risk situations, warning signs, and other factors that contribute to relapse, as well as clients' strengths.

- **Providing coping-skills training.** Identify and develop clients' coping strategies that are useful in maintaining both cognitive and behavioral changes that promote recovery and lessen the likelihood of relapse. (See the section "Identify high-risk situations and coping strategies" above in this chapter.)

The Marlatt model (Witkiewitz & Marlatt, 2007) is the most widely researched and implemented RPC approach in behavioral health services. Many of its strategies have been applied to counseling for relapse prevention with people with SUDs and CODs. The two key features of the Marlatt model are:

1. Helping clients recognize and manage high-risk situations in which they are most likely to be tempted to immediately use substances or engage in other risky behaviors.
2. Creating a relapse management plan that includes positive coping strategies to lessen the impact of a recurrence, if it happens, and avoid a full relapse.

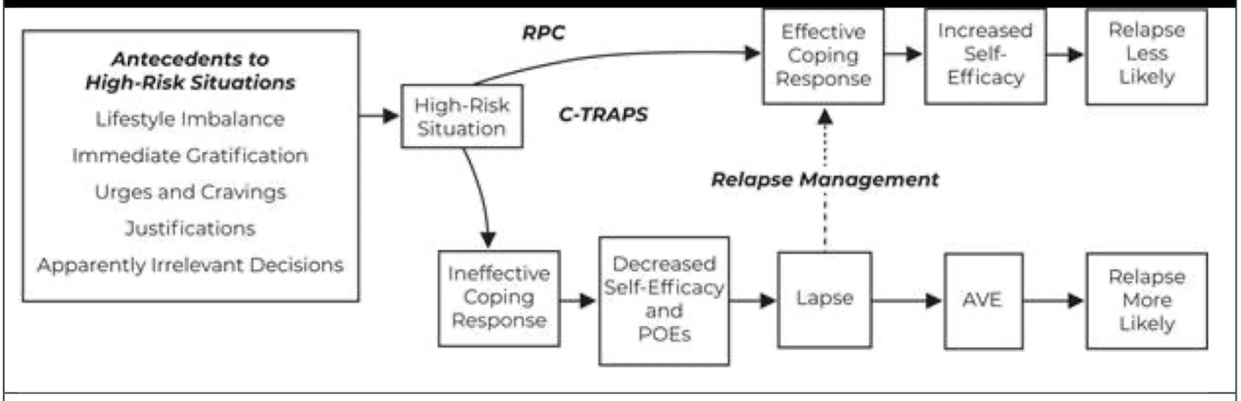
The two elements of a high-risk situation that increase the client's risk of relapse are:

- **Internal factors**, which include the client's
    - – Cognitive distortions.
    - – Intense positive and negative feelings.
    - – Ineffective coping responses.
    - – Low self-efficacy.
    - – Positive outcome expectancies (POEs): positive thoughts and associations with drinking or using drugs.
    - – Abstinence violation effect (AVE) such as feelings of guilt and shame associated with recurrence.
- **Environmental factors,** which include the client's
    - – Social influences.
    - – Access to substances.

– Exposure to conditioned cues for substance use or risk behaviors.

Exhibit 7.6 shows the dynamic process of relapse and how RPC strategies help clients develop effective coping mechanisms and increase self-efficacy to decrease the probability of a relapse.

Exhibit 7.6. Marlatt's RPC Process



Source: Marlett, Parks, & Witkiewitz, 2002. Adapted with permission.

C-TRAPS

RPC has five components (Marlatt et al., 2002). C-TRAPS is a handy acronym to remember them:

- **C**ognitive traps
- **T**emptations
- **R**eplacement **A**ctivities
- **P**reparation for relapse

Strategies for coping

Cognitive traps, also known as cognitive distortions, are the ways the mind works against the client's commitment to recovery and intention to refrain from substance use. They are cognitive early warning signs that a recurrence might be close at hand. They include:

- **All-or-nothing thinking** (e.g., "I got off my regular eating plan today; I'm a failure, so I might as well go all the way and eat whatever I want tonight!") and **overt justifications** (e.g., "My divorce was finalized today, and I really need something to take the edge off") for a return to substance use.
- **Minimizing the impact of a recurrence** (e.g., "Just one cigarette won't push me over the edge").
- **Apparently irrelevant decisions** or decisions that seem unimportant but set up high-risk situations where the likelihood of recurrence is very high. (For example, Ginny decides to buy a bottle of wine, just in case her friend Pam comes over to play cards. She puts the bottle in the liquor cabinet that she had just cleaned out with the help of her AA sponsor, thinking she won't be tempted.)

Cognitive traps bring clients closer to situations where temptation is strong and difficult to resist. **Help clients lessen the power of cognitive traps by:**

- Teaching them how to slow down their thinking process.
- Identifying all the steps in the process leading up to an apparently irrelevant decision.
- Inviting them to evaluate whether those choices are consistent with their recovery goals.
- Exploring possible alternative choices.

Temptations are urges or impulses closely linked to feelings or physical cravings. To distinguish between cravings and urges, note that cravings are the desire and urges are the intentions to use a substance (Witkiewitz & Marlatt, 2007). Temptation is the attraction of the immediate, positive effects of drinking or using drugs. These impulses can be powerful and seem to come out of the blue. In *Alcoholics Anonymous* (also known as "The Big Book"), the authors depicted the unpredictable lure of temptation: "Remember that we deal with alcohol—cunning, baffling, powerful!" (Alcoholics Anonymous, 2001, p. 10). **Help clients map out temptations and develop strategies for responding to them.**

Replacement activities reinforce clients' lifestyle changes through actions that support their recovery.

This involves helping clients identify and engage in activities that provide fulfillment, long-term satisfaction, and a substitute for the short-term pleasure of substance use. Use OARS to ask open questions and affirm, reflect, and summarize clients' ideas for replacement activities. Brainstorming is also an effective way to help clients discover new ideas for replacement activities.

Preparation for relapse include:

- Working with clients to anticipate and prepare for this possibility.
- Taking a nonjudgmental stance with clients if they lapse.
- Explaining to them that relapse is avoidable but that they should be prepared for possible setbacks and describing how to manage a return to substance use if it occurs.
- Reframing a recurrence as a learning opportunity and reevaluating their coping strategies.

Strategies for coping are helpful ways of thinking and acting that reduce relapse risk, enhance self- efficacy, manage impulses and cravings, reduce stress, and solve problems that arise in early recovery. Elicit clients' positive coping strategies, and engage them in coping-skills training activities, such as:

- Providing psychoeducation.
- Teaching stress reduction and mindfulness practices.

- Brainstorming strategies with clients to avoid high-risk situations and manage impulses or cravings.
- Deconstructing negative thinking patterns.
- Sharing problem-solving skills and coping strategies that have been helpful to others.
- Modeling positive self-talk and communication skills.
- Rehearsing how to handle high-risk situations.

- Teaching alcohol and drug refusal skills.
- Exchanging in nonjudgmental feedback with other clients in RPC groups.

Relapse management strategies

If clients return to substance use, help them avoid full relapse by teaching them to (Witkiewitz & Marlatt, 2007):

- **Stop, look, and listen.** Clients can learn how to become aware of events as they are unfolding and stop the process of a recurrence before it goes further. Taking a step back from events as an observer can help clients gain perspective and allow them the emotional and cognitive space to assess the situation before reacting. The AA slogan "think...think...think" aids in relapse prevention by providing a cognitive reminder to stop, look, and listen before reacting or taking action.
- **Keep calm.** Staying calm is the emotional equivalent of stop, look, and listen. Thoughts, feelings, and behaviors are often tightly intertwined. Sometimes, clients don't remember that, just because they feel anxious or have an impulse to use substances or reengage in risk behaviors, they don't have to act on those feelings or impulses. Practicing calmness and not overreacting emotionally to a recurrence can help clients break this pattern of impulsivity.
- **Renew their commitment to recovery.** People are often discouraged by a recurrence, which can lower motivation and confidence about continuing on the recovery journey. To allay hopelessness, remind clients of previous successes with behavior change (no matter how "small"). Keep them looking forward by exploring their reasons for recovery and hopes, dreams, and goals for the future.
- **Review what led up to the recurrence.** Review the events leading up to the recurrence and do a mini-relapse assessment taking into account lifestyle imbalance, thoughts of immediate gratification, urges and cravings, justifications, apparently irrelevant decisions, and the nature of the high-risk situation that triggered the lapse. Review early warning signs clients

may have noticed but disregarded and explore the cognitive traps that led to disregarding the warning signs.

- **Make an immediate plan for recovery.** Work with clients to develop an immediate action plan for recommitting to recovery. The plan should include specific action steps clients can take to avoid a full relapse that are acceptable, accessible, and appropriate from their point of view. Write the plan on paper or a file card. Include client-generated strategies for handling a recurrence, such as:
    - – **Call a sponsor or recovery support person.** Include specific names and phone numbers.
    - – **Go to a recovery support meeting.** Include specific meeting times and locations.
    - – Engage in cognitive, emotional, physical, and behavioral strategies for managing cravings.
    - – Engage in specific self-care or stress reduction activities.
    - – **Return to medication** (if applicable). Include adherence strategies and names of prescribers.
    - – **Call you or the treatment program** to schedule a counseling session.

Deal with the AVE. Help clients deal with the emotional aftereffects of recurrence, such as guilt, shame, and the cognitive dissonance that happens when people act in ways that do not align with their values and recovery goals. This cognitive and emotional disagreement can increase the likelihood of a return to substance use. Engage clients in exploration with compassion and understanding; encourage them to learn from recurrence and identify new coping strategies.

Reenter the Cycle of Change

If clients return to substance misuse, help them reenter the cycle as soon as possible. Most clients do not return to the Precontemplation stage (Connors et al., 2013). Rather, clients are more likely to recycle back into Contemplation, Preparation, or Action. They can use the recurrence experience as an opportunity

to identify which strategies for the Maintenance stage worked and which did not work.

Your task is to debrief clients about relapse and assess where they are now in the SOC (Connors et al., 2013). If the client has returned to Contemplation, start with resolving ambivalence and evoking change talk. Clients who have returned to Preparation or Action should revisit and revise the change plan or coping plan.

Strategies for helping clients manage a return to substance misuse include:

- **Helping them reenter the change cycle; affirming any willingness to reconsider positive change.**
    - – Explore their perceptions and reactions to resumed use.
    - – Use affirmations to praise them for reengaging in the change process.
    - – Elicit DARN (**D**esire, **A**bility, **R**easons, and **N**eed) change talk; reflect on the client's reasons to get back on track.
- **Exploring the meaning of the recurrence as a learning opportunity.**
    - – Explore what can be learned from the experience.
    - – Remind them that the experience is a common and temporary part of the recovery process.
    - – Elicit their positive experiences in recovery and the advantages of abstinence.
    - – Use reflective listening.
    - – Avoid the question-and-answer trap.
    - – Explore their values, hopes, purpose, and goals in life. Ask, "What do you want to do now?"
- **Helping clients find and continuously review and evaluate current and alternative coping strategies.**
    - – Review coping strategies that have and have not worked to maintain stated goals for change.
    - – Help them identify new coping strategies.

- **Maintaining supportive contact** until clients exit the change cycle for each behavior change goal.

Conclusion

Maintaining substance use behavior change is often more challenging for clients than taking action toward change. Help clients stabilize and maintain changes made in the Preparation and Action stages by:

- Using motivational counseling strategies to engage and retain clients in treatment.
- Helping them develop and practice coping strategies for high-risk situations.
- Reinforcing social support.
- Helping them reenter the cycle of change quickly if they do return to substance use.

MI strategies are useful during all stages in the SOC and are used in conjunction with other counseling approaches, like CBT—particularly during the Preparation, Action, and Maintenance stages. An important way to help clients throughout the SOC is to continuously assess and reassess which stage they are in the SOC and match your counseling approach accordingly.

Chapter 8—Integrating Motivational Approaches in SUD Treatment Settings

"From its inception MI [motivational interviewing] has been organic, emerging, and evolving through collaborative processes....Our decision was to focus on promoting quality in MI practice and training...."

Miller & Rollnick, 2013, p. 377

Key Messages

- Motivational counseling approaches have been widely disseminated to substance use disorder (SUD) treatment programs.

- Adaptations of MI in group counseling, the use of technology, and blended counseling approaches enhance the implementation and integration of motivational interventions into standard treatment methods.
- Training and ongoing supervision of counselors are essential for workforce development and integration of motivational counseling approaches into SUD treatment.

Chapter 8 discusses adaptations for using motivational counseling approaches in group counseling, with technology, and in blended counseling approaches that are applicable to SUD treatment programs. It also addresses workforce development issues that treatment programs may face in fully integrating and sustaining motivational counseling approaches.

Over the past three decades, MI and motivational counseling approaches have been widely and successfully disseminated across the United States and internationally to specialty SUD treatment programs (Hall, Staiger, Simpson, Best, & Lubman, 2015). Research supports the integration of motivational counseling strategies into treatment as a prelude to ongoing treatment to increase client retention and enhance participation in treatment. Motivational counseling can increase adherence to treatment medication and behavioral change plans and makes achievement and maintenance of positive substance use behavior outcomes more likely (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Depending on the SUD treatment setting, different adaptions of motivational interventions (e.g., individual or group counseling, blended with other counseling approaches) may be effective both clinically and programmatically.

Integrating motivational counseling approaches into a treatment program requires more than providing counseling staff with a few workshops on MI. It requires broad integration of the philosophy and underlying spirit of MI throughout the organization. Just as a counselor using a motivational approach works in partnership with clients to help them move through the Stages of Change (SOC) to achieve long-term behavioral change, organizations wishing to

integrate a motivational counseling approach should work in partnership with staff to implement program changes. Organizations also go through a process of change until the treatment approach becomes a new "lifestyle."

Adaptations of Motivational Counseling Approaches

The most common delivery of motivational counseling approaches has been through brief or ongoing individual counseling. For example, MI in SUD treatment was specifically developed as a counseling approach to be delivered in face-to-face conversations between a counselor and a client. Depending on the treatment program, adaptations of motivational interventions may make treatment more cost effective, more accessible to clients, and easier to integrate into existing treatment approaches, as well as ease workload demands on counselors.

Chapter 8 discusses the following adaptations of motivational counseling approaches:

- Group counseling
- Technology adaptations (e.g., Internet-based applications and telephone-based MI)
- Blended counseling approaches

Group Counseling

October 2019

The current context of service delivery in SUD treatment programs places heavy emphasis on group counseling. Many motivation-enhancing activities can take place in group counseling that cannot occur in individual treatment (e.g., clients can receive feedback from peers). Because social support is intrinsic to group treatment, clients in a group can reinforce and help maintain each other's substance use behavior changes (Holstad, Diiorio, Kelley, Resnicow, & Sharma, 2010).

However, several significant clinical issues arise when conducting groups using MI including (Feldstein Ewing, Walters, & Baer, 2013; Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- The counselor's ability to translate MI skills to the group context
- The counselor's skill in managing group dynamics
- Fewer opportunities for group members to express change talk and receive reflective listening responses from the counselor
- Varying needs and experiences of group participants
- The counselor's ability to respond to various participant needs (e.g., reflecting commitment language of one participant while responding to another participant's ambivalence about changing substance use behaviors)
- Actively managing social pressures of peer interactions, which are not present in individual sessions
- Responding to and managing sustain talk in a group setting

Perhaps the most challenging aspect of group-based MI is the possibility of group members reinforcing each other's sustain talk instead of reflecting change talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). An important adaptation of MI in group is to minimize the opportunities for clients to evoke and reflect sustain talk and maximize opportunities to evoke and reflect change talk (Houck et al., 2015; Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Strategies for accomplishing this include:

- Teaching group members OARS (asking **O**pen question, **A**ffirming, **R**eflective listening, and **S**ummarizing) skills (Wagner & Ingersoll, 2013).
- Identifying the general parameters for group interactions that are in line with the spirit of MI (e.g., group members should support each other without pressure to change, avoid giving advice, focus on positives and possibilities for change) (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).
- Modeling MI skills in groups (Wagner & Ingersoll, 2013).
- Acknowledging sustain talk but emphasizing and reinforcing change talk (D'Amico et al., 2015).

Expert Comment: Motivational Enhancement in Group Counseling
Conducting motivational interventions in a group versus individual format is more difficult, more complex, and more challenging. Personally, however, I find it much more rewarding. In group counseling, particularly using motivational techniques and strategies, clients learn through the group. It is like a hall of mirrors; clients get the feel of how they come across. For me, when a client uses reflective listening with another client or points out another client's ambivalence, the group is like a living, learning laboratory of experiences practiced first in a safe environment before being tried in the real world. In the end, what the members have is a common goal to reduce or stop substance misuse, and it is here that their mutual support and peer pressure is effective. *Linda C. Sobell, Ph.D., Consensus Panel Member*

Evidence shows that, despite some challenges, MI can be delivered successfully in a group context, particularly when group participants hear more change talk than sustain talk (Osilla et al., 2015). Positive outcomes from MI in groups include decreased alcohol use and alcohol misuse among adolescents, greater retention in SUD treatment after detoxification, increased retention in methadone maintenance treatment, and adherence to risk-reduction behaviors in women infected with HIV (Bachiller et al., 2015; D'Amico et al., 2015; Holstad et al., 2010; Navidian, Kermansaravi, Tabas, & Saeedinezhad, 2016).

Integrating MI into group treatment requires group counselors to have training and ongoing supervision in both MI strategies and group process. The **Assessment of Motivational Interviewing Groups— Observer Scale (AMIGOS–v 1.2)** is a validated tool that assesses counselor skills in group processes, client-centered focus, and using MI in groups (Wagner & Ingersoll, 2017). Appendix C provides a link to a downloadable version of AMIGOS. This tool may be helpful for assessing and enhancing counselor competence in delivering MI in groups.

Technology Adaptations

Some evidence shows the effectiveness of adaptations of MI and motivational enhancement therapy (MET) through interactive computer applications, Internet-based applications, and telephone or video conferencing when used selectively to deliver motivational interventions (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). For example, the "drinker's checkup," the original method to give personalized feedback in MET,

has been delivered in interactive computer-based applications and has had positive outcomes in reducing alcohol misuse (Hester, Delaney, & Campbell, 2012).

Benefits of brief motivational interventions delivered by interactive computer applications include (Hester et al., 2012):

- Ease of use.
- Cost effectiveness.
- Adaptability to different client populations.
- Flexibility of design.

Although computer- or Internet-based adaptations of motivational interventions may be useful in providing personalized feedback to clients, computers cannot provide empathetic listening responses or evoke change talk. They also limit use of brief interventions that provide feedback to increase client engagement in treatment.

Telephone MI is the most widely used alternative to face-to-face MI and is effective for addressing tobacco cessation, alcohol misuse, and use of illicit drugs (Jiang, Wu, & Gao, 2017). Telephone counseling with, if possible, the addition of a video component has the advantage of reaching client populations in rural settings that do not have access to transportation to the treatment setting. Telephone MI approaches also have the added benefit over computer-based interventions of giving the counselor the opportunity to offer interactive motivational interventions like reflective listening, affirmations, and evoking change talk. For more information about using technology in SUD treatment, see Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) 60: *Using Technology-Based Therapeutic Tools in Behavioral Health Services* (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [SAMHSA], 2015b).

Blended Counseling Approaches

MI as a counseling style is compatible with a wide range of clinical approaches that have been used in SUD treatment including cognitive–behavioral therapy (CBT), psychoeducation, medication-assisted treatment, and case management approaches (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). When thinking about ways to integrate MI into current treatment approach, treatment staff should address some open questions like, "How does MI fit with what we already do?" and "At what points in our treatment approach are we most concerned about engaging clients in treatment, helping clients resolve ambivalence about change, and retaining clients in treatment?" (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Three examples of blending MI with other SUD counseling approaches supported by research are motivational interviewing assessment (MIA), CBT, and recovery management checkup (RMC).

MIA

The National Institute on Drug Abuse Clinical Trials Network, in cooperation with SAMHSA, developed a protocol to incorporate MI into a one-session assessment intake to improve client engagement in SUD treatment programs (Carroll et al., 2006). This blended approach to the standard initial assessment in SUD treatment sandwiches a standard assessment between a brief MI counseling segment at the beginning and end of the session (Martino et al., 2006).

A challenge of doing a standard assessment with clients just entering treatment is that counselors and clients tend to fall into the question-and-answer trap (see Chapter 3). Counselors ask closed questions to elicit information needed for the assessment, and clients answer with yes, no, or short-answer responses. This pattern of interaction sets up an expectation that the counselor is the expert and the client is a passive recipient of services. It can become an obstacle to client engagement (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). MIA incorporates MI into typical SUD treatment program intake/assessment processes and facilitates client engagement while addressing the organization's need to collect assessment information for treatment planning and to comply with licensing and insurance requirements.

Research supports MIA as a method to blend MI with standard assessment approaches. An initial study found that clients who participated in the MIA-blended protocol were significantly more likely than clients who participated in the standard assessment to be enrolled in the program after 1 month (Martino et al., 2006). A more recent study found that incorporating MI into the initial intake and assessment processes (whether standard MI or MIA) promoted client retention (e.g., 70 percent remained in treatment after 4 weeks) and enhanced treatment outcomes (e.g., a 50 percent increase in days abstinent) (Martino et al., 2016). This same study found that supervision of counselors in both groups (standard MI and MIA) improved counselor performance of MI, but the counselors who received supervision in MIA showed significantly greater improvements in MI competency, although training and supervision in MIA was more costly. A link to a manual for training and supervising counselors in MIA, *Motivational Interviewing Assessment: Supervisor Tools for Enhancing Proficiency Manual*, is available for download at no cost in Appendix C (Martino et al., 2006). Another study found that the addition of motivational feedback to a standard assessment enhanced SUD treatment entry for a group of veterans with co-occurring disorders (Lozano, Larowe, Smith, Tuerk, & Roitzsch, 2013).

MI and CBT

Perhaps the most widely adopted counseling approach used in SUD treatment is CBT. CBT focuses on helping clients change thoughts (e.g., drinking is the only way to relax) and behaviors (e.g., drinking to intoxication) that interfere with everyday functioning. CBT strategies include helping clients identify and manage triggers for substance use and practicing new behaviors that reinforce abstinence. CBT is also an evidence-based approach that is widely used to treat mental disorders (e.g., anxiety, depression, posttraumatic stress disorder) that often co-occur with SUDs. However, some CBT providers have acknowledged difficulties with initial client engagement, low motivation, and nonadherence to CBT practices, such as completing out-of-session assignments (Arkowitz, Miller, & Rollnick, 2015). **Integrating MI strategies to address ambivalence and enhance motivation of**

clients with co-occurring disorders can improve client adherence to CBT treatment components.

Strategies for blending MI and CBT include (Copeland, Gates, & Pokorski, 2017; Miller & Rollnick, 2013; Naar-King, Safren, & Miller, 2017):

- Engaging in a brief motivational conversation before a client moves into a CBT-focused component of treatment (e.g., a relapse prevention group).
- Alternating between MI and CBT, depending on the goals of each session.
- Using MI when the clinical focus is on engaging, focusing, evoking, and emphasizing the more

  directive style of CBT during the planning process.

- Shifting to MI during CBT interventions when counselor–client discord or client ambivalence about a specific change goal arises.
- Using the spirit of MI as a framework and interactional style in which to use CBT strategies.

Integrating MI into CBT approaches that the SUD treatment program already supports can enhance client motivation to engage in CBT and improve long-term maintenance of behavior change (Naar-King et al., 2017). Blending MI and CBT may actually create a more powerful approach for behavioral change in SUD treatment than either approach alone (Copeland et al., 2017; Naar-King et al., 2017). For example, a review of psychosocial interventions for cannabis use disorder found that the most consistent evidence for reducing cannabis use among a variety of interventions was a combination of CBT and MET (Gates, Sabioni, Copeland, Foll, & Gowing, 2016). Other research that evaluated studies on the integrated approach of CBT and MI found a clinically significant effect in treatment outcomes for co- occurring alcohol use disorder (AUD) and major depressive disorder compared with treatment as usual (Riper et al., 2014).

At times, CBT may require counselors to take on the role of a teacher or guide who is more directive, but counselors' overall stance should remain that of an

empathetic partner–consultant instead of an expert. For example, in one study, counselors using CBT who explored and connected with clients in treatment for AUD were more successful in evoking discussions about behavior change than counselors who emphasized teaching clients behavior-change skills (Magill et al., 2016). Counselors' most important goal is to develop a relationship of mutual trust and respect with the client. They should view the client as the expert in his or her own recovery. Exhibit 8.1 provides a brief clinical scenario that depicts a counselor blending the spirit of MI with CBT relapse prevention strategies (see Chapter 7) in a counseling approach with a military veteran.

Exhibit 8.1. Blending the Spirit of MI With CBT

Jordan is 40 years old. He has been married for 12 years and has two young children. He served in the military and did two tours in Iraq. After discharge, he was arrested twice for driving under the influence and was mandated to alcohol and drug counseling. He was also referred for a psychiatric evaluation and was diagnosed with posttraumatic stress disorder.

Dan is a licensed clinical social worker in a co-occurring services program at a comprehensive behavioral health services program and has been seeing Jordan for 6 months for outpatient counseling. Initially, Jordan was angry about having to go to counseling and Dan's suggestion to try Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) as part of a recovery plan; however, Jordan has been attending AA meetings and asked another veteran to be his sponsor.

Jordan has returned to heavy drinking on three occasions in the past 6 months. His relapse risk is that he stops going to meetings and stops calling his sponsor. Then he finds himself at a local sports bar, thinking that he'll just watch the game (an apparently irrelevant decision), but he ends up getting drunk. Jordan now speaks highly of AA and has been working the 12 Steps with his sponsor. He tells Dan, "I am doing everything my sponsor tells me to do and am committed to my recovery now. I know that if I follow his suggestions and work the program, I will be okay. I just don't understand why I keep slipping."

Dan has established a good rapport with Jordan. He has done a relapse risk assessment, provided information to Jordan about the relapse process, and given Jordan homework to track high-risk situations and the coping strategies he uses to manage them. Jordan seems to respond well to Dan's directive approach but continues to return to drinking. Dan shifts gears in the current session and decides to explore Jordan's understanding of his pattern of disengagement from AA and his sponsor instead of cautioning him again about his behavioral pattern leading up to a return to drinking.

Dan: I'm wondering what you make of this pattern: not going to meetings, not calling your sponsor just before you have a slip. If you could name that pattern, what would you call it? *(Open question)*

Jordan: I guess I would call it my version of "Stinkin' Thinkin'." I work so hard at trying to do the right thing in my recovery, but then I start to think that I am not getting anywhere, you know? I'm not drinking, but I don't feel any better, so I feel like a failure and get tired of trying. It's like I need to take a break from recovery.

Dan: So, you work hard to do the right thing in recovery and really want to feel better, but sometimes you feel discouraged and think you need to take a break. *(Reflection)*

Jordan: Yeah. That describes where I am right now.

Dan: I am curious about that. Would you say you are taking a break from recovery or taking a break from the program? *[Reframe in the form of a question that leaves open the possibility for the client to reject the new perspective]*

Jordan: Gee, I never thought about it that way. I guess I'm still working on my recovery, even if I don't talk to my sponsor. Like the other day, I started to feel like I wanted to go to the bar to watch the game, but I remembered what you and I had talked about last time—that this is a warning flag, and that I could do something different. So, instead of going to the bar, I asked one of my sober friends over, and we watched the game at my house. We didn't talk about the program; we just watched the game.

Dan: You really worked that one out for yourself and didn't let "Stinkin' Thinkin'" take over. Good for you. *(Affirmation)*

At the end of the session, Dan summarizes Jordan's successful approach to "doing something different" and asks Jordan how their conversation was for him. Jordan responds that it was very helpful that Dan didn't lecture him, but rather asked him what he thought. This helped him realize for himself that he is still working on his recovery, even if he doesn't call his sponsor or go to a meeting. Jordan also mentioned that now he doesn't feel like he is failing at recovery, so he thinks he will get back to his AA program.

MI and RMC

RMC is a fairly new addiction treatment approach that uses motivational strategies; it is modeled after approaches used for staying connected to people with chronic medical illnesses like diabetes. RMC is a proactive strategy for monitoring a client's progress in recovery after intensive SUD treatment and for intervening quickly if the client returns to substance use. RMC involves regular telephone calls (more frequently at first, then less frequently) to the client to find out how he or she is coping with recovery.

RMC incorporates MI strategies to enhance motivation to return to treatment if needed. Counselors or

peer recovery support specialists can perform RMC. Telephone-based motivational interventions are efficacious in treating and preventing substance use behaviors (Jiang et al., 2017). RMC is an effective method of monitoring clients' progress in recovery in the Action and Maintenance stages and intervening quickly to reengage clients into treatment after a substance use recurrence. It is linked to improved long-term substance use outcomes and increased participation in SUD treatment and recovery support services (Dennis & Scott, 2012; Dennis, Scott, & Laudet, 2014; Scott, Dennis, & Lurigio, 2017).

Workforce Development

MI is not only a counseling style but a conversational style that emphasizes guiding, rather than directing, clients toward changing substance use behaviors (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Depending on the type of treatment program, an organization might provide aspects of MI training to only a few counselors, the entire clinical staff, or all staff, including support staff and peer providers. As increasingly more programs, including certified community behavioral health clinics (SAMHSA, 2016), adopt a client- centered treatment philosophy and MI as an evidence-based treatment, **organizations should train all staff in the spirit of MI.** This means all personnel—from the first person the client encounters walking through the door to the staff working in the billing department—understand the

importance of client autonomy and choice, listening, and guiding instead of lecturing or directing in creating a welcoming environment and engaging clients in the treatment process (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

> "MI is a complex skill, like playing a musical instrument. Watching others play the piano or attending a 2-day workshop is not likely in itself to turn one into a competent pianist" (Miller & Rollnick, 2014, p. 3).

MI has been widely disseminated as an evidence-based treatment, yet dissemination is not the same as implementation. Counselors lose their MI skills after a workshop if there is no supervision or coaching after training (Hall et al., 2015; Schwalbe, Oh, & Zweben, 2014). The key to workforce development of clinical staff in MI is to move beyond 1- or 2-day workshops and integrate ongoing training, supervision, and coaching of clinical staff to maintain fidelity to MI-consistent counseling techniques.

Another factor in whether a treatment program implements a motivational counseling approach is how closely the organization's mission and philosophy are aligned with the principles of motivational counseling. Counselors are more likely to adopt an MI counseling style when the organization's philosophy is aligned with MI principles (Ager et al., 2010).

Training

MI is an integrated and comprehensive set of listening and interviewing skills (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). For counselors to learn these skills and consistently integrate them into everyday practice, staff training and learning tasks should include (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- Understanding the spirt of MI.
- Developing skill in OARS.
- Identifying change goals.
- Exchanging information (i.e., Elicit-Provide-Elicit [EPE]) and giving advice skillfully.
- Recognizing change talk and sustain talk.

- Evoking change talk.
- Strengthening change talk.
- Responding skillfully to sustain talk and counselor–client discord.

- Developing hope and confidence.
- Negotiating a change plan.
- Strengthening commitment.
- Integrating MI with other counseling approaches.

October 2019

These learning tasks apply to training counselors in any motivational counseling approach, including brief interventions that use FRAMES (**F**eedback, **R**esponsibility, **A**dvice, **M**enu of options, **E**mpathy, and **S**elf-efficacy) and MET, where the counselor gives personalized feedback and advice. Some tasks are foundational, like learning reflective listening, and are best learned through face-to-face, interactive training experiences. Other tasks, like recognizing change talk and sustain talk, can be learned through reading material, like coded transcripts of counselor–client interactions (Miller & Rollnick, 2013).

An initial workshop that covers the foundational components of MI (e.g., understanding the spirit of MI, OARS, recognizing and responding to change talk and sustain talk) may be a good beginning. This workshop should include both knowledge exchange and interactive skill-building exercises. A meta- analysis of MI training found that training produces medium-to-large–sized effects in MI proficiency both before and after training and medium-sized effects in MI proficiency compared with controls (de Roten, Zimmermann, Ortega, & Despland, 2013). Furthermore, an initial 12-to-15–hour workshop of MI training that included didactic, face-to-face instruction, and interactive exercises increased counselor skills as did more enhanced workshops that used video, web-based, or computer technology (Schwalbe et al., 2014). For an initial workshop, a simple format may be appropriate and potentially more cost effective than complex formats.

Ongoing training is the key to learning and sustaining motivational counseling skills if skills learned during training are not practiced. MI counselor skills introduced in training can erode after only 3 months if they are not used and practiced (Schwalbe et al., 2014). Spreading out training activities over a 6-month period and increasing the practice training hours to 5 or more hours increase counselor skill level and enhance skill retention (Schwalbe et al., 2014). Ongoing training in MI should be integrated into SUD treatment over 24 months as part of professional development to ensure counselor competency (Hall et al., 2015).

There are multiple ways to train staff, and the path an organization chooses is based on many factors. Before implementing MI training, an organization should consider the following questions when developing a strategic plan:

- **Assessing organizational philosophy and the SOC**
    - – Is a person-centered approach to service delivery a key component of the organization's mission

      statement and philosophy?

    - – Is MI a new counseling approach for the organization or will MI be blended with current treatment approaches?
    - – At what stage of the SOC is staff with regard to integrating a new approach?
    - – What kind of preparation is needed to implement a training program?
- **Assessing staff needs**
    - – Does support staff need an introduction to the spirit of MI?
    - – Which counseling staff members have already been trained and are using MI skills in their counseling approach? Which staff need a foundational workshop?
    - – Which clinical supervisors have been trained in MI and demonstrate skill competence?

Tailoring a training program to meet staff needs

- – How will the organization assess current counselor skill level in MI and tailor the training to

  different counselor skill levels?

- – Which would be most effective for the program:

  ▪Sending all counseling staff to a series of trainings provided by outside experts?
  ▪Training one or two clinical supervisors to provide in-house training and ongoing supervision of staff?
  ▪Bringing an outside expert into the organization to provide training? ▪A combination of outside and in-house training?

- – What strategies will the organization use to balance effective training, supervision, and professional development given cost considerations?

In developing the training plan, the organization should consider integrating a new counseling approach into the SUD treatment program a long-term project that needs buy-in by the entire organization.

Counselor Note: Implementation of MET in SUD Treatment Services in the Veterans Health Administration

In 2011, the Veterans Health Administration (VHA) implemented a national initiative to provide evidence-based MET counseling to veterans with SUDs. VHA developed a competency-based training program (Drapkin et al., 2016) that consisted of an initial 3.5-day training on MI plus assessment feedback, followed by 6 months of consultation with experienced MI training consultants (TCs). TCs provided ongoing supervision and coaching based on direct observation of counseling sessions using audio recordings. Training materials were adapted to address the specific needs of veterans. The VHA model of implementation was based on research in the training and supervision of clinical staff in MI to enhance implementation and fidelity.

Implementation of this competency-based model of training and supervision was enhanced by encouraging training participants to actively engage with the VHA MET community by becoming TCs and "MET champions," who provided information and consultation on how local VHA facilities could best disseminate and implement MET into their SUD treatment approach. TCs participate in monthly national conference calls with other TCs covering advanced MET topics. This model combines the use of outside trainers with in-house workforce development of new trainers and MET champions to create learning communities that sustain the use of MET in VHA facilities.

Supervision and Coaching

Training counselors in MI is the first step in integrating this approach into SUD treatment programs. Maintenance of skills and staying up to date with new developments in any counseling approach require ongoing supervision.

Supervision in MI should be competency based. This means supervision should address counselors' knowledge and proficiency in MI skills (e.g., the spirit of MI, OARS, EPE, recognizing and responding to change talk and sustain talk, evoking change talk, negotiating a change plan) needed to practice effectively. Competency-based supervision of MI includes directly observing counselor sessions, using feedback to monitor counselor proficiency, and coaching to help counselors continue developing their knowledge and skills (Martino et al., 2016). One study on competency-based supervision in MI found that anywhere from 4 to 20 supervision sessions were needed for doctoral-level interns to reach MI competency benchmarks (Schumaker et al., 2018).

Competency-based supervision requires direct observation of counselors, not simply a counselor's self- report or subjective evaluation. **Direct observation is one of the most effective ways of building and monitoring counselor skills** and can include use of video or audio taping sessions, live observation of counseling sessions in person or via one-way mirrors, or both (SAMHSA, 2009). For more information on competency-based supervision, see TIP 52: *Clinical Supervision and Professional Development of the Substance Abuse Counselor* (SAMHSA, 2009).

The program should get permission from clients before engaging in direct observation. Written consent forms should include the nature and purpose of the direct observation, a description of how clients' privacy and confidentiality will be maintained, and what will happen to any video or audio recordings after supervision or research is completed. Program should refer to in-house policies and state licensing board and professional ethics code requirements for the use of video and audio recordings for clinical supervision or research.

In addition to being competency based, **MI supervision should be performed in the spirit of MI.** Clinical supervisors should reach a level of skill in using MI to be able to:

- Describe the underlying theoretical foundations of MI.
- Explore and resolve counselor ambivalence about learning and integrating MI into treatment.
- Teach counselors MI skills.
- Model the spirit of MI and its skills in individual and group supervision sessions.
- Give respectful and nonjudgmental feedback to counselors to support self-efficacy and enhance professional development.

Coaching counselors in MI involves coding a recorded or live observation session for consistent (e.g., OARS responses) and inconsistent (e.g., giving unsolicited advice, confrontation) MI responses and using this information to provide feedback to the counselor (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Because listening to and coding a full session are labor intensive, coaches can code brief sections of a session and produce reliable ratings of counselor fidelity to MI (Caperton, Atkins, & Imel, 2018). Two coding systems for MI have been widely used in research and clinical practice to evaluate counselor fidelity to MI (Miller & Rollnick, 2013):

- **MI Integrity (MITI)** focuses on counselor responses and provides global ratings and specific counts of MI-consistent responses. The most recent version of MITI (MITI 4) has added global ratings and greater accuracy in assessing counselor support for client autonomy and the use of persuasion when giving information and advice (Moyers, Manuel, & Ernst, 2014). The MITI 4 is a reliable way to assess counselor fidelity to MI in both its relational and its technical components (Moyers, Houck, Rice, Longbaugh, & Miller, 2016). Appendix C provides a link to the MITI 4 manual.
- **MI Skills Code (MISC)** counts both counselor and client responses (e.g., change talk, sustain talk) (Miller, Moyers, Ernst, & Amrhein, 2008). MISC is a reliable way to monitor counselor fidelity to MI and can provide an accurate measure of the ratio of client change talk to sustain talk (Lord et al.,2014). The MISC can provide not only feedback to counselors about their

use of MI skills but also information about the effects of MI on counselor–client interactions. Appendix C provides a link to the MISC manual.

A positive aspect of using coding systems to assess counselor fidelity to MI is that they provide reliable and accurate measures of counselor skill level. A less-positive aspect of using coding systems is that they require considerable training and quality assurance checks to establish and maintain the reliability of the coach who is doing the coding (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). In addition, counselors may be ambivalent about recording client sessions and having a supervisor, who is responsible for performance evaluations, code the counselor's speech. Potential solutions to consider include:

Addressing counselor ambivalence in supervision about having sessions coded.

- Creating small learning communities in the organization where counselors, case managers, and peer providers can learn and practice coding snippets of actual sessions or uncoded audio, video, or written transcripts with one another. Appendix C provides links to uncoded transcripts, audio, and video examples of MI counseling sessions.
- Sending audio sessions or short excerpts to an outside coder who can perform the coding and return written feedback for supervisors to discuss with counselors.
- Encouraging counselors to listen to their own recorded sessions and use a simplified method of counting their use of OARS, their inconsistent responses (e.g., giving advice without permission), change talk and sustain talk prompts, and client expressions of change talk and sustain talk (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Counselors can then review their "self-coding" with their supervisors.

Whichever strategies the SUD organization employs to enhance counselor fidelity to and proficiency in delivering MI, the organization will need to balance cost considerations with effective training, supervision, and professional development. **Administrators and supervisors should partner with counseling staff to move**

the organization along the SOC toward integrating motivational approaches into SUD treatment.

Conclusion

Many different motivational approaches have been discussed in this TIP including MI; MET; motivational interventions in the SOC; brief interventions; screening, brief intervention, and referral for treatment; and blending MI with other counseling methods. A growing body of evidence demonstrates that motivational interventions can enhance client motivation and improve SUD treatment outcomes. Integrating MI and other motivational approaches into SUD treatment settings requires the entire organization to adopt a client-centered philosophy and administrative support for ongoing training and supervision of counselors. Motivational counseling approaches are respectful and culturally responsive methods for helping people break free from addiction and adopt new lifestyles that are consistent with the values of good health, well-being, and being integral member of the community.

END OF COURSE!!

Bibliography

Ager, R., Roahen-Harrison, S., Toriello, P. J., Kissinger, P., Morse, P., Morse, E., ... Rice, J. (2010). Predictors of adopting motivational enhancement therapy. *Research on Social Work Practice, 21*(1), 65–76. doi:10.1177/1049731509353170

Ainscough, T. S., McNeill, A., Strang, J., Calder, R., & Brose, L. S. (2017). Contingency management interventions for non-prescribed drug use during treatment for opiate addiction: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *178*, 318–339.

Alcoholics Anonymous. (2001). *Alcoholics Anonymous: The story of how many thousands of men and women have recovered from alcoholism* (4th ed.). New York, NY: Alcoholics Anonymous World Services.

Aldridge, A., Dowd, W., & Bray, J. (2017). The relative impact of brief treatment versus brief intervention in primary health-care screening programs for substance use disorders. *Addiction, 112*, 54–64. doi:10.1111/add.13653

Aldridge, A., Linford, R., & Bray, J. (2017). Substance use outcomes of patients served by a large U.S. implementation of screening, brief intervention and referral to treatment (SBIRT). *Addiction*, *112*, 43–53.

Alperstein, D., & Sharpe, L. (2016). The efficacy of motivational interviewing in adults with chronic pain: A meta- analysis and systematic review. *Journal of Pain, 17*(4), 393–403. doi:10.1016/j.jpain.2015.10.021

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.

American Psychiatric Association. (1994). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.

Amodeo, M. (2015). The addictive personality. *Substance Use and Misuse, 50*(8–9), 1031–1036. doi:10.3109/10826084.2015.1007646

Anderson, T., Crowley, M. E., Himawan, L., Holmberg, J. K., & Uhlin, B. D. (2016). Therapist facilitative interpersonal skills and training status: A randomized clinical trial on alliance and outcome. *Psychotherapy Research, 26*(5), 511– 529. doi:10.1080/10503307.2015.1049671

Apodaca, T. R., Borsari, B., Jackson, K. M., Magill, M., Longabaugh, R., Mastroleo, N. R., & Barnett, N. P. (2014). Sustain talk predicts poorer outcomes among mandated college student drinkers receiving a brief motivational intervention. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 28*(3), 631–638. doi:10.1037/a0037296

Apodaca, T. R., Jackson, K. M., Borsari, B., Magill, M., Longabaugh, R., Mastroleo, N. R., & Barnett, N. P. (2016). Which individual therapist behaviors elicit client change talk and sustain talk in motivational interviewing? *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 61*, 60–65. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2015.09.001

Apodaca, T. R., & Longabaugh, R. (2009). Mechanisms of change in motivational interviewing: A review and preliminary evaluation of the evidence. *Addiction,104*(5), 705–715. doi:10.1111/j.1360-0443.2009.02527.x

Apodaca, T. R., Magill, M., Longabaugh, R., Jackson, K. M., & Monti, P. M. (2013). Effect of a significant other on client change talk in motivational interviewing. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology,81*(1), 35–46. doi:10.1037/a0030881

Appiah-Brempong, E., Okyere, P., Owusu-Addo, E., & Cross, R. (2014). Motivational interviewing interventions and alcohol abuse among college students: A systematic review. *American Journal of Health Promotion, 29*(1). doi:10.4278/ajhp.130502-lit-222

Arkowitz, H., Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2015). *Motivational interviewing in the treatment of psychological problems* (2nd ed.). New York, NY: Guilford Publications.

Babor, T. F., Del Boca, F. D., & Bray, J. W. (2017). Screening, brief intervention and referral to treatment: Implications of SAMHSA's SBIRT initiative for substance abuse policy and practice. *Addiction, 112*, 110–117. doi:10.1111/add.13675

Babor, T. F., Higgins-Biddle, J. C., & Robaina, K. (2016). *USAUDIT: The Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test, Adapted for use in the United States: A guide for primary care practitioners.* Retrieved from www.ct.gov/dmhas/lib/dmhas/publications/USAUDIT-2017.pdf

Babor, T. F., Higgins-Biddle, J. C., Saunders, J. B., & Monteiro, M. G. (2001). *The Alcohol Use Disorders Identification Test: Guidelines for use in primary care* (2nd ed.). Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.

Bachiller, D., Grau-López, L., Barral, C., Daigre, C., Alberich, C., Rodríguez-Cintas, L., ... Roncero C. (2015). Motivational interviewing group at inpatient detoxification: Its influence in maintaining abstinence and treatment retention after discharge. *Adicciones*, *27*(2), 109–118.

Baker, A. L., Kavanagh, D. J., Kay-Lambkin, F. J., Hunt, S. A., Lewin, T. J., Carr, V. J., & McElduff, P. (2014). Randomized controlled trial of MICBT for co-existing alcohol misuse and depression: Outcomes to 36-months. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 46*(3), 281–290.

Baker, A. L., Thornton, L. K., Hiles, S., Hides, L., & Lubman, D. I. (2012). Psychological interventions for alcohol misuse among people with co-occurring depression or anxiety disorders: A systematic review. *Journal of Affective Disorders, 139*(3), 217–229. doi:10.1016/j.jad.2011.08.004

Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review*, *84*, 191–215. Barata, I. A., Shandro, J. R., Montgomery, M., Polansky, R., Sachs, C. J., Duber, H. C., ... Macias-Konstantopoulos, W. (2017). Effectiveness of SBIRT for alcohol use disorders in the emergency department: A systematic review. *Western Journal of Emergency Medicine*, *18*(6), 1143–1152.

Barbosa, C., Cowell, A., Dowd, W., Landwehr, J., Aldridge, A., & Bray, J. (2017). The cost-effectiveness of brief intervention versus brief treatment of screening, brief intervention and referral to treatment (SBIRT) in the United States. *Addiction, 112*, 73–81. doi:10.1111/add.13658

Barnes, R. D., & Ivezaj, V. (2015). A systematic review of motivational interviewing

for weight loss among adults in primary care. *Obesity Reviews, 16*(4), 304–318. doi:10.1111/obr.12264

Barnett, E., Moyers, T. B., Sussman, S., Smith, C., Rohrbach, L. A., Sun, P., & Spruijt-Metz, D. (2014). From counselor skill to decreased marijuana use: Does change talk matter? *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 46,* 498–505. Barnett, E., Spruijt-Metz, D., Moyers, T. B., Smith, C., Rohrbach, L. A., Sun, P., & Sussman, S. (2014). Bidirectional relationships between client and counselor speech: The importance of reframing. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 28*(4), 1212–1219. doi:10.1037/a0036227

Barrio, P., & Gual, A. (2016). Patient-centered care interventions for the management of alcohol use disorders: A systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Patient Preference and Adherence, 10,* 1823–1845. doi:10.2147/PPA.S109641

Bassuk, E. L., Hanson, J., Greene, R. N., Richard, M., & Laudet, A. (2016). Peer-delivered recovery support services for addictions in the United States: A systematic review. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 63*, 1–9. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2016.01.003

Bedard-Gilligan, M., Garcia, N., Zoellner, L. A., & Feeny, N. C. (2018). Alcohol, cannabis, and other drug use: Engagement and outcome in PTSD treatment. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 32*(3), 277–288. Belmontes, K. C. (2018). When family gets in the way of recovery. *Family Journal*, *26*(1), 99–104.doi:10.1177/1066480717753013

Bernstein, S. L., & D'Onofrio, G. (2017). Screening, treatment initiation, and

referral for substance use disorders. *Addiction Science and Clinical Practice, 12*(1). doi:10.1186/s13722-017-0083-z

Bertholet, N., Palfai, T., Gaume, J., Daeppen, J., & Saitz, R. (2013). Do brief alcohol motivational interventions work like we think they do? *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *38*(3), 853–859. doi:10.1111/acer.12274 Beutler, L. E., Harwood, T. M., Michelson, A., Song, A., & Holman, J. (2011). Resistance/reactance level. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, *67*(2), 133–142.

Black, J. J., & Chung, T. (2014). Mechanisms of change in adolescent substance use treatment: How does treatment work? *Substance Abuse*, *35*(4), 344–351.

Blow, F. C., Walton, M. A., Bohnert, A. S., Ignacio, R. V., Chermack, S., Cunningham, R. M., ... Barry, K. L. (2017). A randomized controlled trial of brief interventions to reduce drug use among adults in a low-income urban emergency department: The HealthiER You study. *Addiction, 112*(8), 1395–1405. doi:10.1111/add.13773

Bohnert, A. S. B., Bonar, E. E., Cunningham, R., Greenwald, M. K., Thomas, L., Chermack, S., ... Walton, M. (2016). A pilot randomized clinical trial of an intervention to reduce overdose risk behaviors among emergency department patients at risk for prescription drug overdose. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 163*, 40–47.

Borsari, B., Apodaca, T. R., Jackson, K. M., Fernandez, A., Mastroleo, N. R., Magill, M., ... Carey, K. B. (2018). Trajectories of in-session change language in brief motivational interventions with mandated college students. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 86*(2), 158–168. doi:10.1037/ccp0000255

Boston Center for Treatment Development and Training. (2016). *Module 10: Sobriety sampling*. Retrieved from www.mass.gov/files/documents/2016/07/ty/bt-manual-module10.pdf

Bourke, E., Magill, M., & Apodaca, T. R. (2016). The in-session and long-term role of a significant other in motivational enhancement therapy for alcohol use disorders. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 64*, 35–43. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2016.01.008

Bray, J. W., Aden, B., Eggman, A. A., Hellerstein, L., Wittenberg, E., Nosyk, B., ... Schackman, B. R. (2017). Quality of life as an outcome of opioid use disorder treatment: A systematic review. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *76*, 88–93.

Breslin, F. C., Sobell, L. C., Sobell, M. B., & Agrawal, S. (2000). A comparison of a brief and long version of the Situational Confidence Questionnaire. *Behaviour Research and Therapy, 38*(12), 1211–1220.

Brorson, H. H., Arnevik, E. A., Rand-Hendriksen, K., & Duckert, F. (2013). Drop-out from addiction treatment: A systematic review of risk factors. *Clinical Psychology Review, 33*(8), 1010–1024. doi:10.1016/j.cpr.2013.07.007

Caperton, D. D., Atkins, D. C., & Imel, Z. E. (2018). Rating motivational interviewing fidelity from thin slices. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 32*(4), 434–441. doi:10.1037/adb0000359

Carey, K. B., Leontieva, L., Dimmock, J., Maisto, S. A., & Batki, S. L. (2007). Adapting motivational interventions for comorbid schizophrenia and alcohol use disorders. *Clinical Psychology*, *14*(1), 39–57.

Carroll, K. M., Ball, S. A., Nich, C., Martino, S., Frankforter, T. L., Farentinos, C., ... Woody, G. E. (2006). Motivational interviewing to improve treatment engagement and outcome in individuals seeking treatment for substance abuse: A multisite effectiveness study. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *81*, 301–312.

Caviness, C. M., Hagerty, C. E., Anderson, B. J., Dios, M. A., Hayaki, J., Herman, D., & Stein, M. D. (2013). Self-efficacy and motivation to quit marijuana use among young women. *American Journal on Addictions, 22*(4), 373–380. doi:10.1111/j.1521-0391.2013.12030

Chariyeva, Z., Golin, C. E., Earp, J. A., Maman, S., Suchindran, C., & Zimmer, C. (2013). The role of self-efficacy and motivation to explain the effect of motivational interviewing time on changes in risky sexual behavior among people living with HIV: A mediation analysis. *AIDS and Behavior, 17*(2), 813–823. doi:10.1007/s10461-011-0115-8

Coffin, P. O., Santos, G.-M., Matheson, T., Behar, E., Rowe, C., Rubin, T., ... Vittinghoff, E. (2017). Behavioral intervention to reduce opioid overdose among high-risk persons with opioid use disorder: A pilot randomized controlled trial. *PLOS One*, *12*(10), 1–15. Retrieved from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29049282

Connors, G. J., DiClemente, C. C., Velasquez, M. M., & Donovan, D. M. (2013). *Substance abuse treatment and the stages of change: Selecting and planning interventions*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Copeland, J., Gates, P., & Pokorski, I. (2017). A narrative review of psychological cannabis use treatments with and without pharmaceutical adjunct. *Current Pharmaceutical Design, 22*(42), 6397–6408. doi:10.2174/1381612822666160831094811

Copeland, L., McNamara, R., Kelson, M., & Simpson, S. (2015). Mechanisms of change within motivational interviewing in relation to health behaviors outcomes: A systematic review. *Patient Education and Counseling*, *98*(4), 401–411. doi:10.1016/j.pec.2014.11.022

Cunningham, J. A., Sobell, L. C., Gavin, D. R., Sobell, M. B., & Breslin, F. C. (1997). Assessing motivation for change: Preliminary development and evaluation of a

scale measuring the costs and benefits of changing alcohol or drug use. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *11*(2), 107–114.

D'Amico, E. J., Houck, J. M., Hunter, S. B., Miles, J. N., Osilla, K. C., & Ewing, B. A. (2015). Group motivational interviewing for adolescents: Change talk and alcohol and marijuana outcomes. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 83*(1), 68–80. doi:10.1037/a0038155

Davis, J. P., Houck, J. M., Rowell, L. N., Benson, J. G., & Smith, D. C. (2015). Brief motivational interviewing and normative feedback for adolescents: Change language and alcohol use outcomes. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *65*, 66–73.

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (2012). Overview of self-determination theory: An organismic dialectical perspective. In E. Deci & R. M. Ryan (Eds.), *Handbook of self-determination research* (pp. 3–38). Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press.

Dennis, M. L., & Scott, C. K. (2012). Four-year outcomes from the Early Re-Intervention (ERI) experiment using Recovery Management Checkups (RMCs). *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 121*(1–2), 10–17. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2011.07.026

Dennis, M. L., Scott, C. K., & Laudet, A. (2014). Beyond bricks and mortar: Recent research on substance use disorder recovery management. *Current Psychiatry Reports, 16*(4). doi:10.1007/s11920-014-0442-3

de Roten, Y., Zimmermann, G., Ortega, D., & Despland, J.-N. (2013). Meta-analysis of the effects of MI training on clinicians' behavior. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 45*(2), 155–162. Retrieved from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23537923

DiClemente, C. C. (2018). *Addiction and change: How addictions develop and addicted people recover* (2nd ed.). Guilford, NY: Guilford Publications.

DiClemente, C. C., Carbonari, J. P., Montgomery, R. P. G., & Hughes, S. O. (1994). The Alcohol Abstinence Self- Efficacy Scale. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol, 55*(2), 141–148.

DiClemente, C. C., Corno, C. M., Graydon, M. M., Wiprovnick, A. E., & Knoblach, D. J. (2017). Motivational interviewing, enhancement, and brief interventions over the last decade: A review of reviews of efficacy and effectiveness. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 31*(8), 862–887. doi:10.1037/adb0000318

Dillard, P. K., Zuniga, J. A., & Holstad, M. M. (2017). An integrative review of the efficacy of motivational interviewing in HIV management. *Patient Education and Counseling, 100*(4), 636–646. doi:10.1016/j.pec.2016.10.029
Drapkin, M. L., Wilbourne, P., Manuel, J. K., Baer, J., Karlin, B., & Raffa, S. (2016). National dissemination of motivation enhancement therapy in the Veterans Health Administration: Training program design and initial outcomes. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 65*, 83–87. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2016.02.002

Dufett, I., & Ward, C. I. (2015). Can a motivational-interviewing-based outpatient substance abuse treatment achieve success? A theory-based evaluation. *African Journal of Drug and Alcohol Studies*, *14*(1), 1–12.

Ekong, G., & Kavookjian, J. (2016). Motivational interviewing and outcomes in adults with type 2 diabetes: A systematic review. *Patient Education and Counseling, 99*(6), 944–952. doi:10.1016/j.pec.2015.11.022 Elliott, J. C., & Carey, K. B. (2013). Pros and cons: Prospective predictors of marijuana use on a college campus.

Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 27(1), 230–235. doi:10.1037/a0029835
Elliott, R., Bohart, A. C., Watson, J. C., & Murphy, D. (2018). Therapist empathy and client outcome: An updated meta-analysis. *Psychotherapy, 55*(4), 399–410.

Retrieved from www.researchgate.net/publication/324562138_Therapist_Empathy_and_Client_Outcome_An_Updated_Meta- Analysis

Ewing, S. W., Wray, A. M., Mead, H. K., & Adams, S. K. (2012). Two approaches to tailoring treatment for cultural minority adolescents. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 43*(2), 190–203. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2011.12.005

Feldstein Ewing, S. W., Walters, S., & Baer, J. C. (2013). Motivational interviewing groups for adolescents and emerging adults. In C. C. Wagner & K. S. Ingersoll (Eds.), *Motivational interviewing in groups* (pp. 387–406). New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Fergie, L., Campbell, K. A., Coleman-Haynes, T., Ussher, M., Cooper, S., & Coleman, T. (2018). Identifying effective behavior change techniques for alcohol and illicit substance use during pregnancy: A systematic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*. doi:10.1093/abm/kay085

Field, C. A., Adinoff, B., Harris, T. R., Ball, S. A., & Carroll, K. M. (2009). Construct, concurrent and predictive validity of the URICA: Data from two multi-site clinical trials. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *101*(1–2), 115–123.

Field, C., Walters, S., Marti, C. N., Jun, J., Foreman, M., & Brown, C. (2014). A multisite randomized controlled trial of brief intervention to reduce drinking in the trauma care setting. *Annals of Surgery, 259*(5), 873–880. doi:10.1097/sla.0000000000000339

Fiszdon, J. M., Kurtz, M. M., Choi, J., Bell, M. D., & Martino, S. (2015). Motivational interviewing to increase cognitive rehabilitation adherence in schizophrenia. *Schizophrenia Bulletin*, *42*(2), 327–334.

Flannery, M. (2017). Self-determination theory: Intrinsic motivation and behavioral change. *Oncology Nursing Forum, 44*(2), 155–156. Retrieved from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28222078

Forman, D. P., & Moyers, T. B. (2019). With odds of a single session, motivational interviewing is a good bet. *Psychotherapy*. doi:10.1037/pst0000199

Foster, D., & Neighbors, C. (2013). A review of decisional balance research and directions for brief alcohol intervention among college students. *OA Alcohol, 1*(1). doi:10.13172/2053-0285-1-1-575

Foster, D. W., Neighbors, C., & Pai, A. (2015). Decisional balance: Alcohol decisional balance intervention for heavy drinking undergraduates. *Substance Use and Misuse*, *50*(13), 1717–1727.

Friedrichs, A., Spies, M., Härter, M., & Buchholz, A. (2016). Patient preferences and shared decision making in the treatment of substance use disorders: A systematic review of the literature. *PLOS One, 11*(1). doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0145817

Gates, P. J., Sabioni, P., Copeland, J., Foll, B. L., & Gowing, L. (2016). Psychosocial interventions for cannabis use disorder. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. doi:10.1002/14651858.cd005336.pub4

Gaume, J., Magill, M., Mastroleo, N. R., Longabaugh, R., Bertholet, N., Gmel, G., & Daeppen, J. (2016). Change talk during brief motivational intervention with young adult males: Strength matters. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 65*, 58–65. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2016.01.005

Gelberg, L., Andersen, R., Vahidi, M., Rico, M., Baumeister, S., & Leake, B. (2017). A multi-component brief intervention for risky drug use among Latino patients of a federally qualified health center in East Los Angeles: A randomized controlled trial of the quit using drugs intervention trial (quit) brief intervention. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence,171*. Retrieved from https://eurekamag.com/research/064/949/064949750.php

Glozah, F. N., Adu, N. A., & Komesuor, J. (2015). Assessing alcohol abstinence self-efficacy in undergraduate students: Psychometric evaluation of the alcohol abstinence self-efficacy scale. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes, 13*(1). doi:10.1186/s12955-015-0387-1

Gordon, T. (1970). *Parent effectiveness training: The no-lose program for raising responsible children.* New York, NY: Wyden.

Granfield, R., & Cloud, W. (1999). *Coming clean: Overcoming addiction without treatment*. New York, NY: New York University Press.

Grant, S., Colaiaco, B., Motala, A., Shanman, R., Booth, M., Sorbero, M., & Hempel, S. (2017). Mindfulness-based relapse prevention for substance use disorders: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 11*(5), 386–396. doi:10.1097/adm.0000000000000338

Gueorguieva, R., Wu, R., O'Connor, P. G., Weisner, C., Fucito, L. M., Hoffmann, S., ... O'Malley, S. S. (2014). Predictors of abstinence from heavy drinking during treatment in COMBINE and external validation in PREDICT. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *38*(10), 2647–2656.

Hall, K., Staiger, P. K., Simpson, A., Best, D., & Lubman, D. I. (2015). After 30 years of dissemination, have we achieved sustained practice change in motivational interviewing? *Addiction, 111*(7), 1144–1150. doi:10.1111/add.13014

Harley, D. A. (2017). Motivational interviewing and motivational enhancement therapy: Cultural implications in addiction intervention for African Americans. *SciFed Journal of Addiction and Therapy, 1*(1). doi:10.23959/sfjat- 1000005

Harrell, P. T., Trenz, R., Scherer, M., Martins, S., & Latimer, W. (2013). A latent class approach to treatment readiness corresponds to a transtheoretical ("Stages of Change") model. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 45*(3), 249–256. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2013.04.004

Hausotter, W. (2006). *Motivational interviewing assessment: Supervisory tools for enhancing proficiency.* Salem, OR: Northwest Frontier Addiction Technology Transfer Center, Oregon Health and Science University. Retrieved from www.motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/mia-step.pdf

Heather, N., & Honekopp, J. (2008). A revised edition of the readiness to change questionnaire (treatment version). *Addiction Research and Theory, 16*(5), 421–433.

Heather, N., & McCambridge, J. (2013). Post-treatment stage of change predicts 12-month outcome of treatment for alcohol problems. *Alcohol and Alcoholism, 48*(3), 329–336. doi:10.1093/alcalc/agt006

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Hennessy, E. A. (2017). Recovery capital: A systematic review of the literature. *Addiction Research and Theory, 25*(5), 349–360. doi:10.1080/16066359.2017.1297990

Hennessy, E. A., Tanner-Smith, E. E., & Steinka-Fry, K. T. (2015). Do brief alcohol interventions reduce tobacco use among adolescents and young adults? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine, 38*(6), 899–911.

Hester, R. K., Delaney, H. D., & Campbell, W. (2012). The college drinker's check-up: Outcomes of two randomized clinical trials of a computer-delivered intervention. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *26*(1), 1–12.

Hingson, R., & Compton, W. M. (2014). Screening and brief intervention and referral to treatment for drug use in primary care: Back to the drawing board. *JAMA, 312*(5), 488. doi:10.1001/jama.2014.7863

Holstad, M. M., Diiorio, C., Kelley, M. E., Resnicow, K., & Sharma, S. (2010). Group motivational interviewing to promote adherence to antiretroviral medications

and risk reduction behaviors in HIV infected women. *AIDS and Behavior, 15*(5), 885–896. doi:10.1007/s10461-010-9865-y

Houck, J. M., Hunter, S. B., Benson, J. G., Cochrum, L. L., Rowell, L. N., & Damico, E. J. (2015). Temporal variation in facilitator and client behavior during group motivational interviewing sessions. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 29*(4), 941–949. doi:10.1037/adb0000107

Houck, J. M., Manuel, J. K., & Moyers, T. B. (2018). Short- and long-term effects of within-session client speech on drinking Outcomes in the COMBINE study. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, 79*(2), 217–222. doi:10.15288/jsad.2018.79.217

Houck, J. M., & Moyers, T. B. (2015). Within-session communication patterns predict alcohol treatment outcomes. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 157*, 205–209. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2015.10.025

Humphreys, K., Blodgett, J. C., & Wagner, T. H. (2014). Estimating the efficacy of Alcoholics Anonymous without self- selection bias: An instrumental variables re-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *38*(11), 2688–2694. doi:10.1111/acer.12557

Hunt, G. E., Siegfried, N., Morley, K., Sitharthan, T., & Cleary, M. (2013). Psychosocial interventions for people with both severe mental illness and substance misuse. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, *10*. Art. No.: CD001088. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD001088.pub3

Ingersoll, K. S., Ceperich, S. D., Hettema, J. E., Farrell-Carnahan, L., & Penberthy, J. K. (2013). Preconceptional motivational interviewing interventions to reduce alcohol-exposed pregnancy risk. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 44*(4), 407–416. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2012.10.001

Jackson, L. A., Buxton, J. A., Dingwell, J., Dykeman, M., Gahagan, J., Gallant, K., ... Davison, C. (2014). Improving psychosocial health and employment outcomes for individuals receiving methadone treatment: A realist synthesis of what makes interventions work. *BMC Psychology*, *2*(1), 26. doi:10.1186/s40359-014-0026-3

Janis, L. L., & Mann, L. (1977). *Decision making: A psychological analysis of conflict, choice, and commitment.* London, England: Cassel and Collier Macmillan.

Jason, L. A., Salina, D., & Ram, D. (2016). Oxford recovery housing: Length of stay correlated with improved outcomes for women previously involved with the criminal justice system. *Substance Abuse, 37*(1), 248–254. doi:10.1080/08897077.2015.1037946

Jiang, S., Wu, L., & Gao, X. (2017). Beyond face-to-face individual counseling: A systematic review on alternative modes of motivational interviewing in substance abuse treatment and prevention. *Addictive Behaviors, 73*, 216– 235

Joseph, J., & Basu, D. (2016). Efficacy of brief interventions in reducing hazardous or harmful alcohol use in middle- income countries: Systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Alcohol and Alcoholism, 52*(1), 56–64. doi:10.1093/alcalc/agw054

Kadden, R. M., & Litt, M. D. (2011). The role of self-efficacy in the treatment of substance use disorders. *Addictive Behaviors*, *36*(12), 1120–1126.

Kahler, C. W., Pantalone, D. W., Mastroleo, N. R., Liu, T., Bove, G., Ramratnam, B., ... Mayer, K. J. (2018). Motivational interviewing with personalized feedback to reduce alcohol use in HIV-infected men who have sex with men: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 86*(8), 645–656.

Kanfer, F. H., & Schefft, B. K. (1988). *Guiding the process of therapeutic change.* Champaign, IL: Research Press. Page **138** of **183**

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Kelly, J. F., Bergman, B. G., Hoeppner, B., Vilsaint, C., & White, W. L. (2017). Prevalence and pathways of recovery from drug and alcohol problems in the United States population: Implications for practice, research, and policy. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *181*, 162–169.

Kiluk, B. D., Serafini, K., Malin-Mayor, B., Babuscio, T. A., Nich, C., & Carroll, K. M. (2015). Prompted to treatment by the criminal justice system: Relationships with treatment retention and outcome among cocaine users. *American Journal on Addictions, 24*(3), 225–232. doi:10.1111/ajad.12208

Klimas, J., Field, C., Cullen, W., O'Gorman, C., Glynn, L., Keenan, E., ... Dunne, C. (2014). Psychosocial interventions to reduce alcohol consumption in concurrent problem alcohol and illicit drug users: Cochrane Review. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 140*. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2014.02.305

Kohler, S., & Hofmann, A. (2015). Can motivational interviewing in emergency care reduce alcohol consumption in young people? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Alcohol and Alcoholism, 50*(2), 107–117. doi:10.1093/alcalc/agu098

Korcha, R. A., Polcin, D. L., Evans, K., Bond, J. C., & Galloway, G. P. (2015). Intensive motivational interviewing for women with alcohol problems. *Counselor (Deerfield Beach), 16*(3), 62–69.

Krawczyk, N., Feder, K. A., Saloner, B., Crum, R. M., Kealhofer, M., & Mojtabai, R. (2017). The association of psychiatric comorbidity with treatment completion among clients admitted to substance use treatment programs in a U.S. national sample. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 175*, 157–163. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2017.02.006

Krigel, S. W., Grobe, J. E., Goggin, K., Harris, K. J., Moreno, J. L., & Catley, D. (2017). Motivational interviewing and the decisional balance procedure for cessation induction in smokers not intending to quit. *Addictive Behaviors, 64*, 171–178. doi:10.1016/j.addbeh.2016.08.036

Kuerbis, A., Armeli, S., Muench, F., & Morgenstern, J. (2013). Motivation and self-efficacy in the context of moderated drinking: Global self-report and ecological momentary assessment. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 27*(4), 934–943. doi:10.1037/a0031194

Kuusisto, K., Knuuttila, V., & Saarnio, P. (2011). Clients' self-efficacy and outcome expectations. *Addictive Disorders and Their Treatment, 10*(4), 157–168. doi:10.1097/adt.0b013e31820dd4ec

Kwasnicka, D., Dombrowski, S. U., White, M., & Sniehotta, F. (2016). Theoretical explanations for maintenance of behaviour change: A systematic review of behaviour theories. *Health Psychology Review, 10*(3), 277–296. doi:10.1080/17437199.2016.1151372

Lee, W. W., Choi, K., Yum, R. W., Yu, D. S., & Chair, S. (2016). Effectiveness of motivational interviewing on lifestyle modification and health outcomes of clients at risk or diagnosed with cardiovascular diseases: A systematic review. *International Journal of Nursing Studies, 53*, 331–341. doi:10.1016/j.ijnurstu.2015.09.010

Lenz, A. S., Rosenbaum, L., & Sheperis, D. (2016). Meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of motivational enhancement therapy for reducing substance use. *Journal of Addictions and Offender Counseling, 37*(2), 66–86. doi:10.1002/jaoc.12017

Lindqvist, H., Forsberg, L., Enebrink, P., Andersson, G., & Rosendahl, I. (2017). Relational skills and client language predict outcome in smoking cessation treatment. *Substance Use and Misuse, 52*(1), 33–42. doi:10.1080/10826084.2016.1212892

Litt, M. D., & Kadden, R. M. (2015). Willpower versus "skillpower": Examining how self-efficacy works in treatment for marijuana dependence*. Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *29*(3), 532–540. doi:10.1037/adb0000085

Litt, M. D., Kadden, R. M., & Petry, N. M. (2013). Behavioral treatment for marijuana dependence: Randomized trial of contingency management and self-efficacy enhancement. *Addictive Behaviors, 38*(3), 1764–1775. doi:10.1016/j.addbeh.2012.08.011

Lord, S. P., Can, D., Yi, M., Marin, R., Dunn, C. W., Imel, Z. E., ... Atkins, D. C. (2014). Advancing methods for reliably assessing motivational interviewing fidelity using the motivational interviewing skills code. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *49*, 50–57.

Lozano, B. E., Larowe, S. D., Smith, J. P., Tuerk, P., & Roitzsch, J. (2013). Brief motivational feedback may enhance treatment entry in veterans with comorbid substance use and psychiatric disorders. *American Journal on Addictions, 22*(2), 132–135. doi:10.1111/j.1521-0391.2013.00315.x

Lundahl, B., Moleni, T., Burke, B. L., Butters, R., Tollefson, D., Butler, C., & Rollnick, S. (2013). Motivational interviewing in medical care settings: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Patient Education and Counseling, 93*(2), 157–168. doi:10.1016/j.pec.2013.07.012

Magill, M., Apodaca, T. R., Borsari, B., Gaume, J., Hoadley, A., Gordon, R. E. F., ... Moyers, T. (2018). A meta-analysis of motivational interviewing process: Technical, relational, and conditional process models of change. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 86*(2), 140–157.

Magill, M., Gaume, J., Apodaca, T. R., Walthers, J., Mastroleo, N. R., Borsari, B., & Longabaugh, R. (2014). The technical hypothesis of motivational interviewing: A meta-analysis of MI's key causal model. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 82*(6), 973–983.

Magill, M., Stout, R. L., & Apodaca, T. R. (2013). Therapist focus on ambivalence and commitment: A longitudinal analysis of motivational interviewing treatment ingredients. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 27*(3), 754–762. doi:10.1037/a0029639

Magill, M., Walthers, J., Mastroleo, N. R., Gaume, J., Longabaugh, R., & Apodaca, T. R. (2016). Therapist and client discussions of drinking and coping: A sequential

analysis of therapy dialogues in three evidence-based alcohol use disorder treatments. *Addiction, 111*(6), 1011–1020. doi:10.1111/add.13313

Mahmoodabad, S. S., Tonekaboni, N. R., Farmanbar, R., Fallahzadeh, H., & Kamalikhah, T. (2017). The effect of motivational interviewing-based intervention using self-determination theory on promotion of physical activity among women in reproductive age: A randomized clinical trial. *Electronic Physician, 9*(5), 4461–4472. doi:10.19082/4461

Manuel, J. K., Satre, D. D., Tsoh, J., Moreno-John, G., Ramos, J. S., McCance-Katz, E. F., & Satterfield, J. M. (2015). Adapting screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment for alcohol and drugs to culturally diverse clinical populations. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 1.* doi:10.1097/adm.0000000000000150

Marlatt, G., A., Parks, G. A., & Witkiewitz, K. (2002*). Clinical guidelines for implementing relapse prevention therapy: A guideline developed for behavioral health recovery management project.* Chicago, IL: University of Chicago. Retrieved from www.researchgate.net/publication/235326763_Clinical_Guidelines_for_Implementing_RelapsePrevention_Therapy_A_Guideline_Developed_for_the_Behavioral_Health_Recovery_Management_Project

Martin, G. W., & Rehm, J. (2012). The effectiveness of psychosocial modalities in the treatment of alcohol problems in adults: A review of the evidence. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry, 57*(6), 350–358. doi:10.1177/070674371205700604

Martino, S., Ball, S. A., Gallon, S. L., Hall, D., Garcia, M., Ceperich, S., ... Hausotter, W. (2006). *Motivational interviewing assessment: Supervisory tools for enhancing proficiency.* Salem, OR: Northwest Frontier Addiction Technology Transfer Center, Oregon Health and Science University. Retrieved from www.motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/mia-step.pdf

Martino, S., Paris, M., Añez, L., Nich, C., Canning-Ball, M., Hunkele, K., ... Carroll, K. M. (2016). The effectiveness and cost of clinical supervision for motivational interviewing: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *68*, 11–23.

Mattoo, S. K., Prasad, S., & Ghosh, A. (2018). Brief intervention in substance use disorders. *Indian Journal of Psychiatry*, *60*(Suppl 4), S466–S472.

McCance-Katz, E. F., & Satterfield, J. (2012). SBIRT: A key to integrate prevention and treatment of substance abuse in primary care. *American Journal on Addictions, 21*(2), 176–177. doi:10.1111/j.1521-0391.2011.00213.x

McConnaughy, E. A., Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. F.(1983). Stages of change in psychotherapy: Measurement and sample profiles. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research and Practice, 20*, 368–375.

McDevitt-Murphy, M. E., Murphy, J. G., Williams, J. L., Monahan, C. J., Bracken-Minor, K. L., & Fields, J. A. (2014). Randomized controlled trial of two brief alcohol interventions for OEF/OIF veterans. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 82*(4), 562–568. doi:10.1037/a0036714

McQueen, J., Howe, T. E., Allan, L., Mains, D., & Hardy, V. (2011). Brief interventions for heavy alcohol users admitted to general hospital wards. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews,* (8).

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

McQueen, J. M., Howe, T. E., Ballinger, C., & Godwin, J. (2015). Effectiveness of alcohol brief intervention in a general hospital: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, 76*(6), 838–844. doi:10.15288/jsad.2015.76.838

Merchant, R. C., Romanoff, J., Zhang, Z., Liu, T., & Baird, J. R. (2017). Impact of a brief intervention on reducing alcohol use and increasing alcohol treatment

services utilization among alcohol- and drug-using adult emergency department patients. *Alcohol, 65*, 71–80. doi:10.1016/j.alcohol.2017.07.003

Miller, M. B., Leffingwell, T., Claborn, K., Meier, E., Walters, S., & Neighbors, C. (2013). Personalized feedback interventions for college alcohol misuse: An update of Walters & Neighbors (2005). *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *27*(4), 909–920.

Miller, W. R., Benefield, R. G., & Tonigan, J. S. (1993). Enhancing motivation for change in problem drinking: A controlled comparison of two therapist styles. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 61*(3), 455–461.

Miller, W. R., & Brown, J. M. (1994). *What I want from treatment* (2.0). Retrieved from https://casaa.unm.edu/inst/What%20I%20Want%20From%20Treatment.pdf

Miller, W. R., Forcehimes, A. A., & Zweben, A. (2011). *Treating addiction: A guide for professionals*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Moyers, T. B. (2017). Motivational interviewing and the clinical science of Carl Rogers. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 85*(8), 757–766. doi:10.1037/ccp0000179

Miller, W. R., & Moyers, T. B. (2015). The forest and the trees: Relational and specific factors in addiction treatment. *Addiction*, *110*(3), 401–413.

Miller, W. R., Moyers, T. B., Ernst, D. B., & Amrhein, P. C. (2008). *Manual for the Motivational Interviewing Code* (version 2.1). Albuquerque, NM: Center on Alcoholism, Substance Abuse, and Addictions, University of New Mexico. Retrieved from https://casaa.unm.edu/download/misc.pdf

Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2014). The effectiveness and ineffectiveness of complex behavioral interventions: Impact of treatment fidelity. *Contemporary Clinical Trials, 37*(2), 234–241. doi:10.1016/j.cct.2014.01.005 Miller, W. R., &

Rollnick, S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing: Helping people change* (3rd ed.). New York, NY:

Guilford Press.
Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2010). *Looking forward to MI-3: A work in progress* [PowerPoint slides]. Retrieved from

http://motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/Forum_2010_Plenary_Bill.ppt

Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2002). *Motivational interviewing: Preparing people for change* (2nd ed.). New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (1991). *Motivational interviewing: Preparing people to change addictive behavior*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Rose, G. S. (2013). Motivational interviewing and decisional balance: Contrasting responses to client ambivalence. *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy, 43*(02), 129–141. doi:10.1017/s1352465813000878

Miller, W. R., & Sanchez, V. C. (1994). Motivating young adults for treatment and lifestyle change. In G. Howard & Nathan (Eds.), *Alcohol use and misuse by young adults* (pp. 55–82). Notre Dame, IN: University of Notre Dame Press.

Miller, W. R., & Tonigan, J. S. (1996). Assessing drinkers' motivation for change: The Stages of Change Readiness and Treatment Eagerness Scale (SOCRATES). *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 10*(2), 81–89.

Miller, W. R., Tonigan, J. S., & Longabaugh, R. (1995*). The Drinker Inventory of Consequences (DrInC): An instrument for assessing adverse consequences of alcohol abuse, Test manual* (vol. 4). Project MATCH Monograph Series. Rockville, MD: National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. Retrieved from https://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/projectmatch/match04.pdf

Miller, W. R., & Wilbourne, P. L. (2002). Mesa Grande: A methodological analysis of clinical trials of treatments for alcohol use disorders. *Addiction*, *97*(3), 265–277. doi:10.1046/j.1360-0443.2002.00019.x

Montgomery, L., Robinson, C., Seaman, E. L., & Haeny, A. M. (2017). A scoping review and meta-analysis of psychosocial and pharmacological treatments for cannabis and tobacco use among African Americans. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 31*(8), 922–943. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29199844

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Monti, P. M., Colby, S. M., Mastroleo, N. R., Barnett, N. P., Gwaltney, C. J., Apodaca, T. R., ... Cioffi, W. G. (2014). Individual versus significant-other-enhanced brief motivational intervention for alcohol in emergency care. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 82*(6), 936–948. doi:10.1037/a0037658

Moore, M., Flamez, B., & Szirony, G. M. (2017). Motivational interviewing and dual diagnosis clients: Enhancing self- efficacy and treatment completion. *Journal of Substance Use, 23*(3), 247–253. doi:10.1080/14659891.2017.1388856

Moos, R. H. (2012). Iatrogenic effects of psychosocial interventions: Treatment, life context, and personal risk factors. *Substance Use and Misuse*, *47*(13–14), 1592–1598. doi:10.3109/10826084.2012.705710

Morgenstern, J., Kuerbis, A., Houser, J., Muench, F. J., Shao, S., & Treloar, H. (2016). Within-person associations between daily motivation and self-efficacy and drinking among problem drinkers in treatment. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 30*(6), 630–638. doi:10.1037/adb0000204

Mowbray, O., Quinn, A., & Cranford, J. A. (2014). Social networks and alcohol use disorders: Findings from a nationally representative sample. *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse, 40*(3), 181–186. doi:10.3109/00952990.2013.860984

Moyers, T. B. (2014). The relationship in motivational interviewing. *Psychotherapy, 51*(3), 358–363. Retrieved from https://media.wcwpds.wisc.edu/motivational-interviewing/files/The-Relationship-in-Motivational- Interviewing.pdf

Moyers, T. B., & Houck, J. (2011). Combining motivational interviewing with cognitive–behavioral treatments for substance abuse: Lessons from the COMBINE research project. *Cognitive and Behavioral Practice, 18*(1), 38–45. doi:10.1016/j.cbpra.2009.09.005

Moyers, T. B., Houck, J., Glynn, L. H., Hallgren, K. A., & Manuel, J. K. (2017). A randomized controlled trial to influence client language in substance use disorder treatment. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 172,* 43–50. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2016.11.036

Moyers, T. B., Houck, J., Rice, S. L., Longabaugh, R., & Miller, W. R. (2016). Therapist empathy, combined behavioral intervention, and alcohol outcomes in the COMBINE research project. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 84*(3), 221–229. doi:10.1037/ccp0000074

Moyers, T. B., Manuel, J. K., & Ernst, D. (2014). *Motivational Interviewing Treatment Integrity Coding Manual 4.1.* Unpublished manual. Retrieved from https://motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/miti4_2.pdf

Moyers, T. B., Martin, T., & Christopher, P. (2005). *Motivational interviewing knowledge test.* Albuquerque, NM: Center on Alcoholism, Substance Abuse, and Addictions, University of New Mexico. Retrieved from https://casaa.unm.edu/download/ELICIT/MI%20Knowledge%20Test.pdf

Moyers, T. B., & Miller, W. R. (2013). Is low therapist empathy toxic? *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 273,* 878– 884. doi:10.1037/a0030274

Mumba, M. N., Findlay, L. J., & Snow, D. E. (2018). Treatment options for opioid use disorders. *Journal of Addictions Nursing, 29*(3), 221–225.

Naar-King, S., Safren, S. A., & Miller, W. R. (2017). *Motivational interviewing and CBT: Combining strategies for maximum effectiveness*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Navidian, A., Kermansaravi, F., Tabas, E. E., & Saeedinezhad, F. (2016). Efficacy of group motivational interviewing in the degree of drug craving in the addicts under the methadone maintenance treatment (MMT) in South East of Iran. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing, 30*(2), 144–149. doi:10.1016/j.apnu.2015.08.002

Norcross, J. C., Krebs, P. M., & Prochaska, J. O. (2011). Stages of Change. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 67*(2), 143– 154. Retrieved from www.researchgate.net/publication/49683193_Stages_of_Change

Novins, D. K., Croy, C. D., Moore, L. A., & Rieckmann, T. (2016). Use of evidence-based treatments in substance abuse treatment programs serving American Indian and Alaska Native communities. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *161*, 214–221.

Nunes, A. P., Richmond, M. K., Marzano, K., Swenson, C. J., & Lockhart, J. (2017). Ten years of implementing screening, brief intervention, and referral to treatment (SBIRT): Lessons learned. *Substance Abuse, 38*(4), 508– 512. doi:10.1080/08897077.2017.1362369

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Office of the Surgeon General. (2016). *Facing addiction in America: The Surgeon General's report on alcohol, drugs, and health*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Retrieved from https://addiction.surgeongeneral.gov/sites/default/files/surgeon-generals-report.pdf

Osilla, K. C., Ortiz, J. A., Miles, J. N., Pedersen, E. R., Houck, J. M., & Damico, E. J. (2015). How group factors affect adolescent change talk and substance use

outcomes: Implications for motivational interviewing training. *Journal of Counseling Psychology, 62*(1), 79–86. doi:10.1037/cou0000049

Osterman, R., Lewis, D., & Winhusen, T. (2017). Efficacy of motivational enhancement therapy to decrease alcohol and illicit-drug use in pregnant substance users reporting baseline alcohol use. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 77*, 150–155. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2017.02.003

Pace, B. T., Dembe, A., Soma, C. S., Baldwin, S. A., Atkins, D. C., & Imel, Z. E. (2017). A multivariate meta-analysis of motivational interviewing process and outcome. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 31*(5), 524–533. doi:10.1037/adb0000280

Panebianco, D., Gallupe, O., Carrington, P. J., & Colozzi, I. (2016). Personal support networks, social capital, and risk of relapse among individuals treated for substance use issues. *International Journal of Drug Policy, 27*, 146–153. doi:10.1016/j.drugpo.2015.09.009

Polcin, D. L., Mulia, N., & Jones, L. (2012). Substance users' perspectives on helpful and unhelpful confrontation: Implications for recovery. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *44*(2), 144–152.

Prochaska, J. O. (1979). *Systems of psychotherapy: A transtheoretical analysis.* Homewood, IL: Dorsey Press. Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1984). *The transtheoretical approach: Crossing traditional boundaries of therapy*. Malabar, FL: R. E. Krieger.Prochaska, J., Norcross, J., & DiClemente, C. (2013). Applying the Stages of Change. *Psychotherapy in Australia*, *19*, 10–15. doi:10.1093/med:psych/9780199845491.003.0034

Prochaska, J. O., Velicer, W. F., Rossi, J. S., Goldstein, M. G., Marcus, B.H., Rakowski, W., ... Rossi, S.R. (1994). Stages of Change and decisional balance for 12 problem behaviors. *Health Psychology*, *13*, 39–46.

Rapp, R. C., Van Den Noortgate, W., Broekaert, E., & Vanderplasschen, W. (2014). The efficacy of case management with persons who have substance abuse problems: A three-level meta-analysis of outcomes. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *82*(4), 605–618. Retrieved from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK241643/

Raylu, N., & Kaur, I. (2012). Factors that affect treatment expectations of outpatients with substance use problems. *International Journal of Mental Health and Addiction, 10*(6), 804–817. doi:10.1007/s11469-012-9377-2

Rhoades, H., Motte-Kerr, W. L., Duan, L., Woo, D., Rice, E., Henwood, B., ... Wenzel, S. L. (2018). Social networks and substance use after transitioning into permanent supportive housing. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence, 191*, 63–69. doi:10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2018.06.027

Riper, H., Andersson, G., Hunter, S. B., Wit, J. D., Berking, M., & Cuijpers, P. (2014). Treatment of comorbid alcohol use disorders and depression with cognitive–behavioural therapy and motivational interviewing: A meta-analysis. *Addiction*, *109*(3), 394–406. doi:10.1111/add.12441

Rodriguez, M., Walters, S. T., Houck, J. M., Ortiz, J. A., & Taxman, F. S. (2017). The language of change among criminal justice clients: Counselor language, client language, and client substance use outcomes. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 74*(4), 626–636. doi:10.1002/jclp.22534

Rogers, C. R. (1980). *A way of being*. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin.
Rogers, C. R. (1965). *Client-centered therapy*. New York, NY: Houghton Mifflin.

Rollnick, S., Heather, N., Gold, R., & Hall, W. (1992). Development of a short "readiness to change" questionnaire for use in brief, opportunistic interventions among excessive drinkers. *British Journal of Addiction, 87*, 743–754.

Rollnick, S., Miller, W. R., & Butler, C. C. (2008). *Motivational interviewing in health care: Helping patients change behavior*. New York, NY: Guilford.

Romano, M., & Peters, L. (2016). Understanding the process of motivational interviewing: A review of the relational and technical hypotheses. *Psychotherapy Research, 26*(2), 220–240. doi:10.1080/10503307.2014.954154 Rosengren, D. B. (2018). *Building motivational interviewing skills: A practitioner workbook* (2nd ed.). New York, NY: Guilford Press.

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Running Bear, U. R., Beals, J., Novins, D. K., & Manson, S. M. (2017). Alcohol detoxification completion, acceptance of referral to substance abuse treatment, and entry into substance abuse treatment among Alaska Native people. *Addictive Behaviors, 65*, 25–32. doi:10.1016/j.addbeh.2016.09.009

Samson, J. E., & Tanner-Smith, E. E. (2015). Single-session alcohol interventions for heavy drinking college students: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, 76*(4), 530–543.

Sarpavaara, H. (2015). Significant others in substance abusers change talk during motivational interviewing sessions in the Finnish Probation Service. *Nordic Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, 32*(1), 91–103. doi:10.1515/nsad-2015-0010

Satre, D. D., Delucchi, K., Lichtmacher, J., Sterling, S. A., & Weisner, C. (2013). Motivational interviewing to reduce hazardous drinking and drug use among depression patients. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *44*(3), 323– 329.

Satre, D. D., Leibowitz, A., Sterling, S. A., Lu, Y., Travis, A., & Weisner, C. (2016). A randomized clinical trial of motivational interviewing to reduce alcohol and drug use among patients with depression. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 84*(7), 571–579.

Satre, D. D., Manuel, J. K., Larios, S., Steiger, S., & Satterfield, J. (2015). Cultural adaptation of screening, brief intervention and referral to treatment using motivational interviewing. *Journal of Addiction Medicine, 9*(5), 352– 357. doi:10.1097/adm.0000000000000149

Sayegh, C. S., Huey, S. J., Zara, E. J., & Jhaveri, K. (2017). Follow-up treatment effects of contingency management and motivational interviewing on substance use: A meta-analysis. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 31*(4), 403– 414. doi:10.1037/adb0000277

Schonfeld, L., King-Kallimanis, B. L., Duchene, D. M., Etheridge, R. L., Herrera, J. R., Barry, K. L., & Lynn, N. (2010). Screening and brief intervention for substance misuse among older adults: The Florida BRITE project. *American Journal of Public Health*, *100*(1), 108–114.

Schumacher, J. A., Williams, D. C., Burke, R. S., Epler, A. J., Simon, P., & Coffey, S. F. (2018). Competency-based supervision in motivational interviewing for advanced psychology trainees: Targeting an a priori benchmark. *Training and Education in Professional Psychology, 12*(3), 149–153. doi:10.1037/tep0000177

Schwalbe, C. S., Oh, H. Y., & Zweben, A. (2014). Sustaining motivational interviewing: A meta-analysis of training studies. *Addiction, 109*(8), 1287–1294. Retrieved from https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/add.12558

Scott, C. K., Dennis, M. L., & Lurigio, A. J. (2017). The effects of specialized probation and recovery management checkups (RMCs) on treatment participation, substance use, HIV risk behaviors, and recidivism among female offenders: Main findings of a 3-year experiment using subject by intervention interaction analysis. *Journal of Experimental Criminology*, *13*(1), 53–77.

Shepard, D. S., Lwin, A. K., Barnett, N. P., Mastroleo, N., Colby, S. M., Gwaltney, C., & Monti, P. M. (2016). Cost- effectiveness of motivational intervention with significant others for patients with alcohol misuse. *Addiction, 111*(5), 832–839. doi:10.1111/add.13233

Skinner, H. A. (1982). The Drug Abuse Screening Test. *Addictive Behavior, 7*(4), 363–371.

Smedslund, G., Berg, R. C., Hammerstrom, K. T., Steiro, A., Leiknes, K. A., Dahl, H. M., & Karlsen, K. (2011). Motivational interviewing for substance abuse. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 5*, CD008063

Smeerdijk, M., Keet, R., Raaij, B. V., Koeter, M., Linszen, D., Haan, L. D., & Schippers, G. (2015). Motivational interviewing and interaction skills training for parents of young adults with recent-onset schizophrenia and co- occurring cannabis use: 15-month follow-up. *Psychological Medicine, 45*(13), 2839–2848. doi:10.1017/s0033291715000793

Soderlund, P. D. (2017). Effectiveness of motivational interviewing for improving physical activity self-management for adults with type 2 diabetes: A review. *Chronic Illness, 14*(1), 54–68. doi:10.1177/1742395317699449

Steinberg, M. L., Williams, J. M., Stahl, N. F., Budsock, P. D., & Cooperman, N. A. (2015). An adaptation of motivational interviewing increases quit attempts in smokers with serious mental illness. *Nicotine and Tobacco Research, 18*(3), 243–250. doi:10.1093/ntr/ntv043

Stinson, J. D., & Clark, M. D. (2017). *Motivational interviewing with offenders: Engagement, rehabilitation, and reentry*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2019). *Mental health and substance use disorders*. Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov/find-help/disorders

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2018). *Key substance use and mental health indicators in the United States: Results from the 2017 National Survey on Drug Use and Health.* HHS Publication No. (SMA) 18-5068, NSDUH Series H-53. Rockville, MD: Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov/data/

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2016). *Criteria for the demonstration program to improve community mental health centers and to establish certified community behavioral health clinics*. Retrieved from Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov/sites/default/files/programs_campaigns/ccbhc-criteria.pdf

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2015a). *Substance abuse treatment and family therapy.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 39. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 15-4219. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-39-Substance-Abuse-Treatment-and-Family-Therapy/SMA15-4219

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2015b). *Using technology-based therapeutic tools in behavioral health services.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 60. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 15-4924. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-60-Using-Technology-Based-Therapeutic-Tools-in-Behavioral-Health- Services/SMA15-4924

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2014a). *Improving cultural competence*. Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 59. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14-4849. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-59-Improving- Cultural-Competence/SMA15-4849

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2014b). *Trauma-informed care in behavioral health services.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 60. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 14-4816. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-57-Trauma-Informed-Care-in-Behavioral-Health-Services/SMA14-4816

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2013). *Substance abuse treatment for persons with co-occurring disorders.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 42. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 13-3992. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-42-Substance-Abuse-Treatment-for-Persons-With-Co-Occurring- Disorders/SMA13-3992

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2009). *Clinical supervision and professional development of the substance abuse counselor*. Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 52. HHS Publication (SMA) 14–4435. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/TIP-52-Clinical-Supervision-and-Professional-Development-of-the-Substance- Abuse-Counselor/SMA14-4435.html

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. *Treating addiction in older adults.* Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, Center for the Application of Prevention Technologies. (2017). *Words matter: How language choice can reduce stigma*. Retrieved from https://facesandvoicesofrecovery.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/06/Words-Matter-How-Language-Choice-Can- Reduce-Stigma.pdf

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration & National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2015). *Medication for the treatment of alcohol*

use disorder: A brief guide. HHS Publication No. (SMA) 15-4907. Retrieved from Rockville, MD. Retrieved from https://store.samhsa.gov/product/Medication-for-the-Treatment- of-Alcohol-Use-Disorder-A-Brief-Guide/SMA15-4907

Taleff, M.J. (1997). *A handbook to assess and treat resistance in chemical dependency.* Dubuque, IA: Kendall/Hunt.

TIP 35: *Enhancing Motivation for Change in Substance Use Disorder Treatment* October 2019 Appendix A—Bibliography

Tanner-Smith, E. E., & Lipsey, M. W. (2015). Brief alcohol interventions for adolescents and young adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *51*, 1–18.

Teeson, M., Marel, C., Darke, S., Ross, J., Slade, T., Burns, L., ... Mills, K. L. (2015). Long-term mortality, remission, criminality and psychiatric comorbidity of heroin dependence: 11-year findings from the Australian Treatment Outcome Study. *Addiction, 110*(6), 986–983.

Timko, C., Kong, C., Vittorio, L., & Cucciare, M. A. (2016). Screening and brief intervention for unhealthy substance use in patients with chronic medical conditions: A systematic review. *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 25*(21–22), 3131–3143. doi:10.1111/jocn.13244

Truax, C. B., & Carkhuff, R. R. (1967). *Toward effective counseling and psychotherapy.* Chicago, IL: Aldine.

Turner, B., & Deane, F. P. (2016). Length of stay as a predictor of reliable change in psychological recovery and well- being following residential substance abuse treatment. *Therapeutic Communities, 37*(3), 112–120. doi:10.1108/tc- 09-2015-0022

Van Horn, D. H., Drapkin, M., Lynch, K. G., Rennert, L., Goodman, J. D., Thomas, T.,

... McKay, J. R. (2015). Treatment choices and subsequent attendance by substance-dependent patients who disengage from intensive outpatient treatment. *Addiction Research and Theory*, *23*(5), 391–403.

Vella-Zarb, R. A., Mills, J. S., Westra, H. A., Carter, J. C., & Keating, L. (2014). A randomized controlled trial of motivational interviewing self-help versus psychoeducation self-help for binge eating. *International Journal of Eating Disorders, 48*(3), 328–332. doi:10.1002/eat.22242

Venner, K. L., Feldstein, S. W., & Tafoya, N. (2006). *Native American motivational interviewing: Weaving Native*

American and Western practices. Retrieved from www.integration.samhsa.gov/clinical- practice/Native_American_MI_Manual.pdf

Venner, K. L., Sánchez, V., Garcia, J., Williams, R. L., & Sussman, A. L. (2018). Moving away from the tip of the pyramid: Screening and brief intervention for risky alcohol and opioid use in underserved patients. *Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine, 31*(2), 243–251.

Wagner, A. J., Garbers, R., Lang, A., Borgert, A. J., & Fisher, M. (2016). Increasing follow-up outcomes of at-risk alcohol patients using motivational interviewing. *Journal of Trauma Nursing, 23*(3), 165–168. doi:10.1097/jtn.0000000000000200

Wagner, C. C., & Ingersoll, K. S. (2017). Development and initial validation of the Assessment of Motivational Interviewing Groups—Observer Scales (AMIGOS). *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 68*(1), 69–79. doi:10.1080/00207284.2017.1315587

Wagner, C. C., & Ingersoll, K. S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing in groups*. New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Walker, D. D., Walton, T. O., Neighbors, C., Kaysen, D., Mbilinyi, L., Darnell, J., ... Roffman, R. A. (2017). Randomized trial of motivational interviewing plus feedback for soldiers with untreated alcohol abuse. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 85*(2), 99–110. doi:10.1037/ccp0000148

White, W. L. (2014). *Slaying the dragon: The history of addiction treatment and recovery in America* (2nd ed.). Bloomington, IL: Chestnut Health Systems/Lighthouse Institute.

White, W., & Miller, W. (2007). The use of confrontation in addiction treatment: History, science and time for change. *Counselor, 8*(4), 12–30.

Wild, T. C., Yuan, Y., Rush, B. R., & Urbanoski, K. A. (2016). Client engagement in legally mandated addiction treatment: A prospective study using self-determination theory. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *69*, 35– 43. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2016.06.006

Witkiewitz, K., & Marlatt, G. A. (Eds.). (2007). *Therapist's guide to evidence-based relapse prevention.* Boston, MA: Elsevier Academic Press.

Wong-Anuchit, C., Chantamit-O-Pas, C., Schneider, J. K., & Mills, A. C. (2018). Motivational interviewing–based compliance/adherence therapy interventions to improve psychiatric symptoms of people with severe mental illness: Meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Psychiatric Nurses Association,* 107839031876179. doi:10.1177/1078390318761790

Woolard, R., Baird, J., Longabaugh, R., Nirenberg, T., Lee, C. S., Mello, M. J., & Becker, B. (2013). Project Reduce: Reducing alcohol and marijuana misuse, Effects of a brief intervention in the emergency department. *Addictive Behaviors, 38*(3), 1732–1739. doi:10.1016/j.addbeh.2012.09.006

Yeh, M., Tung, T., Horng, F., & Sung, S. (2017). Effectiveness of a psychoeducational programme in enhancing motivation to change alcohol-addictive behaviour. *Journal of Clinical Nursing, 26*(21–22), 3724–3733. doi:10.1111/jocn.13744

Yudko, E., Lozhkina, O., & Fouts, A. (2007). A comprehensive review of the psychometric properties of the Drug Abuse Screening Test. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 32,* 189–198.